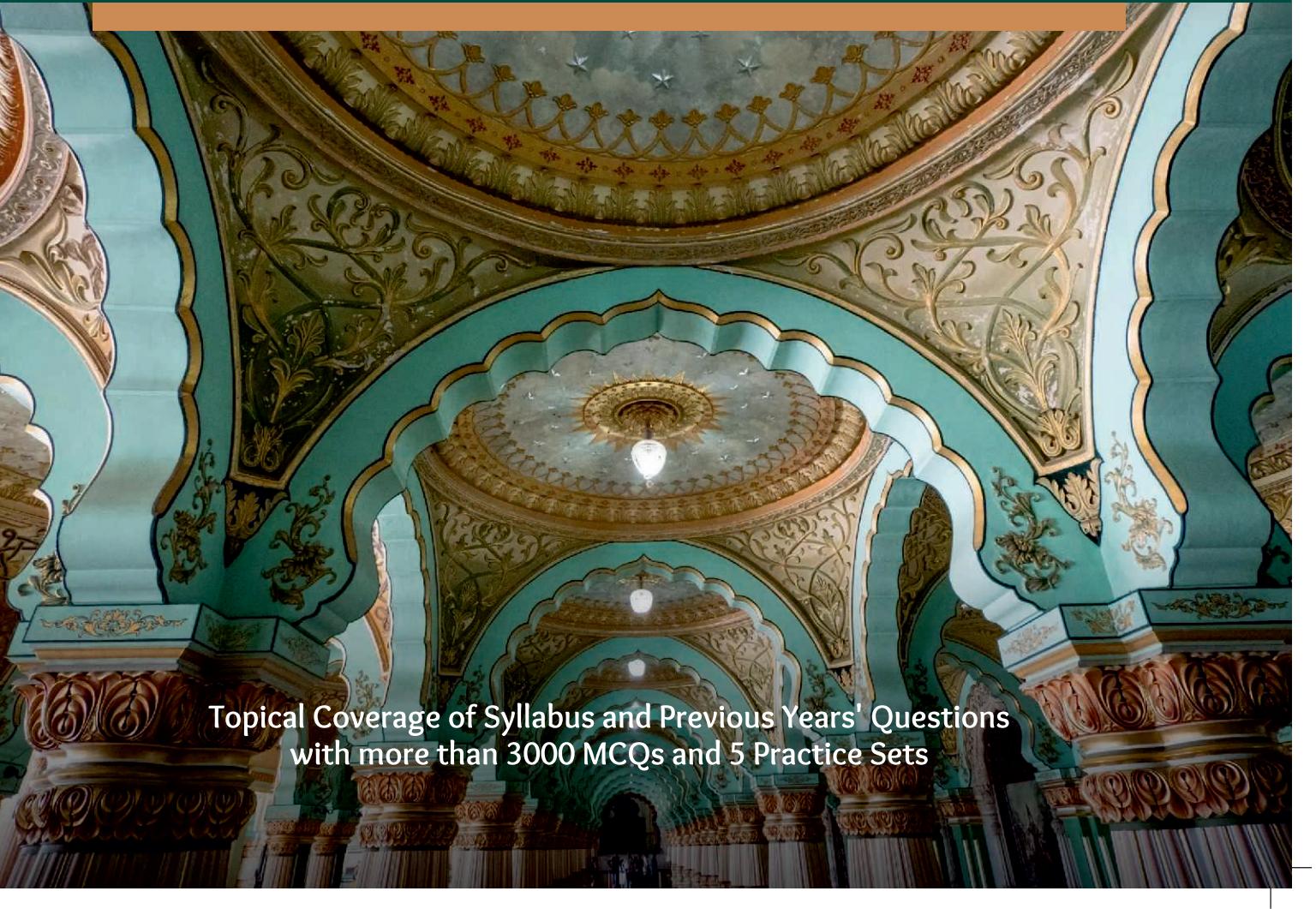


A Must for Civil Services (Pre) Examination,  
State PCS & Other Competitive Exams

# INDIAN HISTORY



Topical Coverage of Syllabus and Previous Years' Questions  
with more than 3000 MCQs and 5 Practice Sets



**A Must for Civil Services (Pre) Examination,  
State PCS & Other Competitive Exams**

# INDIAN HISTORY

Topical Coverage of Syllabus and Previous Years' Questions  
with more than 3000 MCQs and 5 Practice Sets

Authored By  
Janmenjay Sahni



**Arihant Publications (India) Ltd.**

## Arihant Publications (India) Ltd.

All Rights Reserved

### © Publishers

No part of this publication may be re-produced, stored in a retrieval system or distributed in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning, web or otherwise without the written permission of the publisher. Arihant has obtained all the information in this book from the sources believed to be reliable and true. However, Arihant or its editors or authors or illustrators don't take any responsibility for the absolute accuracy of any information published and the damages or loss suffered there upon.

*All disputes subject to Meerut (UP) jurisdiction only.*

### ADMINISTRATIVE & PRODUCTION OFFICES

#### ¤ Regd. Office

'Ramchhaya' 4577/15, Agarwal Road, Darya Ganj, New Delhi -110002  
Tele: 011- 47630600, 43518550; Fax: 011- 23280316

#### ¤ Sales & Support Offices

Agra, Ahmedabad, Bengaluru, Bareilly, Chennai, Delhi, Guwahati, Hyderabad,  
Jaipur, Jhansi, Kolkata, Lucknow, Meerut, Nagpur & Pune

#### ¤ Head Office

Kalindi, TP Nagar, Meerut (UP) - 250002  
Tele: 0121-2401479, 2512970, 4004199; Fax: 0121-2401648

#### ¤ ISBN : 978-93-13197-40-9

PUBLISHED BY : ARIHANT PUBLICATIONS (I) LTD.

### PRODUCTION TEAM

|                     |   |                |                      |   |               |
|---------------------|---|----------------|----------------------|---|---------------|
| Publishing Manager  | : | Amit Verma     | Inner Designer       | : | Pradeep Kumar |
| Project Head        | : | Karishma Yadav | Page Layout Designer | : | Vinay Sharma  |
| Project Coordinator | : | Aleena Zaidi   | Proof Reader         | : | Soniya Rawat  |
| Cover Designer      | : | Shanu Mansoori |                      |   |               |

For further information about books Publish by Arihant  
log on to [www.arihantbooks.com](http://www.arihantbooks.com) or email to [info@arihantbooks.com](mailto:info@arihantbooks.com)

# CONTENTS

## ANCIENT, MEDIEVAL AND MODERN INDIAN HISTORY

|   |       |   |
|---|-------|---|
| <b>1. The Stone Age</b>                           | 1-3   | The Chera Kingdom<br>The Pandyan Kingdom            |
| Stone Age   |       |   |
| Palaeolithic Age                                  |       |   |
| Mesolithic Age                                    |       |   |
| Neolithic Age                                     |       |   |
| Chalcolithic Age                                  |       |   |
| <b>2. Indus Valley Civilisation</b>               | 4-8   | <b>8. Post-Mauryan Period (200 BC-AD 300)</b> 38-43 |
| Discovery   |       | Archaeological Sources                              |
| Geographical Area                                 |       | Literary Sources                                    |
| Important Sites                                   |       | Indo-Greeks   |
| Major Characteristics of Harappan Sites           |       | Scythians   |
| Social Life                                       |       | Parthians   |
| Political Life                                    |       | Kushanas  |
| Religious Life                                    |       |   |
| Economic Life                                     |       |   |
| Art and Architecture                              |       |   |
| <b>3. The Vedic Age</b>                           | 9-15  | <b>9. The Gupta Age</b> 44-50                       |
| Early Vedic Age (1500-1000 BC)                    |       | Historical Sources                                  |
| Later Vedic Period (1000-600 BC)                  |       | Literary Sources                                    |
| Indian Schools of Philosophy                      |       | Archaeological Sources                              |
| <b>4. The First Territorial States</b>            | 16-20 | Gupta Dynasty                                       |
| Mahajanapadas                                     |       | Coinage System                                      |
| Rise of Magadhan Empire                           |       | Gupta Art and Crafts                                |
| Haryanka Dynasty                                  |       | Decline of the Gupta Empire                         |
| Shishunaga Dynasty (412-344 BC)                   |       |   |
| Nanda Dynasty (344-323 BC)                        |       |   |
| Pre-Mauryan Economic System                       |       |   |
| Foreign Invasions                                 |       |   |
| Persian Invasion                                  |       |   |
| Greek Invasion                                    |       |   |
| <b>5. Religious Movements of Mahajanapada Age</b> | 21-27 | <b>10. The Post-Gupta Era (AD 550-750)</b> 51-55    |
| Jainism   |       | Ruling Dynasties of North India                     |
| Philosophy of Jainism                             |       | Ruling Dynasties of South India                     |
| Decline of Jainism                                |       |   |
| Buddhism  |       |   |
| Philosophy of Buddhism                            |       |   |
| Decline of Buddhism                               |       |   |
| <b>6. The Mauryan Empire</b>                      | 28-33 | <b>11. The Sultanate of Delhi</b> 56-64             |
| Origin of Mauryans                                |       | Foundation of Delhi Sultanate                       |
| Chandragupta Maurya (321-298 BC)                  |       | The Slave Dynasty (AD 1206-1290)                    |
| Bindusara (298-273 BC)                            |       | Khilji Dynasty (AD 1290-1320)                       |
| Ashoka (273 BC - 232 BC)                          |       | The Tughlaq Dynasty (AD 1320-1414)                  |
| Later Mauryans (232-184 BC)                       |       | The Sayyid Dynasty (AD 1414-51)                     |
| The Mauryan Art                                   |       | Lodhi Dynasty (AD 1451-1526)                        |
| <b>7. The Sangam Age</b>                          | 34-37 | Administration under Sultanate                      |
| Early Kingdoms                                    |       | Music   |
| The Chola Kingdom                                 |       | Painting  |
| <b>12. Provincial Kingdoms</b>                    |       | <b>12. Provincial Kingdoms</b> 65-71                |
| The Emergence of Provincial Kingdoms              |       | The Origin of Vijayanagara Empire                   |
| The Bahmani Kingdom                               |       | The Bahmani Kingdom                                 |
| Independent Kingdoms of Deccan                    |       | Independent Kingdoms of Deccan                      |
| <b>13. Religious Movements</b>                    |       | <b>13. Religious Movements</b> 72-75                |
| Bhakti Movement                                   |       | Bhakti Movement                                     |
| Causes for the Emergence of Bhakti Movement       |       | Causes for the Emergence of Bhakti Movement         |
| Bhakti Saints                                     |       | Bhakti Saints                                       |
| Nirguna Saints                                    |       | Nirguna Saints                                      |
| Saguna Saints (Ram Bhakti, Krishna Bhakti)        |       | Saguna Saints (Ram Bhakti, Krishna Bhakti)          |
| Maharashtra Dharma Saints                         |       | Maharashtra Dharma Saints                           |
| The Sufi Movement                                 |       | The Sufi Movement                                   |
| <b>14. The Mughal Empire</b>                      |       | <b>14. The Mughal Empire</b> 76-84                  |
| The Mughal Dynasty                                |       | The Mughal Dynasty                                  |
| The Sur Empire                                    |       | The Sur Empire                                      |
| Sher Shah Suri (AD 1540-45)                       |       | Sher Shah Suri (AD 1540-45)                         |
| Akbar (AD 1556-1605)                              |       | Akbar (AD 1556-1605)                                |
| Jahangir (AD 1605-27)                             |       | Jahangir (AD 1605-27)                               |
| Shah Jahan (AD 1627-1658)                         |       | Shah Jahan (AD 1627-1658)                           |
| Aurangzeb (AD 1658-1707)                          |       | Aurangzeb (AD 1658-1707)                            |

|  |         |         |
|--|---------|---------|
| Mansabdari System  |         |         |
| The Jagir System   |         |         |
| Land Revenue System  |         |         |
| Mughal Painting  |         |         |
| Mughal Literature  |         |         |
| <b>15. The Maratha Empire</b>  | 85-90   |         |
| Shivaji (AD 1627-80)   |         |         |
| Central Administration   |         |         |
| Revenue Administration   |         |         |
| Military Administration  |         |         |
| Maratha Power Under the Peshwas  |         |         |
| <b>16. Mughal Decline and Rise of Regional States</b>                      | 91-99   |         |
| Later Mughals  |         |         |
| Foreign Invasions  |         |         |
| Rise of Regional States  |         |         |
| <b>17. Emergence of European Powers in India</b>                           | 100-109 |         |
| The Portuguese   |         |         |
| The Dutch  |         |         |
| The English  |         |         |
| The Danes  |         |         |
| The French   |         |         |
| Economic Colonialism and British Rule                                      |         |         |
| Land Revenue System  |         |         |
| <b>18. Tribal and Peasant Uprisings</b>                                    | 110-114 |         |
| Tribal Uprising  |         |         |
| Movements by the Deposed Rulers and Zamindars                              |         |         |
| <b>19. Governor-Generals and Viceroy</b>                                   | 115-121 |         |
| Governor-Generals of Bengal  |         |         |
| Governor-Generals of India   |         |         |
| Viceroy of India   |         |         |
| <b>20. Development of Modern Education and Press</b>                       | 122-127 |         |
| Development of Education   |         |         |
| Development After Independence   |         |         |
| Development of Press   |         |         |
| <b>21. Revolt of 1857</b>  | 128-132 |         |
| The Great Revolution of 1857   |         |         |
| The Course of Revolt   |         |         |
| Areas Affected by the Revolt   |         |         |
| <b>22. Social And Religious Reform Movements</b>                           | 133-142 |         |
| Rise of the Movements  |         |         |
| Major Issues of the Movements  |         |         |
| Temple Reform Movements  |         |         |
| Deccan Education Society   |         |         |
| The Servants of Indian Society   |         |         |
| British Initiatives for Social Reforms                                     |         |         |
| <b>23. Growth of Nationalism and Struggle for Independence (1885-1919)</b> | 143-155 |         |
| Factors for the Rise of Nationalism  |         |         |
| Birth of Indian National Congress  |         |         |
| Struggle for Independence Moderate (1885-1905)                             |         |         |
| <b>24. Struggle for Independence Second Phase (1919-1927)</b>              |         | 156-163 |
| The Rowlatt Act, 1919  |         |         |
| Khilafat Movement  |         |         |
| Non-Cooperation Movement   |         |         |
| Swarajya Party   |         |         |
| Early Political Life of Gandhiji   |         |         |
| Novel Ideas of Gandhiji  |         |         |
| <b>25. Struggle for Independence Third Phase (1927-1939)</b>               |         | 164-169 |
| Simon Commission   |         |         |
| Second Phase of Civil Disobedience Movement                                |         |         |
| Three Round Table Conference   |         |         |
| <b>26. Struggle for Independence Fourth Phase (1940-1947)</b>              |         | 170-177 |
| The August Offer   |         |         |
| The Individual Satyagrahas   |         |         |
| Cripps Mission   |         |         |
| Quit India Movement  |         |         |
| Indian National Army (INA)   |         |         |
| Constituent Assembly   |         |         |
| Partition of India   |         |         |
| Integration of Princely States after Independence                          |         |         |
| <b>27. Religion and Philosophy</b>   |         | 178-183 |
| Indian Culture   |         |         |
| Religions  |         |         |
| Indian Philosophy  |         |         |
| Indian Languages   |         |         |
| Dravidian Languages  |         |         |
| <b>28. Music, Dance, Theatre and Festivals</b>                             |         | 184-197 |
| Indian Music   |         |         |
| Hindustani Classical Music   |         |         |
| Carnatic Music   |         |         |
| Indian Dance Forms   |         |         |
| Theatre in India   |         |         |
| Cinema in India  |         |         |
| Fairs and Festivals of India   |         |         |
| <b>29. Indian Architecture and Painting Schools</b>                        |         | 198-205 |
| Harappan Architecture  |         |         |
| Indian Temple Architecture   |         |         |
| Puppetry   |         |         |
| Handicrafts  |         |         |
| Paintings  |         |         |
| <b>• Chronological Panorama of Indian History</b>                          |         | 206-207 |
| <b>• Glossary</b>  |         | 208-213 |
| <b>• Practice Set 1-5</b>  |         | 214-232 |
| <b>• Previous Years' Solved Papers Set 1</b>                               |         | 233-242 |
| <b>• Previous Years' Solved Papers Set 2</b>                               |         | 243-248 |

## TOPICS FOCUS & TREND OF QUESTIONS

### THE STONE AGE

Important topics from examination point of view are Paleolithic age, Mesolithic age and Neolithic age. If we analyse the pattern of questions asked in previous years, most of them are related to cultivation of crops, types of tools used during particular age etc.

### INDUS VALLEY CIVILISATION

Some of the important topics are like its geographical extent, town planning, seals, religious life, various IVC sites, socio-economic conditions in IVC, art and architecture etc. Most of the questions which were asked in past are related to material used for making seals, Harappan script, which site is located on the banks of which river, features of town planning, different sites associated with which industry etc.

### THE VEDIC AGE

This section of the ancient Indian history is one of the important section from the examination point of view. Some of the important topics are Vedic polity, socio-economic life, religious outlook, vedic literature etc. In past the questions have been asked regarding the important Veda deals with which subject, position of women in Vedic society, the four Ashramas, names of ancient rivers etc.

### THE FIRST TERRITORIAL STATES

Though not very important, but questions asked in previous examinations are related to, capital of any of the Mahajanapadas, causes for the rise of Magadha, Haryanka dynasty, Nanda dynasty, Alexander's invasion.

### RELIGIOUS MOVEMENTS OF MAHAJANAPADAS

Some of the most important topics from examination point of view are Jainism, Buddhism and their impacts on the society, causes for the rise and growth of these sects, literature. Questions are frequently asked from this section of Indian history in almost every examination, which are related to philosophy of Jainism and Buddhism, Buddhist Mudras etc.

### THE MAURYAN EMPIRE

Some of the vital topics are origin of Mauryan empire, Mauryan administration, causes for the decline of Mauryan empire etc. In almost all the competitive examinations questions are asked from Mauryan empire which are regarding the literary sources of Mauryas, Kautilya, Megasthenes Indica, Ashoka's edicts and inscriptions, impact of Kalinga war on policy of Ashoka, art and architecture during Mauryan period.

### THE SANGAM AGE

Important topics from examination point of view are sangam literature, sangam polity, socio-economic conditions during sangam age. Questions asked from this topic are like, state emblem of Cholas, Cheras and Pandyas kingdom, capitals of Cholas, Cheras and Pandyas, Sangam administration.

### POST-MAURYAN PERIOD

This topic is not of much importance, however sometimes questions are asked regarding Pushyamitashunga, Hunas Invasions, Indo-Greeks, Kanishka's reign, developments in the field of art and architecture, socio-economic conditions in post Mauryan society.

### GUPTA AGE

It is referred to as the Golden Age of Indian History. This is one of the most important sections from the perspective of competitive examinations as questions are frequently asked. Some important topics are Gupta administration, religion and society during Gupta period, developments in art and architecture. In competitive examinations questions are asked regarding types of coins issued during Gupta Age, economy in Gupta rule, temple constructed during Gupta Age with their location.

### THE POST-GUPTA ERA

Questions from this section are mostly asked regarding Harsha's reign, Hiuen Tsang a Chinese traveler, books written by Harsha, achievements of the Chalukyan rulers.

## **THE SULTANATE OF DELHI**

It is one of the most important sections of the Indian History, as questions are frequently asked in each and every examination conducted by UPSC and State PSC's. Some important topics are administration of Delhi Sultanate, important rulers of Delhi Sultanate, military organisations, agrarian conditions, revenue system under sultanate rulers. Questions asked are related to reforms of Iltutmish, Razia Sultana, Theory of kingship, administrative reforms of Ala-ud-din Khilji, decisions taken by Muhammed-bin-Tughlaq, reforms introduced by Firoz Shah Tughlaq, important officers and important departments established by various rulers and their functions, developments in the field of architecture and music.

## **PROVINCIAL KINGDOMS**

Vijayanagara empire is very important from examination point of view as questions are frequently asked from this topic. Questions asked from this section are mostly factual like sources of Vijayanagara empire, achievements of Krishnadeva Raya, Vijayanagara administration, Ashtadiggajas, famous travellers.

## **RELIGIOUS MOVEMENTS**

Important topics are Sufi Movement and Bhakti Movement. Questions are primarily asked regarding the founder of various Sufi orders, important Bhakti saints, schools of Bhakti thought.

## **THE MUGHAL EMPIRE**

This section of Indian history is one of the most important from examination point of view as questions are asked in almost every exam. Some important topics are early conquests of Babur, reign of Sher Shah Suri, conquests of Akbar, religious policies of Akbar, reign of Aurangzeb. In previous years questions were asked from these topics: battles fought by Babur and Humayun, Sher Shah's administration, military reforms, coins issued Din-i-ilahi, 9 jewels in the court of Akbar, religious policy of Aurangzeb, Mughal administration, land revenue system, Mughal architecture, famous Mughal historians and their works.

## **THE MARATHA EMPIRE**

From examination perspective, Maratha administration is very important. In previous years questions have been asked like, Treaty of Purandhar, revenue administration and military administration.

## **MUGHAL DECLINE AND RISE OF REGIONAL STATES**

In previous years questions have been asked on the causes for the decline of Mughal empire, Aurangzeb's religious intolerance, rise of regional states like Hyderabad, Bengal, Awadh, Mysore, Punjab.

## **EMERGENCE OF EUROPEAN POWERS AND ESTABLISHMENT OF BRITISH PARAMOUNTCY IN INDIA**

Some of the important topics are advent of various European powers like the Portuguese, the Dutch, the Britishers. In previous examinations questions have been asked from early settlements or factories of various European companies, Anglo-French struggle in South India (Carnatic Wars), Battle of Plassey (1757) and Battle of Buxar (1764), Anglo-Mysore Wars.

## **TRIBAL AND PEASANT UPRISINGS**

Some of the important topics are Sanyasi Rebellion, Santhal Revolt, Pagalpanthi Uprising, Faraizi Movement and Munda Uprising. Most of the questions asked in previous exams from this section are regarding what was the cause and outcome of a particular rebellion.

## **GOVERNOR-GENERALS AND VICEROYS OF INDIA**

Some of the important one's are Warren Hastings, Lord Cornwallis, Lord Wellesley, Lord William Bentinck, Charles Metcalfe, Lord Dalhousie, Lord Mayo, Lord Lytton, Lord Rippon, Lord Dufferin, Lord Curzon, Lord Irwin, Lord Wavell, Lord Mountbatten. Mostly, the questions asked from this section are regarding the key policies of any of the above, their contribution in establishing the British rule in India, their contribution towards the Indian society.

## **DEVELOPMENT OF MODERN EDUCATION AND PRESS**

Important topics from examination perspective are Orientalist-Anglicist controversy, Charter Act, 1813, Indian Universities Act, 1904, Wardha Scheme of Education, 1937, the Vernacular Press Act, 1878. In previous years questions have been asked from Wood's Despatch, Hunter Commission, Lord Macaulay's education policy etc.

## **REVOLT OF 1857**

Some of the important topics are causes of the Revolt of 1857, impact of revolt, failure of revolt. In previous exams questions have been asked regarding how was subsidiary alliance and Doctrine of Lapse responsible for the revolt, immediate cause of the revolt.

## **SOCIO-RELIGIOUS REFORM MOVEMENTS**

Important topics for better understanding are causes for socio-religious reform movements, important leaders of various reform movements, Brahmo Samaj, Arya Samaj, Theosophical Movement, Ramakrishna Movement etc. Questions have been asked regarding the contribution of Raja Rammohan Roy, Swami Dayanand Saraswati, Young Bengal Movement, objectives of various reform movements.

## **GROWTH OF NATIONALISM AND STRUGGLE FOR INDEPENDENCE (1885 TO 1919)**

Important topics for various exams are factors for the rise of nationalism, activities of early nationalists, formation of INC, moderates, causes for the rise of extremism, Partition of Bengal, Swadeshi Movement, Ghadar Party. In previous years questions have been asked from various political associations in Bengal, Ilbert Bill controversy, ideological differences between moderates and extremists, Surat Split (1907), Lucknow Pact, 1916, Home Rule Movement of Tilak and Annie Besant, important Congress sessions and their Presidents.

## **EARLY POLITICAL LIFE OF GANDHI JI AND STRUGGLE FOR INDEPENDENCE (1919 TO 1927)**

Important topics are arrival of Gandhiji, contribution of Gandhiji in freedom struggle, Rowlatt Act, (1919), Non-Cooperation Movement. Questions which are very frequently asked from this section are regarding Champaran Satyagraha, Kheda Satyagraha, Ahmedabad textile mill issue, Anti Ahmedabad textile mill issue, Anti Rowlatt agitation, Jallianwala Bagh massacre, Khilafat Movement.

## **STRUGGLE FOR INDEPENDENCE, THIRD PHASE (1927-1939)**

Important topics from the perspective of competitive exams are Simon Commission, fourteen points of Jinnah, Lahore Session of Congress, Civil Disobedience Movement, Gandhi Irwin Pact, Government of India Act, 1935. Questions from this chapter in previous years have been asked regarding why Simon Commission was boycotted, Nehru Report importance of the Lahore Session of INC, Dandi March, Round table conferences, Communal award.

## **STRUGGLE FOR INDEPENDENCE, FOURTH PHASE (1940 - 1947)**

Important topics for various examinations are August Offer (1940), Cripps Mission, Quit India Movement, Indian National Army, Cabinet Mission Plan (1946), Mountbatten Plan. In previous examinations questions have been asked regarding what were the provisions of August offer, individual Satyagraha, reasons for the rejection of Cripps Mission, important events during Quit India Movement, Wardha Resolution, INA trials, Provisions of Wavell Plan and Simla Conference, Direct Action Day, reasons for partition of India.

## **CULTURE AND RELIGION**

Some of the important topics from the examination perspective are various religious sects, Indian philosophy. In previous years questions have been asked from various topics like doctrines of various religious sects like, Buddhism, Jainism.

## **MUSIC AND THEATRE**

Important topics from which questions are asked frequently are characteristics of Hindustani classical music, various musical instruments, classical dances of India, folk dances of India, forms of theatre in India, fairs and festivals of India.

## **INDIAN ARCHITECTURE AND PAINTING SCHOOLS**

This is one of the most important sections of Indian History from which questions are asked frequently in almost all competitive examinations. Some of the important topics from examination point of view are Harappan architecture, monuments of ancient period, cave paintings etc. In previous years questions have been asked from these topics: features of Chola and Vijayanagara architecture, North and South Indian architecture, famous inscriptions, Mughal school of painting.



# Chapter one

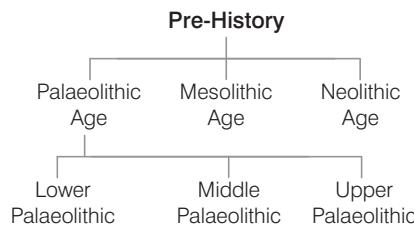
## The Stone Age

*The term 'Stone Age' is used to describe a period of human evolution where stone was used as the most hardest material for making tools. The stone age started around 2 to 2.5 million years ago.*

*The transition out of the stone age occurred between 6000 BC and 2500 BC. Man is said to have appeared on the Earth (first in Africa) in the early Pleistocene, with true ox, elephant and horse. Bori in Maharashtra gives the earliest evidence of man in India, in the middle Pleistocene period.*

### Stone Age

- The age when the pre-historic man began to use stones for utilitarian purpose is termed as the **Stone Age**. The stone age is divided into three broad divisions:



### Palaeolithic Age

#### Hunters and Food Gatherers (Upto 9000 BC)

- The term Palaeolithic was coined by archaeologist **John Lubbock** in 1865 and refers to a pre-historic era distinguished by the development of the first stone tools made of Quartzite. Hence, Palaeolithic men are also called as **Quartzite Men**.
- Traditionally, the Palaeolithic age is divided into three periods: the Lower Palaeolithic, Middle Palaeolithic and the Upper Palaeolithic; on the basis of the nature of stone tools made by human beings as well as due to the changes in the climate.

#### The Lower Palaeolithic Age (500000 - 50000 BC)

- It is the earliest sub-division of the Palaeolithic or Old Stone Age. The tools of this phase include mainly hand-axes, cleavers, choppers and chopping tools.

#### Lower Palaeolithic Age Sites

| Sites                    | States                           |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Belan Valley             | Madhya Pradesh and Uttar Pradesh |
| Bhimbetka, Jogdaha       | Madhya Pradesh                   |
| Bagor, Budha Pushkar     | Rajasthan                        |
| Patne, Nandipalle        | Maharashtra                      |
| Renugunta, Kurnool Caves | Andhra Pradesh                   |
| Singhbhum                | Jharkhand                        |
| Sohan Valley             | West Punjab (Pakistan)           |

#### The Middle Palaeolithic Age

(50000 - 40000 BC)

- Its tool pattern is based upon flakes and crude pebble industry. The dominant tool types being blades, points and borers.

#### Middle Palaeolithic Age Sites

| Sites                         | States         |
|-------------------------------|----------------|
| Nevasa                        | Maharashtra    |
| Bhimbetka, Narmada Valley     | Madhya Pradesh |
| Bagor,Karmali Valley, Didwana | Rajasthan      |
| Singhbhum                     | Jharkhand      |

#### The Upper Palaeolithic Age

(40000 -10000 BC)

- It is characterised by burins, scrapers, flint industry and appearance of modern man (*homo sapiens*).
- Animal remains found in the **Belan valley** in Mirzapur district in Uttar Pradesh shows that goats, sheep and cattle were exploited.

### Upper Palaeolithic Age Sites

| Sites   | States                |
|---|-----------------------|
| Kurnool Caves                                 | Andhra Pradesh        |
| Belan Valley                                  | Madhya Pradesh and UP |
| Nevasa  | Maharashtra           |
| Sabarmati Valley                              | Gujarat               |
| Singrauli                                     | Madhya Pradesh        |
| Kichler                                       | Andhra Pradesh        |
| Hungsi Valley                                 | Karnataka             |
| Attirampakkam                                 | Tamil Nadu            |
| Pahalgam                                      | Kashmir               |
| Hathnora, Narmada Valley, Bhimbetka, Adamgarh | Madhya Pradesh        |
| Kortallayar Valley                            | Tamil Nadu            |

### Mesolithic Age

#### Hunters and Herders (9000 - 4000 BC)

- It was a transitional phase between the Palaeolithic age and the Neolithic age. Mesolithic period is technologically characterised by microliths or small pointed and sharp stone tools.
- Adamgarh in Madhya Pradesh and Bagor in Rajasthan provide the earliest evidence for the domestication of animals like cows, horses and other poultry and farm animals. Sites like Bhimbetka, Adamgarh, Partapgarh and Mirzapur are rich in Mesolithic art and paintings.

### Mesolithic Age Sites

| Sites                          | States         |
|--------------------------------|----------------|
| Langhnaj                       | Gujarat        |
| Tilwara, Bagor                 | Rajasthan      |
| Patne, Hatkhamba               | Maharashtra    |
| Damdama, Chopani Mando         | Uttar Pradesh  |
| Pachmarhi, Bhimbetka, Adamgarh | Madhya Pradesh |
| Sanganakallu                   | Karnataka      |
| Gauri Gundam                   | Andhra Pradesh |

### Neolithic Age

#### Food Producers (4000 -1800 BC)

- The Neolithic age or the New Stone age was the last phase of the Stone age. It is characterised by the use of polished stone tools and the beginning of cultivation of crops. An important invention of this time was the making of the wheel and the discovery of fire.
- The four major characteristics traits that represent the Neolithic culture are as follows :*
  - Beginning of the practice of agriculture.
  - Domestication of animals.
  - Use of polished stone tools.
  - The manufacture of pottery.
- Mehrgarh** in Baluchistan (Pakistan) is the oldest Neolithic site in Indian sub-continent (7000 BC).

### Some Important Features of Neolithic Sites

- Kashmir** Only site where microlith is completely absent.
- Chirand and Kashmir** Only sites which has yielded considerable bone implements.
- Burzahom** Domestic dogs were buried with their masters in their graves.
- Allahabad District** Cultivation of rice in the 6th millennium BC.

### Neolithic Age Sites

| Sites  | States         |
|--|----------------|
| Burzahom, Gufkral  | Kashmir        |
| Mehrgarh, Kili Gul Muhammad  | Baluchistan    |
| Daojali Hading   | Assam          |
| Chopani Mando, Mahagarha   | Uttar Pradesh  |
| Chirand, Chechar   | Bihar          |
| Tekkalakota, Sanganakallu, Narsipur, Hallur, Kupgal, Kodekal, Brahmagiri | Karnataka      |
| Nagarjunakonda, Piklihal, Utnur  | Andhra Pradesh |
| Paiyanpalli  | Tamil Nadu     |

### Chalcolithic Age (1800 -1000 BC)

- These people used copper and bronze to make a range of utilitarian tools. This phase or period is termed as the Chalcolithic age. A number of such sites have been found in the Chota Nagpur plateau region, the upper Gangetic basin, Karnataka and near the banks of river Narmada. Neither plough nor has been found at Chalcolithic sites. They practiced **Jhum cultivation**.

### Chalcolithic Age Sites

| Sites                     | States         |
|---------------------------|----------------|
| Ahar-Banas                | Rajasthan      |
| Kayatha, Malwa, Eran      | Madhya Pradesh |
| Nevasa, Daimabad, Nanyang | Maharashtra    |

### Chalcolithic Culture

- Ahar Culture** The sites of Ahar culture were Ahar (Rajasthan), Balathal, Gilund etc. The distinctive feature is black and red ware.
- Kayatha Culture** Located in Chambal and its tributaries, the sturdy red slipped ware with chocolate designs is main feature.
- Malwa Culture** Narmada and its tributaries in Gujarat. One of the largest Chalcolithic settlements.
- Savalda Culture** The well-known sites are in Dhule district of Maharashtra.
- Prabhas and Rangpur Culture** Both of them are derived from the Harappa culture. The polished red ware is the hall mark of this culture.

# Self Check

# Build Your Confidence



1. (d)      2. (a)      3. (d)      4. (d)      5. (b)      6. (d)      7. (d)      8. (a)      9. (d)  
10. (a)     11. (b)     12. (b)     13. (c)     14. (c)     15. (c)     16. (d)

# Chapter two

# Indus Valley Civilisation

*Thousands year's ago, people started moving towards the valleys of Indus, gradually they settled there and they evolved a civilisation called **Indus Valley Civilisation**. The name 'India' is derived from the river Indus, for India means the country of the Indus. The earliest literary evidence however, shows that the first Aryan settlers in India called the Indus, the Sindh.*

## Discovery

- The archaeological excavations during the early decades of 20th century brought to light an extensive civilisation which flourished in Indian subcontinent.
- Till now almost 1400 settlements belonging to Indus Valley Civilisation. The North-South spread of this civilisation was 1400 km and the East-West spread was 1600 kms.
- The most of the Indus Valley Civilisation settlements were located in Valley of Saraswati river system, which is extinct today. The river Saraswati was known as the name of **Ghaggar** in Punjab and **Chakra** in Baluchistan region.

## Geographical Area

- The Indus or the Harappan culture is older than the chalcolithic cultures, but it is far more developed than these cultures.
- It arose in the North-Western part of the Indian subcontinent. Many sites in Sindh formed the Central Zone of the Pre-Harappan Culture.
- The Central Zone of the Mature Harappan Culture lay in Sindh and Punjab, mainly in the Indus valley. It is from here that it spread Southwards and Eastwards.
- The area formed a triangle and accounted for about 1299600 sq km, which is larger than Ancient Egypt and Mesopotamia. Nearly 1500, Harappan sites are known as so far in the subcontinent.

## Geographical Limits

*There are following geographical limits as follows :*

- |                     |                                |
|---------------------|--------------------------------|
| • Northernmost site | <i>Manda (J &amp; K)</i>       |
| • Southernmost site | <i>Daimabad (Maharashtra)</i>  |
| • Westernmost site  | <i>Sutkagen Dor (Pakistan)</i> |
| • Easternmost site  | <i>Alamgirpur (UP)</i>         |

## Important Sites

### Harappa (Punjab, Pakistan)

- It was the first Indus site to be discovered and excavated under the supervision of **Daya Ram Sahni** in 1921, on the river Ravi. The Indus civilisation was originally called **Harappan Civilisation** after the discovery of this site.
- The vast mounds at Harappa were first reported by **Masson** in 1826 and visited by **Cunningham** in 1853 and 1873.
- The six granaries here are located outside the citadel, but immediately next to it in the West.
- Barracks or rows of single-roomed quarters are situated just below the walls of the citadel. They probably house labourers.
- The location of Harappa has led several authors to conclude that it was a Gateway city. Two types of burial practices, one of typical R 37 type and other H type cemetery are seen.
- Harayana's Bhirrana oldest Harappan site in Indian Subcontinent, according to new Archaeological Survey of India (report).
- Other findings stone symbol of lingam and yoni, virgin goddess (seal), wheat and barley in wooden mortar, copper scale and mirror, vanity box, dice, log chasing a deer (in bronze), nude male and nude dancing female (stone), naked male Torso (red sand stone) has been found which shows traces of Jainism.

### Mohenjodaro (Sindh, Pakistan)

- It is one of the largest site and was discovered by *RD Bannerjee* in 1922, situated on the river Indus. In Sindhi language, the word Mohenjodaro means *mound of the dead*.
- Other buildings include an oblong multipillared assembly hall and a big rectangular building which must have served administrative purpose.
- Other findings are Pashupati Seal, bronze image of a dancing girl, 3 cylindrical seals and steatite image of a bearded man, clay figures of mother goddess, dice, idol of a yogi and a granary.
- The Great Bath is the most important place of public. It was used for religious bathing, steps at either end lead to the surface. There were changing rooms with inlet to the tank and outlet to drown water. It measured 39 feet (length) 23 feet (breadth) and 8 feet (depth).

### Major Harappan Sites and their Excavators

| Name of Sites       | Years      | Excavators                 | Regions/Rivers   |
|---------------------|------------|----------------------------|--|
| Harappa             | 1921       | Daya Ram Sahni             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Montgomery district of Punjab (Now in Pakistan) on the left bank of Ravi river.</li> </ul>  |
| Mohenjodaro         | 1922       | RD Bannerjee               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Larkana district in Sindh on the right bank of Indus (Now in Pakistan).</li> </ul>  |
| Sutkagendor         | 1927       | RL Stine                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Situated in Baluchistan on Dask river.</li> </ul>   |
| Chanhudaro          | 1931       | N Gopal Majumdar, Mackey   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Situated in Sindh on the bank of left Indus.</li> </ul>   |
| Amri                | 1929       | NG Majumdar                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Situated in Sindh on the bank of Indus.</li> </ul>  |
| Kalibangan          | 1955       | A Ghosh                    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Situated in Rajasthan on the left bank of Ghaggar.</li> </ul>   |
| Kot Diji            | 1955       | Fazal Khan                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Situated on the left bank of Indus.</li> </ul>  |
| Rangpur             | 1935       | MS Vats, BB Lal and SR Rao | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Situated on the left bank of Mahari river (Gujarat).</li> </ul>   |
| Ropar               | 1953       | YD Sharma                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Situated in Punjab on the banks of Sutlej.</li> </ul>   |
| Lothal              | 1955 -1960 | SR Rao                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Situated in Gujarat on the confluence of Sabarmati and Bhogava river near Gulf of Cambay.</li> <li>It was the only site of Indus Civilisation with an artificial brick dockyard.</li> </ul> |
| Alamgirpur          | 1958       | YD Sharma                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Situated in Meerut on the bank of Hindon river</li> </ul>   |
| Rakhigarhi          | 1963       | Professor Surajbhan        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Drishadvati (Hissar district (Haryana)) on Ghaggar river</li> </ul>   |
| Desalpur or Gunthli | 1963       | —                          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Nakhtrana Taluka Kutch district in Gujarat near Dhrud river</li> </ul>  |
| Balakot             | 1973 -1979 | George F Dales             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Situated in the Arabian Sea on Saraswati river</li> </ul>   |
| Surkotada           | 1964       | JP Joshi                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Situated in Kutch (Bhuj) (Gujarat)</li> </ul>   |
| Banawali            | 1974       | RS Bisht                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Situated in Hissar (Haryana) on Saraswati river</li> </ul>  |

## Major Characteristics of Harappan Sites

### Town Planning and Structure

- Town planning was not uniform. Common feature was grid system i.e. streets cutting across one another at right angles, dividing the town into large rectangular blocks.
- The towns were divided into two parts : upper part or citadel and lower part. The fortified citadel on the Western side house public buildings and members of ruling class. Below the citadel on the Eastern side lay the lower town inhabited by the common people.
- Houses, often of two or more storeys, generally had side entrances and no windows faced the main street. There was large-scale use of burnt bricks and complete absence of stone buildings. Round pillars were absent.

### Drainage System

- The drainage system was very impressive. In almost all cities every big or small house had its own courtyard and bathroom. Water flowed from the houses to the streets which had drains.
- Underground drainage system connected all houses to the street drains, made of mortar, lime and gypsum, covered with either brick or stone slabs and equipped with manhole. This shows developed sense of health and sanitation.
- Drains were built of burnt bricks.
- The quality of domestic bathrooms and drains is remarkable.

### Social Life

- It was a highly developed urban way of life. Society principally consisted of middle class urban people. Presence of various classes like priests, merchants, craftsman, peasants and labourers can be seen.
- The dress of the men consisted of two garments: the upper and the lower cotton garments, which were generally used. Wool was also used. Different kinds of necklaces have been discovered. Bracelets were used quite commonly. The vanity case found at Harappa reveals, that the Harappan women knew the art of wall painting.

## Political Life

- There is no clear idea about the political organisation of the Harappans. No temple have been found at any site. We have no religious structures of any kind except the Great Bath, which was meant for ritual bathing. Therefore, it would be wrong to think that priests ruled in Harappa. It must be noted that Harappans were lacking in weapons.

## Religious Life

- Chief Female Deity** A terracotta figure where a plant is shown growing out of the embryo of a women, represent Mother Goddess (Goddess of Earth).
- Chief Male Deity** Pashupati Mahadeva (proto-siva), represented in seals as sitting in a yogic posture on a low throne and having three faces and two horns. He is surrounded by an elephant, a tiger, a rhino and a buffalo and two deer appear at his feet.
- Numerous symbols of one phallus (lingam) and female sex organs made of stone indicates the prevalence of lingam and yoni worship.
- Trees (pipal), animals (bull), birds (dove, pigeon) and stones were worshipped. No temple has been found though idolatry was practiced.
- Indus people believed in ghosts and evil forces and used amulets as protection against them.

### Burial Practices

**Mohenjodaro** Three forms of burial-complete, fractional and post cremation.

**Kalibangan** Two forms of burial-circular and rectangular grove.

**Surkotada** Pot-burial.

**Lothal** Double burial.

**Harappa** East-West axis; R-37 and H cemetery, coffinburial.

## Economic Life

- The Harappan economy was based on irrigated surplus agriculture, cattle rearing, proficiency in various crafts and brisk trade (both internal and external).

### Agriculture

- Agriculture was the backbone of the civilisation. The soil was fertile due to inundation in the river Indus and flooding.
- They used wooden plough share (*ploughed field* found at Kalibangan) and stone sickles for harvesting. Gabarbands or Nalas enclosed by dam for storing water were a feature in parts of Baluchistan.
- Crops produced were wheat, barley, dates, peas, sesamum, mustard, millet, ragi, bajra and jowar. At Lothal and Rangpur, rice husks were found.

- First to produce cotton in the world, which Greek called as *Sindon* derived from *Sindh*.
- A fragment of woven cotton cloth was found at Mohenjodaro. Indigo was evident from Rojdi, well irrigation from Aldinho, dams and irrigation canals from Dholavira. *Sugarcane* was not known to Indus people.

### Domestication of Animals

- Animal rearing was practiced. They domesticated buffaloes, sheep, oxens, asses, goats, pigs, elephants, dogs and cats etc. *Camel* bones are reported at Kalibangan .
- They did not know about the horse, except a jaw bone of horse which has been recovered from Surkotada in Gujarat. However, they did not know about lion.

### Trade

- Agriculture, industry and forest produce provided the basis for internal and external trade. Trade was based on *barter system*. Coins are not evident.
- Weights and measures were made of limestone, steatite etc, generally, in cubical shape. They were in multiples of 16. Several sticks inscribed with measure marks have been discovered. It points that linear system of measurement was in use. They had trade relations with Shortughai and Mundigak in Afghanistan, Altyn Depe and Namazga in Turkmenistan and Tepe Yahya and Shahri-i-Sokhta in Iran. Dilmun (Bahrain) and Makan (Makran coast) were two intermediate stations. Indigo was exported to *Egypt*.

- Indus valley civilisation mentioned as *Meluha* in sumerian literature, evidence of trade between *Dilmun* and *Makan* from sumerian text.
- Seals of Indus valley have been noticed from Ur, Kis, Susa and Logas towns of Mesopotamia.
- Mesopotamian cylindrical seals have been found from Mohenjodaro. Figure of humped bull on Mesopotamian seals. Use of Mesopotamian cosmetic products by the Harappans.
- Coffin made burials have been a foreign phenomenon which were found in Harappa and Mesopotamia.

### Major Imports by the Harappans

| Materials    | Sources                                   |
|--------------|---|
| Gold         | Afghanistan, Persia, Karnataka            |
| Silver       | Afghanistan, Iran                         |
| Copper       | Baluchistan and Khetri (Rajasthan)        |
| Tin          | Afghanistan, Central Asia                 |
| Agates       | Western India                             |
| Chalcedony   | Saurashtra                                |
| Lead         | Rajasthan, South India, Afghanistan, Iran |
| Lapis Lazuli | Badakshan and Kashmir                     |
| Turquoise    | Central Asia, Iran                        |
| Amethyst     | Maharashtra                               |

|           |              |
|-----------|--------------|
| Jade      | Central Asia |
| Carnelian | Saurashtra   |

## Art and Architecture

- The Harappans were utilitarians although not completely devoid of artistic sense. Their most notable artistic achievement was their seal engraving. *The major artistic work of the Harappans were:*

### Harappan Pottery

- Harappan pottery is bright or dark red and is uniformly sturdy and well baked. Script is also engraved on it. It is chiefly wheel made and consists of both plain and painted ware, the plain variety being more common.
- Harappan people used different types of pottery such as glazed, polychrome, incised perforated and knobbed. The glazed Harappan pottery is the earliest example of its kind in the ancient world.
- On the whole, Harappan pottery was highly utilitarian in character, though the painted designs on some pieces show a remarkable artistic touch.

### Harappan Seals

- The seals commonly are made of steatite (soft stone). The technique of cutting and polishing these seals with white lustre was a unique invention of the Harappans.
- The majority of the seals have an animal engraved on them with a short inscription. Unicorn is the animal most frequently represented on the seals. The famous Bull seal was found from Mohenjodaro. *Main types are as follows*
  - The square type with a carved animal and inscription.
  - The rectangular type with inscription only. Steatite image of a bearded man is excavated from Mohenjodaro.

- About 2000 seals have been recovered from Harappan sites.

### Script and Language

- Script and language are *undeciphered*, script is *pictographic* in nature. Fish symbol is most represented.
- Overlapping of the letters show that it was written from right to left in the first line and then left to right in the second line. The style is called *boustrophedon*. A signboard inscription bearing 10 pictographs has been found from Dholavira in Gujarat.

### Terracotta Figurines

- Fire baked clay was used to make toys, objects of worship, animals (monkeys, dogs, sheep, cattle, humped and humpless bulls) both male and female figurines.

### Decline of Indus Civilisation : *Different Views*

| Cause of Declines   | Thinkers                       |
|---|--------------------------------|
| External Aggression   | Wheeler, Piggot, Gordon-childe |
| Inundation  | MR Sahani                      |
| Epidemic  | KVR Kennedy                    |
| Tectonic Disturbances (e.g. Dholavira)                      | Marshall and Raikes            |
| Sudden Decline  | Wheeler                        |
| Climatic Change   | RL Stein, AN Ghosh             |
| Deforestation, scarcity of resources, ecological imbalances | Walter Fairservis              |
| Flood (e.g. Mohenjodaro)                                    | Marshal, SR Rao, Maickey       |
| The destruction due to change in course of river Ghaggar    | GF Holes                       |

# Self Check

# Build Your Confidence



1. (c)      2. (c)      3. (b)      4. (d)      5. (d)      6. (d)      7. (d)      8. (d)      9. (b)      10. (c)  
11. (b)      12. (d)      13. (b)

# Chapter three

## The Vedic Age

*The history of Vedic India is known largely through its religious texts, the Vedas, which gave the period its name. Vedas recorded not only the religion of the Vedic people, but also details of their lives that gave us a look at their political, social and economic pattern. The Rig Veda, the oldest literary creation not only in India, but in the entire Indo-European literature too, talks of a simple socio-economic, political set-up and religious life.*

### Origin

- The word Aryan literally means of high birth, but generally refers to language, though some use it as race.
- It is difficult to say that, all the earliest Aryans belong to one race, but their culture was more or less of same type.
- The Boghazkoi inscriptions dated to 1400 BC gives the information of peace treaty between the Hittites and the Mittanis rulers of the Hittani, in which the names of the Vedic Gods – Indra, Mitra, Nasatya and Varuna are mentioned.

### Reasons Behind Rapid Expansion of the Aryans

- Chariot driven by horses.
- Weapons made of good quality bronze.
- The use of armour (*varman*).
- Use of destructive machine called as *Purcharishnu*.

#### Origin of Aryans

| Place               | Views              |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| Sapta Sindhu Region | AC Das             |
| Arctic Region       | BG Tilak           |
| Central Asia        | Max Muller         |
| German Plains       | Professor Penka    |
| Tibet Region        | Dayanand Saraswati |
| Bactria             | Rhodes             |
| Europe              | William Jones      |
| Hungary             | P Giles            |

### Early Vedic Age

(1500 - 1000 BC)

### Geography

- According to Rig Veda, Aryans had the knowledge of the Indus valley (*Saptasindhava*). *Indus* is the most mentioned river in Rig Veda. *Saraswati* (*Naditarna*) is considered as the holiest river. It is identified with Hakra Ghaggar channel in Haryana and Rajasthan, but in Rig Vedic description, it seems to be the Avestan river Harakhvati, from where the name Saraswati was transferred to India.
- Samudra referred to collection of water and not sea. They had knowledge of Himavat or the snow mountain *Dhawa* (*desert land*) and Majuvant, from which Aryans got Soma, an intoxicating drink.

### Political Organisation

- The Rig Vedic polity was a tribal polity. Kula (*family*) was the basis of both social and political organisations, starting with Kula, the hierarchy in ascending order was Grama (*village*), Vis (*clan*), Jana (*tribe*) and Rashtra (*country*).
- The tribal chief called *Rajan* was the centre of administrative machinery. The kings (*Gopajanasya*) position was hereditary. He was protector of tribe and cattle, not the ruler of any specific territory. Several tribal assemblies called *Vidhata*, *Sabha*, *Samiti* emerged. They exercised military and religious functions. Women attended them occasionally.
- Doctrine of Divinity was not associated with kingship. Only one king, Purushasukta has been described as Ardhadeva (*semi-divine*) in Rig Veda. Important Officers were Purohita, Senani, Kulpati (*head of family*), Vishpati, Brajpati, Gramini, Sparsa (*spy*), Duta (*messenger*).

### The Dasarajna War or Battle of Ten Kings

In this battle, Sudas, the son of Divodas and the Bharata, King of Tritsu family won over an alliance of ten tribes (five Aryans and five *non-Aryans*) and killed their leader Purushasukta emerged victorious and established the supremacy of the Bharatas.

The battle was fought on the bank of Parushni (*Ravi*) river. The battle broke out due to a dispute between Vashishtha (priest of Bharatas) and Vishvamitra (priest of the alliance).

### Economic Life

- Rig Vedic people were predominantly pastoral. Cow (*Gau*) was the most important animal (mentioned 176 times in Rig Veda). Gomata referred to men prosperous with many cattles. The terms of war were gavisthi or the search for cows.
- The cow seems to have been most important form of wealth.
- Cattle breeding was their main occupation. They domesticated horse, sheep, goat, dog and ass. Wild animals known were lion, elephant and bear.
- Agriculture was secondary occupation. Yava (*barley*) has been mentioned in Rig Veda. Shifting agriculture was practiced.
- Panis formed the great trading class. They are condemned in several texts for their greed and hard heartedness.
- Ayas (copper and bronze) was the common metal in use and metal smelters were called *Karmar*. There were two Ayas: Shyam Ayas and Krishna Ayas. Nishkas, Hiranyapindas and Manas were used as recognised pieces of weights and value.
- Predominant pottery type was Ochre Coloured Pottery (OCP), though black and red ware types were known to them.
- Taxation system was not developed and *Bali* was a form of voluntary contribution to the king.

### Society

- Tribal society with kingship as the basis of social structure. Man was identified with his tribe called as *Jana*. Jana was divided into Vis (*group of villages*) under Vishpati i.e. Vis into Grama (*village*) under Gramani and Gramsa into Kulas (family) headed by Kulapa.
- The tribal society was broadly divided into priests, warriors and the people. *Shudra* is first mentioned in tenth books (*latest addition*) of Rig Veda. The Non-Aryans consisted of *Dasyus* and *Dasas*. Slavery was rampant at that time. No evidence for child marriage.

### Position of Women

- Rig Vedic society was patriarchal, so the birth of daughters was not desired. But once born, they were treated with kindness. Child marriage was not practiced. Women can choose their husband. Monogamy and Niyoga (a variant of widow re-marriage) was practiced. Some indications of polyandry have been found. Women participated in religious ceremonies and tribal assemblies.

### Religion

- Aryans were nature worshippers. Personification of the forces of nature. Vedic religion was Henotheism or Kathenotheism. Predominance of male God. Very few Goddesses find mention. Aim of worship was material gains. Cult of domestic hearth was prevalent. Sacrifice was the pivot of Vedic religion.

### Rig Vedic God

- The most important divinity in the Rig Veda is Indra, who is called *Purandara* or *Breaker of Forts*. Indra played the role of a warlord, leading the Aryan soldiers to victory against the demons.
- He is considered to be the rain God and though to be responsible for causing rainfall. The second position held by Agni (fire God).

### Rivers Mentioned in the Rig Veda

| Rig Vedic Names | Modern Names |
|-----------------|--------------|
| Sindhush        | Indus        |
| Vitasta         | Jhelum       |
| Askini          | Chenab       |
| Parushni        | Ravi         |
| Vipasa          | Beas         |
| Shatudri        | Sutlej       |
| Gomal           | Gomati       |
| Krumu           | Kurram       |
| Drishadvati     | Ghaggar      |
| Suvasthu        | Swat         |
| Kubha           | Kabul        |
| Naditarna       | Saraswati    |
| Sadanira        | Gandak       |

### Later Vedic Period (1000 - 600 BC)

#### Geography

- Aryans occupied upper gangetic Doab.
- In this period, the Aryans moved into the Eastern areas as is evident from the story of Videha Madhava in Satpath Brahmin, where he moved Eastward Videha.
- The later Vedas gives three broad divisions of India viz, Aryavarta (Northern India), Madhyadesa (Central India) and Dakshina Patha (Southern India).

## Political Organisation

- King became more powerful with the formation of bigger kingdoms called ***Janapadas***. His authority acquired territorial connotation. Popular assemblies lost power, importance and were now dominated by nobles and Brahmanas.
- Rig Veda and Atharva Veda refers to election of the 'Rajan' through peoples approval. Taittiriya Brahmana gives the 'Theory of Divine' origin of kingship.

## Five types of State System

- |   |        |
|---|--------|
| 1. Rajya ( <i>Central Kingdom</i> )     | Raja   |
| 2. Bhojya ( <i>Southern Kingdom</i> )   | Bhoja  |
| 3. Swarajya ( <i>Western Kingdom</i> )  | Svarat |
| 4. Vairajya ( <i>Northern Kingdom</i> ) | Virat  |
| 5. Samrajya ( <i>Eastern Kingdom</i> )  | Samrat |
- The number of central officers increased, but a structural bureaucracy did not come into being. King did not possess a standing army.

## Important Ratnins and Other Important Officials

| Ratnins     | Responsibilities            |
|-------------|-----------------------------|
| Purohita    | Priest                      |
| Senani      | Commander-in-Chief          |
| Vrajapati   | Head of the pasture land    |
| Spasas      | Spies-cum-messengers        |
| Bhagaduga   | Tax collector               |
| Sangrahitri | Treasurer                   |
| Gramani     | Head of the village         |
| Kulapati    | Head of the family          |
| Mahishi     | Chief queen                 |
| Takshan     | Carpenter                   |
| Duta        | Messenger                   |
| Suta        | Charioteer                  |
| Kshatriya   | Chamberlain                 |
| Akshavapa   | Accountant                  |
| Palagala    | Messenger                   |
| Sthapati    | Chief Judge                 |
| Govikartana | Keeper of games and forests |

## Economic Life

- The shift towards Gangetic valley with the use of iron and fire made possible the growth of agriculture. Pastoralism was no longer the main subsistence activity of the people, though cattle rearing was also practiced.
- Satapatha Brahmana describes the various stages of agriculture such as ploughing, sowing, reaping and threshing. Both kharif and rabi crops were grown.
- Rice (*Vrihi*) and wheat (*Godhuma*) become the chief crops of the later Vedic Aryans, though they continued to produce barley (*Yava*).

- Increased importance of land triggered, development of urban life, new class of iron smiths, chariot makers and shipbuilders appeared. Emergence of painted Grey ware culture.
- The later Vedic period witnessed the coming up of 'Purushasukta Theory'.
- Trading activities were undertaken and coins were used. Satamana and Krishnala, besides, Nishkas came to be used as units of value.

## Purushasukta Theory

Purushasukta is a late hymn of X mandal of Rig Veda. It says that four persons originated from the body of the Purusha or the Primeval creator.

|                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| Brahmana — Mouth | Kshatriya — Arms |
| Vaishya — Thighs | Shudra — Feet    |

## Concept of Ashramas

- It is mentioned for the first time in Aitareya Brahmana.
- Meant mainly for regulating the life of the male member of the higher caste. *It consists of four stages:*
  - (i) Brahmacharya (*Student life*)
  - (ii) Grihastha (*House holder*)
  - (iii) Vanaprastha (*Partial retirement*)
  - (iv) Sanyasin (*Complete retirement*)
- Taxation System** was still not completely developed. Bali, Bhaga (oldest tax) and Shulka were the main taxes.
  - **Bali** Customary contribution
  - **Bhaga** 1/6 to 1/2 of the produce
  - **Shulka** Additional tax

## Painted Grey Ware (PGW) Culture

The PGW pottery is wheel made, out of well levigated clay and has a thin core. It has a smooth surface and is grey to ash-grey in colour. The pottery is painted in black. It is also painted sometimes in deep chocolate colour on outer and inner surfaces. The PGW has 42 designs, bowls and dishes being the most common type.

## Society

- The society came to be divided into four Varnas called the ***Brahmanas, Kshatriyas, Vaishyas*** and ***Shudras***. Brahmanas emerged as the most powerful class, Vaishyas were the tribute payers. First reference is given in Purushasukta.
- The upper three Varnas were entitled to Upanayana or investiture with the sacred thread, but Shudras were deprived of it and were also not allowed to recite the Gayatri Mantra.
- The Institution of Gotra was established and no marriage could take place in same Gotra. The concept of Gotra was institutionalised.

## Position of Women

- Degradation of women in this period. The status of women declined, but the right to education was not denied. They were deprived of Upanayana and religious ceremonies and from attending assemblies.

### Aitareya Brahmana

- Daughter is the source of misery, but son is the protector of family.

### Maitrayani Samhita

- There are three evils : liquor, dice and women.

### Brihadaranyaka Upanishad

- Yajnavalkya-Gargi dialogue proves that some women got higher education.

## Religion

- Rise of Vishnu alongside Rudra new Gods (Vishnu, Rudra, Prajapati etc) came into prominence. Rig Vedic Gods (Indra, Varuna etc) lost prominence. Sacrifices became more elaborate. Increase in the prestige and importance of priestly class. Emergence of new philosophical concepts.

## Sacrifices Performed in Later Vedic Period

- Rajasuya Consecration Ceremony** This conferred supreme power on the king. The Rajasuya sacrifice consists of five major ritual or ceremonies. Ashwamedha horse sacrifice which was meant to establish kings supremacy over his neighbours. The Aitareya and Satapatha Brahmana mention the names of some monarchs, who performed the sacrifice.
- Ratna animasi Ceremony** The king had to approach dignitaries who lived in permanent dwellings. Vajapeya chariot race which was meant to re-establish his supremacy over his own people within the kingdom.

## Gods Worshipped During Vedic Age

|            |  |
|------------|--|
| Indra      | Also known as <i>Purandhara</i> ( <i>Breaker of Forts</i> ). Plays the role of warlord and also considered as rain God and also a warrior and a king. His white elephant is <i>Airavata</i> .    |
| Agni       | Known as fire God. Acted as an intermediary between Gods and men.  |
| Varuna     | Personified water was supposed to uphold the Rita or natural order. Called the world sovereign or lord of human morality.  |
| Pushan     | Protector of cattle in early Vedic period, now became the God of Shudras.  |
| Soma       | God of plants, third most important deity in the Rig Veda on the basis of number of hymns.   |
| Prajapati  | The creator God. Supreme position during later Vedic Age.  |
| Surya      | Sun God who was worshipped in five forms: Surya, Savitri ( <i>God of Light</i> ), Mitra, Pushan ( <i>God of Marriage</i> ), Vishnu (one who covered Earth in three steps i.e. <i>Upakrama</i> ). |
| Maruts     | Personify the storm.   |
| Aditi      | Goddess of eternity.   |
| Arnayani   | Goddess of forest.   |
| Usha       | Goddess of dawn.   |
| Sarma      | Messenger of Gods.   |
| Vastospati | God of settlements.  |

## Forms of Marriage

- The eight forms of marriages (listed below in the descending order of merit), as provided by the Smritis were :*

|                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| (i) Brahma      | Marriage in the same class with proper dowry.  |
| (ii) Daiva      | Daughter given by the householder to the sacrificial priest as part of his fees.   |
| (iii) Arsa      | Bridegroom presents a cow and a bull to the parents of the girl in this form of marriage.  |
| (iv) Prajapati  | Girl married without dowry.  |
| (v) Gandharva   | Marriage of a willing man and women often clandestine.   |
| (vi) Asura      | Marriage by purchasing the girl from her custodian.  |
| (vii) Rakshasa  | Marriage by capturing the girl.  |
| (viii) Paisacha | (Marriage in an inebriated state)<br>Marriage by abducting the girl when she is asleep, drunk, mentally perturbed i.e. not in her full senses. |

*Marriages were of two types on the basis of Varna System:*

- Anuloma Marriage** In which the wife is of lower caste. It was permitted, but not encouraged.
- Pratiloma Marriage** In which the husband is of lower caste, it was not sanctioned.

## Various Samskaras and Rites

- The samskaras or sacraments are believed to reform and sanctify the person for whom they are performed. The first systematic attempt at describing the Samskaras is found in Grihya Sutras.

### The Sixteen Important Samskaras

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| Garbhadhana    | Ceremony for conception.  |
| Punsavana      | To secure the birth of male child.                                    |
| Simantonnayana | Parting the hair.   |
| Jatakarma      | Natal rites (ceremony for new born child).                            |
| Namakaran      | Ceremony for naming the child.  |
| Nishkramana    | First outing (for showing Sun).                                       |
| Annaprasana    | First feeding with boiled rice in the 6th month.                      |
| Chudakarana    | Tonsure (arrangement of the hair tuft).                               |
| Karnavedha     | Piercing the ear lobes.   |
| Upanayana      | Learning the alphabet.  |
| Vidyarambha    | Holy thread ceremony.   |
| Samavartana    | Graduation (ceremony on returning home after completing studentship). |

|             |                           |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| Keshanta    | Cutting the hair.         |
| Antyeshti   | Funeral.                  |
| Vivaha      | Marriage.                 |
| Praishartha | First study of the Vedas. |

## Literature of Vedic Period

### The Vedas

- The term Veda is derived from the root Vid, which means to know, signifying knowledge par excellence. The Vedas are collection of hymns, prayers, charms and sacrificial formulae.
- Vedas are called *Apaurusheya* (not made by man) and Nitya (existing in all eternity).
- The Rishis to whom these books are ascribed are known as *Mantradrashta* meaning inspired saints, who received the hymns directly from the supreme creator.
- Apart from its literary significance, the Vedas throw light on the political, religious, social and economic aspects of the Vedic period.

### Rig Veda

- It consists of 1028 hymns and divided into X mandalas (books). The mandala II to VII are the oldest and known as family books composed by *Gritsamada Vishvamitra*, *Vamadeva*, *Atri*, *Bharadwaja* and *Vashistha*.
- Mandal VIII and IX belong to middle time.
- Mandal I and X are the last to be compiled.
- In IIIrd mandala, composed by *Vishvamitra*, addressed to the solar deity *Savitri*, we find the famous *Gayatri Mantra*.
- The IXth Mandala is completely devoted to the *Vedic God Soma* (*The Lord of Plants*). The X Mandala contains the famous *Purushasukta* hymn in which origin of Varna system is discussed.

### Sama Veda

- Collection of hymn taken mainly from the VIIIth and IXth mandalas of the Rig Veda and set to tune for the purpose of singing.
- Known as the *Book of Chants* and the origin of Indian music is traced to it. The hymns of Sama Veda were meant to be sung at the time of Soma sacrifice by the Udgatri priests.

### Yajur Veda

- It prescribes the rituals for performing different sacrifices. It is primarily a guide for the use of the Adhvaryu priests. This Veda is in both verse and prose. The two royal ceremonies of Rajasuya and Vajapeya are mentioned for the first time in this Veda.  
*It is divided into two parts*
  - (i) *Krishna Yajur Veda* (Black) Contains not only the hymns, but also prose commentaries.
  - (ii) *Shukla Yajur Veda* (White) Contains only hymns.

### Atharva Veda

- The Atharva Veda (book of magical formulae) contains charms and spells in verse, toward off evils and diseases. It preserves many popular cults and superstitions. It is believed to be work of non-Aryans. It contains 731 hymns.
- Indian medical science called *Ayurveda*, its origin from Atharva Veda.

### Upavedas

| Upavedas       | Subjects                  | Related to   |
|----------------|---------------------------|--------------|
| Dhanur Veda    | Archery or Warfare        | Yajur Veda   |
| Gandharva Veda | Music                     | Sama Veda    |
| Shilpa Veda    | Sculpture or Architecture | Atharva Veda |
| Ayur Veda      | Medicine or Life          | Rig Veda     |

### The Brahmanas

- They are treatise relating to prayer and sacrificial ceremony. They are elaborate commentaries on the various hymns in the Vedas.
- The Brahmanas of the Rig Veda are intended for the use of the invoking priest (*Hotri*). Shatapatha Brahmana is the lengthiest and the most important of all the Brahmanas. It throws light on the geographical shift of the Aryans towards the Eastern Gangetic Plains during the later Vedic period. The story of the prince Videgha Mathava provides clear indication towards this geographical expansion.

| Vedas        | Related Brahmanas         |
|--------------|---------------------------|
| Rig Veda     | Aitareya and Kausitaki    |
| Sama Veda    | Tandya Maha and Jaiminiya |
| Yajur Veda   | Taittiriya and Shatapatha |
| Atharva Veda | Gopatha Brahmana          |

### The Aranyakas

- Aranyaka literally means the forest and therefore, Aranyakas are also known as *forest books*. It deals with mysticism and symbolism of sacrifice and priestly philosophy.

### The Upanishads

- Upanishads literally means “Be seated at the feet of the Guru to receive the teachings”. The Upanishad imparts philosophical knowledge and spiritual learning. They are also called *Vedanta*. There are 108 Upanishads.

| Vedas        | Related Upanishads                              |
|--------------|---|
| Rig Veda     | Aitareya and Kausitaki                          |
| Sama Veda    | Chandogya and Kena                              |
| Yajur Veda   | Taittiriya, Brihadaranyaka, Katha, Swetas water |
| Atharva Veda | Mundaka, Prasna and Mandukya                    |

- Brihadaranyaka upanishad provides the first reference of the idea of rebirth. Later, the idea appears in a slightly fuller form in the Chandogya Upanishads. It is one of the oldest upanishads.

### Satyameva Jayate

Satyameva Jayate was taken from Mundaka Upanishad or Mundaka Upanishad. Satyameva Jayate is the National Motto of India and is inscribed at the bottom of the National Emblem of India in Devanagiri script. Satyameva Jayate literally means 'Truth Alone Triumphs'.

### The Vedangas

- The period after 600 BC is called **Sutra** period. Vedangas were compiled during this period.
- The Vedangas are called **Smriti** or literature handed down by tradition, because they are of human origin. *There are six Vedangas which are as follows :*

| S.No. | Vedangas  | Contents                         |
|-------|-----------|----------------------------------|
| 1.    | Shiksha   | Phonetics or Pronunciation       |
| 2.    | Kalpa     | Sacrificial ritual               |
| 3.    | Vyakarana | Grammar                          |
| 4.    | Nirukta   | Etymology (explanation of words) |
| 5.    | Chhanda   | Metrics                          |
| 6.    | Jyotisha  | Astronomy                        |

*Kalpa Sutras are divided into three classes*

- (i) **Srauta sutra** deals with the rituals of the great sacrifices of agni, soma etc. Attached to Srauta Sutra is the Sulva Sutra, the oldest book on *Indian Geometry*.
- (ii) **Grihya sutra** deals with the domestic ceremonies and sacrifices to be performed by the householder.
- (iii) **Dharma sutra** deals with the laws, manners and customs of people in general. It constitute the foundation of the Dharmashastras such as the Law of Manu.

### Puranas

- The contents of Purana seem to be of diverse material. Much as tales, anecdotes songs, ballads. The change is the mode of worship (from sacrifice to idol worship) and visual appeal of deities against worship of ideas is evident.

### Epic

- Mahabharata, written by **Ved Vyas** is older than Ramayana. Originally, Mahabharata consisted of 880 verses, then it was raised to 24000 verses. The final compilation brought the number of verses to 100000.
- Ramayana written by **Valmiki** originally consisted of 6000 verses, which was raised to 12000 and finally 24000 verses.

### Smritis

- Dharma Shastra** are the other name for **Smritis**, which are the law books written in *Sloka* form.
- The important Smritis are Manav Dharma Shastra, Vishnu Dharma Shastra, Yajnavalkya Smriti and Narad Smriti. Manav Dharma Shastra or Manusmriti is the oldest and most famous, Manu is supposed to be the first king and law giver. Later on, some minor Smritis and commentaries like the Mitakshara were compiled.

### Indian Schools of Philosophy

There are six schools of Indian philosophy known as **Shad-Darshans**, *they are as follows:*

| Darshans                 | Authors             | Years of Beginning | Original Books       | Themes   |
|--------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|----------------------|--|
| Nyaya                    | Gautama             | 6th BC             | Nyaya Sutra          | It is a logical quest for God. It tells that the material power Maya with the help of God becomes the universe.  |
| Vaisheshik               | Kanada              | 6th BC             | Vaisheshik Sutra     | It aims is to receive happiness in this life and finally ultimate liberation through the attachment of true knowledge of the divine.                             |
| Samkhya                  | Kapila              | 6th BC             | Samkhya Sutra        | It explains that the aim of Samkhya is to eliminate all kinds of physical and mental pains and to receive liberation.  |
| Yoga                     | Maharishi Patanjali | 2nd BC             | Yoga Sutra           | It has four chapters and accepts three kinds of evidences for determining the aim of life.   |
| Purva Mimansa            | Jaimini             | 4th BC             | Purva Mimansa Sutra  | It is a condensed explanation of Vedic theme and at the same time, the classification of its issues.   |
| Vedanta (Uttara Mimansa) | Maharishi Vyasa     | 4th BC             | Uttara Mimansa Sutra | It explains that Brahma Sutra is for that person who has a real deep desire to know God. True liberation could only be attained by lovingly surrendering to him. |

### Some Important Vedic Terms

|                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| Udumbara and Khadira | Wood used to make plough                    |
| Mudga                | Moong                                       |
| Masa                 | Urad  |
| Ugra and Jeevgrah    | Police officers                             |
| Kshirodan            | Rice cooked with milk                       |
| Tilodan              | Til cooked with milk                        |
| Apoop                | Cooked mixture of ghee and barley wheat     |
| Pad                  | Coin of later Vedic age                     |
| Shattantu            | Musical instruments of hundred chords       |
| Urna                 | Wool  |
| Virivranti           | Wife who did not give birth to a son        |
| Vraty Stoma Yagya    | Yagya in which a human being was sacrificed |

# Self Check

## Build Your Confidence

- 1.** Which of the following statements regarding the Vedic period is incorrect?
  - (a) The Vedic communities had established neither a taxation system nor a professional army
  - (b) The later Vedic peasants contributed to the rise of trade and towns
  - (c) In the later Vedic period, the tribal militia of the pastoral society was replaced by the peasant militia of agricultural society
  - (d) The Rig Vedic society did not have a serving order in the form of the Shudras
- 2.** What was the main issue in the Dasarajna i.e. the Battle of Ten Kings?
  - (a) Non-Aryan groups had captured the cows of the Vedic people
  - (b) Division of the waters of the Ravi
  - (c) Pani had stolen the cattle belonging to the Bharatas
  - (d) Tvastra had refused to let off the waters of Ravi
- 3.** Which of the following statements about the concept of kingship in the later Vedic period is correct?
  - (a) Kingship ceased to be elective and became hereditary
  - (b) A glamour was created around the king and in the rituals, he was sometimes also represented as a God
  - (c) Some kind of class alliance between the priests and the warriors developed
  - (d) The king was invariably a Kshatriya
- 4.** Which of the following statements about the tribal assemblies in the early Vedic period is incorrect?
  - (a) The king's authority was substantially limited by the tribal assemblies especially the Sabha and Samiti
  - (b) Sabha was a council of the elder members of the tribe perhaps women also attended it
  - (c) Samiti was a general Tribal assembly and less exclusive than Sabha
  - (d) These assemblies performed only political functions
- 5.** The tax, which the kings used to collect from the people in the Vedic period, was called
  - (a) Bali
  - (b) Vidhata
  - (c) Varman
  - (d) Kara
- 6.** Which of the following regarding the social life of the Vedic people is incorrect?
  - (a) Social divisions were based on occupations
  - (b) The members of one family could adopt different occupations
  - (c) Women slavery was known during Vedic period.
  - (d) The society was egalitarian
- 7.** The four-fold division of society is expressly mentioned in
  - (a) Yajur Veda
  - (b) Purushasukta of the Rig Veda
  - (c) Hiranyagarbha Sukta
  - (d) Satapatha Brahmana
- 8.** Which of the following statements about the Rig Vedic Aryan is incorrect?
  - (a) We have some indications of polyandry in this period
  - (b) We do not find any trace of widow re-marriage in the Rig Vedic period
  - (c) There are no examples of child marriage in this period
  - (d) The practice of levirate was known during this period
- 9.** Which of the following statements about the Vedic family is incorrect?
  - (a) The basic unit of the Aryan society was the patriarchal family
  - (b) The birth of a son was especially welcome because they were needed in wars
  - (c) The sanctity of marriage had been recognised
  - (d) Child marriage was permitted
- 10.** An inscription of 1400 BC, which describes the Vedic Gods, was found in Asia minor was
  - (a) Citacia
  - (b) Boghazkoi
  - (c) Hitti
  - (d) Euphrates
- 11.** The term 'Aryan' or 'Indo-Aryan' and 'Indo-European' primarily denotes to
  - (a) an ethnic group
  - (b) a nomadic people
  - (c) a speech group
  - (d) a superior race

[IAS 1999]
- 12.** The Battle of Ten Kings was fought on the bank of the river
  - (a) Askini
  - (b) Parushni
  - (c) Shanudrie
  - (d) Vitasta
- 13.** The 'Dharma' and 'Rita' depict a central idea of ancient Vedic Civilisation of India. Consider the following statements  
[IAS 2011]
  1. 'Dharma' was a conception of obligations and of the discharge of one's duties to oneself and to others.
  2. 'Rita' was the Fundamental Moral Law governing the functioning of the universe and all it contained.

Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?

  - (a) Only 1
  - (b) Only 2
  - (c) Both 1 and 2
  - (d) Neither 1 nor 2
- 14.** The religion of early vedic Aryans were primarily of
  - (a) bhakti
  - (b) image worship and yajnas
  - (c) worship of nature and yajnas
  - (d) worship of nature and Bhakti

[IAS 2012]



1. (b)      2. (b)      3. (c)      4. (d)      5. (a)      6. (d)      7. (b)      8. (b)      9. (d)      10. (b)  
11. (c)     12. (b)     13. (c)     14. (c)

# Chapter four

# The First Territorial States

*Mahajanapadas represent the state system that emerged in 6th century BC. The process of emergence of Mahajanapadas were initiated by certain important economic changes and the consequent socio-political developments witnessed during that period.*

## Mahajanapadas

- Mahajanapada refers to ancient Indian kingdoms that existed between the 3rd and 6th centuries BCE. These kingdoms and republics had evolved and flourished in a belt stretching from Gandhara in the North-West to Anga in the Eastern part of the Indian subcontinent and included parts of the trans-Vindhyan region, prior to the rise of Buddhism in India. The 6th century BC is often regarded as a major turning point in early Indian history.

### Literary Sources

- There were sixteen territories called *Shodasha Mahajanapadas*.
- The Buddhist text Anguttara Nikaya (a part of sutta pitaka) provides the names of 16 Mahajanapadas at the time of Buddha.
- Similarly, the Jaina text *Bhagavati Sutra* and another Buddhist text *Mahavastu* also provides such list of sixteen Mahajanapadas.

### Types of Mahajanapadas

- *Mahajanapadas were of two types:*
  - (i) **Monarchical States** Anga, Avanti, Chedi, Kashi, Kosala, Gandhara, Magadha, Matsya, Shursena, Vatsa.
  - (ii) **Non-Monarchical/Republican States** Kamboj, Kuru, Koliyas, Malla, Moriya, Shakya, Vajji, Panchal, *Licchavis*, Bhaggas, Kalamas, Videhas, Jnatrikas.

#### List of Mahajanapadas and their Capitals

| Mahajanapadas            | Capitals  | Vital Informations  |
|--------------------------|-----------|---|
| Kashi (Banaras)          | Varanasi  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• It was the most powerful Mahajanapadas.</li><li>• Famous for Cotton Textiles and market for horses.</li></ul>                                       |
| Koshala (Ayodhya)        | Shravasti | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Most popular king was Prasenjit.</li><li>• He was contemporary and friend of Buddha.</li></ul>  |
| Anga (East Bihar)        | Champa    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• It was a great centre of trade and commerce.</li><li>• In middle of 6th century BC, Anga was annexed by Magadha under Bimbisara.</li></ul>          |
| Vajji (North Bihar)      | Vaishali  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Vajjis represented a confederacy of eight clans of whom Videhas were the most well known.</li><li>• Videhas had their capital at Mithila.</li></ul> |
| Malla (Gorakhpur Region) | Pavapuri  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Buddha died in the vicinity of Kushinagara. Magadha annexed it after Buddha's death.</li></ul>  |

| Mahajanapadas                      | Capitals         | Vital Informations  |
|------------------------------------|------------------|---|
| Chedi                              | Suktimati        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Chedi territory corresponds to the Eastern parts of modern Bundelkhand. A branch of chedis founded a royal dynasty in the kingdom of Kalinga.</li> </ul>   |
| Vatsa                              | Kausambi         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Situated around the region of Allahabad.</li> <li>Most powerful king was Udayana.</li> </ul>   |
| Kurus (Meerut-Delhi Region)        | Hastinapur       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>At Buddha's time Kuru country was ruled by a titular chieftain named Korayya.</li> </ul>   |
| Panchala                           | Kampilya         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Located in Rohilkhand and parts of central Doab (Western UP).</li> <li>Two branches of the panchalas i.e. the Northern Panchala at Ahichchtra and Southern Panchala at Kampilya.</li> </ul>  |
| Matsya (Jaipur)                    | Viratnagara      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Located in the region of Rajasthan.</li> <li>King Sujata ruled over both the chedis and Matsyas.</li> </ul>  |
| Surasena                           | Mathura          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It had a republican form of government.</li> <li>Avantiputra, the king of Surasena was the first among the chief disciples of Buddha.</li> </ul>   |
| Ashmaka                            | Potana or Potali | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It was located on the banks of river Godavari.</li> <li>It was the Southern most Mahajanapadas ruled by the Ikshvaku Kshatriyas.</li> </ul>  |
| Avanti                             | Mahishmati       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Located around the region of Ujjain district in Madhya Pradesh.</li> <li>It was divided into two parts. The Northern part had its capital at Ujjain and the Southern part at Mahishmati.</li> <li>Chanda Pradyota was the most powerful king of Avanti.</li> </ul> |
| Gandhara (Peshawar and Rawalpindi) | Taxila           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Famous for education and learning tradition in Ancient India.</li> <li>Gandhari was the princess of this state.</li> <li>Panini and Kautilya are the world renowned products of Taxila University.</li> </ul>  |
| Kamboja (North-East kingdom)       | Rajapura         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Kautilya's Arthashastra and Ashoka's Edict No. XIII attest that the Kambojas followed republican Constitution.</li> </ul>  |
| Magadha                            | Giriv-raja       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This Mahajanapadas started the policy of imperialism.</li> <li>The founders of the kingdom were Jarasandha and Brihadratha, however real founders were Bimbisara and Ajatashatru.</li> </ul>   |

## Rise of Magadhan Empire

- Out of the sixteen Mahajanapadas four were very powerful. They were Magadha, Vatsa, Avanti and Koshala.
- The period from 4th century to 6th century BC saw the struggle for supremacy among these four Mahajanapadas.
- Ultimately, Magadha emerged as the most powerful and prosperous kingdom in North India. The founder of Magadha was Jarasandha and Brihadratha. But the growth started under the Haryanka, expansion took place under the Shishunaga and Nanda reached its zenith under the Mauryas.

## Haryanka Dynasty

- The earliest capital of Magadha was at Rajgir, which was called as *Girivraja* at that time. According to a Chinese pilgrim, Bimbisara founded the city of Rajagriha at the foot of the hills lying North of Girivraja.

### Bimbisara (Seniya or Sreniya) (554-492 BC)

- He was contemporary to the Buddha and first king to have a standing army. He defeated Anga king Brahmadutta and strengthened his position by matrimonial alliances.

- His three wives belonged to royal family of Koshala *Mahakosaladevi* (sister of *Prasenjit*), Licchavi (*Chellana*) and Madra (Khema) clan of Punjab. He sent his personal physician Jivak (*son of Salavati*) to his rival *Chandapradyota Mahasena* of Ujjain to cure him of jaundice.
- The Gandhara ruler of Taxila Pukkusati, sent an embassy to Bimbisara.

### Ajatashatru (492-460 BC)

- He was the son of Chellana and Bimbisara, he occupied throne by killing his father. He adopted an aggressive policy of expansion. He defeated his maternal uncle *Prasenjit*, king of Kosala and married his daughter *Vajjira*.
- He destroyed *Vaishali* (capital of Licchavis) after protracted war of 16 years by sowing the seeds of discord amongst the people of Vaishali. Buddha died during his reign and he patronised first Buddhist Council.
- Sunidha* and *Vatsakar* Ajatashatru's diplomatic ministers.
- Mahashilakantaka* A war engine which catapulted big stones.

- **Rathamusala** A kind of Chariot with a mace, helped him to defeat Licchavis.

### **Udayain (460-444 BC)**

- Son and successor of Ajatashatru, he built the fort upon the confluence of the Ganga and the Son rivers at Pataliputra (Patna), thus, transferred the capital from Rajagriha to Pataliputra. He was succeeded by weak rulers Anuruddha, Munda and Naga-Dasak.

### **Shishunaga Dynasty (412-344 BC)**

- **Shishunaga** was the Minister of Naga-Dasak and was elected by the people. He destroyed the Pradyota dynasty of Avanti. He temporarily shifted the capital to **Vaishali**.
- **Kalasoka (Kakavarin)** succeeded Shishunaga. He transferred the capital from Vaishali to Pataliputra and convened the 2nd Buddhist Council in Vaishali (383 BC).

### **Nanda Dynasty (344-323 BC)**

- **Mahapadma Nanda**, the great conqueror and founder of the dynasty was also known as **Ekarat, Eka-chchhatra** (sovereign ruler), **Sarvakshatrantaka or Ugrasena** (possessor of huge army). He conquered Koshala and Kalinga (from here he brought an image of the Jina as victory trophy). It is considered to be the first non-Kshatriya dynasty.
- **Dhanananda** was the last Nanda ruler. Alexander invaded North-Western India during his reign (326 BC), but the huge army of Dhanananda deterred Alexander from advancing towards Gangetic valley. He is probably referred as Agrammes or Xandrames in the Greek texts.
- Chandragupta Maurya assisted by Kautilya overthrew Dhanananda to establish Mauryan dynasty.

### **Causes for the Rise of Magadha**

- Advantageous geographical location with both Rajgir and Pataliputra situated at strategic locations. Abundance of natural resources, such as iron, enabled Magadhan rulers to equip with effective weapons. The alluvial soil of the Gangetic plains and sufficient rainfall were very conducive for agriculture produces.
- Rise of town and use of metallic money boosted trade and commerce. The princes could levy tolls and accumulate wealth to pay and maintain their army. Use of elephants on a large-scale in wars with its proximity to ancient Kalinga.

- Unorthodox character of Magadhan society. Contribution of several enterprising and ambitious rulers and their policies.

### **Pre-Mauryan Economic System**

- In the pre-Mauryan period, thus, we notice for the first time, an advanced food-producing economy spread over middle Gangetic plains and the beginning of urban economy in this area e.g. Cattle rearing was no longer the primary occupation and was replaced by agriculture. Rice was the staple cereal produced in Eastern UP and Bihar in this period.
- **Iron** played a crucial role in opening the rainfed forests to clearance, cultivation and settlement.
- **Rural Economy** A strong rural base was necessary for the beginning of urbanisation and crafts as taxes and tributes were required in sufficient measure.
- This period saw the second urbanisation in India, towns had come into existence as centres of industry and trade. The use of burnt bricks and ring wells appeared in the middle of the NBPW phase, in the 3rd century BC.

#### **Economic Terminology**

| Terms                          | Meanings                   |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Vrihi and Sali                 | New variants of rice.      |
| Karisa, Nivartan and Kulyavapa | Units of land measurement. |
| Sita state lands; Sarthak      | Caravans; sresti bankers.  |
| Shali                          | Transplantation.           |
| Gahapatis                      | Peasant-proprietors.       |

- Specialised craftsmen tended to form guilds because it facilitated carriage of raw materials and the distribution of finished articles. We hear of 18 guilds (sreni) of artisans. The guild at this stage was not the highly developed mercantile system, which it was to become later. Each guild inhabited a particular section of the town.
- The introduction of a Monetary System considerably facilitated trade. Coins made of metal appear first in the age of Gautama Buddha. The earliest hoards have been found in Eastern UP and Magadha, although some have been found at Taxila. Most probably, they were referred as Nishka and Satamana.
- **Anathapindaka** was a sresthi of Shravasti who denoted Jetavana Vihara to the Buddha. Menduka was another rich sresthi of Rajagriha. Pre-Mauryan Social System
- The tribal community had been clearly divided into four **Varnas: Brahmanas, Kshatriyas, Vaishyas and Shudras**.
- The **Dharmasutras** laid down the duties of each of the four Varnas and the civil and criminal law came to be based on the Varna division. They condemned Vaishyas for lending money.
- All kinds of disabilities were imposed on the Shudras. They were deprived of religious and legal rights and relegated to the lowest position in society.
- Patriarchal tendencies became dominant. Women were looked down in comparison to men. They were to remain under the

tutelage of male members and were not entitled to education and Upanayana ceremony.

## Foreign Invasions

### Persian Invasion

- **Cyrus** (558-530 BC) of Persia was the first conqueror who penetrated well into India. He destroyed the city of Capisa (North of Kabul).
- **Herodotus**, the Greek historian, also known as the *Father of History* tells us that in 516 BC *Darius I* (552-486 BC), grandson of Cyrus, sent a naval expedition to explore the valley of the Sindh river and annexed the part of Punjab and Sind.
- The Indian soldiers were part of the Archaemenian army that conquered Greece in the time of Persian ruler Xerxes I (465-456 BC) successor of Darius I. Darius III also enlisted Indian soldiers and sent them to fight Alexander.

### Effects of Persian Invasion

- Introduction of the Aramaic form of writing, which later developed into the Kharosthi alphabet.
- Promotion to Indo-Iranian trade.

- Fusion of Iranian/Persian features in the Mauryan art.
- Impact of Buddhism on the Zoroastrian religion of ancient Persia.

## Greek Invasion

- After the conquest of the Persian Empire, Alexander marched to India through the Khyber Pass in 326 BC.
- He constructed a bridge on the Indus river at behind about 24 km.
- After crossing the Indus, Alexander proceeded towards Taxila. The King of Taxila, Ambhi, readily submitted and offered to help Alexander and recognised him as his sovereign.
- The most powerful among the North-Western Indians was the ruler of kingdom between the Hydaspes (*Jhelum*) and the Acesines (*Chenab*) whom the Greeks call Porus. Porus fought bravely, but was defeated and was led a captive before Alexander.
- Alexander's advance was arrested on the bank of the Beas, for his soldiers mutinied and refused to proceed further after the Battle of Vitasta and Jhelum.
- His dream of an Eastern Empire remained unfulfilled. The king who had never known defeat at the hands of his enemies had to accept defeat from his own men. Alexander remained in India for about 19 months.
- While retreat he divided the whole territory from the Indus to the Beas into three provinces and put them under the overall charge of three Greek Governors.

## Effects of Greek Invasion

- The Greek invasion of India opened the trade route between North-West India and Western Asia. Europe came into contact.
- The invasion led to the establishment of more Greek settlements in this area.
- Opening up of four distinct routes between India and Greek by land and sea paving way for increased trade and cultural contacts between the two regions.
- Indians learnt from the Greek in the field of astronomy, coinage, architecture and sculpture (*Gandhara School of Sculpture*).
- Maurya empire had seen something of the working of the military machine of Alexander and acquired some knowledge which helped him in destroying the power of the Nandas.

# Self Check

## Build Your Confidence

1. Which one of the following is not true about Janapada?

- (a) Its literal meaning is the place where people place their feet
- (b) A Janapada was essentially an agricultural settlement
- (c) A Janapada were often named after the dominant Kshatriya class
- (d) The establishment of Janapadas show that trade had become the most important factor in the contemporary life

2. With reference to the invaders is ancient India, which one of the following is correct chronological order?

[IAS 2006]

- (a) Greeks, Sakas, Kushans (b) Greeks, Kushans, Sakas
- (c) Sakas, Greeks, Kushans (d) Sakas, Kushans, Greeks

3. Consider the following statements to Magadha emerged as the most important state in India around 2600 years ago.

1. Emergence of two major faiths Buddhism and Jainism in Magadha.
2. The efficient rulers of Magadha who increased its territory.
3. Geographical setting and the fertile plain.
4. Abundance of elephants in the region.

Which of the statement(s) given above are correct?

- (a) 1, 2 and 3 (b) 2, 3 and 4 (c) 1, 3 and 4 (d) All of these

4. Assertion (A) Flourishing of the urban city states in 6th century BC in India was a resultant to the application of iron.

Reason (R) Iron was easily imported from Europe and Central Asia, where it helped in the flows of the great Greek Roman civilisation and they had good commercial contacts with Indian monarchs.

Codes

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A
- (b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A
- (c) A is true, but R is false
- (d) A is false, but R is true

5. Which of the following kingdoms did not appear in the later Vedic North India?

- (a) Kuru Panchala (b) Kosala
- (c) Kashi (d) Anga

6. Consider the following statements

1. The last Mauryan ruler, Brihadratha was assassinated by his commander in chief, Pushyamitra Sunga.
2. The last Sunga King, Devabhuti was assassinated by his Brahmana Minister Vasudeva Kanya who usurped the throne.
3. The last ruler of Kanya dynasty was deposed by the Andhras.

Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?

- (a) Only 1 (b) Only 2 (c) Only 3 (d) All of these



1. (d)  
11. (d)

2. (a)  
12. (a)

3. (b)  
13. (c)

4. (c)

5. (d)

6. (d)

7. (c)

8. (c)

9. (c)

10. (c)

7. Which of the following statements about trade regulations in the Mauryan period is not correct?

- (a) There was general control over process and profits
- (b) The sale of merchandies was strictly supervised by the state
- (c) The general tax levied on merchandise was fixed at one tenth
- (d) The state directly employed one of artisans, such as armourers, shipbuilders etc

8. Which of the following provides the correct sequence of dynasties ruling at Magadha?

- (a) Brihadratha, Harayanka, Shishunaga, Nanda
- (b) Harayanka, Brihadratha, Shishunaga, Nanda
- (c) Harayanka, Shishunaga, Nanda, Brihadratha
- (d) Brihadratha, Shishunaga, Harayanka, Nanda

9. Which of the following kings of Magadha transferred the capital from Girivraja to Pataliputra permanently?

- (a) Ajatshatru (b) Shishunaga
- (c) Kalashoka (d) None of the above

10. Which of the following factors was behind Magadhan supremacy?

- (a) Geographical position—Ganga, Gandak and Ghaghra in North and son in South and capital city Rajgraha fortified with five hills
- (b) Fertile soil and abundance of Iron ore
- (c) Both 'a' and 'b'
- (d) None of the above

11. Consider the following kings

1. Ajatshatru
2. Bimbisara
3. Prasenjit

Which of these was/were the contemporary/contemporaries of Gautam Buddha?

[IAS 2003]

- (a) Only 1 (b) 2 and 3
- (c) 1 and 3 (d) All of these

12. Which of the following observations of Megasthenes about Mauryan society are true?

1. Growing practice of polygamy.
2. Employment of women as palace guards.
3. Theft was a rare occurrence.
4. Slavery was absent in Indian society.

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

- (a) 1, 2 and 3 (b) 1, 2 and 4
- (c) 2, 3 and 4 (d) All of these

13. Who among the following is considered to be the founder of the Mahajanapada of Magadha?

- (a) Brahmadutta (b) Palaka
- (c) Jarasandha (c) Mahasena

# Chapter five

## Religious Movements of Mahajanapada Age

*The changing features of social and economic life in the 6th century BC were closely linked with changes in religion and philosophical speculation. The conflict between the established orthodoxy and the aspirations of the newly rising groups must have intensified this process.*

*Numerous religious sects arose in the middle Gangetic basin in the 6th century BC.*

### Jainism

- The origin of Jainism is shrouded in mystery. It is believed that the 24 Tirthankaras were responsible for the development and origin of this religion, but the first twenty two are of doubtful historicity contemporary economic and political development helped the emergence of new social groups which acquired considerable economic power. As Jainism did not give much importance to the notion of birth for social status they attracted the Vaisyas to their fold.
- Rishabhdev was the first Tirthankara. Vishnu Purana and Bhagwat Purana mention Rishabhdev as the incarnation of Narayana.

### Personal History of Mahavira

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| Real Names     | Vardhamanas                                       |
| Titles         | Mahavira, Nayaputa, Nirgrantha                    |
| Birth          | 540 BC  |
| Place of Birth | Kundagrama in Vaishali                            |
| Father's Name  | Siddhartha  |
| Mother's Name  | Trishala (A Licchavi Princess, Sister of Chetaka) |
| Wife           | Yashoda   |
| Class          | Kshatriya   |
| Clan           | Nyaya (Jnatrika)                                  |
| Enlightenment  | Jimbikagrama / Rijupalika (river)                 |
| Companion      | Gosala Makkhaliputta                              |
| Death          | 468 BC, Pavapuri near Rajgriha                    |

### Philosophy of Jainism

- It rejected the authority of the vedas and the vedic rituals. According to them, world was not created, maintained and destroyed by a personal God, but by a universal law. Thus, it didn't believe in the existence of God. It believed in **Karma** and the transmigration of soul. It advocated the path of non-violence.
- *Other important aspects of the philosophy of Jainism are as follows:*
  - Anekantavada Objects of knowledge is of infinite characteristics.
  - Nayavada An individual understands an object of knowledge through a particular point of view.
  - Saptabhanginaya Seven point of view to understand an object of knowledge.
  - Syadvada Understanding of an object of knowledge is conditional.

### Doctrines of Jainism

- Ahimsa (*Non-violence*)
- Satya (*Truthfulness*)
- Asteya (*Non-stealing*)
- Brahmacarya (*Celibacy*)
- Aparigraha (*Non-possession of property*)

### Five Vows or Principles

- *The householder had to observe the following five vows:*
  - (i) Non-injury
  - (ii) Non-stealing
  - (iii) Speaking the truth
  - (iv) Non-possession
  - (v) Non-adultery
- The first four principles were given by Parshvanath while the 5th one was added by Lord Mahavira.

### Three Jewels or Three Ways to Attain Kaivalya

- Right knowledge (Samyak Gyan) : Understanding of religious principles.
- Right faith (Samyak Vishwas) : Belief in Jainas.
- Right action (Samyak Karma) : Observance of 5 vows.

### Jaina Councils

| Councils    | Periods      | Places      | Heads                   | Consequences   |
|-------------|--------------|-------------|-------------------------|--|
| 1st Council | About 300 BC | Pataliputra | Sthulabahu              | Compilation of 12 Angas to replace the last 14 Purvas. |
| 2nd Council | AD 512       | Vallabhi    | Devaradhi Kshamasramana | Final compilation of 12 Angas and 12 Upangas.          |

### Jain's Architecture

- The image of a Tirthankara from Lohaonipur (Patna) dating back to the Mauryan period is one of the earliest Jaina figures.
- Caves** Hathigumpha; Baghagumpha; Udaygiri and Khandagiri (Orissa).
- Dilwara Temples at Mount Abu** (Rajasthan), Vimala Vasahi and Tejapala temples.
- Girnar and Palitana temples (Gujarat).
- Pavapuri and Rajagriha temple (Bihar).
- Statue of Gomateshwara or Bahubali; at Shravanabelagola in Mysore (Karnataka).
- The jainas composed the earliest important works in Apabhramsa and its first grammar. They contributed to the growth of regional languages such as Tamil, Telgu, Hindi, Kannada and Rajasthani.

### Royal Patrons

- South India** Kadamb and Ganga dynasty; Amogvarsha (Rashtrakuta dynasty); Siddharaj Jai Sing and Kumar Pala (Chalukya or Solanki) the last great patrons of Jainism.
- North India** Bimbisar, Ajatshatru and Udayin (*Haryanka*); Nandas; Chandragupta Maurya Bindusara and Samprati (*Mauryan*); Pradyota (*Avanti*); Udayan (*Sindhu-Sauvira*); Kharavela (*Kalinga*).

### Sects of Jainism

- After the death of Mahavira, during the reign of Chandragupta Maurya, a severe famine led to a great exodus of Jain monk from Ganga valley to the Deccan. This migration led to great Schism in Jainism.
- Digambaras** Followers of Bhadrabahu who accompanied him to South. He insisted on the retention of the rule of nudity.
- Svetambaras** *Sthulabhadra*, the leader of the monk who remained in North and allowed his followers to wear white garments.

### Decline of Jainism

Various factors were responsible for the decline of Jainism in India. The Jainas took the Concept of Ahimsa too far. They advised that one should not take medicine, when one fall sick, because the medicine killed germs. Such practices could not become popular with the common man. Moreover, there was no patronage from later kings.

### Important Terms (Related with Jainism)

**Posadha** Fasting by a Jaina members on full Moon and new Moon day.

**Avasarpini** It is the descending order of the six periods of the Jaina cosmic cycle.

**Theravali** The second section of the Jaina Kalpasutra containing a list of schools (anonas) and their heads.

**Ajnanavada** The Jaina doctrine of agnosticism or scepticism. The Jain texts mention 67 kinds of Ajnanavada.

**Mahavrata** Five principles observed by Jain monks.

**Anuvratas** These are 5 principles, which are less rigorous in nature and are to be followed by a follower of Jainism.

**Utsarpini** The ascending order of Jaina cosmic cycle.

**Susama-Susama** The first cosmic cycle of Jainism, people were considered to be very happy and virtuous.

**Dushama-Dushama** Sixth and the last period of Jaina cosmic cycle a very wretched period.

**Trisastisalaka Purushacharita** The longest poem composed by Jaina scholar Hemachandra deals with the deeds of 63 Enlightened men including 24 Tirthankaras.

### Jaina Councils

*There were two jaina councils are as follows:*

- The First Jaina Council was held at Pataliputra under Sthulabahu, around 300 BC.
- The second Jaina Council was held at Vallabhi (Gujarat) in AD 512 and it was presided by Devaradhi Kshamasramana.

### List of 24 Tirthankaras

| S.No. | Names                     | Symbols      |
|-------|---------------------------|--------------|
| 1.    | Rishabha(Adinath)         | Bull         |
| 2.    | Ajitnath                  | Elephant     |
| 3.    | Sambhav Nath              | Horse        |
| 4.    | Abhinandan Nath           | Monkey       |
| 5.    | Sumatinath                | Curlew       |
| 6.    | Padmaprabha               | Red Lotus    |
| 7.    | Suparshvanath             | Svastika     |
| 8.    | Chandra Prabha            | Crescent     |
| 9.    | Pushpadanta (Suvidhinath) | Crocodile    |
| 10.   | Shitalnath                | Wishing Tree |
| 11.   | Shreyamsanath             | Rhinoceros   |

| S.No. | Names                 | Symbols       |
|-------|-----------------------|---------------|
| 12.   | Vasupujya             | Buffalo       |
| 13.   | Vimalnath             | Boar (Shukar) |
| 14.   | Anantanath            | Falcon (Baaj) |
| 15.   | Dharmanath            | Vajardanda    |
| 16.   | Shantinath            | Deer          |
| 17.   | Kunthunath            | He-goat       |
| 18.   | Aranath               | Fish          |
| 19.   | Malinath              | Water Pot     |
| 20.   | Munisuvrata           | Tortoise      |
| 21.   | Naminath              | Blue Lotus    |
| 22.   | Aristnemi             | Conch         |
| 23.   | Parshvanath           | Serpent       |
| 24.   | Mahavira (Vardhamana) | Lion          |

## Buddhism

- Buddhism as a religion and philosophy encompasses a variety of traditions, beliefs and practices largely based on teachings of Buddha.

### Brief History of Gautama Buddha

|               |   |
|---------------|---|
| Real Name     | Siddhartha  |
| Titles        | Buddha, Shakya Muni                                 |
| Birth         | 563 BC Lumbini in Kapil Vastu                       |
| Father's name | Shuddhodhana  |
| Mother's name | Mahamaya  |
| Foster mother | Mahaprajapati Gautami                               |
| Wife          | Yasodhara   |
| Enlightenment | Uruvela, under the Pipal tree (known as Bodhi tree) |
| Death         | 483 BC, Kushinagar                                  |

## Philosophy of Buddhism

- The Doctrine of Karma is the essential part of the teachings of Buddha. It emphasised on the moral life of an individual. It neither accepted nor rejected the existence of God. It rejected the vedas and vedic rituals and even the caste system.

The philosophy advocated the observance of middle path. It didn't believe in the permanence of soul. It also emphasised on ahimsa.

### Symbols Representing Events of Buddha's Life

| Events   | Symbols        |
|--|----------------|
| Birth  | Lotus and Bull |
| Renunciation ( <i>Mahabhiniskarmana</i> )        | Horse          |
| Enlightenment ( <i>Nirvana</i> )                 | Bodhi tree     |
| First Sermon ( <i>Dharmachakra Parivartana</i> ) | Wheel          |
| Death ( <i>Maha Parinirvana</i> )                | Stupa          |

## Four Noble Truths

- Sorrow (*Dukkha*) world is full of sorrow.
- The cause of sorrow (*Dukkha Samudaya*), is desire.
- Cessation of sorrow (*Dukkha Nirodha*), is possible.
- The path leading to the cessation of sorrow (*Dukkha Nirodhagamini Pratipad*), is Ashtangika Marga.

## Ashtangika Marga

- This is the great middle path, for it avoids the extremes of gross luxury and severe austerity. This middle path leads finally to nirvana, which implies not only the extinction of desire, but also the attainment of a perfect state of tranquility. Emphasis is laid on the observance of the *Silas* (moralities) *Samadhi* (concentration) and *Prajan* (insight).

## Doctrines of Buddhism

*The Noble Eightfold Path (Ashtangika Marga) include*

- Right views (Samma-Sankappa)
- Right aspiration (Samma-Zditthi)
- Right speech (Samma-Vaka)
- Right conduct (Samma-Kammanta)
- Right livelihood (Samma-Ajiva)
- Right effort (Samma-Vayamma)
- Right mindfulness (Samma-Sati)
- Right meditation (Samma-Samadhi)

## Three Jewels (Triratnas)

- Buddha (*the enlightened*)
- Dhamma (*doctrine*)
- Sangha (*order*)

## Famous Monks at the Time of Buddha

| Monks       | Related Facts   |
|-------------|---|
| Ananda      | The constant companion of Buddha and the most devoted disciple. |
| Anuradha    | The master of right mindfulness.                                |
| Mahakassapa | The President of the Buddhist Council held at Rajagriha.        |
| Moggallana  | He had the greatest super natural powers.                       |
| Sariputta   | Possessed the profound insight into the Dhamma.                 |
| Upali       | Master of Vinaya.   |

### Buddhist Councils

| Councils             | Years  | Venues                     | Chairmans  | Royal Patrons                 | Developments  |
|----------------------|--------|----------------------------|--|-------------------------------|---|
| 1st Buddhist Council | 483 BC | Saptaparni cave, Rajagriha | Mahakasyapa                                      | Ajatshatru (Haryanka dynasty) | Compilation of Sutta Pitaka and Vinaya Pitaka by Ananda and Upali respectively. |
| 2nd Buddhist Council | 383 BC | Vaishali                   | Sabakami   | Kalasoka (Shishunaga dynasty) | Monks were split into Sthaviravadins and Mahasanghikas                          |
| 3rd Buddhist Council | 250 BC | Pataliputra                | Mogaliputta Tisa                                 | Ashoka (Mauryan Empire)       | Compilation of Abhidhamma Pitaka.   |
| 4th Buddhist Council | AD 72  | Kundalvan, Kashmir         | Vasumitra (Chairman), Asvaghosha (Vice-chairman) | Kanishka (Kushan dynasty)     | Division of Buddhists into Hinayana and Mahayana.                               |

### Sects of Buddhism

- Like Jainism, Buddhism also faced dissension. It was divided into three main sects:

#### Hinayana or Lesser Wheel

- Its followers believed in the original teachings of Buddha. They sought individual salvation through self-discipline and meditation. They did not believe in idol-worship.
- Hinayana is a religion without God, Karma taking the place of God. Nirvana is regarded as the extinction of all.
- The oldest school of Hinayana, Buddhism is the *Sthaviravada* (Theravada in Pali) or the *Doctrine of the Elders*. Its Sanskrit counterpart, which is more philosophical, is known as **Sarvastivada** or the doctrine which maintains the existence of all things, physical as well as mental.
- From Sarvastivada or Vaibhasika branched off another school called **Sautrantika**, which was more critical in outlook.
- Pali, the language of the masses, was used by Hinayana Buddhists, Ashoka patronised Hinayanaism.
- The concept of Bodhi Sattva is central to Hinayana sect of Buddhism.

#### Mahayana or Greater Wheel

- Its followers believed in the heavenliness of Buddha and sought the salvation of all through the grace and help of Buddha and Bodhisattvas. It believes in idol-worship. It believes that nirvana is not a negative cessation of misery, but a positive state of bliss.
  - Mahayana had two chief philosophical schools the Madhyamika and the Yogachara.
  - **Madhyamika** philosophical school was propounded by Nagarjuna. It is a midway between uncompromising realism of Hinayanism and idealism of Yogacharya.

- Yogachara** school was founded by Maitreyanatha. This school completely rejected the realism of Hinayanism and maintained absolute idealism.
- Sanskrit, the language of scholars was used by Mahayana Buddhists. Kanishka patronised Mahayanism. Later, Harsha supported it.

### Vajrayana or Vehicle of Thunder Bolt

- Its followers believed that salvation could be best attained by acquiring the magical power, which they called **Vajra**. The chief divinities of this new sect were the Taras.
- It became popular in Eastern India, particularly in Bengal and Bihar.

### Names of Famous Buddhist Scholars

| Scholars              | Related Facts  |
|-----------------------|--|
| Asvaghosha            | He was the contemporary of Kanishka. He was a poet, dramatist, musician, scholar and debater.  |
| Nagarjuna             | Contemporary of Satavahana kings. He propounded the Madhyamika School of Buddhist philosophy known as <b>Sunyavada</b> .   |
| Asanga and Vasubandhu | Asanga was the most important teacher of the Yogachara or Vijanavada School founded by his guru, Maitreyanath. Vasubandhu's greatest work, Abhidharmakosa is still considered an important Encyclopedia of Buddhism. |
| Buddhaghosha          | Who lived in the AD 5th century, was a great Pali scholar. The commentaries and the Visuddhimaga written by him are a great achievement in the post-Tripitakas literature.   |
| Dignaga               | The mighty intellectual of the 5th century, is well known as the founder of the <b>Buddhist logic</b> .  |
| Dharmakirti           | Lived in the AD 7th century was another great Buddhist logician.   |

### Literature of Buddhism

- The Sutta Pitaka** A collection of Buddha's sermon. Divided into 5 groups (Nikayas) i.e. Digha Nikaya; Majjhima Nikaya; Samyutta Nikaya; Anguttara Nikaya and Khuddaka Nikaya.
- The Vinaya Pitaka** It contains the rules and regulation of monastic discipline for monks.

- **The Abhidhamma Pitaka** It ascribed to Moggaliputta Tissa, President of the Third Council, it contains the profound philosophy of the Buddha's teachings. Deals with the same subject as the Sutta Pitaka, but in a more scholastic manner. It is divided into Dhamma Sagim, Vibhinga, Dhatu Katha, Pulapajfi Katha Vatthu, Yamak and Patthan.
- **The Jataka** A collection of over 500 poems, which describes the previous birth of Buddha.
- **The Buddhavamsa** It contains legends of verses about the 24 Buddhas who preceded Gautama in earlier times.
- **Milinda Panho** This discussion between Menander and Buddhist Monk Nagasena.
- **Ceylonese Chronicle** Dipavamsa, Mahavamsa and Culavamsa.
- **Vaipulya Sutras** (Sadharma Pundarika)

## Buddhist Architecture

- Buddhism takes the credit for are as follows:
  - First human statues to be worshipped.
  - Stone-pillars depicting the life of Buddha at Gaya, Sanchi and Bharhut.
  - Gandhara art and the beautiful images of the Buddha.
  - Cave architecture in the Barabar hills at Gaya and in Western India around Nasik.
  - Art pieces of Amaravati and Nagarjunakonda.

## Buddhist Mudras

- **Abhaya Mudra** The Abhaya Mudra (*mudra of no-fear*) represents protection, peace, benevolence and dispelling of fear.
- **Bhumisparsha Mudra** This gesture calls upon the Earth to witness Shakyamuni Buddha's enlightenment at Bodh Gaya.
- **Dharmachakra Mudra** The Dharmacakra Mudra represents a central moment in the life of Buddha when he preached his first sermon after his enlightenment in Deer Park in Sarnath.
- **Dhyana Mudra** The Dhyana Mudra (*meditation mudra*) is the gesture of meditation of the concentration of the good law and the songha.
- **Varada Mudra** The Varada Mudra (*favourable mudra*) signifies offering, welcome, charity, giving, compassion and sincerity.
- **Vajra Mudra** The Vajra Mudra (*thunder mudra*) is the gesture of knowledge.
- **Vitarka Mudra** The Vitarka Mudra (*mudra of discussion*) is the gesture of discussion and transmission of Buddhist teaching.
- **Gyana Mudra** The Gyana Mudra (*mudra of knowledge*) is done by touching the tips of the thumb and the index together, forming a circle and the hand is held with the palm inward toward the heart.
- **Karana Mudra** The Karana Mudra is the mudra which expels demons and removes obstacles such as sickness or negative thoughts.

## Decline of Buddhism

- By the AD 12th century, Buddhism became practically extinct in India. It became a victim to the evils of Brahminism against which it had fought in the beginning. The Buddhist monks were cut off from the mainstream of people's life as they gave up Pali, the language of people and took to Sanskrit. By the AD 7th century, the Buddhist monasteries had come to be dominated by ease loving people and became centres of corrupt practices, which Gautama Buddha had strictly prohibited.
- The new form of Buddhism was known as **Vajrayana** and entry of women into the Buddhist sanghas.

## Similarities between Buddhism and Jainism

- Founders of both the religions had a common background of Aryan culture.
- Both the religions were founded by Kshatriyas in Eastern India.
- Both were against the naturalistic interpretation of Vedas and opposed Brahminical domination.
- Both preached truth, non-violence, celibacy and detachment from material comforts.
- Both were non-theistic religions.
- Both believed in Karma and rebirth.
- Both allowed the Sudras and women to follow their religion become monks and attain salvation.
- Both of them spread as a result of teaching in the language of the common man.
- Both were opposed to the caste system, but could not eliminate it.

## Buddhist Universities

| Buddhist Universities | Locations           | Founders                    |
|-----------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| Nalanda               | Badagaon, Bihar     | Kumaragupta I (Gupta ruler) |
| Vikramshila           | Bhagalpur, Bihar    | Dharmapala (Pala ruler)     |
| Somapuri              | North Bengal        | Dharmapala (Pala ruler)     |
| Jagadal               | Bengal              | Ramapala (Pala ruler)       |
| Odantpuri             | Bihar Sharif, Bihar | Gopal (Pala ruler)          |
| Vallabhi              | Gujarat             | Bhattarka (Maitrak ruler)   |

### Difference between Jainism and Buddhism

| Basis                         | Jainisms                         | Buddhisms                                  |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|--|
| Method of attaining salvation | Extreme                          | Moderate and middle path                   |
| Spread                        | Confined to India                | Spread to foreign lands, but died in India |
| Concept of salvation          | Nirvana was escape from the body | Nirvana was escape from existence          |
| Ascetism                      | Believed in rigorous asceticism  | Discarded rigorous asceticism              |
| Self mortification            | Approved                         | Condemned                                  |
| Concept of God                | Atheistic                        | Agnostic                                   |

### Various Heterodox Sects (600-300 BC)

- According to Buddhist literary sources, there were around 62 heterodox sects in India in the 6th century BC.  
*Important among them are as follows:*

| Philosophiesy | Founders               | Meanings  |
|---------------|------------------------|---|
| Ajivikas      | Gosala Maskanriputra   | He believed in fate called <b>Niyati</b> .  |
| Uchchedavada  | Ajita Kesakambalin     | Believed in materialistic philosophy.   |
| Niyativada    | Nanda Vachcha          | Everything in the world is pre-determined.  |
| Materialism   | Brihaspati or Charvaka | Nothing existed which could not be understood by 5 senses.                                    |
| Akriyavada    | Purana Kasyapa         | Soul was distinct from body.  |
| Akrittavada   | Pakudha Kaccayana      | Believed in existence of 7 Nikayas i.e. Earth, water, air, light, sorrow, happiness and life. |
| Anichchitvada | Sanjay Vetiputta       | Doctrine of non-approval and non-denial of the existence of anything.                         |

# Self Check

# Build Your Confidence



1. (b)      2. (a)      3. (b)      4. (c)      5. (c)      6. (c)      7. (b)      8. (b)      9. (d)      10. (a)  
11. (c)      12. (a)      13. (d)

# Chapter six

# The Mauryan Empire

*The most immediate and unexpected result of Alexander's invasion of the North-West was that, it hastened the Mauryan conquest of the whole country. The period of the Mauryan empire marks a new epoch in the history of India. It was a period when politics, art, trade and commerce elevated India to a glorious height.*

## Origin of Mauryans

- Mauryan empire was originated from the kingdom of *Magadha* in the Indo-Gangetic plains. Mauryans ruled from the capital Pataliputra. Both Indian and classical sources suggest that Alexander's retreat resulted in the reaction of a Vacuum and therefore, it was not difficult for Chandra gupta to carve a kingdom for himself. Chandragupta founded the Mauryan empire by overthrowing the Nanda dynasty with the help of Chanakya, who was an important minister in the *Court of Nanda Rulers*.

### Different Views on the Origin of the Mauryans

| Sources                                  | Views  |
|--|--|
| Buddhist                                 | Connect with the tribe of Sakyas, whose region was full of peacocks i.e. Moriya. |
| Jain                                     | Linked Chandragupta to Moriya tribe of Peacock trainers.                         |
| Brahmanical                              | Describe Mauryans as Shudras.  |
| Greek                                    | They mention that Sandrocottas (Chandragupta) was born of humble origin.         |
| <i>Divyavadana and Vamsatthapakasini</i> | They concede that the Mauryas are a member of the moriya clan of pippalivana.    |
| Romila Thapar                            | Chandragupta belonged to the Moriya tribe.                                       |
| Mudrarakshasa                            | Mauryans were connected with Nandas.   |
| <i>Junagarh Rock Inscription</i>         | Mauryans were of Vaishya origin.   |

## Sources of Mauryan History

### Literary Sources

- The *Arthashastra* work, in sanskrit, is a comprehensive treatise on statecraft and public administration. The work is attributed to *Kautilya*, the Prime Minister of Chandragupta. It deals with the kingship, government, state, war and peace and diplomacy, the systems of revenue, description of various aspects of espionage, army organisation, laws related to marriage. It is divided into 15 *Adhikaranas* or *books*, 180 *Prakarnas* (chapters) and 6000 verses in all.
- The *Jataka* stories of the Buddha's previous lives tell us about the prevalent social and economic order.
- The *Ashokavadana* and *Divyavadana* contain information about Bindusara, Ashoka's expeditions to Taxila to suppress a rebellion and about his conversion to Buddhism.
- The *Dipavamsa* (compiled between 3rd century BC and AD 4th century) and *Mahavamsa* (written in the AD 5th century) are Sri Lankan chronicles, which describe in detail the role played by Ashoka in spreading Buddhism in Sri Lanka.
- A commentary on Mahavamsa, known as *Mahavamsatika* or *Vamsatthapakasini* composed in the AD 10th century, contains information about the origin of the Mauryans. The Jaina work *Sthaviravali Charita* or *Parisishtaparvan of Hemachandra* (*A biography of Chanakya*) provides very interesting information on Chandragupta Mauryan, such as his early life, conquest of Magadha, famine in Magadha and conversion to Jainism.

- **Mudrarakshasa** of Vishakhadatta (AD 4th century), a drama in sanskrit, gives an account of the prevailing socio-economic conditions. It also mentions Chandragupta Sabha (Council).
- **Rajatarangini** of Kalhana, Kathasaritasagar of Somadeva and Brihatkathamanjari of Kshemendra also provide information about the Mauryan.

### Megasthenes

Megasthenes, an ambassador sent by Seleucus, compiled his account about Mauryan India in his book **Indica**. Some important information provided by Megasthenes are as follows

- King was the pivot of the administrative super structure.
- Megasthenes represents the king as hardworking person.
- Criminal law was severe. One of the recognised punishments was mutilation. Death was awarded for injuring the royal artisans.
- Megasthenes pays high tribute to the character of the Indian people. The general honesty of the people was well attested by the fact that theft was a rare occurrence.
- Megasthenes stated that famine never occurred in India and that there has never been a general scarcity in the supply of nourishing food.

## Mauryan Dynasty

### Chandragupta Maurya

(321-298 BC)

- Chandragupta, at the young age of 25, dethroned the last Nanda ruler (**Dhanananda**) and occupied Pataliputra in 321 BC with the help of Brahmana, Kautilya, also known as **Chanakya** or **Vishnugupta** (this fact finds mention in *Mudrarakshasa of Vishakhadatta*).
- In 305 BC, Chandragupta again moved towards North-West for a campaign against **Seleucus Nikator**, which ended with the treaty of 303 BC in favour of the Mauryans. Chandragupta gave 500 elephants to Seleucus and in return, Seleucus gave him Eastern Afghanistan, Baluchistan and the area West of the Indus. According to Seleucus sent an ambassador called **Megasthenes**, according to Athenacus.
- The Girnar record refers to Chandragupta Viceroy or Governor, **Pushyagupta** (brother in law of Chandragupta), who is said to have constructed the famous Sudarsana lake. His title was *Simant Raja*.
- The Sohagura Copper Plate Inscription (*Gorakhpur district*) and Mahasthan Inscription (*Bogra district*) deal with the relief measures to be adopted during a famine, these inscriptions were probably issued during the reign of Chandragupta Maurya.
- Chandragupta went to South India with **Bhadrabahu**, the Jaina saint. At Sravana Belagola, he spent rest of his life and died in the orthodox Jain way by slow starvation (*Sallekhana*).

### Bindusara (298-273 BC)

- Chandragupta Maurya was succeeded by his son Bindusara. In a Chinese text, he is mentioned as Bindupala. Bindusara was known as to the Greeks as **Amitrochates** (derived from the sanskrit word *Amitraghata* or *slayer of foes*) or Amitrakhada (*devourer of foes*). Strabo calls him Amitrochates.
- According to Taranatha, the Tibetan Buddhist monk who visited India in the 16th century, Bindusara conquered 16 states, comprising the land between the two seas (presumably the Arabian Sea and Bay of Bengal).
- Bindusara appointed his eldest son Sumana or Susima as Viceroy of Taxila and Ashoka at Ujjain. The Divyavadana/Ashokavadana tells the story of a revolt in Taxila, during the time of Susima. Bindusara deputed Ashoka to restore order.
- Bindusara had contacts with Antiochus I, the Seleucid king of Syria whose ambassador, **Deimachus** was said to have been at his court. Bindusara wrote to Antiochus I asking for some sweet wine, dried figs and a sophist to be sent to the Mauryan Court. Antiochus sent all except the sophist, explaining that Greek law forbid a sophist to be sold.
- Pliny mentions that Ptolemy Philadelphus of Egypt sent **Dionysius** as his ambassador to the court of Bindusara. He was a believer of Ajivika sect.

### Ashoka (273 - 232 BC)

- He succeeded his father Bindusara, but seems to have fought a battle of succession. According to 'Divyavadana', Ashoka was sent to quell rebellion at Taxila. He was initiated into Buddhist fold by Nigrodh, a 7 years old monk. Ashoka reduced the land revenue of Lumbini village to first eighth of produce. Three different phases of life of Ashoka were Kamasoka, Chandasoka, Dhammasoka.

### Kalinga War

After accession to the throne, Ashoka fought only one major war called as **Kalinga War**. 100000 people were killed, several lakhs perished and 150000 were taken prisoner. He was moved by the massacre in this war. The war had far reaching effect on the policy of Ashoka. He abandoned the policy of physical occupation in favour of cultural conquest.

**Bhabru Inscription** states that after 2 years of the war, Ashoka became an ardent supporter of Buddhism.

## Ashoka's Dhamma

- The Dhamma according to Ashoka's edict is not a religion or religious system, but a moral law a common code of conduct. In Pillar Edict II, Ashoka himself put the question 'What is Dhamma' and then he enumerates the basic attributes or constituents of Dhamma.
- Ashoka's Dhamma was completely cosmopolitan, capable of universal application and acceptance as essence of all religions. Ashoka wanted conquest through Dhamma instead of war. Replacement of **Bherighosa** (*sound of war drums*) by **Dhammadhosa** (*sound of peace*).
- Ashoka's Dhamma was intended to strengthen social solidarity or social relationship. It was to promote religious tolerance. It was intended as an ethical concept related to the individual in the context of his society. Through Dhamma, he further stressed the paternal concept of monarchy.
- To the propagation of Dhamma, Ashoka had taken several measures through the Dhamma Mahamata, undertaking Dhamma by regulation.

## Ashoka's Inscriptions

- He was the first ruler to issue edicts. Maximum number of inscriptions have been discovered from Mysuru. First Ashokan edict was discovered by Padre Tieffenthaler, which was deciphered by James Princep in AD 1837 (*Delhi-Meerut Pillar*). Most of the inscriptions are composed in Brahmi script (*left to right*) and Prakrit language. Maski, Gurjara, Nittur and Degolan inscriptions mention full name Ashoka i.e. Devanampiya Ashoka Piyadassi.
- In Kanganahalli relief sculpture inscription 'Ranya Ashoka' mentioned along with the stone portrait of Ashoka. This was the very first inscribed panel of King Ashoka to be discovered in India.

## Ashokan Edicts

### Fourteen Major Rock Edicts

- These edicts cover a very large scope, defining the nature and broader application of **Dhamma**. They were located at Kalsi (Dehradun), Girnar (Gujarat), Yerragudi (Andhra Pradesh), Mansehra (Pakistan), Sopara (Mumbai), Dhauli and Jaugada (both in Odisha) and Shahbazgarhi (Pakistan in Kharosthi).
- Two separate **Kalinga** rock edicts are located in Dhauli and Jaugada (Odisha). Sometime called **Edicts XV and XVI**, they substitute for three edicts i.e. XI on charity and kinship of mankind, XII on religious tolerance and XIII on the Kalinga War and the change of heart. Girnar seems to be an important site for edification as inscriptions of Skandagupta and Rudradaman have also been found here. The inscriptions at Mansehra and Shahbazgarhi are in Kharosthi script. Separate edict describes Ashoka's paternal concept of monarchy.

## Minor Rock Edicts

- Minor rock edicts are concentrated in the South and Central parts of the empire.
- They highlight Ashoka's activity as Buddhist disciple i.e. personal history of Ashoka and also represent the summary of Dhamma.
- The edict found at Kandahar is bilingual, being inscribed in Greek and Aramaic. Minor rock edict III (Bairat) is addressed to the Buddhist clergy.
- The title most commonly adopted by Ashoka in his edicts is **Devanampiya Piyadassi** (*beloved of the Gods*).
- Minor rock edicts were located at Bairat (Rajasthan), Jatinga– Rameshwar (Karnataka), Sahsaram (Bihar), Rupanath (Madhya Pradesh), Gavimath (Mysuru), Brahmagiri (Karnataka), Maski (Karnataka), Gujjara (Madhya Pradesh), Palkigundu (Karnataka), Rajula-Mandagiri (Andhra Pradesh), Siddapura (Karnataka), Suvarnagiri (Karnataka), Yerragudi (Andhra Pradesh), Nittur (Karnataka), Udegolam (Karnataka) and Kandahar (Afghanistan).

## Major Pillar Edicts

- The pillar edicts are found at Delhi-Topra, Delhi-Meerut, Ram-Purva, Lauriya-Areraj, Lauriya- Nandangarh and Allahabad-Kosam.
- The **Ashokan Pillar at Allahabad** contains two later inscriptions (One of the Gupta ruler Samudragupta—Prayaga Prasasti written by poet Harisena describing his conquests and another of the Mughal emperor Jahangir. The complete set of seven edicts is found at only one place Topra. The pillar edict VII is the last edict to be issued by Ashoka.

## Later Mauryans (232/184 BC)

- According to Buddhist tradition, Ashoka ruled for 27 years. The disintegration of the Mauryan empire seemed to have set in immediately after Ashoka's death. The last ruler was Brihadratha, who was murdered by his general Pushyamitra Shunga. This was the end of Mauryan dynasty.

## Mauryan Administration

### Central Administration

- The state, according to Kautilya, is constituted of the **Saptanga** or the seven elements viz Svamin (*King*), Amatya (*Minister or high officials*), Janapada (*Territory or population*); Durga (*Fort*); Kosa (*Treasury*), Bala (*Army*) and Mitra (*Friend or Ally*).
- The Mauryan empire had major administrative units like the centre and the provinces, which had various sub-units down to the village and all came under the purview of central administration. Tirthas were the highest categories of officials. They were 18 in number.

### Eighteen Tirthas

| Tirthas             | Posts  |
|---------------------|--|
| Mahamantri Purohita | Chief Minister and Chief Priest  |
| Senapati            | Commander-in-Chief   |
| Yuvraja             | Crown Prince   |
| Dauvarika           | Chamberlain  |
| Prasastri           | Inspector General of Prison  |
| Sanidhatta          | Incharge of Treasury   |
| Nayaka              | City Constable   |
| Vyavaharika         | Chief Judge  |
| Mantri              | Secretary Incharge of the Office of Ministers                                    |
| Parishadadhyasha    | Ministers  |
| Duvara Pala         | Chief of the Home Defence i.e. warden of the palace to control entrance and exit |
| Antarvesika         | Chief of the Harem   |
| Samaharta           | Tax Collector General  |
| Pradeshtri          | Divisional Commissioner  |
| Paura               | Governor of the Capital  |
| Karmantika          | Chief of the Industries  |
| Dandapal            | Police Chief   |
| Antapal             | Chief of the Frontier Defence  |

### Important Adakshas

| Adhayaksha              | Posts                                |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Akshapataladhyaksha     | Accountant General                   |
| Sitadhyaksha            | Incharge of crown lands              |
| Akaradhyaksha           | Superintendent of mines              |
| Lavanadhyaksha          | Salt Superintendent                  |
| Navadhyaksha            | Incharge of state boats              |
| Panyadhyaksha           | Controller of state trading          |
| Sulkadhyaksha           | Collector of custom or tolls         |
| Suradhyaksha            | Superintendent of excise             |
| Trigrt Pauta vadhyaksha | Superintendent of weight and measure |
| Bandhanagaradhyaksha    | Superintendent of jails              |
| Ayudhagaradhyaksha      | Ordinance Superintendent             |
| Kosthagaradhyaksha      | Incharge of warehouse                |
| Pattanadhyaksha         | Superintendent of ports              |
| Devatadhyaksha          | Incharge of religious institutions   |
| Samsthadhyaksha         | Superintendent of market             |
| Suvarnadhyaksha         | Superintendent of gold               |
| Hastyadhyaksha          | Incharge of elephant force           |
| Kosadhyaksha            | Incharge of treasury                 |
| Kupyadhyaksha           | Incharge of forest producer          |
| Madradhyaksha           | Passport incharge                    |

### Revenue Administration

- There were different sources of state revenue cities, rural areas, mine, pastures, plantation and forests Samaharta supervised collection for the entire kingdom.

### Different Types of Taxes

| Tax Names    | Nature of Taxes                                       |
|--------------|---|
| Bhaga        | Land revenue (first sixth)                            |
| Bali         | Additional tax  |
| Chorarajju   | Tax collected for the search of thief                 |
| Pranaya      | Emergency tax   |
| Pindakaras   | Collected annually from the entire village            |
| Praveshya    | Import duty   |
| Nishkramya   | Export duty   |
| Senabhaktam  | Tax for army, from the region through which it passed |
| Sulka        | Custom duty   |
| Vishti       | Forced labour   |
| Hiranya      | Probably a tax paid in gold                           |
| Udaybhagokal | Irrigation tax  |
| Udayabhanu   | Income tax  |

### Judiciary

The sources of law as mentioned by Kautilya were as follows

- Dharma
- Vyavahara (current legal codes)
- Charitra (customs)
- Rajasasana (Royal Decree)
- The Chief Justice called the **Dharmadhikarina** and he presided over the Supreme Court : There were two types of courts
  - (i) **Dharmastiya** Civil Court, headed by Dharmastha.
  - (ii) **Kantaksodhan** Criminal Court, headed by Pradeshika.

### Army

- According to Megasthenes, Chandragupta had at his disposal, a formidable army numbering about 600000. The army consisted of foot soldiers, elephants and horses. It had 30000 cavalry and 900 elephants.

### Espionage Network

- The spies were of two types Sansthan and Sanchari, the former worked by remaining stationed at a public place and the latter by moving from place to place, they were also known as **Gudhapurshas**.

### City Administration

- Nagarika was the city of Superintendent assisted by two officials. According to Megasthenes, the city council was divided into 6 boards of 5 members each.

## Mauryan Society

- There was well developed 'caste' system as per the accounts of Megasthenes and this caste system was based upon 'occupation' rather than birth. The marriage and polygamy both were present. Polygamy continued to royal classes. Women enjoyed high status. There was no slavery in the sense that people used to work as dasa, out of their own compulsions.

There were proper hospitals and *Bheshajas* (doctors) appointed alongwith a team of midwives nurses etc.

*According to Megasthenes, there were seven castes in India :*

- The Philosopher
- Peasants
- Herdsmen and Shepherds
- Artisans and Traders
- Soldiers and Warriors
- Magistrates or Superintendents
- Councillors and Assessors

## Mauryan Economy

- Chief source of revenue was 'land tax'. It was the total produce and it was collected by the revenue officers. Foreign trade by means of the land and sea was prevalent and regulated by passports kind of documents. Indigo, cotton and silk was most traded commodities. The trade routes were called *vanikatha*.
- Punchmarked** coins mainly of silver and copper, *Pana* was the silver coin, gold coins were absent.

## Agriculture

- In some parts of the empire, the Gana Sangha System with communal ownership of land continued.
- There are also references to state-owned lands called *Sita lands*.

## Public Welfare

- The state took considerable interest in irrigation, encouraged people for repairing dams and construction of a water reservoir.
- A reservoir (*Tadaga*) was probably built in Saurashtra region during Chandragupta time as indicated by an Inscription of Rudradaman. There are many references to medicine men of various kinds during this period like ordinary physicians (*Chikitsakah*), midwives (*Garbhavyadhi*) etc.

## The Mauryan Art

### Pillars and Sculpture

- The best example is the Sarnath Pillar, the four lions standing back to back and the figure of four animals (*lion, elephant, horse and bull*) in relief on the abacus, the inverted lotus and the sacred Dharma Chakra (with 24 spokes), all indicates a highly advanced form of art.

### Stupas

- The main purpose of building a Stupa was to enshrine some relics of Buddha or some great Buddhist monk. The best example of the Stupa is the Stupa at Sanchi. He enlarged the Stupa of Kanakamana a 'former Buddha'.

### Caves

- The caves primarily served as residence for monks or churches and assembly halls. Caves in *Barabar* hills are the finest examples. Lomas Rishi and Sudama caves were denoted by Ashoka to Ajivikas.

### Palaces

- Excavations have revealed a royal palace in ruined condition near *Kumrahar*.

### Terracotta Objects

- Mother Goddesses in clay have been discovered at Ahichatra.
- Terracotta of Mauryan period consists of primitive idols or images, toys, dice, ornaments and beads.

### Folk Art

- The examples include Yaksha of Parkham and Yakshini of Besnagar. These statues are made of stone.

## The Decline of Mauryan Empire

- The decline was completed within half a century after the death of Ashoka. *Most historians agree on the following major causes are as follows :*
  - The partition of the Mauryan empire in two halves is supposed to be an immediate cause for the decline of the Mauryan empire.
  - Later Mauryan rulers were considered to be weak.
  - Ashoka's pacifist policies were held to be undermining the strength of the empire.
  - Strained Mauryan economy is also held as the major cause of the decline.
  - The weakening of the central control under the later Mauryans, led automatically to the weakening of administration.

# Self Check

## Build Your Confidence

- 1.** Which of the following is the least important as a source material for the Mauryan history?  
(a) Numismatic evidence      (b) Literary sources  
(c) Epigraphic sources      (d) Foreign accounts
- 2.** Which of the following statements regarding Ashoka stone pillars is incorrect?  
(a) These are highly polished  
(b) These are parts of architectural structures  
(c) The shaft of pillars is taperating in shape  
(d) These are monolithic
- 3.** The Dhamma Mahamattas appointed by Ashoka were entrusted with the job of  
(a) checking the abuse in the administration of justice  
(b) the moral uplift of the people through propagation of Dhamma  
(c) management of the welfare activities of the state  
(d) All of the above
- 4.** What was the subject of Rock Edit I issued by Ashoka?  
(a) Prohibition of animal sacrifice and festive meetings (*Sameja*)  
(b) Measures of social welfare undertaken of the benefit of the people  
(c) Liberality to Brahmins and Sramanas  
(d) Visit to Bodhgaya
- 5.** The Mauryan king who issued the Nagarjuni Hill Cave Inscriptions and assumed the royal title of *Devanampiya* was  
(a) Ashoka    (b) Dasharatha    (c) Bindusara    (d) Brihadratha
- 6.** Which of the following was not one of hellenic kings to whom diplomatic missions were sent by Ashoka?  
(a) Xerxes of Macedonia  
(b) Antiochus II Theos of Syria  
(c) Ptolemy II Philadelphus of Egypt  
(d) Antigonus Gonatas of Macedonia
- 7.** Which of the following statements about the Mauryan Council of Ministers (*Mantriparishad*) is incorrect?  
(a) The members of the council were personally selected by the king  
(b) The number of members of the council was fixed and it consisted of three councillors and a Chief Minister  
(c) It was specially consulted in times of emergency  
(d) It may have acted as a political check on the king
- 8.** Which of the following was considered the most important internal trade route during the Mauryan period?  
(a) From the North-West (in the region of Taxila) to Pataliputra  
(b) From Shravasti to Pratisthana
- 9.** Which of the following was the factor behind Magadhan supremacy?  
(a) Fertile soil and abundance of iron-ore  
(b) Geographical position (Ganga, Gandak and Ghaghra in the North and Soan in South and capital city Rajgrhi fortified with five hills)  
(c) Both 'a' and 'b'  
(d) None of the above
- 10.** The latest inscriptions of Ashoka were discovered from  
(a) Kandhar Bilingual Inscriptions  
(b) Sannatai Inscriptions  
(c) Maski Inscription  
(d) Bhabru Edict
- 11.** With reference to the guilds of ancient India that played a very important role in the country's economy, which of the following statements is/are correct? [IAS 2006]  
1. Every guild was registered with the Central Authority of the State and the king was the chief administrative authority on them.  
2. The wages, rules of work, standards and prices were fixed by the guild.  
3. The guild has judicial powers over its own members.  
*Select the correct answer using the codes given below*  
(a) 1 and 2    (b) Only 3    (c) 2 and 3    (d) All of these
- 12.** The Allahabad Pillar Inscription is associated with which one of the following? [IAS 2006]  
(a) Mahapadma Nanda      (b) Chandragupta Maurya  
(c) Ashoka      (d) Samudragupta
- 13.** **Assertion** (A) According to Ashoka's edicts, social harmony among the people was more important than religious devotion.  
**Reason** (R) He spread ideas of equity instead of promotion of religion. [IAS 1998]  
**Codes**  
(a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A  
(b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A  
(c) A is true, but R is false  
(d) A is false, but R is true
- 14.** The one most important feature of the Mauryan Administration was  
(a) the presence of a Council of Ministers  
(b) the presence of a vast bureaucracy  
(c) the use of an extensive network of spies  
(d) the enjoyment of wide powers by the provincial governors



1. (a)    2. (d)    3. (d)    4. (a)    5. (b)    6. (a)    7. (b)    8. (a)    9. (c)    10. (b)
11. (c)    12. (d)    13. (a)    14. (b)

# Chapter seven

# The Sangam Age

*The word sangam is a sanskrit word which means an association, a sangam of poets.' The age of the sangam is the age to which the sangam literature belonged. The three empires that ruled the South of India during Sangam age were that of Cholas, Cheras and the Pandyas. Inspite of being involved in conflict, they were promoters of literature and other classical works.*

## The Sangam Era

- The first detailed description of the South Indian states is found in Sangam literature.
- Tamil is the oldest among the spoken and literary languages of South India.
- Sangam is the Tamil version of the sanskrit word **Sangha**, meaning a group of persons or an association. The term Sangam was an academy of poets. The three ancient kingdoms of the Cholas, the Pandyas and the Cheras combined were known as **Tamilakha** or the **Tamil Realm**.

## Sangam Age Sources

- Literary Source works like Tolkappiyan, Ettuthogai/Ettuhogal and Pattuppattu provide valuable information to know the history of the Sangam age.

## Archaeological

- The archaeological sources for the Sangam period are limited. They may be classified into (i) Epigraphy, (ii) Excavation, (iii) Coins.

## Epigraphy

- The Ashokan edicts refers to the Chera, Chola and Pandya kingdoms. The Kalugumalai inscriptions help us to know about ancient Tamil script called **Tamil Brahimi**.

## Excavations

- During the excavation at Adhichanallur, large number of articles made of iron, bronze and gold were found, which depicts the life of the ancient Tamil. A Buddhist vihara was found at kilaiyur near kaveri poompattinam. It belonged to the Post-Sangam period.

## Coins

- The Tamil kings of the Sangam period issued gold and silver coins, but they are not found in large numbers. Roman coins made of gold and silver are found all over Tamil Nadu. These coins further confirms the trade relations between Tamil country and Rome, during the Sangam age.

## Early Kingdoms

- The AD 1st century witnessed the formation of three states respectively under Cholas, Cheras and Pandyas.

## Important Factors Behind their Rise

- Spread of iron technology.
- Monetisation of economy.
- Development of North-South trade.
- Flourishing trade with the roman empire.

## The Chola Kingdom

- Capital of the Chola kingdom was at Kaveripattinam.
- The kingdom which later came to be known as **Cholamandalam** was situated between the Pennar and the Vellar rivers. Their chief centre of political power was at **Uraiyyur**, a place famous for cotton trade.
- Earlier their capital was at Uraiyyur.
- In the middle of the 2nd BC a Chola king named **Elara** conquered Sri Lanka and ruled over it for nearly 50 years.
- The real foundation of the kingdom was laid down in AD 2nd century by their famous king **Karikala**. He founded the **city of Puhar** and constructed 160 km of embankment along the Kaveri river.

- He defeated a confederacy of about a dozen of rulers headed by Cheras and Pandya kings in the Great Battle of Venni, near Tanjavur. Karikala maintained a powerful navy and conquered Sri Lanka.
- Puhar has been identified with *Kaveripattanam*, which was the Chola capital. It was a great centre of trade and commerce.
- The successors of Karikala were weak. The Chola kingdom declined under them.
- One of the main reasons for the decline was attack by the neighbouring territory of the Cheras and Pandyas.

## The Chera Kingdom

- Cheras were also known as *Keralaputras*. They were situated to the West and North of the Pandya kingdom.
- The capital of Chera kingdom was at *Vanji* or *Karur*. The kingdom covered the portions of modern Kerala and Tamil Nadu. Udiyanjeral is one of the earliest known as Chera rulers.
- This title of *Udiyanjeral* was given to him because it is said that he served both the armies of Kurushetra war.
- The romans are said to have set-up two regiments in the Cheras country at *Muziris*, (identified with the modern Cranganore) to protect their trade interests. There is reference that indicates that roman built a temple of Augustus at Muziris.
- The greatest king of the dynasty was Senguttuvan (*The Red or Good Chera*). It is said that he crossed the Ganga and invaded the kingdom of Northern India. He is remembered for building a Temple of 'Kannagi' the Goddess of chastity and founded the famous Pattini cult.

## The Pandya Kingdom

- The Capital of Pandya kingdom was at *Madurai*. References of Pandyas are found in the Sangam literature and the text of Megasthenes, who speaks of it being ruled by a woman.
- It had flourishing trade contacts with the roman Empire and sent embassies to the roman Emperor Augustus.
- There are references that Pandyan king's performed vedic sacrifices. Mudukudumi was the earliest known as *Pandya's ruler*.
- Nedunjeliyan* was the most important king of Pandya. He accused kovalon of theft. As a result, the city of Madurai was laid under a curse by Kannagi (*Kovalan's wife*).

## Three Sangams

| Sangams | Venues       | Chairmans   |
|---------|--------------|---|
| 1st     | Thenmadura   | Agastasya   |
| 2nd     | Kapatawaran  | Agastaya (founder) Tolakappiyam (later chairman) Nakkirar |
| 3rd     | North Madura | Mr. Justice V.Khalid                                      |

## Sangam Administration

- The king was the centre of administration. Avai was the court of crowned monarch. Some officials were as follows :
  - Armaichhar (*Ministers*) – Purohitar (*Purohits*)
  - Dutar (*Envoy*) – Senapatiyar (*Senapati*)
  - Orrar (*Spies*)
- The Kingdom was divided into Mandala mandu (*province*), Ur (*town*), Sirur (*small village*), Perur (*big village*).

## Social Life

- The society was divided into *Brahmins* and *Non-Brahmins*. The Tamil Brahmins were a respectable and learned community, who lived apart in their streets most of the kings treated them with great courtesy.
- Trade was common to vaishyas and villas. It appears that learning, agriculture, performing sacrifice where the prescribed duties of a vausya.
- We have no positive evidence of slavery, but there were low servants or labourers. Untouchability was practiced, they were known as *parriyas*.
- The Tamil society was an advanced and civilised society during age. Education was not merely known and encouraged, but was a widespread social activity.

## Economic Life

- The sangam economy was self-sufficient. Land was classified as *Vanpulam* (*the non-Agrarian region*) and *Menpulam* (*Agrarian*) sangam texts refer to ulavar and toluvare as the tillers of menpulam. Tank irrigation (ayam and minor dam (sinai) irrigation was employed. Some taxes were as follows :
  - *Karai* Land tax
  - *Irai* Tribute paid by feudatories and booty collected in war
  - *Ulgr* Custom duties
  - *Iravu* Extra demand or forced gift
- Barter system as a medium of exchange was prevalent. Pattinam were the centres of long distance trade.
- The main agricultural products were paddy, ginger, turmeric, pepper, sugarcane. The chola capital Uraiur was famous for trade in cotton cloth. Spinning and weaving were most important and widely practiced craft.
- Taniyurs were developed out of major Brahmadeyas and temple settlements and can include several hamlets and revenue villages. Eripatti was special category of land. The revenue from these lands was set apart for the maintenace of the village tank.

## Religious Life

- The religion was influenced by rituals and animism. A planted log of wood called *kandu* was an object of worship. There was a special festival instituted in puhar dedicated to the vedic God Indra. Deities like Korravai Goddess of victory and murugan were worshipped.
- Three stands of religion, clearly marked off from each other are *discernible* during the sangam period.
  - The indigenous Gods and systems of worship.
  - The exotic Hindu Gods and systems of worship.
  - The exotic non-Hindu religious faiths and functions.

## Arts

- Musicians stage artists and performers entertained the kings, the nobility, the rich and the general population. Groups of performers included :
  - Thudian* players of the thudi, a small percussion instrument.
  - Paraiyan* who beat maylam(drums) and performed kooththu, a stage drama in dance form, as well as proclaiming the king's announcements.
  - Muzhavan* who blew into a muzhavu, a wind instrument, for the army indicating the start and end of the day and battlefield victories. They also performed in kooththu alongside other artists.
  - Kadamban* who beat a large bass like drum, the kadamparai and blew a long bamboo, kuzhal, theri thuthi (similar to the present naagasuram).
  - PaaNan* who sang songs in all pann tunes (tunes that are specific for each landscape) and were masters of the yaazh, a stringed instrument with a wide frequency range. Together with the poets (*pulavar*) and the academic scholars (*saandror*), these people of talent appeared to originate from all walks of life, irrespective of their native profession.

## Sangam Literature

| Earliest Grammar Works                                  | Ettuthogai  | Pattuppattu   | Pathinenkilkanakku   | Epics                               |
|---|---|---|--|-------------------------------------|
| Tolkappiyam oldest surviving Tamil text by Tolkappiyar. | (8 Anthologies)<br>Aingurunuru (Gudalair Killar) largest collection of 500 poems. | (10 Idylls) 10 long poems: most important is Murugarruppadal by a person known as Nakkirar. | (18 Minor Works)<br>Pathinenkilkanakku (not minor in significance preceptine in nature, stock of adages and aphorisms. | Silappadikaram by ilango adigal.    |
| Aggatiyam by saint Gatiyan.                             | Padirruppattu (8 poems) smallest collection of poems praising Chera kings.        | Maduerai-Kanchi by Mangudi (Nedujeliyan II) Marudan written deals with Madurai city.        | Most important work Tirukkural by Thiruvalluvar referred to as the Bible of Tamil land.                                | Manimegalai by Sattanar.            |
|   |   | Pattinappalai by Kannan deals with the city of Gcuhar or Modern Kaveripattnam.              |  | Sivaga Sindamani by Tiruttakkadevar |

# Self Check

# Build Your Confidence

- 1. Consider the following statements** [IAS 2003]

  - The Cholas defeated Pandya and Chera rulers and established their domination over peninsular India in the early medieval times.
  - The Cholas sent an expedition against Sailendra Empire of South-East Asia and conquered some of the areas.

**Which of the statements given above is/are correct?**

  - Only 1
  - Only 2
  - Both 1 and 2
  - Neither 1 nor 2

**2. Which of the following statements about the institution of kingship during this period is not correct?**

  - The form of government was hereditary monarchy
  - The king, whose conquering expedition was led by a mysterious wheel of gold and gem, was called Chakravartin
  - The crown prince was called Komahan
  - In the Sangam literature, we come across numerous instances of women sellers

**3. Which of the following was not one of the popular deities of the Sangam age?**

  - Indra and Murugan
  - Shiva and Vishnu
  - Krishna and Balaram
  - Ganesa

**4. The Goddess Kannagi, whose many temples were erected during the Sangam age, was the Goddess of**

  - wisdom
  - learning
  - chastity
  - prowess

**5. Aruvai, Aruvai Vanigar, Aruvai vidi are the terms related to**

  - cloth industry
  - trade
  - agriculture
  - fishing

**6. During the Sangam age, war was usually declared or provoked by**

  - cutting the tutelary tree of the enemy
  - lifting the cattle of the enemy
  - besieging the enemy's fort
  - crushing the crops of the enemy's territory under the feet of elephants

**7. The word Sangam is associated in Tamil history with**

  - the literature produced during the reign of the Pallava dynasty of Kanchi
  - the poem written in praise of the Pandya kings of the Early Christian era
  - the court poetry of Chola's kings, who were famous for patronising artists
  - a college or assembly (literary academy) of Tamil scholars held under the royal patronage of Pandya kings at Madurai

**8. Which of the following is not a great epic of the Sangam literature?**

  - Silappadikaram
  - Manimekalai
  - Pattuppattu
  - All of these

**9. Which of the following is not one of the sources from which evidence of Indo-Roman trade during the Sangam age is derived?**

  - Sangam literature
  - The Roman coins of silver and gold found on the South Indian coast
  - Discovery of a Roman board at Arikamedu, near Pondicherry
  - The accounts of Chinese and Roman travellers

**10. Which of the following was a great customs port with an artificial harbour?**

  - Musiri or Muziris
  - Tondi
  - Puhar (Kaveripattanam)
  - Uraiyar

**11. The early Tamil anthologies, mention terms such as Pahri, Otam, Timil and Patagu. These were used for**

  - boats
  - types of market
  - merchandise exported
  - merchandise imported

**12. The third Sangam was held at** [IAS 2008]

  - Madurai
  - Arikamedu
  - Ernakulam
  - Tuticorin

**13. The early Tamil poet who makes a reference to the Nandas and Mauryas in his work is** [IAS 1996]

  - Sattanar
  - Ilango Adigal
  - Kapilar
  - Mamulanar

**14. Which of the following poets of the Sangam age has referred to a Mauryan expedition against a Tamil chieftain?** [IAS 2001]

  - Paramar
  - Avvaiyar
  - Ilango Adigal
  - Mamulanar

**15. Which of the following statements about the social structure of the Sangam age is not correct?**

  - The difference in the status and economic conditions was well accepted and rarely challenged by the people
  - Sangam literature mentions three regular varnas, namely the Brahmins, Kshatriyas and Vaisyas
  - There were four castes namely, Tudiyan, Panan, Paraiyan and Kadamban
  - People were organised into professional social groups living apart from one another



1. (c)      2. (d)      3. (d)      4. (c)      5. (a)      6. (b)      7. (d)      8. (c)      9. (d)      10. (c)  
11. (a)      12. (a)      13. (d)      14. (d)      15. (d)

# Chapter eight

## Post-Mauryan Period (200 BC-AD 300 )

The period which began in about 200 BC did not witness a large empire like that of the Mauryas, but was able for intimate and widespread contacts between Central Asia and India. In Eastern India, Central India and the Deccan, the Mauryas were succeeded by a number of native rulers such as the Shungas, the Kanvas and the Satavahanas. In North-Western India, the most famous empire was of the Kushanas.

### Sources

#### Archaeological Sources

- For the first time during this period, coins were associated with the kings and *Indo-Greeks* were the first Indian kings, who issued coins in their names. They were first to issue gold coins. Some inscriptions were as follows
  - Junagarh inscription of Rudradaman
  - Hathigumpha inscription of Kharavela
  - Ayodhya inscription of Dhanadeva
  - Nasik inscription of Gautami Balashri
  - Kanheri inscription of Vasishtaputra Puluamai

#### Literary Sources

- Divyavadana
- Lalitavistara
- Arya Manju Shri Mool Kalpa
- Milinda Panha
- Gargai Samhita
- Malavikagnimitram of Kalidasa
- Mahabhsaya of Patanjali
- Periplus of the Erythraean-sea
- Geography of Strabo
- Natural History of Pliny
- History of Tibet by Lama Taranatha

### The Indigenous Ruling Dynasties

#### Sungas

- Capital* Patliputra and Vidisha.
- Information about the Sunga dynasty is found in *Garga Samhita*, the Mahabhsaya of *Patanjali*, Divyavadana, Malavikagnimitram of *Kalidasa* and the Harshacharita of *Bana*.

#### Pushyamitra Sunga

- He was the founder of Sunga dynasty, who assassinated the last Mauryan king *Brihadratha* in 184 BC. This is corroborated by *Bana*.
- Pushyamitra also faced an invasion of Kharvela, the king of Kalinga as well as.
- The Ayodhya inscription of Dhanadeva, credits Pushyamitra with the performance of two Ashwamedha sacrifices.
- The Buddhist tradition as is preserved in the Divyavadana depicts Pushyamitra as a destroyer of Buddhist monasteries and places of worship. However, *Sanchi Stupa* was repaired and *Bharhut Stupa* was constructed fully in the time of the Sungas. Patanjali author of Mahabhsaya was his contemporary.
- Bhagbhadra* was another important king of this dynasty.
- Sungas soon came to be confined to Magadha and Central Indian territories only.
- Devabhuti* was the last Sunga king, who according to Banabhatta (*author of Harshacharita*) was murdered by his Brahmana minister Vasudeva (75 BC).

### Heliodorus

He was the ambassador of the Greek king Antialias and stayed in the court of Bhagbhada. Heliodorus constructed a pillar at Vidisha in honour of God Vasudeva (*Krishna*) synonymous with Vishnu. The pillar is also known as *Garudadhwaja*.

### Kanvas (75-30 BC)

- Vasudeva was the founder of the dynasty known as the *Kanvas* or *Kanvayana* in Magadha.
- Bhumimitra succeeded Vasudeva, who was followed by his son *Narayana*. He was succeeded by his son *Susharman*.
- According to Puranas, the Andhrabhrityas overthrew this dynasty.

### Chedis

- Chedis Capital was Kalinganagara.
- The greatest and the most powerful king of the dynasty was *Kharvela*. His capital was Kalinganagara.
- The only source of information about the king Kharvela is the Hathigumpha inscription written in Prakrit language and Brahmi script. In the 9th year of his reign Kharvela built Mahavijaya Prasad (*place of Great Victory*) on both the banks of the river Prachi, in order to commemorate his victories in the North.
- In the 13th year of his reign, Kharvela undertook many welfare schemes like building caves for the Jaina monks in the Udaigiri hills i.e. *Hathigumpha* and *Ranigumpha caves*.

### Satavahanas (230 BC - 220 AD)

- The Satavahanas appeared as the successors of the Mauryas in *Deccan*. The Satavahanas were known as *Andhras*, *Andhrajatiyah* and *Andhrabhrityas* in the Puranic list.
- The Aitareya Brahmana refers about Andhras as the degenerate sons of Vishvamitra. In the Nasik inscription of Balashri, Gautamiputra Satakarni is called *Ekabrahmana*, which means either unrivalled Brahmin or the only protector of the Brahmins. Two inscriptions of the Satavahanas i.e. Nanaghat and Nasik have been discovered in Maharashtra.
- Recent excavations in Telengana resulted in the discovery of a large number of Satavahana coins and seals.
- These discoveries testify to the fact that Telengana was the nucleus of the Satavahana empire. The description of Satakarni I as Dakshinapatha Pati in the *Nanaghat inscription* proves that the Satavahana dominion included other areas of the Deccan and beyond.

### Dynastic History of Satavahana

- *Simuka* was the founder of Satavahana dynasty. We know *Kanha* (Krishna) from an inscription at Nasik. He extended the kingdom upto Nasik in the West. Kanha was succeeded by Simuka's son *Sri Satakarni I*.
- The 6th king was *Satakarni II*, who ruled for 56 years and who wrested Eastern Malwa from the Sungas. Satakarni II had to face the invasion of Kharvela. Satakarni II was succeeded by his son *Lambodara*, who was followed by his son *Apalka*.
- *Hala*'s reign of 5 years (AD 20-25) was a period of great prosperity. Hala himself composed *Gatha Saptasasti* (also called the Sattasi), an anthology of 700 erotic verses in Maharashtri or Paisachi Prakrit.
- During this time, the Satavahanas suffered set backs when the Saka's invaded the empire from all direction.
- The Satavahana power was revived by *Gautamiputra Satakarni* (AD 80-104), who is also called *Ekabrahmana*. He is regarded as the greatest king of the Satavahanas dynasty.
- His achievements are recorded in glowing terms in the *Nasik Prasasti* by his mother *Gautami Balashri*. This inscription was engraved after his death and in the 19th regnal year of his son and successor Pulamai I.
- *Vasishtaputra Pulamai* I ruled for 24 years whose coins have been found in Godavari and Guntur districts. The old *stupa at Amravati* was repaired and was ornamented with marble slabs during his reign.
- Puranas mention Siva Sri Satakarni as the successor of Pulamai I, who is also known as *Vasishtaputra Siva Sri Satakarni*
- The last great king of the dynasty was *Yajna Sri Satakarni*.
- But during the closing years of Yajna Sri's reign, the Abhiras captured the territory around Nasik. He issued coins bearing fish, boat known as Ujjain type of coins.
- After him, the Satavahana empire disintegrated and many royal princes ruled at different places. The last Satavahana king of the main line was *Pulamai IV*.

### Significance of Satavahana's Rule

- They issued many coins in various denominations in gold, silver, copper, lead, potene and thus, contributed in the growth of currency and coinage.
- Position of women improved in the society. Inter-caste marriages and marriages with foreigners were permitted, Growth of Art - Amaravati, Nagarjunakonda, Nasik, Karle etc flourished as great centres of art. They constructed Southern gateway of Sanchi Stupa.

## The Foreign Ruling Dynasties

### Indo-Greeks

- Greek expansion in India was definitely, the work of **Demetrius I**. He was perhaps the first foreign king after Alexander, who carried Greek arms into the interior of India.
- He made **Sakala** his capital. Demetrius I soon took control of Gandhara and Taxila. He made Taxila his advance base.
- **Demetrius II** was put in charge of territories between the Hindukush and the Indus.
- **Demetrius I** sent two sections of his armies for further conquest. One section was sent to Patliputra and the other section southward down to Indus.

### Menander (165 -145 BC)

- He was the most famous Indo-Greek king. He had his capital at Sakala and during his rule, the Indo-Greek power extended from the Swat valley to Punjab as far as the Ravi river.
- Menander is best known from the Pali work **Milinda Panho** (*Question of Milinda*), which is in the form of a dialogue between Milinda, the king of Sakala (Sialkot) and Nagasena (*Buddhist scholar*).

### Scythians

- The Satrapal form of government received a fresh impetus during the Scythian rule in India, the chief feature of which was the system of joint rule of a Mahasatrapa and a Satrap i.e., joint rule of Rajan and Yuvaraja.
- The title **Satrap** means (*protector of the kingdom*). It was the Achaemenid conquerors of North-Western India, who first introduced the Satrapa system of government. However, it was under the Kushanas that this system of government got well established.

### The Kshaharata Family

- **Bhumaka** was the first Satrap of the Kshaharata family.
- **Nahapana** succeeded Bhumaka.
- It appears from the Nasik inscription that the power of Nahapana was crushed by the Satavahana ruler, Gautamiputra Satakarni.
- The Kshaharata were succeeded by the Saka family of the Kardamakas with its centre at Ujjain.

### The Kardamaka Family

- **Chastana** was the first ruler of this line.

### The Shakas (90BC - AD 100)

- The Greeks were followed by the Shakas, who controlled a much greater part of India than the Greeks. *There were five branches of the Shakas with their seats of power:*
- (i) Afghanistan      (ii) Punjab      (iii) Mathura
- (iv) Western India      (v) Upper Deccan

### Rudradaman I

- He was the most famous shaka ruler.
- The **Junagarh inscription** testifies that Rudradaman twice defeated Satakarni, the lord of the Deccan, but spared his life because of family relation.
- The same inscription makes a mention of repair of Sudarsana lake of Saurashtra by Rudradaman Governor in Saurashtra, Sutivashakh, the expense was borne completely by the king's exchequer.
- His Junagarh/Girnar inscription, AD 150 is the first inscription in chaste sanskrit. According to Junagarh inscription, Rudradaman had matrimonial alliances with the Satavahanas of the Deccan, the Ikshvakus of Andhra and the Lichchhavis of Vaishali.
- Rudradaman was succeeded by Damaghada I, Rudrasimha I, Jivadaman, Rudrasena I, Sanghadaman and Damasena.

### Parthians (247 BC - AD 224)

- The rule of the Saka and Parthians was simultaneous in different pockets of North-Western and Northern India. The Parthians originated in Iran. The first member of this line was **Vonones**.
- **Gondophernes** was however the greatest Indo-Parthian monarch. He ruled from AD 19-45 (based on Takht-i-Bahi inscription).

### Shaka Era

Shaka Era, was adopted by the Indian Government as the Indian national calendar. Its zero year begins near the vernal equinox of the year 78. Shaka calendar begins on 22nd March every year except in leap years when it starts on 23rd March.

### Archaeological Sources of the Shaka-Parthian Rule

- Rajawal's Mathura lion capital pillar inscription
- Shoddas Mathura land grants inscription
- Nahapana's Nasik cave inscription
- Ushavadatta's Nasik cave inscription
- Nahapana's Junagarh inscription
- Rudradaman's Andhra inscription
- Rudradaman's Girnar inscription
- Gondophernes Takht-i-Bahi inscription

### Kushanas

- In the beginning of the 1st century BC, the *Yuehchis* gave up their nomadic habits and divided themselves into 5 groups or principalities.

- **Kujula Kadphises I** (King one of the 5 principalities) organised the other 4 groups under his leadership. Kadphises I only issued copper coins which show roman influence.
- **Vima Kadphises** also known as *Yen Kao Chan*, succeeded his father. He adopted the title Maheshwar and ruled from AD 64-78.

### Kanishka

- Kanishka is usually regarded as the successor of Vima Kadphises. **Kanishka** is regarded as the greatest king of his dynasty. He is credited for starting the Saka era. This era beginning AD 78 also came to be described as the 'Sakakala' or 'Saka-Nripa-Kala'.
- His Sarnath inscription suggests that his rule was based on Satrapa system. Kanishka ruled from his capital Purushapura or Peshawar. This has been testified by Hiuen Tsang. Kanishka established a city named Kanishkapura in Kashmir.
- On the advice of Parsva, he convened the fourth Council of the Buddhists at Kundalavana vihara in Kashmir whose President was Vasumitra and Vice-President was Asvaghosha. The council prepared an encyclopedia of Buddhist philosophy called *Mahavibhasa*.
- Kanishka got a stupa, a matha and a town constructed at Peshawar, in which relics of Buddha were kept.
- Kanishka was a great patron of art and letters. The reign of Kanishka witnessed the execution of the best work in Gandhara style.
- The great tower at Peshawar (400 ft high) was chiefly made of wood and constructed under the supervision of a Greek engineer Agesilous. Kanishka built a tower near Taxila also.
- During his reign, the images of Bodhisattvas began to be erected in Gandhara style. At Mathura, we have a headless image of Kanishka, in which he is represented in the uniform of a warrior.
- The Buddhist writer : Nagarjuna, Asvaghosha, Parsva and Vasumitra lived at his court. Charaka, the exponent of Ayurveda was his court physician and Matara was his minister.

### Successors of Kanishka

- Kanishka's successor was **Vasishka** (AD 101-105).
- **Huvishka** succeeded Vasishka and according to Kalhana's Rajatarangini, Huvishka ruled simultaneously with Vasishka II or Vajheska (*Father of Kanishka II*) and later with Kanishka II.
- **Huvishka** founded the **town of Huvishkapura** in Kashmir (reference from Rajatarangini).
- His coins contained figures of Skandakumara, Visakha, Mahasena and Uma, the Alexandrian Serapis, personified

Rome, the Greek Heracles and several Zoroastrian deities. He transferred the capital from Purushapura to Mathura.

- **Vasudeva** was the last king of the dynasty. He assumed the title *Shaono Shao Vasudevo koshana*. His coins bear the image of Shiva and his bull *Nandi*.

### Impact of Central Asian Contact

The Kushana kings were the first to issue gold coins in India on a wide scale. The Central Asian conquerors imposed their rule on numerous petty native princes; this led to the development of a feudatory organisation. The Shakas and the Kushanas strengthened the idea of the divine origin kingship.

Manu asks the people to respect the king even if he is a child. Some curious practices like hereditary dual rule were introduced, implying less of centralisation. The Greeks also introduced the practice of military governorship called *strategos*.

### Post-Mauryan Economy

- The period 200 BC-AD 300 was the most flourishing period in the history of crafts and commerce in ancient India.
- The chief articles of export from India were spices, perfumes, pearls, copper and sandalwood. The principal imports were cloth, glass, silver and gold. India's most lucrative foreign trade was with the roman Empire. Mathura was a great centre for the manufacture of a special type of cloth, Shataka other centres were Bengal, Varanasi, Gujarat and Gandhara.
- Artisans of this period were organised into at least 24 guilds. These guilds acted as bankers, financiers and trustees. They helped in making banking a widespread profession.
- The gold dinars and suvarna of Kushanas were of 124 grains and were based on roman denorices.
- A Greek sailor, Hippalus discovered the monsoon sea route to India from West Asia in AD 46-47.

### Coins by Vima Kadphises

He proclaimed himself as Mahishvara on his coins. He was probably the first king to introduce coins of gold in India. All his coins show unmistakable signs of his Shiva affiliation. The reverse side of his coins depicts Shiva with his long trident, sometimes accompanied by his bull. The obverse of his coins represent him on a couch or standing at sacrificing altar or even riding a chariot drawn by two horses.

Abundance of coins issued by him indicated large extent of his empire and economic prosperity. The abundance of gold and copper coins issued by Vima Kadphises represents the monarch riding a chariot drawn by two horses.

## Post-Mauryan Society and Religion

- Social laws were becoming rigid. *Manusmriti* was composed in 2nd century BC. Varna system existed in theory only. Brahmins continued to corner many privileges. Untouchability and slavery continued. Sudras were divided into Nirvasita and Anirvasita. Position of women was low. There are references of Sati in Ramayana and Mahabharata. Increased commercial activity led to proliferation of art and craft.
- Buddhism** tend to decline in this period. The Buddhist order moved away from the common people and isolated itself.
- Monks now received gold and silver, non-vegetarian food and elaborate robes. Discipline became so slack that some even left the Sangha and resumed the householder's life. By the beginning of the Christian era, images of the Buddha began to be worshipped.
- Brahmanism** period saw the revival of Brahmanism and it assumed the features which today are recognised as Hinduism.
- The concept of trinity of Gods—Brahma, Vishnu, Maheswara; epic heroes Rama, Krishna; doctrines of Karma and transmigration, gained importance. Many interpolations were made, the most important being the 'Bhagavad Gita'.
- Jainism** maintained itself as a parish religion with more determination than Buddhism, hence survived in India.
- Christianity** entered into India during the AD 1st century by way of the trading ships from the West. St. Thomas led two Christian Missions to India.

## Post-Mauryan Art

- Besides, the sculptural art form, the construction of Stupas, Chaityas and Viharas assumed popularity.

## Gandhara School of Art

- The influence of this art was mainly hellenistic in context of style and Buddhist in context of religion. *Certain distinctive features of this art were as follows:*
  - **Realistic representation** of human figure (it is the hallmark of this art form) clearly indicating limbs and other organs of body, i.e. the representation was prototype of human body.
  - In realistic representation, the **anatomical accuracy** was emphasised.
  - Distinguished muscles constituted a distinctive part of the images made under this art.
  - The hairstyle was curly, which represents Greek influence.
  - The drapery was transparent and here we find a beautiful harmony between the drapery and physical features of human body.
  - One excellent example was the Bamiyan Buddha of Afghanistan.

## Mathura School of Art

- The chief patron of this art form were Kushanas and chief material was white spotted red sandstone. *Some distinctive features of this art were as follows :*
  - Images were grand and solid, the masculine beauty was discernible and body was firm.
  - The eroticism is discernible in the images which was given beautiful expression through physical features.
  - The images also show a religious influence. Spirituality was expressed in the images. Halo was used which represented a spiritualistic feelings.
  - We also find images of the Brahmanical God and Goddesses such as Shiva, Lakshmi, Surya, Balrama, Vishnu, Kubera etc.
  - The earliest images of Buddha and Bodhisattvas are found in this school. The Buddha was portrayed as head and face shaven; right hand in Abhaya posture and tight dress. Image started getting fashioned in round, so that they could be seen from every side.
  - Various images of Jaina Tirthankara such as crossed legged naked Tirthankara like Rishabhaatha, Parshavanath etc are associated with this school.
  - The Kushanas king such as Kanishka and Vim Kadphises were shown in Central Asian dress. Important finding is the headless image of Kanishka from Mathura.
  - This art form to some extent influenced Amravati School of Art.
  - Mathura school also produced the beautiful images of Yaksha and Yakshini, produced beautiful female figure and these figure's being very remarkable. Hellenistic/Greek influence was absent.

## Amravati School of Art

- Its patrons were Satavahanas and Ikshvakus. The main centres were Nagarjunakonda, Ghantasala, Amravati, Jaggayyapeta etc. Chief material used was **white marble**. The principle influence in this case was of Buddhist themes. Physical beauty was elegantly expressed in images. Images shows sensual expressions.
- It focuses upon human beings, but representation was narrative rather than individualistic. The kings, princes etc were represented through images. But this representation does not focus upon the individual presence of kings or princes. Rather king was associated with various activities and shown in a group. Notable achievements were the female figure in different moods and poses.

## Scholars of the Period

**Ashvaghosha** 'Saund Aranand', 'Buddhacharita', 'Sariputra', 'Prakarana' and 'Vijrasuchi'.

**Nagarjuna** Also known as **Indian Einstein** for propounding the **Theory of Relativity** in his book 'Prajana Paramita Sutra Sastra'.

**Vasumitra** Book on Buddhist philosophy titled 'Mavibhasa Shastra'. 'Charak Samhita'.

**Charak** Book on grammar 'Mahabhasya'.

**Patanjali** 'Brihat Katha' in Paisachi dialect.

**Gunadhyा** 'Gathasap tasati'.

**Hala** 'Katantra'. (Sanskrit Grammar)

**Sarvaraman** 'Katantra'. (Sanskrit Grammar)

**Bhasa** Swapna Vasavadatta', 'Ravanabadh', 'Vrubhang'. (Sanskrit play).

# Self Check

# Build Your Confidence

- 1.** With reference to the invaders in ancient India, which one of the following is the correct chronological order? [IAS 2006]

  - Greeks, Sakas, Kushanas
  - Greeks, Kushanas, Sakas
  - Sakas, Greeks, Kushanas
  - Sakas, Kushanas, Greeks

**2.** Which one of the following sculptures was invariably used green schist as the medium? [IAS 1996]

  - Maurya sculptures
  - Mathura sculptures
  - Bharhut sculptures
  - Gandhara sculptures

**3.** Which of the following pairs are correctly matched?

|                          |   |               |            |
|--------------------------|---|---------------|------------|
| <b>1.</b> Mrichchhatikam | : | Shudraka      | [IAS 1998] |
| 2. Buddhacharital        | : | Vasubandhu    |            |
| 3. Mudraraksha           | : | Vishakhadatta |            |
| 4. Harshacharita         | : | Banabhatta    |            |

**Codes**

  - 2 and 3
  - 1, 3 and 4
  - 1 and 4
  - All of these

**4.** Consider the following statements [IAS 2003]

  - The last Mauryan ruler, Brihadratha was assassinated by his Commander-in-Chief, Pushyamitra Sunga.
  - The last Sunga king, Devabhuti was assassinated by his Brahmana minister Vasudeva Kanya who usurped the throne.
  - The last ruler of the Kanya dynasty was deposed by the Andheas.

**Which of the statements given above is/are correct?**

  - 1 and 2
  - Only 2
  - Only 3
  - All of these

**5.** What is the chronological sequence of the Satavahana rulers given below?

  - Gautamiputra Satakarni, Yajna Sri Satakarni, Hala, Pulumai-II.
  - Pulumai-II, Hala, Gautamiputra Satakarni, Yajnasri Satakarni
  - Hala, Gautamiputra Satakarni, Pulumai-II Yajnasri Satakarni
  - Pulumai-II, Yajnasri Satakarni, Hala, Gautamiputra Satakarni.

**6.** Consider the following statements

  - The Indo-Greeks were the first to issue gold coins.
  - The Indo-Greeks were the first who issued coins in their names.

**Which of the statements given above is/are correct?**

  - Only 1
  - Only 2
  - Both 1 and 2
  - Neither 1 nor 2

**7.** Consider the following statements about the Mathura School of Art.

  - The Hellenistic Greek influence was much more in this art.
  - Aristocratic elements to some extent were present in the Mathura art.

**Which of the statements given above is/are correct?**

  - Only 1
  - Only 2
  - Both 1 and 2
  - Neither 1 nor 2

**8.** Nasik inscription is related to

  - Yajna Sri Satakarni
  - Gautami Balashri
  - King Kharvela
  - None of these

**9.** Heliodorus, a Greek ambassador came to India in the reign of

  - Pushyamitra
  - King Kharvela
  - Bhagabhadra
  - Kanishka

**10.** Who was the Kushana ruler who called himself as 'Maheshwar'?

  - Kujula Kadphises
  - Wima Kadphises
  - Kanishka
  - Huvishka

**11.** Consider the following statements about Post-Mauryan period.

  - Pulumavi II (Satavahana king) founded the town of Navanagar.
  - Yajna Satakarni, (Satavahana king) was described as Trismudrapati by Bana.
  - The office of Amatya and Pratiha appears first in the inscription of Satavahana.

**Which of the statements given above is/are correct?**

  - 1 and 2
  - 2 and 3
  - 1 and 3
  - All of these

**12.** Who patronised Mathura Art and built a Stupa at Purushpur?

  - Kujula Kadphises
  - Rudradaman
  - Wima Kadphises
  - Moga

**13.** The capital of Satavahanas was located at [IAS 2005]

  - Amravati
  - Paithan
  - Naldurg
  - Durg

**14.** Who among the following scholars were contemporary of Kanishka? [IAS 2012]

  - Ashvaghosha
  - Nagarjuna
  - Vasumitra
  - Chanakya

**Select the correct answer using the codes given below**

  - 1 and 2
  - 3 and 4
  - 2 and 4
  - 1, 2 and 3



1. (a)      2. (d)      3. (b)      4. (d)      5. (c)      6. (b)      7. (b)      8. (b)      9. (c)      10. (b)  
11. (b)      12. (c)      13. (b)      14. (d)

# Chapter nine

# The Gupta Age

## (AD 320-500)

*The Gupta dynasty came to power in India in AD 320 and ruled until 550. The Gupta empire gave power to local leaders, united much of the Indian subcontinent and ensured peace and prosperity. It was defined by creativity, flourishing arts, fabulous literature and stupendous scholars are just a few of the things that marked the period.*

*The Gupta age is also called as the Classical Age.*

### Historical Sources

#### Literary Sources

- Devichandraguptam of Vishakhadatta, literary works of Kalidasa, Mrichchhatikam of Shudraka, Kamasutra of Vatsyayana and Nitisara of Kamandaka throws light on the Gupta empire.

#### Fa-Hien's Account

- Fa-Hien was a Chinese Buddhist monk.
- He visited India during the reign of *Chandragupta II Vikramaditya*. He wrote his experiences in his book named Fu-Kuo-Ki. He gave detailed description of the administration of the Gupta empire.
- Fa-Hien tells us that the Chandalas lived separately from the other people. When they entered a city or a bazar, they were required to strike a piece of wood as warning of their approach so that other people may not be polluted.
- He was impressed by the city of Patliputra and the palace of Ashoka.

#### Archaeological Sources

#### Inscriptions

- *Prayaga Prashasti* of Samudragupta composed by *Harisena* mentions the military campaigns of Samudragupta.
- *Junagarh rock inscription* of Skandagupta mentions repairs carried out for the Sudarsana lake and construction of Vishnu Lakshmi temple.
- *Eran inscription* of Bhanugupta provides first evidence of Sati.

### Gupta Dynasty

#### Srigupta

- The Gupta dynasty was founded by Srigupta in the AD 3rd century. He used the title of *Maharaja*.

#### Ghatotkachagupta

- He succeeded Srigupta. He also took the title of *Maharaja*.

#### Chandragupta I

(AD 319-335)

- Ghatotkacha was succeeded by his son Chandragupta I (in about AD 320), who assumed the title of *Maharaja Dhiraj*. Like Bimbisara he strengthened his position by matrimonial alliance with the Lichchavis-then controlling portions of Bihar and Nepal. He married Lichchavi princess *Kumaradevi*. Special Kumaradevi type coins were minted to commemorate her marriage to Chandragupta I.
- Chandragupta I started the Gupta Era in AD 319, which marked the date of his accession.

#### Samudragupta

(AD 335-375)

- Samudragupta has been called the *Indian Napoleon* by VA Smith because of his extensive military conquests. He assumed the titles of *Vikramanka* and *Kaviraja*.
- Virasen was his commander in chief during Southern campaign. Vasubandhu, a famous Buddhist scholar was his minister.

- He subjugated five kingdoms in lower Bengal, upper Assam, Nepal and the territories farther West as well as number of republican clans.
- Samudragupta also advanced through the forest tract of Madhya Pradesh to the coast of Orissa and then moved up to Kanchi, the capital of Pallavas.
- Some **coins** of the Samudragupta represent him as playing on the Veena. He also performed Asvamedha sacrifice.
- He was a devotee of Vishnu though a follower of the Brahmanical religion, he was tolerant of other faiths he granted permission to the Buddhist King of Ceylon, Meghavarman, to build a monastery at Bodh Gaya.

## Chandragupta II (AD 380-412)

- Samudragupta was succeeded by Chandragupta II around AD 375. However, some historians put **Ramagupta** between Samudragupta and Chandragupta II.
- In the play *Devichandraguptam* of Visakhadatta, Ramagupta is the elder brother of Chandra Gupta II. It was during the rule of **Ramagupta** that Shakas attacked Gupta Empire. Finding his position precarious, Ramagupta agreed to surrender Queen Dhruvadevi to a Shaka ruler.
- Chandragupta II objected to it and saved the honour of the family by killing the Shaka chief and rescuing Dhruvadevi. He later on married her. However, the Gupta records do not refer to Ramagupta.
- Political marriages** occupied a prominent place in the foreign policy of the Guptas. Chandragupta II followed the same policy when he conciliated the Naga chieftains of the upper and central provinces by accepting the hand of the princess **Kubernaga** and allied himself with the powerful family of the Vakatakas of the Deccan by marrying his daughter Prabhavati with Rudrasena II.
- He issued silver coins (first Gupta ruler to issue silver coins) and adopted the title **Vikramaditya** and **Sakari** in memory of his victory.
- The Mehrauli iron pillar inscription near Qutub Minar enumerates the exploits of a king called **Chandra**.
- During his reign the Chinese pilgrim **Fa-Hein** (399-414) visited India.

### Navratnas in Chandragupta II's Court

Chandragupta II is credited with maintaining in his court 9 Luminaries or great scholars viz., Kalidas, Amarsimha, Dhanvantri, Varahamihira, Vararuchi (Vartika-a comment on Ashtadhyayi), Ghatakarna, Kshapranak, Velabhatt and Shanku.

## Kumaragupta I (AD 415-455)

- He performed the Ashwamedha sacrifice. But in the last years of Kumara Gupta I, the peace and prosperity of the empire was disturbed due to internal dissensions and external invasions. Among the chief enemies were the new invaders called **Hunas**. His son Skandagupta managed to defeat the Hunas as this mentioned in Bhitari inscription and Junagarh inscription of Skandagupta. Kumara Gupta I is said to have founded **Nalanda University**.

## Skandagupta (AD 455-467)

- He repulsed the ferocious Hunas attacks twice. The Heroic Act gave him the title **Vikramaditya**. (*Bhitari Pillar Inscription*). The empire continued but central control weakened and local Governors became feudatory kings with hereditary rights. To the West of Varanasi, the Gupta emperors now exercised little more than titular control. In his religious outlook, Skanda Gupta was a Vaishnava, but followed the tolerant policy of his predecessors. He repaired the Junagarh lake in Gujarat.

## Successors of Skandagupta

- The line of succession after Skandagupta is uncertain. **Purugupta**, a son of Kumaragupta by the chief queen, ruled for sometime and was succeeded by his son **Budhagupta** whose earliest known as date is AD 477 and the latest AD 495. But, a king named **Kumaragupta** II is known as to have reigned in **AD 474**. This indicates internal dissension which continued after the end of Budha Gupta's reign. **Narsimhgupta** and Kumargupta III were the last two Gupta kings.

### Titles Adopted by Gupta Kings

| Kings           | Titles  |
|-----------------|---|
| Srigupta        | Maharaja  |
| Ghatotkacha     | Maharaja  |
| Chandragupta I  | Maharaja Dhiraj   |
| Samudragupta    | Kaviraja (Prayag Prasasti), Aswamedha Prakaraman (on coins) Vikram (on coins) Param Bhagvat (Nalanda copper plate); Sarva-raj-ochch chetta i.e. Uprooter of all kings (on coins only ruler with this title) and Allahabad pillar inscriptions mention the title Dharma Prachar Bandhu i.e. he was upholder of Brahmanical religion. |
| Chandragupta II | Vikramaditya, Sakari Devagupta or Deva Shri or Devaraja, Narendra Chandra Singh Vikram, Param Bhagvata etc.   |
| Kumaragupta     | Mahendraditya, Shakraditya  |
| Skandagupta     | Vikramaditya, Karamaditya, Param Bhagvat, (on coins); Shakropama (Kahaum Pillar inscription); Devaraja, (Arya Manjushri Mula Kalpa).  |

### Hunas Rule in India

For some 30 years, from AD 500 onwards, Western India was in the hands of the Hunas, two of whom, Toramana and his son Mihirakula, were apparently mighty monarchs and had advanced up to Gwalior and Eran (Madhya Pradesh).

Mihirakula is remembered by Hiuen Tsang as a fierce persecutor of Buddhism. In Kashmir, one of the centres of his power, memories of his sadistic tyranny were still alive in the 12th century, when they were recorded by the historian Kalhana.

## Gupta Administration

### Central Administration

- Though, the king possessed extensive powers, he did not rule in a tyrannical manner. A Council of Ministers and several civil officials assisted the king. The most important officers in the Gupta empire were the *Kumaramatyas*.
- The royal seal bore the imprint of *Garuda*. Started in the Deccan by the Satavahanas, the practice of granting land and fiscal administrative concessions to priests and administrators became regular affairs in the Gupta times.
- A new office of *Sandhivigrahaka* first appears under the Gupta ruler Samudragupta. He was the minister of peace and war. *Harisena* held this title.

#### Important Officials at the Central Level

| Officers                           | Departments  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Mahabaladhirita                    | Commander-in-Chief                                   |
| Maha-dand-anayak                   | Chief Justice  |
| Mahapratihar                       | An official to maintain the royal palace             |
| Mahasandhivigrahak/ Sandhivigrahak | An official for post-war conciliation                |
| Dandapashika                       | Head of the police department                        |
| Bhandagaradhikreta                 | Head of the Royal Treasury                           |
| Mahapaksha-Patalik                 | Head of the account department                       |
| Vinaysthitisansathapak             | Head of the education department                     |
| Sarvadhyaksha                      | Inspector for all the central departments            |
| Mahashwapati                       | Controller of cavalry                                |
| Mahamaipilupati                    | Controller and executor of elephant force            |
| Vinaypura                          | Official to present different guests at king's court |
| Yukta purusha                      | Office to keep account of war booty                  |
| Khadyatpakiya                      | Inspector of royal kitchen                           |
| Ranabhandagarika                   | Officer-in-charge of Army stores                     |
| Mahanarpati                        | Head of foot soldiers (Infantry)                     |
| Mahakartakrtika                    | Department of works and building                     |

### Provincial and Local Administration

- The empire was divided into *Bhuktis* headed by Uparika, Bhuktis into districts called *Vishayas* head by Vishyapati, Vishayas into *Vithis* and Vithis into *villages*.

### City Administration

- Paura was the council responsible for city administration. It included President of the city corporation, chief representative of the guild of merchants, a representative of the artisans and the Chief Accountant. Unlike the Mauryas, city committee was not appointed by the government under the Guptas. It comprised of local representatives.

### Judiciary

- For the first time civil and criminal law were clearly defined and demarcated. The king acted as the fountain head of justice and decided all disputes in general, punishments were light and mild.
- The supreme judicial power was vested to the king. He was assisted by the Mahadandanayaka (*Chief Justice*).

### Army

- The king's standing army was supplemented by the forces occasionally supplied by the feudatories. Senabhakta was a form of tax i.e. the army was to be fed by the people whenever, it passed through the countryside. Forced labour or Vishti was also practiced in royal army.
- Horse archery became prominent in military tactics.
- Chariots receded into background and cavalry came to the forefront.

### Gupta Economy

- Land revenue which was the chief source was generally fixed at one-sixth of the produce. Compared to the earlier period, we notice a decline in long distance trade. South-East Asia gained importance as a centre for Indian trade. Ports on West coast to trade with Mediterranean and West Asia were Bharoach, Chaul, Kalyan and Cambay. Ports on East coast to trade with South-East Asia were Tamralipti, Ghantashala and Kandura.
- Vishti (Forced Labour) was considered a source of income for the state.

### Taxes Levied During the Guptas

| Tax Names            | Tax Specifics                          |
|----------------------|--|
| Klipta/Upkilsta      | Sales tax and Purchase tax             |
| Halivakara/Halidanda | Tax on ploughing                       |
| Bali                 | An additional oppressive tax on people |
| Pratyaya             | Toll tax                               |
| Bhog                 | King's share of produce                |
| Bhag Bhagkar         | Combination of Bhog and Bhaga          |
| Bhatta               | Police tax                             |
| Chat                 | Security tax                           |
| Chakrasana           | Grazing tax                            |
| Hiranya              | Tax on special produce taken in cash   |
| Udakabhaga           | May be water tax                       |
| Uparikara            | Tax collected from all subjects        |
| Taradaya             | Tax on navigation                      |
| Rajju                | Tax for measurement of land            |
| Sarvarishtia         | Forced tax                             |
| Bedakbhog            | Irrigation tax                         |
| Uparnik              | Tax taken from border area             |
| Bhoga                | General tribute                        |

### Agriculture

- According to Paharpur, copper plate inscription of Buddhagupta, state was the exclusive owner of land. Poona plates of Prabhavatigupta refers to the land survey conducted during this period.
- Pustapala was the officer incharge for maintaining records of all land transactions. During Gupta, land grants (*Agarhara and Devagrahara grants*) also included transfer of royal rights over salt and mines, which were earlier states monopoly during Mauryas.

### Types of Land

| Land Names          | Land Uses       |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| 1. Kshetra Bhoomi   | Cultivable land |
| 2. Khila            | Wasteland       |
| 3. VastuBhoomi      | Habitable land  |
| 4. Charaghah Bhoomi | Pasture land    |
| 5. Aprahata Bhoomi  | Forest land     |

### Coinage System

- The Guptas issued the largest number of gold coins, which were called *Dinaras* in their inscriptions, but they were not a common currency. After the conquest of Gujarat, the Gupta issued a good number of silver coins, mainly for local exchange.
- Cowries, according to Fa-Hein, became a common medium of exchange. In contrast to those of the Kushanas, the Gupta copper coins are very few.

### Coins Issued by Gupta Kings

| Kings           | Types of Coin  |
|-----------------|--|
| Chandragupta I  | Kumaradevi type  |
| Samudragupta    | Dhanurdhari-Archer, Garud; Axe; Ashvamedha; Vyaghra-anam (tiger killing type); Veenavadan (playing flute).     |
| Chandragupta II | Ashvarohi, Chhatrahari, Chakra-Vikram type etc.  |
| Kumaragupta     | Gajarohi, Kadgadhari, Sinh-nihanta, Khang-nihanta (i.e. rhinocerous slayer), Kartikeya and Apratighmudra type. |
| Skandagupta     | Archer, Standard, Lion slayer, Swordsman, Horseman.  |

### Gupta Society

- The Brahmanas became richer because of land grants and claimed many privileges which are listed in the Narada smriti AD 5th century). There was a great increase in the number of castes and sub-castes with the large-scale absorption of foreigners and tribal's.
- The position of the Shudras improved slightly; they were permitted to listen to the epics and Puranas, to worship a new God called *Krishna* and to perform certain domestic rites such as probably paying fees to the priests.
- Shudras were now considered as agriculturists rather than servants and slaves. *There were four types of retired forest life in this period:*
  - (i) **Audambara** Men who took their wives along with them, but observed strict celibacy.
  - (ii) **Vaisanchi** Men who did not accompanied with their wives.
  - (iii) **Balakhilya** Life free of mental attachments to the world.
  - (iv) **Hermits** Who led a very strict life?

### Position of Women

- In the Gupta period, women were also allowed to listen to the epics and the Puranas and to worship Krishna. But women of higher orders did not have access to independent sources to livelihood in pre-Gupta and Gupta times.
- They lacked property right. However, the gifts of jewellery, ornaments, garments and similar other presents made to the bride on the occasion of her marriage were considered her property. Gupta and post-Gupta law books substantially enlarged the scope of these gifts which were known as *Stridhana*.
- Katyayana, a law-giver of the 6th century, holds that she could sell and mortgage her immovable property alongwith her Stridhana. This clearly implies that women received shares in landed property, but generally a daughter was not allowed to inherit landed property in the patriarchal communities of India.

## Religious Life

- Buddhism no longer received royal patronage. Importance of Vishnu increased. Idol worship in the temples became a common feature of Hinduism from the Gupta period onwards. Religious toleration was, however, prevalent. The Shakti cult gave rise to consorts to Gods and Goddesses like Lakshmi, Parvati and Durga and etc appeared. Tantricism also became popular in the 5th century.
- The schools of Hindu philosophy were enunciated in this period. By the AD 4th century *Bhagavad-Gita* was finally compiled, which taught devotion to Lord *Krishna* and stressed the performance of the functions assigned to each Varna. Hence fourth, the concept of Bhakti developed; worship superseded sacrifice.

## Gupta Art and Crafts

- In art, architecture, sculpture, painting and terracotta figurines, the Gupta period witnessed unprecedented activities and development all over India. That is why, the period is also referred to as the *Golden Age of Ancient India*.
- The brick temples of the Gupta period include those of Bhitargaon in Kanpur, Bhitari in Ghazipur and Deogarh in Jhansi. The *Buddhist University at Nalanda* was set-up in the 5th century.
- An over 2m high bronze image of the Buddha has been recovered from *Sultanganj* near *Bhagalpur*. Of the stupas built during this period, the one at Mirpur Khas in Sind and Dhamekh at Sarnath deserve mention. Of the tall Stupa of Sarnath near Varanasi, now little more than the inner core remains.
- The rock-cut architecture of the period is represented by the two conventional types - the Chaityas and the Vihara. They are mostly found at *Ajanta*, *Ellora*, *Bagh* and *Udaigiri caves* of Orissa. The most characteristic feature of the Chaitya is its emphasis on the colossal image of Buddha seated between two standing attendants. The Vihara was planned in the form of rows of cells round a central court. The most numerous Viharas are to be found at Ajanta.
- Gupta age marks the beginning of the main style of temples architecture in India namely the *Nagara style* and *Dravida Style*. The finest example of temple architecture is the Dasavatara temple at Deogarh. It is also an example of early stone temple with a Shikara. It has a square garbhagriha with exquisitely carved doorway. Other examples of temple architecture are Parvati temple at *Nachna Kuthara*, Shiva temple at *Koh*, Cave temple at *Udaigiri* etc.

## Famous Temples of the Gupta Age

| Temples             | Locations                    |
|---------------------|------------------------------|
| Vishnu Temple       | Tigawa ( <i>Jabalpur</i> )   |
| Shiva Temple        | Bhumara ( <i>Nagaud</i> )    |
| Parvati Temple      | Nachna Kuthara               |
| Dasavtar Temple     | Deogarh ( <i>Jhansi</i> )    |
| Shiva Temple        | Koh ( <i>Nagaud</i> )        |
| Bhitargaon Temple   | Bhitargaon                   |
| Lakshman Temple     | Kanpur ( <i>Brick made</i> ) |
| Lakshman Temple     | Sirpur ( <i>Raipur</i> )     |
| Mukund Darra Temple | Kota                         |
| Jarasangh's Sitting | Rajagriha ( <i>Bihar</i> )   |

## Literature of Gupta Period

| Subjects            | Writers        | Works  |
|---------------------|----------------|--|
| Drama               | Kalidasa       | Vikramovarshiya<br>Malavikagnimitram<br>Raghuvamsa<br>Ritusamharam<br>Meghadutam   |
|                     | Bhasa          | Abhigyan Shakuntalam<br>Swapnavasavadatta<br>Charudatta<br>Pratignayaugandharayana |
|                     | Vishakhadatta  | Mudrarakshasa<br>Devichandraguptam   |
|                     | Shudraka       | Mrichchakatika   |
|                     | Harisena       | Prayag Prasasti  |
| Grammar             | Dandin         | Kavyadarshana  |
|                     | Amarsimha      | Amarakosha   |
|                     | Chandragomin   | Chandravyakarana   |
| Narrative Story     | Vishnu Sharma  | Panchatantra<br>Hito Padesha   |
|                     | Dandin         | Dasakumarcharita   |
| Philosophy          | Ishwar Krishna | Sankhyakarika<br>( <i>Sankhya Philosophy</i> )                                     |
|                     | Prashastipada  | Dharmasangraha<br>( <i>Vai Sheshika Philosophy</i> )                               |
|                     | Acharya Vyasa  | Vyasa Bhasya<br>( <i>Yoga Philosophy</i> )   |
|                     | Vatsayana      | Nyaya Bhashya<br>( <i>Nyaya Philosophy</i> )                                       |
|                     | Vatsayana      | Kamasutra  |
| Miscellaneous Works | Bhamah         | Kavyalankara   |
|                     | Bharavi        | Kiratarjuniya  |

### Ajanta Paintings

The greatest specimen of Buddhist Art in Gupta times is provided by Ajanta paintings. They depict the various events in the life of Gautama Buddha and previous Buddha's, of Jataka stories.

Bagh caves had the folk culture as the basic theme. The paintings in the cave numbers 9 and 10 belong to the 1st and 2nd century BC. Cave number 10 belongs to the early Gupta Age, approximately AD 350. Painting in the cave numbers 617 and 19 belong to the later period approx to AD 650.

Paintings of the cave numbers 1 and 2 belong to the post-Gupta period. The finest examples of paintings of this period are found in the rock-cut cave numbers 1, 16 and 19 at Ajanta. The wall painting of the Bodhisattva in cave 1 is the finest example of Gupta Art. The outstanding examples are the frescoes or wall-paintings.

## Science and Technology

### Physics

- They knew the existence of atoms and molecules even before the Greeks. *Vaisesika school* elaborated the atomic theory.
- Brahmagupta* (later 6th and early 7th centuries) anticipated *Newton* by declaring that "All things fall to Earth by law of nature", for it is the nature of the Earth to attract things.

### Chemistry

There was great development in Metallurgy with large-scale production of various metals like gold, silver, copper, iron, brass and other alloys. Post-Mauryan period steel products were exported to the West. Gupta period copper statue of Buddha from Sultanganj and Iron pillar of Mehrauli at Delhi are finest examples.

### Mathematics

- Indians made three distinct contributions regarding notation system, decimal system and zero usage.
- Indian Notation System* was adopted by Arabs and numerals are called *Arabic* in *English*. They are found in Ashokan inscriptions.

- Indians were the first to use the *decimal system*. Earliest epigraphic evidence in AD 5th century. The famous mathematician *Aryabhatta* was acquainted with it.
- Zero** was discovered by Indians in 2nd century BC. Alberuni says that it was *Brahmagupta*, who gave zero its status in mathematics.
- Knowledge of *Geometry* is reflected in the Sulvasutras of 5th century BC. Aryabhatta (*Surya Siddhanta*) formulated the rule for finding out the area of a triangle which led to the origin of *Trigonometry*.

### Astronomy

- Jyotisha Vedanga* (500 BC) is the earliest source dealing exclusively with astronomy. It contains rules for calculating the position of new and full Moon amongst the 27 *Nakshatras*.
- Aryabhatta* explained the true cause of solar and lunar eclipses, stated the Sun is stationary and the Earth rotates around the Sun. He gave the value of  $\pi = 3.1416$ , he stated that the Earth was spherical in shape in his book called *Aryabhattiya* (AD 499).
- Varahamihira* in his book *Brihat Samhita* (AD 6th century) stated that the Moon rotates round the Earth and the Earth rotates around the Sun.

### Medicine

- Hymns in Atharvaveda associated with *Ayurveda*. *Charaksamhita* of Charaka (AD 100) refers to various diseases with cure and treatments also about prevention and control through diet.
- Susrutasamhita* of Susruta refers to various kinds of diseases and operation with anaesthesia, surgical instruments, cataract and rhinoplasty etc.

## Decline of the Gupta Empire

- Guptas started declining after the death of Skandagupta. The reason for the end was weak rulers and the rise of Yashodharman in malwa. Threats from the Vakatakas contributed to their decline. Another reason for the decline was the invasion by the Hunas and to face them, there was no large professional army to maintain vast empire.

# Self Check

# Build Your Confidence

- 1.** Who among the following is known as for his work on medicine during the Gupta period? [IAS 1996]  
 (a) Saumilla (b) Sudraka  
 (c) Shaunake (d) Susrutha

**2.** The silver coins issued by the Gupta's were called [IAS 1997]  
 (a) Rupaka (b) Karshapana  
 (c) Divara (d) Pana

**3.** Which one of the following ports handled the North India trade during the Gupta period? [IAS 1999]  
 (a) Tamralipti (b) Broach  
 (c) Kalyan (d) Cambay

**4.** Which of the following was not one of the reasons for general decline of foreign trade during the later Gupta period?  
 (a) Decline and fall of the Roman empire  
 (b) Decline in the quality of goods produced  
 (c) Arabs and Chinese outstripped the Indians in the art of shipbuilding  
 (d) Indian law makers declared it a great sin for a Hindu to travel by sea.

**5.** Among trade routes, which of the following was added to the existing ones during the Gupta period?  
 (a) Overland route to China  
 (b) Overseas route to Alexandria  
 (c) Overseas route to South Africa  
 (d) Overland route to North Russia

**6.** Which one of the following is not true about the Gupta period?  
 (a) It saw the extinction of the Gana-rajyas  
 (b) It saw the beginning of the decline of state authority  
 (c) It saw the emergence of Kayasthas  
 (d) It saw the beginning of the Rajputs as a caste

**7.** Which one of the following is not a Gupta innovation in the field of administration?  
 (a) The office of Sandhivigrahiha  
 (b) Beginning of the process of the devolution of authority  
 (c) Introduction of the office of Pilupati, the commander of elephants  
 (d) The first systematic provincial and local administration

**8.** Which one of the following Gupta kings had to face the first Huna invasion?  
 (a) Kumargupta I (b) Buddhagupta  
 (c) Skandagupta (d) Purugupta

**9.** Which one of the following is not a feature of the society during the Gupta period?  
 (a) Because of the hardening of the Brahmanical attitude towards Varna/Jati system, lower Varna protests became frequent  
 (b) During this period, the Hunas, Gurjars and other foreign tribes were absorbed in the Indian society  
 (c) This period saw the increasing use of cognomens  
 (d) The Kayasthas lost their original official and professional character and became a caste during this period

**10.** Which one of the following is associated with the Gupta Age of Indian History?  
 (a) Significant contribution to Indian astronomy by Aryabhata  
 (b) Significant contribution to poetry and literature by Banabhatta  
 (c) Visit of Chinese pilgrim Hiuen Tsang  
 (d) Macedonian invasion.

**11.** Which one of the following did not act as a check on the authority of the Gupta monarch?  
 (a) The brahmanas  
 (b) The samantas  
 (c) The guilds and corporate bodies  
 (d) Ministers

**12.** Which one of the following is considered as the earliest example of a panchayatana composition in Indian temple architecture?  
 (a) Lakshmaneshvara Temple at Bhuvaneswar  
 (b) The Mahabodhi Temple  
 (c) The Maniyar Matha  
 (d) The Dasharatara Temple at Deogarh

**13.** There are only two known as examples of cave paintings of the Gupta period in ancient India. One of these is paintings of Ajanta caves. Where is the other surviving example of Gupta paintings? [IAS 2010]  
 (a) Bagh caves (b) Ellora caves  
 (c) Lomas Rishi caves (d) Nasik caves

**14.** Chandragupta II, Vikramaditya, was the first Gupta king to issue silver coins. He issued his silver coins on the model of silver coins of  
 (a) Sakas of Western and Central India  
 (b) Punch marked coins  
 (c) King Vikrama of Ujjaini  
 (d) Indo-Greek Kings

**15.** The issue of a large number of gold coins during the Gupta period indicates  
 (a) discovery of new gold mines  
 (b) high inflation rates  
 (c) large inflow of gold due to growth in foreign trade  
 (d) import of gold by the Gupta kings



1. (d)      2. (a)      3. (a)      4. (b)      5. (a)      6. (d)      7. (c)      8. (a)      9. (d)      10. (a)

# Chapter ten

## The Post-Gupta Era

### (AD 550-750)

After the downfall of the Gupta empire in the middle of the 6th century, North India reverted to small republics and small monarchical states.

Harsha united the small republics from Punjab to Central India. In South India, Pallava and Chalukya dynasties fought for supremacy.

#### Ruling Dynasties of North India

- Gupta empire fell to its death in the last leg of 5th century.
- Magadha and its capital patliputra, lost their importance. After the fall of the Guptas, five major centres of power emerged in North India. These powers are given below :

#### The Maukharis

- They held the region of Western Uttar Pradesh around Kannauj had conquered a part of Magadha. *Isanavarman* and his son *Sarvarman* were powerful rulers of this dynasty and had adopted the title of *Maharajadhiraja*.

#### The Maitrakas

- They established a kingdom in Saurashtra with Vallabhi as capital. Under the able guidance of Bhatarka, Vallabhi not only became a seat of learning and culture, but also a centre for trade and commerce.
- Dhruvasena II was the most important ruler of Maitrakas.

#### The Gaudas

- They ruled over a territory in Bengal and were quite lesser known as of the four kingdoms. Its most powerful ruler was *Shashanka*. He invaded Makauri's, killed Grahavarman and imprisoned Rajyasri. He even treacherously murdered her brother Rajavardhan, the ruler of Thaneswar.

#### The Pushyabutis

- Their capital was at *Thaneswar*. The most important ruler of the dynasty was Prabhakara-Vardhan. He assumed the title of *Parama-bhattaraka Maharajadhiraja*. Harshavardhana belonged to this family.

#### The Hunas

- It was a barbarous race, which came to India from Central Asia. They established their supremacy in North India. Toramana was their oldest ruler and Mihirakula, the most uncultured one.

#### Harshavardhana

(AD 606-647)

- Harshavardhana was the younger son of Prabhakaravardhana. Hiuen-Tsang gave account of his reign, in his book, *Si-Yu-Ki. Bana's Harshacharita*, inscriptions, coins and Harsha's own writings i.e. Ratnavali, Priyadarshika and Nagananda, are other authentic sources of Harsha's era.
- Shashanka, the ruler of Gauda killed Grahavarman (*Maukhari ruler*) in alliance with Devagupta and imprisoned his wife Rajyasri (*Harsha's sister*). Later Rajavardhana killed Devagupta, but he was assassinated by Shashanka in AD 606.
- The news of the death of Rajavardhan reached his younger brother Harshavar-dhana, who now coronated himself in AD 606 and proceeded to avenge his brother's death and release his sister. From this year started the Harsha era.

## Conquests

- He is said to have established his control over '5 indies' — Orissa, Gauda, Mithila, Kanyakubja and Svaratha (*Punjab*). Harsha defeated Dhruvasena II Baladitya, the Maitraka ruler of Vallabhi (*Gujarat*). He conquered Kongoda Ganjam (*Orissa*) and offered its 80 township as a gift to a local Buddhist Monk Jayasena.
- Harsha was defeated by Pulakesin II on the banks of river Narmada. This is mentioned in Aihole inscription of *Pulakesin II* authored by Ravikirti, who describes Harsha as the Lord of Northern country (Saka Lottara Patheshvara). Mostly, the feudatories seem to have accepted his suzerainty. The Chinese ruler, Tsang, sent three embassies to Harsha's court.

## Administration

- Harsha shifted his capital from Thaneswar to Kannauj. He governed his empire on the same lines as the Guptas did, except that his administration became more feudal and decentralised.
- Land grants continued to be made to priests for special services rendered to the state.
- The Harsha empire was divided into provinces called *Bhuktis*. Bhuktis were further subdivided into Visayas (*Districts*). Visayas were divided into Tehsils or Pathaks, Pathaks and villages or grama.
- He shifted his capital from Thaneshwar to Kannauj.

### Officials in the Harsha Administration

| Officer Names        | Post Officers                         |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Mahasandhi Vigrahaka | Officer to decide about war and peace |
| Mahabaladhikrita     | Highest official of the army          |
| Baladhikrita         | The commander                         |
| Vrihadeshwara        | Head of cavalry                       |
| Ayuktaka             | Ordinary officer                      |
| Katuka               | Head of elephant brigade              |
| Uparika Maharaja     | Provincial head                       |

## Society

- This period witnessed the ascendancy of Varnashrama dharma and the existence of various sub-castes called *Varnasamskaras*.
- The position of women further declined. The institution of *svayamvara* declined that re-marriage of widows was not permitted. The system of dowry became common. There are only few references of the practice of committing *Sati*.

## Religion

- Harsha was primarily a worshipper of Shiva, but he was tolerant to other religions as well. In his later life, he became a great patron of Buddhism.
- He endowed the land grants to the priests of both Hindu and Buddhist religions.

- He convened a grand assembly at Kannauj to widely publicise the doctrines of Mahayana Buddhism. He is said to have erected many Buddhist Stupas on the banks of the Ganga and a number of monasteries at the sacred places of the Buddhists.

## Two Assemblies

*The two great assemblies under Harsha are as follows:*

### Kannauj

- At Kannauj, Harsha arranged a big assembly of 20 kings, 4000 monks acquainted with Buddhism, 3000 Brahmins and Nirgranthas (*Jains*) and 1000 scholars from all over India.
- It was presided over by Hiuen-Tsang. For three weeks, topics of Mahayana Buddhism were discussed. This was a shot in arms of Mahayana Buddhism.

### Prayag (Allahabad)

- Quinquennial distribution by the king to the people was held at Prayag. Here a great assembly for 75 days was held.
- The images of Buddha, Sun and Shiva were publicly worshipped and gifts of valuable articles and clothing were given to about 50 lakh persons belonging to all faiths.
- Hiuen-Tsang was invited by Harsha to witness his 6th quinquennial distribution of alms and gifts (*Maha Moksha Parishad*) at Prayag.
- Hiuen-Tsang writes that Harsha actually gave away everything in the royal treasury and became a monk.

## Literature

- Harsha was an avid lover of literature and he himself wrote three dramas: Ratnavali, Nagananda and Priyadarshika.
- He patronised Banbhatt, a great scholar who wrote Parvati Parinay, Harshacharita and Kadambari. Haridatta and Jayasena were also patronised by Harsha. Hiuen-Tsang wrote *Si-Yu-Ki* and his biography was written by *Hui-li*.

## Hiuen-Tsang

Hiuen-Tsang's visited to India in AD 629, Hiuen-Tsang, a Chinese pilgrim, started off a journey from China to India to study in the **Buddhist University**, Nalanda. He spent many years in the court of Harshavardhana and influenced the king to convert to Buddhism. He also reported what he witnessed in his book *Si-Yu-Ki*, which means my experiences. It is also called **Records of the Western World**.

## Nalanda University

Kumaragupta, the Gupta King founded Nalanda University in the AD 5th century which became the principal seat of learning during Harsha's time. **Dharmapala** served as vice-chancellor of this university during Harsha's time.

Nalanda is considered to be first International Resident University in the world. The rebuilding process of Nalanda is in progress with the co-operation of many nations including China, Japan and Australia.

## Economy

- Economy became more feudal and self-sufficient.
- The decline of trade and commerce caused decline of trade centres, paucity of coins and almost complete disappearance of guilds of traders. Agricultural and handicraft production decreased.
- Emergence of Jajmani System i.e. self-sufficient village economy where all the needs were met from within the village.

## Ruling Dynasties of South India

- After the decline of the Satavahanas, the Vakatakas and Ikshavakus rose to power.

### Satavahamas not

### The Vakatakas

- The founder of the Brahman dynasty was Vindhyaasakti. His son was Pravarasena I.
- Pravarasena I was the first Vakataka ruler, who called himself a *Samrat* and conducted wars with Haga kings.
- His successor Prithvisena was probably a contemporary of the great Gupta emperor, Samudragupta.
- Chandragupta II, Vikramaditya is said to have given his daughter, Prabhavati, in marriage to the Vakataka King, Rudrasena II.
- Harisena, who belonged to a minor branch of the Vakataka dynasty, reigned towards the close of the AD 5th century. The Vakataka power was destroyed by the Kalachuris and the Kadambas towards the middle of the AD 6th century.

### Ikshavakus

- After the fall of the Satavahanas, there arose the Ikshavakus in the Eastern part of the peninsula. They built monuments at Nagarjunakonda and Dharanikonda. They began providing lands as grants in the Krishna-Guntur region, where their copper-plate charters have been found. Their rule ended with their conquest by the Pallavas.

### Chalukyas

- The Chalukyas grew powerful in the Deccan towards the middle of the AD 6th century. They were probably Kshatriyas from Ayodhya. The dynasty had two branches, viz. Vatapi (*Badami*) and Kalyani.

### Chalukyas of Vatapi (*Badami*)

- The rule of this dynasty began in the early AD 6th century and its first two rulers were Jayasimha and Ranaraja. But the first independent ruler was Pulakesin I (AD 535-566).
- He got built the fort of Vatapi in Bijapur district of Karnataka.
- The most famous ruler of the dynasty was *Pulakesin II* (AD 611-642) also known as *Satyashraya*, who was a contemporary of Harshavardhana of Kannauj.
- From the Aihole inscription, by his court poet Ravikirti, in Sanskrit it comes to light that there was much external and internal disturbance, which he overcame with little effort. The greatest achievement of Pulakesin II was his victory over Harshavardhana in AD 620.
- Vikramaditya II (AD 733-746) once more defeated the Pallava kings. But his son Kirtivarman II (AD 746-757) lost Maharashtra to the Rashtrakuta Chief, Dantidurga and the sovereignty of the Chalukyas came to an end in about AD 757.

### Eastern Chalukyas of Vengi

- This dynasty was founded by Pulakesin II's brother *Kubja Vishnuvardhana*.
- *Vijayaditya III* (AD 848-892) is credited with victories over the Pallavas, the Pandyas and the Rashtrakutas. The power of the Eastern Chalukyas was weakened in the AD 10th century and they became the allies of the Cholas. Kulothunga Chola annexed the kingdom in 1076.

### Western Chalukyas of Kalyani

(AD 793-1190)

- The kingdom was re-established by *Taila II* in AD 973, when he defeated the last Rashtrakuta ruler Amoghavarsha IV.

### Some Important Rulers

- *Satyasraya* (AD 997-1008) His 11 years reign was disturbed. It had disastrous war with great Chola Raja I.
- *Somesvara I* (AD 1042-1068) It was involved in a Protracted War with the Cholas and was finally defeated by the Chola ruler, Virarajendra, in the Battle of Kudai.
- *Somesvara II* (AD 1068-1076), A tyrannical ruler, was overthrown by his brother, Vikramaditya II
- *Tribhuvanamalla* (AD 1076-1126) The hero of Bilhana's Vikramankadevacharita. He was undoubtedly the greatest ruler of the Western Chalukyas. He introduced the Chalukya-Vikrama era (AD 1076). He is said to have sent an embassy to Ceylon.
- With the death of Jagadekamalla II, the Chalukyas power was eclipsed and the throne was usurped by the Kalachuri minister of war, Vijjala or Vijjana.

## Achievements of the Chalukyas

- The Central Government under the Chalukyas of Badami exercised a paternalistic control over the village administration which is unlike the administrative practice of South India.
- The army of the Chalukyas consisted of a small standing army, but looked after civil administration whenever the need arose. They patronised education and learning. They promoted both sanskrit and prakrit.
  - A famous Chalukyan feudal lord *Gangaraja Durvinita* wrote a famous book on *Grammar* known as *Shabavata*. He also translated the book *Brihatkatha* written by *Gunadya* into sanskrit.
  - Udayadeva* wrote a grammar book known as *Jainendra Vyakarana*.
  - Somadeva Suri* wrote the book *Vitivakyamrita* about morality.
  - Bilhan*, a sanskrit writer, wrote *Vikramadeva Charita* and the poem *Chaurapanchasika*.
  - Vijnamesvara* wrote the *Mitaksara*.
- Though, Chalukyas were Brahmanical Hindus, they promoted other religions also. Jainism made much progress under them.
- The Aihole inscription of Pulakesin is written in sanskrit language. The courts later Chalukyas kings were adorned by great scholars like Bilhana and Vijnamesvara.
- Huien-Tsang visited the country during the time of Pulakesin II.

## Pallavas

- The Pallavas were possibly a local tribe, who established their authority in the *Tondai Nadu* or the land of creepers.
- After the fall of Satavahanas, the Pallavas established a powerful kingdom in South India. The Pallavas with their capital at Kanchi, South of Madras.
- Simha Vishnu* (AD 575-600) Extended the Pallava kingdom up to the river Kaveri.
- Mahendravarman I* (AD 600-630) It was defeated by the Chalukyan king, Pulakesin II and with this started the great struggle between the Pallavas and their Northern enemies, the Chalukyas of Vatapi, for the mastery of Southern India. The struggle continued for several generations.
- He patronised the Saint Appar and the scholar Bharavi. He wrote a famous satirical play called *Mattavilasa Prahasana*.
- Narasimhavarman I* (AD 630-668) He is regarded as the most successful Pallava king.
- In AD 642, he occupied the Chalukyan capital, Vatapi, and probably killed Pulakesin II. He assumed the title *Vatapikonda*. It was during his reign that the Chinese

pilgrim Hiuen-Tsang is reported to have visited Kanchi, known as *Mamalla*. He founded the city of Mamallapuram (*Mahabalipuram*) and the famous rock-cut temples.

- Paramesvaravarman II* He defeated Chalukya Vikramaditya II.
- Nandivarman II* Vikramaditya II again invaded and captured the Pallava capital. Nandivarman II had to purchase peace by giving his daughter in marriage and paying a huge ransom. During his reign, several old temples were renovated and new one like the Vaikunta perumal temple at Kanchi were constructed.
- Successors : Dantivarman** (defeated by Rashtrakuta king, Govinda III) Nandivarman III, Nripatunga and Aparajita ruled in succession as independent rulers, but the last Pallava ruler Aparajita Pallava (AD 879-897) was defeated by Aditya Chola by the end of the 9th century with, which began the Chola supremacy in South India.
- The period circa AD 600-850 marks the second historical phase in the South, which was divided mainly between the Pallavas, Chalukyas and Pandya.

## Conflict between the Chalukyas and the Pallavas

- The main interest in the political history of peninsular India from the 6th to the 8th century centres round the long struggle between the Pallavas of Kanchi and the Chalukyas of Badami for supremacy.
- The Pandya, who were in control of Madurai and Tirunelveli district of Tamil Nadu, joined this conflict as a poor third.
- The Pallavas and the Chalukyas quarrelled with each other for plunder, prestige and territorial resources.
- Both tried to establish supremacy over the land lying between the Krishna and the Tungabhadra.
- The first important event in this long conflict took place in the reign of *Pulakesin-II* (609-642), the most famous Chalukya king. In his conflict with the Pallavas, he almost reached the Pallava capital, but the Pallavas purchased peace by surrendering their Northern provinces to Pulakesin II.
- Pulakesin's second invasion of the Pallava territory ended in failure. The Pallava king *Narasimhavarman* (AD 630-668) occupied the Chalukya capital at Vatapi in about AD 642, when *Pulakesin II* was probably killed in fight against the Pallavas.
- Narasimhavarman assumed the title of Vatapi-konda or the Conqueror of Vatapi.
- The Chalukya king *Vikramaditya II* (AD 733-745) is said to have over run Kanchi three times. In AD 740, he completely routed the Pallavas.

# Self Check

## Build Your Confidence

- 1.** Assertion (A) Harshavardhana convened the Prayag Assembly.

Reason (R) He wanted to popularise only the Mahayana form of Buddhism. [IAS 2001]

### Codes

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A  
(b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A  
(c) A is true, but R is false  
(d) A is false, but R is true

- 2.** Emperor Harsha's Southward march was stopped on the Narmada river by [IAS 2003]

- (a) Pulakesin I (b) Pulakesin II  
(c) Vikramaditya I (d) Vikramaditya II

- 3.** Who among the following laid the foundation of Rashtrakuta empire? [IAS 2006]

- (a) Amoghavarsha I (b) Dantidurga  
(c) Dhruva (d) Krishna I

- 4.** Lands, during the Post-Gupta Period, were classified on the basis of

- (a) being cultivated and uncultivated  
(b) being irrigated and unirrigated  
(c) crops being grown on the lands  
(d) All of the above

- 5.** The theory of the emergence of feudalism in the Post-Gupta Period is disputed on the ground that

- (a) all the lands were not given in land grants  
(b) private ownership also existed and the status of peasants was not that of serfs  
(c) Both 'a' and 'b'  
(d) there is no nexus between the Brahmins and the ruling class

- 6.** Which of the following statements is correct about Harshavardhana?

- (a) Harsha erected thousands of Stupas  
(b) Harsha sent missionaries to the West to propagate Buddhism  
(c) Harsh regularly held the quinquennial convocation  
(d) Harsha stopped the use of animal food throughout his empire

- 7.** The Cholas maintained close political and matrimonial alliance with the

- (a) Chalukyas of Vengi  
(b) Chalukyas of Kalyani  
(c) Chalukyas of Badami  
(d) Zamorin of Calicut

- 8.** Which one of the following statements is incorrect of the Post-Guptas agrarian structure?

- (a) It was marked by the emergence of landed intermediaries  
(b) It saw the growth of subject peasantry  
(c) It was rooted in the absolute royal ownership of land  
(d) There were growing evidences of agrarian expansion

- 9.** Which one of the following is incorrect about the Pallavas?

- (a) The Pallavas rose into prominence in the service of the Satavahanas  
(b) All their early charters are in prakrit  
(c) For sometime the Pallava power was eclipsed by the kalabhra occupation of their dominions  
(d) Pallavas began the practice of making structural temples in the South

- 10.** Which one of the following is not associated with Pulakesin II Chalukya?

- (a) His court poet was Ravikirti, who wrote the famous Prashasti of Aihole  
(b) He defeated Harshavardhana of Kannauj  
(c) He was defeated by the Pallavas under Narasimhavarman I  
(d) He performed a horse sacrifice after defeating Harsha

- 11.** Which one of the following is incorrect about Shashanka, the king of Gauda?

- (a) He started his career in Magadha as a Mahasamanta or feudatory chief  
(b) He is said to have cut down the Bodhi tree at Bodha Gaya  
(c) His capital was Karna Suvarna  
(d) He seems to have defeated the joint army of Harsha and Bhaskarvarman

- 12.** When the law books of the period referred to the king as the lord of whole Earth, it only meant

- (a) his right of taking taxes  
(b) his right over the treasure troves  
(c) Both 'a' and 'b'  
(d) a sovereign authority

- 13.** Which one of the following is not a characteristic feature of the post-Gupta period?

- (a) The focus shifted to the region South of Vindhyas  
(b) Increase in the number of independent kingdoms  
(c) Development of feudal relationships  
(d) Increase in the volume of trade

- 14.** Who sent Hiuen-Tsang as an envoy to Harsha's court?

- (a) Tai-Tsung (b) Tung-Kuan [IAS 2007]  
(c) Ku Yen-Wu (d) None of these

- 15.** Who was the author of Mandasore inscription?

- (a) Banabhatta (b) Vatsabhata [IAS 2006]  
(c) Harisena (d) Veersena

- 16.** What was the purpose of the Indian visit of the Hiuen-Tsang?

- (a) To visit the holy places connected with the Buddhism  
(b) To establish political ties with India  
(c) To a mass wealth  
(d) To know the geography of India



1. (b) 2. (b) 3. (b) 4. (d) 5. (c) 6. (b) 7. (a) 8. (c) 9. (d) 10. (d)  
11. (d) 12. (c) 13. (d) 14. (a) 15. (d) 16. (a)

# Chapter eleven

## The Sultanate of Delhi

*The Delhi Sultanate is a term used to cover five short lived dynasties, Delhi based kingdoms or Sultanate, the first three of which were of Turkish origin, the fourth was the Sayyid and the last was the Lodi.*

### Foundation of Delhi Sultanate

- By the end of the 12th century, Mohammed Ghori was successful in occupying Delhi and started a dynasty of rulers which, together with some later dynasties, came to be called the *Delhi Sultanate*.
- Ghori's sudden death in 1206 resulted in a scramble for supremacy among his three generals—*Qutub-ud-din Aibak* (commander of his army), *Tajuddin Yalduz* (ruled Karman and Sankuran between Afghanistan and Sindh) and *Nasiruddin Qubacha* (held Uchh).
- At the time of Ghori's death, Aibak was at Lahore. Ghiyas-ud-din Mahmud, the successor of Ghori, acknowledged Aibak as the independent king and gave him the title of *Sultan of Delhi*.
- The assumption of sovereign powers by Qutub-ud-din Aibak in 1206, is regarded as the foundation of the Sultanate of Delhi and the first ruling dynasty of the Sultanate.

### The Slave Dynasty (AD 1206-1290)

- The first dynasty of the Sultanate has been designated by various historians as the Slave dynasty or the Mameluk dynasty or the Ilbari dynasty. Recognition as all rulers of this dynasty except Qutub-ud-din, belonged to the Ilbari tribe of Turks.

### Qutub-ud-din Aibak

**(AD 1206-1210)**

- Captial *Lahore* and later *Delhi*. He was the first Muslim king in India and the founder of Ilbari dynasty. For his generosity he was known as *Lakh Bakhsh* or (giver of Lakhs). Aibak was a great patron of learning and patronised writers like *Hasan-un-Nizami* and *Fakhruddin*.
- *Tazul Maasir* of Hasan Nizami is a work primarily dealing with Aibak. He began the construction of Quwwat-ul-Islam Mosque (Delhi), Adhai Din Ka Jhopra (a mosque at Ajmer) and Qutub Minar, 72 1/2 metre (238 feet) stone tower in Delhi (after the name of Khwaja Qutub-ud-din Bakhtiyar Kaki), a Muslim saint. The construction of Qutub Minar was finally completed by Iltutmish, his successor.
- In 1210, while playing Chaugan (*Polo*) at Lahore, he fell off his horse and died of injuries.

### Shams-ud-din Iltutmish

**(AD 1211-1236)**

- Iltutmish was a slave of Qutub-ud-din Aibak. By sheer ability he rose to be his son-in-law and the Governor of Badaun. He ruled for a quarter of a century and proved a very strong and worthy ruler and completed the work of Aibak.
- In 8 years, between AD 1226 and 1234, he conquered Ranthambore (1226), Mandawar (1227), Bayana, Jalore, Gwalior, Malwa, Bhilsa, Ujjain and Bengal (1231).
- Iltutmish defeated Yalduz in the *Battle of Terrain* (1217) and killed him. Likewise, in 1228 he carried a march against Qubacha and put him to death, who were Ghori's slaves.

- A notable event of the reign of Iltutmish is that for the first time the Mongols came as far the frontiers of India.
- In AD 1221, the Mongol Chief, *Chanez Khan*, one of the mightiest conquerors the world has ever seen, reached the Indus in pursuit of an enemy *Jalal-ud-din*, King of Khwarizm or Khiva. Iltutmish at this time saved the Sultanate by refusing to give any shelter to Jalal-ud-din.
- It was he who gave the country a capital, a sovereign state, a monarchial form of government and a governing class or nobility, known as *Turkan-i-Chahalgani* or Chalisa (a group of forty) which was the ruling elite of the period.
- He divided his empire into numerous big and small iqta's and assignment of land in lieu of salary, which he distributed to his Turkish officers.
- He issued the coins of silver (tanka) and copper (jital) to facilitate trade and commerce. These coins being the first purely Arabic coins issued from Delhi.
- Iltutmish patronised Minhaj-us-Siraj, author of 'Tabaqat-i-Nasiri'. He built Gandhak-i Baoli, a stepwell for sufi saint Qutub-ud-din Bakhtiyar Kaki, who moved to Delhi during his rule.

## Razia Sultan

(AD1236-1240)

- Iltutmish nominated his daughter Razia, as his successor. Razia became the first lady Sultan of India.
- Razia discarded *purdah*, held the court attired in the male dress and commanded the army herself. She defeated the Wazir, Nizam-ul-Mulk Junaidi, who had opposed her elevation and conquered Ranthambhore.
- But her attempt to create a party of nobles loyal to her and the appointment of a non-Turk. (Abyssinian) noble, Jamal-ud-din Yakut the high office led to opposition. For these reasons the Governor of Lahore (Kabir Khan) and Bhatinda (Altunia), revolted. She personally led the expedition against Lahore and suppressed the revolt.
- On her way back to Delhi, Yakut was killed and Razia was imprisoned at Tabarbinda. She married Altunia, but under a conspiracy she and her husband were murdered near *Kaithal* in AD 1240.
- The contemporary historian Minhaj- us-Siraj accepts that she was having the ability of a great king, but the only weakness was that being a woman. Her rule marked the beginning of a struggle for power between the monarchy and the Turkish chiefs ('the forty' or 'Chahalgani'.) She was succeeded by Bahram Shah.

## Nasir-ud-din Mahmud

(AD 1246-1266)

- Nasir-ud-din was the son of Iltutmish. He was very gentle, studious, and pious and on account of his simple habits is known in history as the *Darvesh King*.
- In the struggle between monarchy and Chahalgani, the Turkish chief Balban became the real ruler of the state. He was assigned the post of Naib-i-Mamlakat (vice-regent) and got the title of *Ulugh Khan*.
- Balban replaced *Imaduddin Raihan* to the post of 'Wazir' during Mongolian invasion.

## Ghiyas-ud-din Balban

(AD 1266-1287)

- Balban was an Ilbari-turk. His original name was Bahauddin. He was the slave of Iltutmish and gradually he occupied the throne of sultan.
- In order to destroy the power of Turk-e-Chihalgani, he propounded a new theory of kingship. Balban projected monarchy as semi-divine institution. He declared himself to be a successor of Afrasiyab, an Iranian warrior.
- He maintained that kingship was the Niyabat-i-Khudai (gift from God) and took the title *Jil-i-llahi* (shadow of God on Earth).
- In his court he introduced some formalities like Sijda (prostration) and Paibos (Kissing of feet). The Iranian festival of Nauroz or New Year was celebrated in the court. An official *Amir-e-Hajib* was appointed to regularise the proceedings of the court.
- The law and order situation in and around Delhi had deteriorated. The *Mewati Rajputs* plundered the country and had made life, property and trade unsafe in the Doab. To deal with these elements Balban adopted a policy of Blood and Iron. The most important event of the reign of Balban was the suppression of the Bengal revolt.
- The army establishment was separated from the rest of the Civil Department. A separate Military Department known as *Diwan-i-wizarat* and *Diwan-i-Arz* was established.
- Tughril Khan the Governor of Bengal was defeated.
- In order to strengthen the monarchy, Balban reorganised the *Central Military Department* Diwan-i-Arz. Likewise, he organised the espionage department under an officer *Barid-I-Mumalik*.
- The well known *Hindi* and *Persian* poet *Amir Khusrau* (AD 1235-1325) who was called the *Parrot of India* adorned the court of *Balban*.
- Balban was succeeded by Kaiqubad. The last ruler of this dynasty was Kayumars who was killed by Jalauddin Khilji.

| Salve Sultans        | Years        |
|----------------------|--------------|
| Qutub-ud-din Aibak   | (AD 1206-10) |
| Aram Shah            | (1210-1211)  |
| Shamsuddin Iltutmish | (1211-1236)  |
| Ruknuddin Firoz      | (1236)       |
| Raziya               | (1236-1240)  |
| Baharam Shah         | (1240-1242)  |
| Alauddin Masud       | (1242-1246)  |
| Nasiruddin Mahmud    | (1246-1265)  |
| Ghiyas-ud-din Balban | (1265-1287)  |
| Kaiqubad             | (1287-1290)  |
| Shamsuddin Kayumars  | (1290)       |

## Khilji Dynasty (AD 1290-1320)

- The coming of Khilji's to power was more than a dynastic change. Khiljis were basically Central Asians in origin.

### Jalal-ud-din Khilji (AD 1290-1296)

- Jalal-ud-din seized Ranthambore from the Chauhans, conquered Ujjain and desecrated the idol in the main temple. He made Kilokhari as his capital.
- One of the most important event of his reign was the invasion of Devagiri, the capital of the Yadava king, Raja Ramachandradeva.

### Ala-ud-din Khilji (AD 1296-1316)

- He was the greatest ruler of the Khilji dynasty and was the first Muslim ruler to extend his empire right upto the extreme South of India. Ala-ud-din was the first ruler of Delhi Sultanate who did not ask for Manshur (letter of investiture) from the Caliph, but called himself the Deputy of the *Caliph*.

#### Attack of Mongols During Ala-ud-din's Reign

| Years   | Mongol Leaders | Sultanate Commanders           | Battle Field            |
|---------|----------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1297-98 | Dawa Khan      | Ulugh Khan                     | Julandhar               |
| 1299    | Saldi          | Zafar Khan                     | Siwistan in lower Sindh |
| 1299    | Qutlugh Khan   | Zafar Khan<br>(died in battle) | Killi<br>(near Delhi)   |
| 1303    | Targhi         | Ala-ud-din Khilji              | Doab Area (Delhi)       |

#### Ala-ud-din's Conquests

| States                           | Native King                               | Sultanate's Commanders                      | Consequences   |
|----------------------------------|---|---|--|
| Gujarat (1297)                   | Rai Karan (Solankis)                      | Nusrat Khan and Ulugh Khan                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Plunder of Somnath temple.</li> <li>Nusrat purchased Kafur Hazar Dinari.</li> <li>Ala-ud-din married chief queen Kamla Devi.</li> </ul> |
| Ranthambore (1301)               | Rana Hammir Deva                          | Ala-ud-din Khilji, Nusrat Khan, Ulugh Khan. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Nusrat Khan died.</li> <li>Jauhar ceremony by women.</li> </ul>   |
| Chittor                          | Ratan Singh (Gahilot)                     | Ala-ud-din Khilji                           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ala-ud-din's son Khizr Khan was given governorship of Chittor.</li> <li>Chittor renamed Khizabad.</li> </ul>                            |
| Deogir                           | Ram Chandra Deva (Yadavas)                | Malik Kafur                                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Deva honoured with golden canopy and title of <i>Rai Rayan</i>.</li> <li>Ala-ud-din married Deva's daughter Jhapali.</li> </ul>         |
| Warrangal in Telangana (1309-10) | Pratap Rudra Deva II (Kakatiya)           | Malik Kafur                                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>King surrendered and agreed to pay annual tribute to Delhi.</li> <li>Pratap gave Kohinoor diamond to Malik Kafur.</li> </ul>            |
| Dwarsamudra                      | Ballal Deva or Vira Ballal III (Hoysalas) | Malik Kafur                                 | Annual tribute to Delhi.   |
| Madurai (1311)                   | Vira Pandya and Sundara Pandya (Pandyas)  | Malik Kafur                                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Devastation of Nataraja temple at Chidambaram.</li> </ul>   |
| Jalor (1311)                     | Kanhar Deva                               | Malik Kamal-ud-din                          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Fortress of Jalor seized.</li> </ul>  |

## Administrative Measures for Prevention of Rebellions

- The sale and use of liquor and intoxicants was prohibited. He forbade parties and marriage relations among the nobles without his permission. He confiscated many jagirs and estates and stopped all pensions and allowances. All religious endowments and grants of lands (waqf and inam) by the state were revoked. He established network of spies all over his kingdom known as *Munhiyan*. Apart from this, Barids (news reporter) were also appointed. There was a trading class known as Banjaras on whom Alauddin Khilji relied heavily to transport grains to the city markets.

## Revenue/Agrarian Reforms

- Zabita regulation** Biswa declared as the standard unit of measurement of cultivable land. Land revenue (Kharaj) was fixed at half of the produce. Brought farmers in direct relation with the state and curbed middlemen (Khuts, Choudharis, Muquaddams). Establishment of a new Revenue Department Diwan-i-Mustakhraj.
- Khuts were a new set of intermediaries who arose at the parganah or shiq (district) level. Amir Khusrau, for the first time, referred to them as Zamindars. Ghari (house tax) and charai (grazing tax) were levied.

## Market Control

- Three separate markets at Delhi for foodgrains, costly cloths, horses, slaves and cattle were established. The markets were controlled by two officers, Diwan-i-Riyasat and Shahana- i-Mandi.
- Foodgrains were stocked at the warehouses set-up by the state itself and were released during famine or shortage of supply. The Karwanis or Banjaras carried the grains from villages to Delhi. No hoarding was allowed and all merchants were registered at state daftars.

## Military Reforms

- He was the first Sultan of Delhi to lay the foundation of a permanent standing army.
- Realisation of land revenue in cash enabled Alauddin to pay his soldiers in cash. He was the first sultan to do so. Direct recruitment of the soldiers by *Arz-i-Mamalik*. Introduction of Daag (branding the horses) and Huliya or Chehra (descriptive rolls of soldiers) system. Horses were sold directly to the Military Department (Diwan-i-Arz). Introduction of three grades of soldiers
  - Foot soldiers
  - Soldiers with one horse (ek-aspa)
  - Soldiers with two horses (do-aspa)

## Art and Learning

- Both Amir Khusrau and Mir Hasan Dehlvi enjoyed his patronage. He built a new city called *Siri*, enlarged the Qutabi mosque and erected a gateway. He built the Jamait Khana Masjid at the dargah of Nizam-ud-din Auliya and Alai Darwaza near Qutub Minar. He began the construction of Alai Minar near Qutub Minar, but could not complete it.

## The Tughlaq Dynasty

(AD 1320-1414)

### Ghiyas-ud-din Tughlaq

(AD 1320-1325)

- He was the first Sultan of Delhi to add the word Ghazi after his name. A code of law for the Civil Government was drafted by him. He was on bad terms with the famous Sufi saint Nizamuddin Aulia. He laid the foundation of a big palace fort which came to be known as *Tughlaquabad*. The first Sultan credited with digging canals for the promotion of agriculture.

### Mohammed-bin-Tughlaq

(AD 1325-1351)

- He has been represented by contemporaries as one of the wonders of the age in which he lived. He was well versed in various branches of learning i.e. astronomy, mathematics, medicine, philosophy etc.
- Formulated 'famine-code' to provide relief to famine affected people. To improve agriculture, he created the Department of Agriculture (Diwan-i-Amir Kohi). He is the first sultan to advance loans known as *Sondhar* to peasants for digging well to extend cultivation.
- The Chinese emperor, Toghan Timur sent an envoy to Delhi in 1341 seeking Mohammed's permission to build Buddhist temples in the Himalayan region. He also sent Ibn Battuta as envoy to the court of the Mongol Emperor of China.

## Five Ambitious Projects

- Sultan raised the taxation level in Doab area.
- Transfer of capital from Delhi to Deogiri.
- Introduction of token currency of bronze coins.
- Quarachil (Kumaon Hills of Himalayas) Expedition.
- Proposed Khurasan Expedition.

## Revolts During Mohammed-bin-Tughlaq

| States/<br>Places      | Native King/Viceroy<br>/Governor | Consequences  |
|------------------------|----------------------------------|---|
| Sagar                  | Bahauddin Gurshap                | Gurshap was defeated and he took shelter with the Hindu Rai of Kampila. |
| Kordhana               | Nag Nayak                        | Nag Nayak was defeated and forced to sue for peace.                     |
| Multan, Uchh and Sindh | Bahram Aiba entitled Kishlu Khan | Kishlu Khan was defeated and killed.                                    |
| Vijayanagar            | Harihara and Bukka               | The independent state of Vijayanagara was founded.                      |
| Madura                 | Hasan or Sayyid Ahsan Shah       | Independent rule at madura was established                              |
| Bahamani               | Bahman Shah                      | Independent state of Bahamani was founded.                              |

## Firoz Shah Tughlaq (AD 1351-1388)

- Firoz Tughlaq was termed as the Akbar of Sultanate period by Henri Elliot and Elphinstone.
- Shaikh Nasiruddin Chiragh Dehlari was one of the most popular mystics of the reign of Firoz.
- The imperial court of Delhi had been turned into a centre of culture, due to the influx of a large number of poets, philosophers, jurists and historians.
- The most remarkable contribution was made in the science of astronomy. Books like *Ziqr-Munsobat Kawakib*, *Zigr-Munsobat*, *Burooj* and *Shikar Nameh of Fateh Khan* were written.
- The Sultan also opened a large number of hospitals (Dar-ul-Shafa) where medicines used to be distributed free to the people.
- He established an Employment Bureau to provide work to unemployed. He also created an endowment fund.
- Revived the Jagir system which had been abolished by Ala-ud-din and granted it to his military in lieu of cash salaries. The Iqtas granted and the post of officials and soldiers was made hereditary. A separate department for slaves, Diwan-i-Bandagan, was established.

### Economic Reforms

- He waived off all debts which the late Sultan had advanced to the agriculturists and reduced the rates of land revenues.
- His most important contribution was the introduction of a series of canals for irrigation purpose.
- The taxation policy was based on the Islamic law of Shariat. Only five taxes were imposed
  - Kharaj—revenue from cultivated land
  - Jaziya—alms
  - Jaziya—poll tax on the non-Muslims
  - Khams—tax on produce of mines Sharbirrigation tax
- He reduced Octroi duties on trade.
- He introduced two fractions of mixed copper and silver coins.
  - Adha half jital
  - Bikha quarter jital
- *Shashghani* or six jital piece was also in use.

### Public Works, Art and Architecture

- Firoz was the first Muslim king to undertake works of public utility and was also known as the *lover of gardens*.
- He founded the town of Jaunpur, Fatehabad, Hissar, Firozpur near Badaun and Firozabad. During his Bengal campaign he renamed Ikdalsa as Azad and Pandua as Firozabad.
- He brought two of the Ashokan Pillar to Delhi from Khizrabad and Meerut.

- He was a patron of learning and patronised Barani and Afif. *Shams-i-Siraj Afif* was the official historian of Firoz's reign.

### Religious Intolerance by Firoz

- Firoz tried to win over the theologians by proclaiming that he was a true Muslim king. He demolished many Hindu temples and is supposed to have burnt a Brahmin for preaching Muslims.
- He separated Jaziya from land revenue and also imposed it on Brahmins.
- He even ordered to erase the beautiful wall paintings in his palace.
- For the first time in the history of Muslim India he styled himself as the deputy of the Khalifah of Egypt.

## The Sayyid Dynasty (AD 1414 - 51)

### Khizr Khan (AD 1414 - 1421)

- He was the founder of the Sayyid dynasty. He was appointed by Timur-e-lang as his nominee in Delhi. He ruled as a deputy of Timur's son and successor, Shah Rukh.

### Mubarak Shah (AD 1421-1434)

- He was the ablest ruler of the dynasty. He subdued the rebellions at *Bhatinda* and *Doab* and the revolt by Khokhars chief Jasrat. He was succeeded by Mohammed Shah and Alauddin Alam Shah was the last ruler.

| Rulers of Sayyid Dynasty | Years      |
|--------------------------|------------|
| 1. Khizr Khan            | AD 1414-21 |
| 2. Mubarak Shah          | AD 1421-34 |
| 3. Mohammed Shah         | AD 1434-45 |
| 4. Al-ud-din Alam Shah   | AD 1445-51 |

## Lodhi Dynasty (AD 1451-1526)

### Bahlol Lodhi (AD 1451-1489)

- Bahlol Lodhi was the founder of this dynasty. (AD 1451-89) He tried to restore the greatness of Delhi Sultanate, hence, conquered territories surrounding Delhi. The most successful war was against *Mahmud Sharqi* of Jaunpur.
- *Bahlol Lodhi Conquered* Mewat (Ahmed Khan), Sambhal (Dariya Khan), Koll (Isa Khan), Suket (Mubarake Khan), Manipur and Bhongaoon (Raja Pratap Singh), Rewari (Qutub Khan), Etawah and Chandwar.

## Sikandar Lodhi

(AD 1489-1517)

- Bahlol Lodhi was succeeded by his able son **Nizam Shah** under the title of *Sultan Sikandar Shah* in AD 1489. He was the ablest of the three Lodhi rulers. He conquered Bihar and **Raja of Tirhut** and concluded a friendship treaty with **Ala-ud-din Hussain Shah** of Bengal. **Dariya Khan** was appointed as the Governor of Bengal. He set-up an efficient espionage system and introduced the system of auditing the accounts.
- He relaxed restrictions on trade, which greatly promoted the economic prosperity of the people. He introduced 'Gaz-i-Sikandari' (Sikandar's yard) of 39 digits or 32 inches, for the measurement of agricultural land. He transferred his capital from Delhi to Agra, a city which was founded by him. The village of Sikandara, near Agra, where the tomb of Akbar stands, was named after Sikandar.
- He was staunch Sunni and a Muslim fanatic. He lacked religious tolerance and levied Jaziya and Pilgrim's tax on Hindus. He was a liberal patron of arts and letters. He wrote verses in Persian under the pen name of Gulrukhi.

## Ibrahim Lodhi

(AD 1517-1526)

- There were many revolts during his reign, Bihar declared its independence under **Dariya Khan Lohani**. His repressive policy towards the Lohani and Lodhi tribes and his unsympathetic treatment of Dilawar Khan, Governor of Lahore, turned the nobles against him.

### First Battle of Panipat, 1526

Daulat Khan Lodhi (father of Dilawar Khan) and Alam Khan invited Babur the Timurid ruler of Kabul, to invade India. Babur defeated Ibrahim and killed him. He became the master of Delhi and Agra. This put an end to the Sultanate and Mughal dynasty was established in North India. This was one of the earliest battles involving gunpowder, firearms and field artillery.

## Administration Under Sultanate

### Central Administration

- The real administrator of Delhi Sultanate was the king or sultan himself. There was no hereditary principle of succession. The sultans of Delhi were considered to be the agent of God and was his duty to enforce the divine laws enpressed by the Holy Quran.
- The **Wazir** was the most important minister in the Sultanate administration.

### Departments Under Central Administration

| Departments        | Founders               | Works  |
|--------------------|------------------------|--|
| Diwan-i-Wizarat    | —                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Headed by Wazir</li> <li>Prime Minister and also chaired Finance Department.</li> <li>Functionaries associated were Mushrif-i-Mamalik (Accountant-General) and Mustaufi-i-Mamalik (Auditor-General).</li> </ul> |
| Diwan-i-Ariz       | Balban                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Military Department</li> <li>Headed by Ariz-i-Mamalik</li> <li>Recruited troops, fixed and disbursed their salaries and held periodical review or inspection of the forces.</li> </ul>                          |
| Diwan-i-Insha      | —                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Headed by Dabir-i-Mamalik.</li> <li>Also known as <b>Dabir-i-Khas</b> and <b>Amir Munshi</b>.</li> <li>Department of Royal Correspondence and kept record of royal courts.</li> </ul>                           |
| Diwan-i-Risalat    | —                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Headed by chief Qazi called <b>Sadr-us-Sadar</b>.</li> <li>Dealt with religious affairs of state.</li> </ul>  |
| Diwan-i-Qaza       | —                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Headed by Qazi.</li> <li>Department of Judicial Administration.</li> </ul>  |
| Diwan-i-Waqf       | Jalal-ud-din Khilji    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Department of Grants and State Expenditure.</li> </ul>  |
| Diwan-i-Mustakhraj | Ala-ud-din Khilji      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Department of Revenue Collection.</li> </ul>  |
| Diwan-i-Riyasat    | Ala-ud-din khiliji     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Department of Market Control.</li> </ul>  |
| Diwan-i-Amir Kohi  | Mohammed -bin- Tughlaq | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Department of Agriculture.</li> </ul>   |
| Diwan-i-Bandagan   | Firoz Shah Tughlaq     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Department of Slaves.</li> </ul>  |
| Diwan-i-Khairat    | Firoz Shah Tughlaq     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Department of Welfare Works.</li> </ul>   |

## Judicial Administration

- The sultan was the highest judicial authority of Delhi Sultanate. He was a perfect autocrat with wide powers in his hands. The Department of Judiciary was known as *Diwan-i-Qaza*, which was headed by Qazi.

## Revenue Administration

- The Fiscal Policy of Sultanate was based on the theory of taxation as propounded by the Hanafi School of Thought, which prescribed the levy of five kind of taxes i.e. Zakat religious tax paid by the Muslims for the benefit and welfare of their co-religionists. It was charged at the rate of 2.5% of the actual income or property.
- Amil** He was the officer in-charge of revenue collection.
- Kharaj** It was the land revenue tax. Generally, it was charged at the rate of one third of the agricultural produce and was payable in cash or kind.
- Khams** It refers to the state's share of the booty acquired by the soldiers in the course of war. It was 1/5th of the war booty.
- Jaziya** It was a tax charged from Hindus in their capacity as Zimmis.
- Ushar** Land tax collected from muslim peasants.

## The Iqta System

- Mohammed Ghauri was the first ruler to introduce the Iqta system. But Iltutmish gave it an institutional form. He divided his empire into several large and small tracts of land called *Iqta* and assigned them to his *soldiers*, *officers* and *nobles*. The holders of the office were called *Iqtadar*, *Muqtia* or *Walli*.
- The collection of land revenue was integrated with the Military system, as also with the system of provincial government through the Iqta. In the context of the revenue system, the term Iqta means the land or land revenue assigned by the ruler to an individual on certain conditions.
- The holders of the Iqta served the Sultans. They were bound to present themselves, with horses and arms, whenever called upon by the *Central Government* for service or inspection. Balban found a lot of corruption and mismanagement among the assignees or the Iqta holders.
- But he took another step to supervise Iqta holders. He appointed his sons to important provinces as Governors and created the office of Khwaja.
- It was a sort of diarchy though in a very limited sense. Though, Iqta was chiefly the incharge and the Khwaja his subordinate, the fact that the latter was responsible to the Central Government gave him a sort of authority and made him an obstacle in the way of independence of the muqta. Thus, Khwaja was a civil official and he had to deal with accounts and records.

- Ala-ud-din brought most of the small Iqtas back into the Khalisa 'by a stroke of the pen'. But under Firoz it became hereditary.

## Sultanate Literature

| Books               | Authors                      |
|---------------------|------------------------------|
| Alberuni            | Tahkik-i-Hind                |
| Alberuni            | Qanun-i-Masudi               |
| Alberuni            | Jawahar-i-Jawahar            |
| Minhaj-us-Siraj     | Tabaqat-i-Nasiri             |
| Amir Khusrau        | Laila-Majnu, Quran-us-Saadin |
| Amir Khusrau        | Khazain-ul-Futuh             |
| Amir Khusrau        | Tughlaqnama                  |
| Amir Khusrau        | Nuh-Siphir                   |
| Amir Khusrau        | Miftah-ul-Futuh              |
| Amir Khusrau        | Ayina-i-Sikandari            |
| Amir Khusrau        | Hasht Bihisht                |
| Amir Khusrau        | Shirin Khusrau               |
| Amir Khusrau        | Tarikh-i-Alai                |
| Zia-ud-din Barani   | Fatawa-i-Jahandari           |
| Zia-ud-din Barani   | Tarikh-i-Firoz Shahi         |
| Firoz Shah          | Fatawa-i-Firoz Shahi         |
| Firoz Abadi         | Qamus                        |
| Hassan Nizami       | Taj-ul-Maathir               |
| Abu Bakr            | Chach Namah                  |
| Fakhruddin          | Tarikh-i-Mubarak Shahi       |
| Shams-i-shiraj Afif | Tarikh-i-Firoz Shahi         |
| Ibn-Battuta         | Kitab-ul-Rehla               |
| Isami               | Futuh-us-Salatin             |
| Firdausi            | Shahnamah                    |

## Sanskrit Books Written in Sultanate Period

| Writers                | Books                             |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| • Parthasarathi Mishra | Shahstradipika on Karmamimansa.   |
| • Jai Singh Suri       | Hamir Mardan.                     |
| • Ravi Verman          | Pradyuman Abhyudaya.              |
| • Vidhyadhhar          | Prataprudra.                      |
| • Vamanbhat Bann       | Parvati Parinaya.                 |
| • Gangadhar            | Gangadas Pratap Vilas.            |
| • Rupgoswami           | Vidgadh-m- Adhav and Lalitmadhav. |

## Music

- With the coming of Turks, number of musical instruments came into India like Rabab and Sarangi. Most of the Sultanate rulers patronised music.
- Balban encouraged the setting up of a society of dancers and musicians.
- Ala-ud-din Khilji patronised musicians such as Gopal Nayak and Amir Khusrau, who were conferred the title of *Nayak* or *Master Khusrau* introduced Pero-Arabic ragas such as Aiman, Ghosa, Sanam, Iman Zilb and Sazagiri. He is also credited with having invented the sitar.
- Music was banned under Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq's reign, but it was encouraged by Mohammed-Bin-Tughlaq. Firoz Shah Tughlaq is said to have been very fond of music. He got the Indian classical work Ragdarpan translated into Persian.

## Painting

- The Sultanate painting shows an attempt to arrive at a fusion of the newly introduced Persian and Indian traditional style. Many of the illustrated manuscripts show the influence of Jain and Rajasthani painting styles.

- Out of the Sultanate painting tradition emerged these major sub styles Mughal, Rajasthani and Deccani schools, all of which displayed an individuality while bearing some common elements.

### Sultanate Architecture

| Structures                        | Locations | Builders   |
|-----------------------------------|-----------|--|
| Quwwat-ul-Islam Mosque            | Delhi     | Qutub-ud-din Aibak                                   |
| Adhai din ka Jhopra               | Ajmer     | Qutub-ud-din Aibak                                   |
| Qutub Minar                       | Delhi     | IItutmish (Founded by Qutub-ud-din Aibak)            |
| Tomb of Hazarat Nizamuddin Auliya | Delhi     | Ala-ud-din Khilji                                    |
| Alai Darwaza                      | Delhi     | Ala-ud-din Khilji                                    |
| Jammat Khana Masjid               | Delhi     | Ala-ud-din Khilji                                    |
| Tomb of Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq       | Delhi     | Mohammed-bin-Tughlaq                                 |
| Tughlaqabad Fort                  | Delhi     | Ghiyas-ud-din Tughlaq                                |
| Moth ki Masjid                    | Delhi     | Wazir Miya Bhoiya (Prime Minister of Sikandar Lodhi) |

# Self Check

## Build Your Confidence

1. After consolidation his power, Balban assumed the grand title of [IAS 1997]

- (a) Tute-i-hind (b) Kaisar-i-hind (c) Zil-i-illahi (d) Din-i-illahi

2. Fawazil in the Sultanate period means [IAS 1998]

- (a) extra payment made to the nobles  
(b) revenue assigned in lieu of salary  
(c) excess amount paid to the exchequer by the iqdadars  
(d) illegal exactions extracted from the peasants

3. The Sultan of Delhi who is reputed to have built the biggest network of canals in India was [IAS 1998]

- (a) Iltutmish (b) Ghiyas-ud-din Tughlaq  
(c) Firoz Shah Tughlaq (d) Sikandar Lodi

4. Which of the following pairs is correctly matched? [IAS 2001]

- |                       |   |                   |
|-----------------------|---|-------------------|
| (a) Diwan-i-Bandagani | : | Tughlaq           |
| (b) Diwan-i-Mustakraj | : | Balban            |
| (c) Diwan-i-Kohi      | : | Ala-ud-din Khilji |
| (d) Diwan-i-Arz       | : | Mohammed Tughlaq  |

5. Assertion (A) Mohammed-bin-Tughlaq left Delhi and for 2 years lived in a camp called Swarge- Dwari.

Reason (R) At that time, Delhi was savaged by a form of plague and many people died. [IAS 2002]

**Codes**

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A  
(b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A  
(c) A is true, but R is false  
(d) A is false, but R is true

6. Which one of the following is the correct chronological order of the Afghan rulers to the throne of Delhi? [IAS 2006]

- (a) Sikandar Shah, Ibrahim Lodi, Bahlol Khan Lodi  
(b) Sikandar Shah, Bahlol Khan Lodi, Ibrahim Lodi  
(c) Bahlol Khan Lodi, Sikandar Shah, Ibrahim Lodi  
(d) Bahlol Khan Lodi, Ibrahim Lodi, Sikandar Shah

7. Consider the following statements about the arrival of Babur into India led to the [IAS 2015]

1. introduction of gunpowder in the subcontinent.
2. introduction of the arch and dome in the region's architecture.
3. establishment of Timurid dynasty in the region.

Select the correct answer using the codes given below  
(a) 1 and 2 (b) Only 3 (c) 1 and 3 (d) All of these

8. Which of the following Sultan did not allow Ulema to interfere in political affairs? [IAS 2002]

1. Balban 2. Ala-ud-din Khilji  
3. Mohammed-bin-Tughlaq 4. Firoz Shah Tughlaq

Select the correct answer using the codes given below  
(a) Only 1 (b) 2 and 3 (c) 1, 2 and 3 (d) 3 and 4

9. The Iqta system has been called the 'central pillar' of the administrative system of the Sultanate of Delhi, because

- (a) the collection of land revenue in the non-crown lands was assigned to Iqtadars  
(b) the troops maintained by Iqtadars constituted the largest chunk of the army of the Sultanate  
(c) almost all civil and military officers of the the Sultanate were Iqtadars  
(d) All of the above

10. Assertion (A) Razia was the last woman who ruled Delhi Sultanate.

Reason (R) Women held a high position in the social and economic structure of the Delhi Sultanate.

**Codes**

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A  
(b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A  
(c) A is true, but R is false  
(d) A is false, but R is true

11. The term used for measurement of land in the Delhi Sultanate Period was [IAS 2012]

- (a) Kismat-i-Ghalla (b) Ghalla-Bakshi  
(c) Masahat (d) Ghazi

12. What was Abwab?

[HPPCS 2012]

- (a) Toll tax  
(b) Religious tax such as Zakat  
(c) Tax on merchandise and custom duties  
(d) Miscellaneous kinds of taxes like the house tax, grazing tax, irrigation tax etc

13. Which Delhi Sultanate Sultan had a dispute with Sufi saint Nizam-ud-din Auliya?

- (a) Jalal-ud-din Khilji  
(b) Ghiyas-ud-din Tughlaq  
(c) Firoz Shah Tughlaq  
(d) Mohammed-bin-Tughlaq

14. With reference to Indian history, which of the following is/are the essential element/elements of the Feudal system? [IAS 2015]

1. A very strong centralised political authority and a very weak provincial and local political authority.
2. Emergence of administrative structure based on control and possession of land.
3. Creation of lord-vassal relationship between the feudal lord and his overlord.

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

- (a) 1 and 2 (b) 2 and 3  
(c) Only 3 (d) All of these



1. (c)  
11. (c)

2. (c)  
12. (d)

3. (c)  
13. (b)

4. (a)  
14. (b)

5. (a)

6. (c)

7. (c)

8. (b)

9. (d)

10. (c)

# Chapter twelve

## Provincial Kingdoms

*The Bahmani and the Vijayanagara were the two great empires that arose in the Deccan after the end of the Sultanate. The control over Raichur Doab was the main issue which resulted in the long Bahmani Vijayanagara struggle.*

### The Emergence of Provincial Kingdoms

- The attack by Timur Lane in AD 1398, on Delhi and flight of the Tughlaq king from his capital, exposed the weakness of the Delhi Sultanate and embedded a member of provincial Governors and autonomous principalities to declare their independence.

#### Provincial Kingdoms

| Kingdoms         | Capitals    | Founders/Most Important Rulers                                   | Significances   |
|------------------|-------------|--|---|
| Malwa            | Dhar/ Mandu | Hushang Shah (AD 1406-35)  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>He founded the city of Hoshangabad.</li> </ul>   |
| Gujarat          |             | Shihab-u-din Ahmed (AD 1411-42)<br>Mahmud Begarha (AD 1458-1511) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Founded the city of Ahmedabad. Imposed Jaziya for the first time in Gujarat on Hindus.</li> <li>Considered as the greatest Sultan of Gujarat. Italian traveller Barthema and Portuguese traveller Duarte Barbosa visited his court.</li> </ul>   |
| Mewar            | Chittor     | Rana Kumbha (AD 1433-68)<br><br>Rana Sanga (AD 1509-28)          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The greatest ruler of Malwa. Famous for his Javastambha or Kirtistambha after defeating Mahmud Khilji of Malwa. A great poet, a man of letters, an accomplished player of Veena.</li> <li>Defeated Mahmud Khilji II of Malwa and Ibrahim Lodhi. He was defeated by Babur in the Battle of Khanwa in 1527.</li> </ul> |
| Marwar           |             | Rao Jodha<br>Bika (AD 1465)                                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Built the fort of Jodhpur.</li> <li>Founded Bikaner.</li> </ul>  |
| Amber or Amer    |             | Hammir Deva  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The most famous ruler of this dynasty.</li> </ul>  |
| Bengal           |             | Ala-u-din Hussain Shah<br>Nusrat Shah                            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Desecrated the Jagannath temple at Puri.</li> <li>Chaitanya preached Vaishnavism in his reign.</li> <li>Built Bara Sona and Qadama Rasul Mosque.</li> <li>Celebrated poet, Maladhar Basu, compiler of Sri Krishna Vijaya was granted the title of Gunraja Khan.</li> </ul>   |
| Orissa           |             |  |   |
| Ganga dynasty    |             | Avantivarman Ganga   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Built the famous Jagannath temple.</li> </ul>  |
| Gajapati dynasty |             | Narasimhavarman<br>Kapilendra                                    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Built the Konark temple.</li> <li>Fought successfully against the Bahmanis of Bidar and the rulers of Vijayanagara.</li> </ul>   |
| Assam            |             | Sukapha (13th century)   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Extended his territory in the West at the cost of Kamarupa.</li> </ul>   |
| Jaunpur          |             |  |   |
| Sharqi dynasty   |             | Malik Mubarak Shah<br>Ibrahim Shah                               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>First to assume royal titles issue coins.</li> <li>Considered as the greatest ruler of Jaunpur.</li> <li>Beautified Jaunpur and made it a centre of art, architecture learning known as <i>Shiraj</i> of the East.</li> </ul>  |

## The Origin of Vijayanagara Empire

- The Vijayanagara empire was founded in AD 1336 by Harihara and Bukka of the Sangama dynasty. The two Sangama brothers were in the service of the *Kakatiya* ruler of Warangal, *Prataparudra II*.
- After the Muslim conquest of the Kakatiya kingdom in AD 1323, they joined the kingdom of Kampili in modern Karnataka as ministers in the royal court.
- After establishing their sway over Kampili at first for the Sultan, the two Sangama brothers returned to the Hindu fold at the initiative of *Saint Vidyaranya*, proclaimed their independence and founded a new city on the South bank of the Tungabhadra, in AD 1336, which was called *Vijayanagara* (*city of Victory*) or *Vidyanagara* (*city of Learning*). The capital of the kingdom was Hastinavati (*Hampi*).
- Vijayanagar's rival were *Bahmani Sultans* with whom they fought many battles. The areas of contention were *Tungabhadra doab* (between Krishna and Tungabhadra), *Krishna-Godavari Delta*, *Konkan areas of Marathwada*.

### Sources of Vijayanagara Empire

| Literary Sources             | Sources   | Informations  |
|------------------------------|---|---|
| Foreign Traveller's Accounts | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Rehla or Tuhaft-un-Nuzzar by Ibn Battuta (Moroccan traveller) Auktamalayada by Krishna Deva Raya</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Account of the empire under Harihara I.</li> </ul>   |
| Indigenous Works             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Manucharitam by Allasani Peddan</li> <li>Gangadasa Pratapa Vilasam by Gangadhara</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Polity and political ideas of the rulers society and caste system.</li> </ul>  |
| Archaeological Sources       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Salu vabhuyodayam by Rajanatha Dindima</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A contemporary drama, deals with the siege of Vijayanagara city by the Bahmanis and the Gajapatis of Orissa after the death of Deva Raya II.</li> <li>Historical ecology of the Saluva dynasty.</li> </ul> |
| Inscriptions                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Baggeli copper plate inscription.</li> <li>Bitragunta grant of Sangama II.</li> <li>Channa Raya Pateeka inscription of Harihara II.</li> <li>Srirangam copper plates of Deva Raya II.</li> <li>Devulapalli copper plates of Immadi Narasimha.</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Achievements of Harihara I.</li> <li>Genealogy of 5 Sangama brothers.</li> <li>Successful invasions of Bukka I.</li> <li>Achievements of Bukka I.</li> <li>Genealogy of Saluva dynasty.</li> </ul>         |

## The Vijayanagara Monarchs

### The Sangama Dynasty

#### Harihara I (AD 1336 -1356)

- He was the founder of Sangama dynasty. He took part in 1344 in the confederacy organised by Krishna Nayak of Warangal to drive out the Muslims from the Deccan.

#### Bukka I (AD 1356 -1379)

- He is described in inscriptions as the master of the Eastern, Western and Southern oceans.
- He brought about reconciliation between the Jains and the Vaishnavas by asking them to worship in their own manner with equal freedom. He was succeeded by Harihara II.

#### Harihara II (AD 1379-1404)

- Bukka I was succeeded by his son Harihara II. He was the first ruler to assume legal title of *Raja Parmeshwara, Maharajadhiraja*. He embarked upon a policy of expansion towards the Eastern sea coast, led the Vijayanagara empire into fresh conflicts.

#### Deva Raya I (AD 1406 -1422)

- He was defeated by the Bahmani ruler Firoz Shah and had to pay a huge indemnity.
- In 1420, Nicolo de Conti Italian visited the city and had given its vivid description.

#### Deva Raya II (AD 1422-1446)

- He employed a large number of Muslims in his service and gave them Jagirs.
- He allowed freedom of religion to Muslims and used to place a copy of Quran in front of his throne.
- Abdur Razzaq, the ambassador of Persian monarch Shahrukh (son of Timur) visited Vijayanagara.

### The Saluva Dynasty (AD 1486-1505)

- Saluva Narasimha was the founder of Saluva dynasty.
- Narasimha was succeeded by Tirumal (1491) and Immadi Narasimha. Vasco Da Gama landed in Calicut during his reign in 1498.

### The Tuluva Dynasty (AD 1505-1570)

- Vira Narasimha was the founder of Tuluva dynasty.
- According to Nuniz, he was a pious king and distributed gifts at sacred places.

### Krishna Deva Raya

- He was the greatest ruler of Vijayanagara. He took titles like *Andhra Bhoja, Andhra Pitamah, Abhinav Bhoja, Domingo Paes*, a Portuguese traveller visited during his reign.
- He built the famous temples of Krishnaswamy, Hazara Ramaswamy and Vittalaswamy.

### Sadashiva

- He was a mere puppet in the hands of his minister Rama Raya. Deccani States joined together and formed a Quadruple alliance (Bijapur, Golconda, Ahmednagar and Bidar against Vijayanagara).
- Ibrahim Qutab Shah of Golconda played an important part in bringing about this alliance. Resulted in the Battle of Talikota/Rakshasa Tangadi/Bannighati in which Vijayanagara was badly defeated.

### Krishnadeva Raya's Ashtadiggajas

*Krishnadeva Raya's court was adorned by the following Ashtadiggajas (the eight celebrated poets)*

**Peddana** wrote Manucharitam and Harikathasaransamu;  
**Timma** wrote Parijatapaharavam;  
**Madaya** wrote RajaSekara charitam;  
**Dhurjate** wrote Kalahasti Mahatyam;  
**Surana** wrote Raghava Pandaviyam and Prabhavati Pradyuman;  
**Tenali Ramalingam** wrote Panduranga Mahatyam;  
**Ayyalaraju Ramabhadra** wrote Sakalamatasara Sangraharr;  
**Rama Raja Bhushan** was the eighth diggaj, who wrote Kavyalankora Sangrahamu.

### The Aravidu Dynasty (AD 1570-1652)

#### Venkata II

- He was the last great ruler of Vijayanagara who kept the empire intact. The only exception was that in 1612 Raja wodeyar founded the State of Mysore.

#### Vijayanagara Administration

- The King kingship was based on the principle of absolute monarchy, but of the benevolent type.
- He was the highest court of appeal and the supreme law-giver.

#### Central Administration

- There was a Council of Ministers, headed by a Prime Minister, to assist and advise the king in administrative matters.

#### Provincial and Local Government

- The empire was divided into different administrative units Manadalams or Rajyas (*Provinces*), Nadus (*Districts*), Sthalas (*Sub-districts*) and finally into Gramas (*Villages*). The number and size of the Manadalams varied from time-to-time. Each province was under a Governor, described as Madalesvara or Nayaka.

#### Revenue Administration

- Land revenue** from crown lands was the most important source of revenue. It was fixed on the basis of crop cultivation and the quantum of yield obtained. Generally, 1/6th of the gross produce was collected as revenue. But sometimes, it was raised to 50%.

- Prostitution was regulated and heavily taxed. Kaikkolas, a class of weavers and barbers were exempted from taxation. Private owners of workshops paid an industries tax.

#### Some Important Revenue Terms

| Economic Terms | Related With                                |
|----------------|---|
| Fawazil        | Surplus extracted from the area             |
| Mahsul         | Collected revenue                           |
| Kismat         | Subsidiary tax                              |
| Bhandarawada   | The crown village                           |
| Manyam         | Tax free village                            |
| Devadana       | Land granted to temple                      |
| Amaram         | Village granted to military chiefs (Nayaks) |

#### Judicial Administration

- King administered the justice impartially. He presided over the Sabha, the highest court of appeal.
- There were also village courts, caste panchayats and guild organisations to dispose of petty offences like violation of caste rules and rules of trade.
- Generally, Dharmasastras formed the basis on which cases were decided.

#### The Nayakkara and Ayagar Systems

Under the **Nayakkara system**, military chiefs were assigned a piece of land called **Amaram**. These chiefs known as **Nayaks of Palaiyagars** had revenue and administrative rights on their lands. They were required to maintain elephant, horses and soldiers in certain numbers which were to be provided to king during wars. They also had to pay a particular sum of money to the central exchequer. The Nayaks were independent in their areas and were non-transferable.

The **Ayagar system** was an important feature of village administration. Under this system body of twelve functionaries, known as **Ayagars**, conducted every village affairs. They were granted tax free lands which they were to enjoy in perpetuity. An important feature of Ayagar system was that Ayagars were hereditary officials and there could be no sale or purchase of land, in the village, without their permission.

#### Military Administration

- There was a well organised and efficient standing army. Some of the Nadaprabhu (*Incharge of Nadus*) like the Gaudas of Bangalore practically protected the boundaries from foreign invasions and even helped in suppressing the defiant provincial governors and vassals.
- Ordinary soldiers of the royal army were usually paid in cash, but big officers were granted territory (*Amaram*) with fixed revenue in lieu of their salaries.

### Famous Travellers to Vijayanagara Kingdom

| Travellers         | Brief Descriptions   |
|--------------------|--|
| Ibn Battuta        | He was a Moroccan traveller, who left an account of Harihara I's reign in his book <i>Rehla</i> also called <i>Tuhfat-un-Nuzzar ft Gharaibul-Amsar Wa Ajaib-ul-Assar</i> .   |
| Nicolo de Conti    | An Italian traveller who visited during the time of Deva Raya I.   |
| Abdur Razzak       | Ambassador of Shahrukh of Samarcand at the court of the Zamorin of Calicut. He gave an account of the reign of Deva Raya II.   |
| Athanasius Nikitin | A Russian merchant, who described the conditions of the Bahamani kingdom under Muhammed III in his <i>Voyage to India</i> .  |
| Duarte Barbosa     | A Portuguese who has given a vivid account of the Vijayanagara Government under Krishnadeva Raya in his famous book <i>An Account of Countries Bordering the Indian Ocean and their Inhabitants</i> .  |
| Dominigas Paes     | Portuguese traveller, who spent a number of years at Krishnadeva Raya's court and has given a glowing account of his personality.  |
| Marcopolo          | The only traveller who could rival, Ibn Battuta's tag of The greatest medieval traveller arrived at India's opposite extremity, a Tamil port, enroute from China in AD 1290. Marcopolo to his surprise found that in peninsular India, there were tailors. |

### Vijayanagara Society

- Allasani Peddana, in his *Manucharitam*, mentions the four castes that existed in the Vijayanagara society.
  - Viprulu or Brahmins* followed the traditional profession of teachers and priests.
  - Rajulu or Rachavaru* were generally associated with the Ruling dynasty.
  - Matikaratulu or Vaishyas* were the same as merchants who carried on trade and commerce.
  - Nalavajativaru or Shudras* were mainly agriculturists, but some of them carried on several other professions.
- The practice of dancing girls attached to temples was also in vogue.

### Women's Status

**Women occupied** an honourable position in the Vijayanagara society. Some of them were very learned and were eminent laureates.

Gangadevi, wife of Kampana (*one of the son of Bukka I*), wrote *Madura-vijayam*.

Hannamma was a prominent scholar in the court of Prauda Deva. Tirumalamma was a distinguished poetess in sanskrit in the reign of Achyuta Raya.

- The plight of widow was pitiable, but they could remarry. The state encouraged widow re-marriage by not levying any tax on it.
- An inscription dated AD 1534 gives evidence of one Malgaura committing sati. Krishnadeva Raya himself married a Ganika called *Chinnadevi*.

### Religion and Philosophy

- Early Vijayanagara rulers were followers of Saivism. *Virupaksha* was their family God. Later they came under the influence of Vaishnavism. But Siva continued to be worshipped.
- Vaishnavism was professed in various forms. Sri Vaishnavism of Ramanuja was highly popular.
- The Dvaita System of Madhava was also practiced.

### Economic Conditions

- Agriculture** It was in a flourishing condition. It was the policy of rulers to encourage agriculture in the different parts of the empire and to increase agricultural production by a Wise Irrigation Policy. *Nuniz*, the Portuguese traveller, speaks of the construction of a dam and excavation of canals.
- Industries** The agricultural wealth was supplemented by numerous industries, the most important of which were textiles, mining and metallurgy. Another important industry was perfumery.
- Industries and crafts were regulated by guilds.

### Trade

- The most important commercial area on the West coast was Malabar, with its important port of *Cannanore*.
- Among the *exports*, the main items were cloth, spice, rice, iron, saltpetre and sugar etc. The main imports consisted of horse, elephant, pearl, copper, coral, mercury, China silk and velvet.

### Coinage

- The Vijayanagara emperors issued a large number of gold coins, called *Varahas/Pagodas* (Varahas because the most common symbol was Varaha the Boar incarnation of Vishnu).
- Harihara I and Bukka I used the Hanuman symbol in their coins.
- Krishna Deva Raya's coins had the figures of Venkatesh and Balkrishna.
- Achyuta Raya used Garuda while Tirumala maintained the original Varaha.

## The Cultural Contribution of Vijayanagara

### Architecture

- The temple building activity of the Vijayanagara rulers produced a new style, called the *Vijayanagara style*. Though, often characterised as *Dravida style*, it had its own distinct features.
- The large number of pillars and the complicated manner in which they were sculptured are some of its distinct features.
- The horse was the most common animal to be depicted on the pillars.
- The temples had a Mandapam or open pavilion with a raised platform, generally meant for seating the deity on special occasions.
- These temples also had a Kalyana Mandapam with elaborately carved pillars.
- The most magnificent of the temples in this style are in Hampi (*Vijayanagara*). Vittalaswami and the Hazara Ramaswami temples are the best examples.
- The Raya Gopurams, towers in commemoration of the visit of emperors in different corners of the empire, are also important examples of architecture of the period.
- In the Vijayanagara temples the central part was occupied by the Garbhagriha, the sanctum cell where the presiding deity was installed.

### Literature

| Authors                                  | Books   |
|--|---|
| Krishnadeva Raya                         | Amuktamalyada (a book on polity)<br>Jambavati Kalyana |
| Allasani Peddana<br>(Andhrakavi Pitamha) | Manucharitam<br>Harikatha Sarammsama                  |
| Tenali ramakrishna                       | Pandura Ngamahatyam                                   |
| Tirumala                                 | Commented on Jayadev's Gitagovinda                    |
| Dikshitar                                | Commentary on Vedas                                   |
| Vemana                                   | Vemanasatakas   |
| Elugandi Peddana                         | Translated Leelavati, a book on Mathematics           |
| Chamarasa                                | Prabhulinglai   |
| Virupaksha Pandit                        | Chennabasva Purana                                    |
| Kumara Vyasa                             | Composed Mahabharata in Kannada                       |
| Bhimakavi                                | Basava Purana   |
| Dharajati                                | Kalahastimahatyam                                     |
| Madayya                                  | Rajasekhara charitam                                  |
| Ramabhadra                               | Sakaramatasara Sangraham                              |

## Vijayanagara Art

### Music

- Vijayanagara period is known for origin of Carnatic music under Purandhar Das period known for origin of Rudraveenas.

### Dance

- Bharatanatyam was promoted.

### Drama

- Yakshagana was a popular dance and drama closely associated with temple walls.

### Paintings

- Themes of Ramayana and Mahabharata on temple walls.

### Sculpture

- Largest number of portrait sculptures in this period. Portrait sculpture of Krishnadeva Raya and his queen is seen at Tirumala.

## The Bahmani Kingdom

- The Bahmani kingdom was founded in 1347, by Hasan Gangu.
- Hasan Gangu** He assumed the title of *Ala u ddin Hasan*. Bahman Shah had founded the Bahmani kingdom with Gulbarga as its capital.
- Mahmud Shah I** (1358-75) son of Bahman Shah assumed power in Bahmani after him. He fought with Vijayanagara.
- Firoz Shah** (1397-1422) was the most remarkable figure in the Bahmani kingdom. He was determined to make Deccan the cultural centre of India.
- He inducted Hindus in his administration to large extent. He built an observatory at Daulatabad. He founded city of **Firozabad** on the bank of river Bhima. Firoz defeated Deva Raya I.
- Ahmed Shah Wali** (AD 1422-35) transferred the capital from Gulbarga to Bidar and his reign marked the end of the Gulbarga Phase of Bahmani kingdom and the beginning of the Second Phase, called the **Bidar Phase**. Ahmed Shah was known as Wali due to his association with a Sufi, Gesu Daraz.
- Nikitin a Russian merchant, visited Bidar during his reign.

### Mahmud Gawan

He was the Prime Minister of Mohammed Shah III between 1463-81. The Bahmani kingdom saw a resurgence under his guidance. His military conquests included Konkan, Goa and the Krishna-Godavari delta. Mahmud Gawan expanded the Bahmani kingdom as never before. He was a persian by birth, hence an Afaqi or Gharib. Afaqis or Gharibs were the nobles, who were of foreign origins and had migrated from Arab or elsewhere.

### Administration of Bahmani Kingdom

| Officers         | Roles   |
|------------------|---|
| Vakil-us-Sultana | Equivalent to the Naib Sultan of the Delhi Sultanate, served as regent also |
| Peshwa           | Attached to the Vakil   |
| Wazir-i-Kul      | Prime Minister; supervised the work of all other ministers                  |
| Amir-i-Jumla     | Head of the Finance Department  |
| Wazir            | Deputy Head of the Finance Department                                       |
| Waziri Ashraf    | Foreign affairs and royal court   |
| Sadr-i-Jahan     | Head of the Judicial, ecclesiastical and Charities Department               |
| Kotwal           | Head of the Police Department   |
| Tarifs           | Provinces   |
| Tarafdar         | Provincial Governors  |

### Independent Kingdoms of Deccan

Various kingdoms emerged after the decline of Bahmani kingdom are as follows:

#### Bijapur

- It was established in 1489-90 by Yusuf Adil Shah with Adil Shahi dynasty. It was annexed to Mughal empire by Aurangzeb in 1686.

#### Ahmednagar

- It was established by Malik Ahmed with Nizam Shahi dynasty. It was annexed to Mughal Empire by Shah Jahan in 1637.

#### Berar

- It was established in 1490 by Fath Ullah Imad Shah with Imad Shahi dynasty. It was annexed by Ahmednagar in 1574.

#### Golconda

- It was established by Qutub Shah in 1512 with Qutub Shahi dynasty. It was annexed to Mughal empire by Aurangzeb in 1687.

#### Bidar

- It was established in 1526 by Amir Ali Barid with Barid Shahi dynasty. Ibrahim Adil Shah II of Bijapur annexed Bidar to Bijapur in 1618-19.

# Self Check

# Build Your Confidence



1. (c)      2. (c)      3. (d)      4. (a)      5. (d)      6. (b)      7. (d)      8. (c)      9. (d)      10. (b)  
11. (b)      12. (c)      13. (d)      14. (d)      15. (c)

# Chapter thirteen

# Religious Movements

The medieval period is considered as an age of great cultural synthesis in India. The synthesis between different cultures gave birth to new philosophical and religious traditions like Sufism and Bhakti, new religion like Sikhism, growth of Urdu and Persian languages and literature.

## Bhakti Movement

- Bhakti is a devotional worship of God with the ultimate objective of attaining moksha or salvation. The concept of 'Bhakti' was put forth right in the AD 6th century, but became most popular during the medieval times all over India. The 'Alvars (Vaishnavaites) and Nayanars (Shaivites) popularised the cult in South India.
- The Bhakti saints offered a liberal approach of Hinduism, which was largely targeted to the lower castes. Rama and Krishna emerged as the leading Hindu deities. With Saguna and Nirguna Bhakti emerged as powerful medium, each having its own votaries. There were Siddhas of Tamil region who were monotheistic and condemned idolatry.
- Lingayatas of Kannda region questioned the theory of rebirth and rejected the caste hierarchy.
- Saints of Bhakti Movement gave three means (margas) for attaining salvation,  
1. Gyan Marga              2. Karma Marga  
3. Bhakti Marga

## Causes for the Emergence of Bhakti Movement

- Bhakti Movement used local language for preaching. They ignored caste system and initially, this movement was based on equality of all human beings. The saints of Bhakti Movement led a very simple lifestyle and Bhakti Movement became very popular in Southern India and displaced Jainism and Buddhism as popular religions from that region.
- Improvement in the economic condition of the lower class, especially artisans and impact of Islam's doctrine of monotheism and equality were also important causes for emergence of Bhakti Movement in North.

## Bhakti Saints

### Sankracharya (AD 788 - 822)

- He is known as *Pseudo-Buddha* or saviour of *modern Hinduism*; born at Kalindi, Kerala.
- Teaching concepts of maya (illusion), advaita and importance of Vedanta.
- He established 4 mathas at Badrinath, Puri, Sringeri and Dwarka.
- He wrote commentaries on Upanishads, *Bhagawad Gita* and Brahmasutras of Badrayana.

### Ramanuja Acharya (AD 1017 - 1137)

- He was a Tamil Vaishnavite saint. He advocated, Philosophy of Visistadvaita. wrote *Vedanta Samgraha*, commentaries on Brahmasutras and *Bhagawad Gita*.

### Vallabhacharya (1479-1531 CE)

- He was a devotional philosopher, who founded the Pushti sect in India following the philosophy of Shuddha advaita.

### Madhavacharya (13th Century)

- He was a Kannada Vaishnavite saint. He gave Philosophy of Dvaita and divided universe into two parts: Swatantra and a Swatantra.

### Nimbaraka (13th-14th centuries)

- He was a Telugu Vaishnavite saint; Concept of Dvaita was propounded by him.

### Raghunandan

- He belonged to Navadvipa (Nadia) in Bengal. and was Considered to be the most influential writer on the Dharamashastras.

### Vidyapati (14th-15th Centuries)

- He was also known as *Maithil Kavi Kokil* and was a *Maithili* poet and a Sanskrit writer. He was born in the village Bisje in Madhubani district of Mithila, region of India. His works includes Bhu-Parikarma, Varsakrtya, Danavakyavali etc.

### Two Schools of Bhakti Thoughts

| <i>Saguna Bhakti</i>                               | <i>Nirguna Bhakti</i>                                  |
|--|--|
| Believed in the personification of God.            | Believed in formless God.                              |
| Worshipped Lord Vishnu in form of Ram and Krishna. | Against caste system and brahmanic rituals.            |
| Not very liberal in social matters.                | Liberal in social matters                              |
| Saints—Ramananda, Surdas, Tulsidas, Chaitanya.     | Saints Kabir, Nanak, Raidas, Dhanna, Sena, Pipa, Dadu. |

### Nirguna Saints

#### Kabir (AD 1440-1510)

- He opposed to caste, creed, image worship and propagated Hindu-Muslim unity. He wrote- Sabad, Bijak, Doha, Holi, Rekhtal. The verses of Kabir, Namdev, Raidas, Dhanna, Pipa etc; were included in *Adi Granth*. He propagated Ram Bhakti.

#### Bijak

- The best known as of the compilation of the compositions of *Kabir* is known as *Bijak*.
- It is the holy scripture for followers of the Kabirpanthi religion.
- The *Bijak* is one of the earliest of the major texts in modern Hindi. The term 'Bijak' is derived from 'Bija', meaning a document containing sacred texts.

#### Guru Nanak (AD 1469-1539)

- He was born at Talwandi in Lahore. He propagated monism, Hindu-Muslim unity and denounced idol worship.
  - His disciple Mardana played Rabab. His poems were later collected in the *Adi Grantha*. His followers founded a new religious sect Sikhism and it had ten Gurus.
- |  |                        |
|--|------------------------|
| (i) Guru Nanak   | (ii) Guru Angad        |
| (iii) Guru Amardas   |                        |
| (iv) Guru Ramdas, Akbar granted him the land at Amritsar, where the Golden temple now exists.  |                        |
| (v) Guru Arjanmal, compiled <i>Adi Granth</i> and was killed by Jahangir.  |                        |
| (vi) Guru Hargobind, he militarised the Sikh sect and defeated the Mughal army at Sangama near Amritsar.   |                        |
| (vii) Guru Har Rai   | (viii) Guru Har Kishan |
| (ix) Guru Tegh Bahadur, he was executed by Aurangzeb.  |                        |
| (x) Guru Gobind Singh, he instituted the custom of Baptism thus, formed the <i>Khalsa</i> . He compiled <i>Dasven Padshah Ka Granth</i> was stabbed to death by an Afghan fanatic. |                        |

### Dadu Dayal (AD 1554-1603)

- He was born in Ahmedabad to Muslim parents, brought up by a Hindu. His teachings are collected in a book called '*BANI*'. Disciples-Sundaradasa, Rajjab, Bakham and Warid. He founded Brahma sect or Param Brahma Sampradaya.

### Saguna Saints (Ram Bhakti)

#### Tulsi Das (AD 1532-1623)

- He was contemporary to Akbar. He wrote *Ramcharitamanas*, *Kavitawali*, *Gitawali*, *Parvati Mangal*, *Janaki Mangal*.

#### Nabhaji

- He wrote *Bhaktmal* in which 200 Bhaktas have been mentioned.

#### Ramananda (AD 14th-15th Centuries)

- He propogated Bhakti in North India. Organised a group of cadres called *Bairagis*. His disciples include Kabir (*weaver*), Raidas (*cobler*), Sen (*Barber*), Dhanna (*Jat*). He was a worshipper of Krishna.

#### Famous Disciples of Ramananda

| Disciples | Communities   | Disciples | Communities |
|-----------|---------------|-----------|-------------|
| Kabir     | Muslim Weaver | Ravidasa  | Cobbler     |
| Sena      | Barber        | Sadhana   | Butcher     |
| Dhanna    | Jat Peasant   | Naraha    | Goldsmith   |
| Pipa      | Rajput Prince |           |             |

### Twelve Disciples of Ramananda

#### Twelve Disciples (Avadhuts of Ramananda)

- |                 |                   |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| (i) Kabir       | (ii) Pipa         |
| (iii) Dhanna    | (iv) Ravidas      |
| (v) Bharanand   | (vi) Sen          |
| (vii) Sukhanand | (viii) Sri Ananda |
| (ix) Paramanand | (x) Sursurananda  |
| (xi) Mahanand   | (xii) Anantananda |

### Saguna Saints (Krishna Bhakti)

#### Vallabhacharya (AD 1479-1531)

- He was Telangana Brahmin born at Banaras. Title *Jagat Guru Mahaprabhu*. Established Pushti Marg. He established Pushtimarg and gave philosophy of Shudha Advaita.

#### Surdas (AD 1483-1563)

- He was disciple of Vallabhacharya and a blind poet of Agra. Sang the glory of Krishna in his *Sursagar*.

#### Mirabai (AD 1498-1546)

- She was rathore princess of Merata and daughter in law of Rana Sanga of Mewar (*husband- Bhuja Raja*). She wrote the vers *Padavali*.

## **Chaitanya** (AD 1486-1533)

- He was known as Gaudiya Mahaprabhu. Founder of Gaurang or Bengal Vaishnavism. His teacher was *Ishwarpuri*. He propounded philosophy of Achintya Bhedabhedha

## **Shankara Deva** (AD 1449-1568)

- Established *Ek Sharana Sampradaya* or *Mahapurushya Sampradaya* in Assam.

## Maharashtra Dharma Saints

**Jnanesvara / Jnanadeva** (AD 1271-1296)

- He was worshipper of Vithoba. He was associated with *Krishnamargi sect*. He was founder of Marathi language and literature. He wrote commentaries on *Bhagawad Gita* called *Dyaneshwari/ Bhavarthadipika*.

## **Namdeva** (AD 1270-1350)

- He was tailor by caste, opposed caste distinction. He founded **Vakari sect** or the cult of **Vithoba**.

## **Eknath** (AD 1533-1599)

- He was associated with Varkari Sect. He wrote commentary on the Ramayana called the *Bhavartha Ramayana and another commentary on the 11th book of the Bhagawata Purana*.

## **Tukaram** (1598-1650)

- He was associated with Dharkari and Varkari sect. He wrote devotional poems called *Abhangas*. He was the teacher of Shivaji.

## Ramdas (1608-1681)

- He compiled his writings and sermons in *Dasabodha*.

## Purandar Das (1480-1564)

- A saint from Karnataka, he is known as the Father of *Carnatic music*.

## Tyagaraja (1767-1847)

- Greatest saint composer of Carnatic music from Tamil Nadu.

# The Sufi Movement



Sufi Orders

| Orders                         | Founders  | Area of Propagations                     | Famous Saints  | Principles   |
|--------------------------------|---|--|--|--|
| Chishtis                       | Khwaja Moin-ud-din Chisti (came with Ghor) Burhan-ud-din Garib. | North India (Delhi-Ajmer)<br>South India | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Qutb-ud-din Bakhtiyar Kaki</li> <li>Farid-ul-din Ganj-i-Shakar (his verses were included in Adi Granth of Sikhs)</li> <li>Nizam-ud-din Auliya</li> <li>Nasir-ud-din Chirag-i-Delhi</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Kept aloof from royal court</li> <li>Popularised music recitations called <b>Sama</b> (Mahboob-i-Ilahi).</li> <li>Amir Khusrau was disciple of Auliya.</li> </ul> |
| Suharwardiy                    | Shikh Shihab-ud-din Suharwardi                                  | Punjab Multan                            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hamid-ud-din Nagori</li> <li>Rukn-ud-din Abdul Fath</li> <li>Baha-ud-din Zakaria</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Accepted Royal Service.</li> </ul>  |
| Qadiri                         | Sheika Nizamat Ullah  | Sind Lahore                              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Nasiruddin Mohammed Jilani</li> <li>Dara Shikoh (Shah Jahan's son)</li> </ul>   |  |
| Naqshbandi                     |   | North India                              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Sheikh Ahmed Sirhindi (Mujaddid)</li> <li>Ubaidullah Ahrar</li> <li>Babur</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Orthodox sect</li> <li>Mujaddid opposed Shias, philosophy of Wahadat-ul-Shahdud, wrote 'Red-i-Khafid', arrested by Jahangir.</li> </ul>                           |
| Firdausi                       |   | Bihar                                    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Baduddin Samaragi</li> <li>Ahmed Iban Yahiya Maneri</li> </ul>  |  |
| Roshaniya Order (Akbar's time) | Miyan Bayazid Ansari (Pir Roshan)                               | Tribal Areas of North West               |  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ansari wrote the book Khair-ul-Bayan.</li> </ul>  |
| Mahadevi                       | Mullah Mohammad Jaunpur Mahdi                                   |  |  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Opposed orthodox Muslims.</li> </ul>  |
| Rishi                          | Nur-ud-din Noorani Kashmir (wali)                               |  |  |  |
| Qalandariya                    | Abu Wali Qalandar   |  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Sidi Maulah</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Wandering monks were called <b>Darvishes</b>.</li> <li>Organised attack on Baba Farid.</li> <li>Claimed direct contact with God.</li> </ul>                       |
| Shattari                       | Abdullah Shattari   | Gujarat, Meerut                          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Vaji-al-din</li> <li>Shah Pir</li> </ul>  |  |

# Self Check

## Build Your Confidence

- 1.** With reference to the religious history of medieval India, the Sufi mystics were known to pursue which of the following practices? [IAS 2012]

- Meditation and control of breath.
- Severe ascetic exercises in a lonely place.
- Recitation of holy songs to arouse a state of ecstasy in their audience.

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

- |             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| (a) 1 and 2 | (b) 2 and 3      |
| (c) Only 3  | (d) All of these |

- 2.** The Sufi saint who maintained that devotional music was one way of coming close to God was

- Moin-ud-din Chisti
- Baba Farid
- Sayjid Muhammad Gesudaraz
- Shah Alam Bukhari

- 3.** Assertion (A) The sponsor and the most prominent figure of the Chisti order of Sufis in India is Khwaja Moin-ud-din Chisti.

Reason (R) The Chisti order takes its name from a village Chisti in Ajmer. [IAS 1997]

Codes

- Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A
- Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A
- A is true, but R is false
- A is false, but R is true

- 4.** Match the following

[IAS 2001]

| List I |         | List II |         |
|--------|---------|---------|---------|
| A.     | Namdev  | 1.      | Barber  |
| B.     | Kabir   | 2.      | Weaver  |
| C.     | Ravidas | 3.      | Tailor  |
| D.     | Sena    | 4.      | Cobbler |

Codes

- |     |   |   |   |   |     |   |   |   |   |
|-----|---|---|---|---|-----|---|---|---|---|
| A   | B | C | D | A | B   | C | D |   |   |
| (a) | 2 | 3 | 1 | 4 | (b) | 3 | 2 | 4 | 1 |
| (c) | 3 | 2 | 1 | 4 | (d) | 2 | 3 | 4 | 1 |

- 5.** Who among the following was the first Bhakti saint to use Hindi for the propagation of his message? [IAS 2002]

- Dadu
- Kabir
- Ramananda
- Tulsidas

- 6.** Bhakta Tukaram was a contemporary of which Mughal Emperor? [IAS 2006]

- Babur
- Akbar
- Jahangir
- Aurangzeb

- 7.** Which of the following was not a contribution of the Bhakti Movement?

- It provided a simple and inexpensive religion for the people
- It successfully attacked some of the deep rooted superstitions of the masses
- It succeeded in uniting the Hindus and the Muslims
- It made a dent on the rigidity of the caste system

- 8.** Consider the following Bhakti saints

[IAS 2013]

- Dadu Dayal
- Guru Nanak
- Tyagaraja

Who among the above was/were preaching when the Lodhi dynasty fell and Babur took over?

- 1 and 3
- Only 2
- 2 and 3
- 1 and 2

- 9.** Chisti order became the most popular Sufi order in India on account of

- its high ethical ideals
- the identification of the Chisti saints with the common masses
- the liberal outlook of many of its saints
- All of the above

- 10.** Which of the following was not one of the four cardinal doctrines of sufism?

- Complete surrender to the will of God
- Annihilation of the self
- Acquisition of mystic powers and attributes
- The realisation of God

- 11.** Guru Nanak's concept of religion was

- severely practical
- ethical
- Both 'a' and 'b'
- purely spiritual

- 12.** The Sufi saints made themselves popular by adopting musical recitations called Sama. What purpose did sama serve?

- It helped to attract followers
- It created a mood of nearness to God
- It helped the recluse in meditation
- It expressed the mood of defiance against orthodox Islam, which prohibited the use of music

- 13.** The greatest social impact of the Bhakti Movement on medieval Hindu society was

- removal of distinctions between the higher and lower castes
- decline in the superiority of the Brahmins
- the remoulding of social institutions
- education of people to distinguish superstitions from religious values



1. (d)      2. (b)      3. (c)      4. (b)      5. (c)      6. (c)      7. (c)      8. (b)      9. (d)      10. (d)  
11. (c)      12. (b)      13. (a)

# Chapter fourteen

# The Mughal Empire

*Mughal dynasty established and maintained, one of the largest empire in the Indian History. In terms of military power, administrative innovations, cultural developments, economic prosperity and political consolidation Mughal empire touched new heights.*

## The Mughal Dynasty

- The Mughal empire, self-designated as Gurkani was an empire extending over a large parts of the Indian subcontinent. It begins with the victory of Babur over Ibrahim Lodhi with a brief interval of 15 years, when Sher Shah Suri and his successors ruled the country, the Mughal empire lasted from AD 1526 to 1707 for 181 years.

### Babur (AD 1526-30)

- He was the founder of the Mughal rule and belonged to chughtai section of the Turkish race. The Uzbeks taught him a novel method of warfare, called Tulughma by which the attention of the enemy was diverted by first attacking its flanking parties and thus, avoiding direct clash with the main forces. Wrote his autobiography *Tuzuk-i-Baburi* in Turki.
- He was defeated in the Battle of Chausa by Sher Shah Suri in 1539.
- He was invited to attack India by Daulat Khan Lodhi (*Subedar of Punjab*), Ibrahim Lodhi's uncle Alam Khan Lodhi and Rana Sanga.

#### Babur's Invasions

| Years      | Territories                  | Specifics   |
|------------|------------------------------|---|
| AD 1518-19 | Bajaur and Bhira             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• First invasion of India.</li><li>• Babur's artillery played a decisive role.</li><li>• Gun powder was used for the first time.</li></ul>  |
| AD 1520    | Sialkot                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Third expedition in India.</li></ul>  |
| AD 1524    | Lahore and Depalpur          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Gave Sultanpur to Dilwar Khan.</li></ul>  |
| AD 1526    | Panipat                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Defeat of Ibrahim Lodhi.</li></ul>  |
| AD 1527    | Khanwa (near Fatehpur Sikri) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Defeated Rana Sanga.</li><li>• This victory secured Babur's position in Delhi-Agra region.</li></ul>  |
| AD 1528    | Chanderi                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Defeated the Rajput ruler, Medini Rai.</li></ul>  |
| AD 1529    | (near Patna)                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Fought against the allied forces of Afghans, under Mahmud Lodhi, a brother of Ibrahim Lodhi, in Bengal and Bihar.</li><li>• Sultan Nusrat Shah of Bengal faced crushing defeat.</li></ul> |

### Humayun (AD 1530-56)

- Humayun succeeded Babur to the throne at Agra. He divided the Mughal territories with his three brothers. A major problem after accession to the throne was the unsettled state of administration, the insufficient treasury and the ambition of the nobles. He constructed a grand acropolis at Delhi known as *Dinpanah*.

- He was again defeated in the Battle of Bilgram (*Kannauj*) by Sher Shah Suri in 1540.
- Defeat by Kannauj compelled Humayun to leave India. He fled to the refuge of safavid empire in Persia, where the Persian king Shah Tahmasp welcomed the mughal and treated him like a royal visitor.
- He defeated the forces of Sikandar Shah Suri and occupied Agra and Delhi in 1555.

### Campaigns of Humayun

| Years                     | Places        | Remarks  |
|---------------------------|---------------|--|
| 6 months after succession | Bundelkhand   | Humayun defeated the Chandela ruler of Bundelkhand.<br>Besieged the powerful Fort of Kalinjar. |
| AD 1532                   | Dadrah/Daurah | Defeated Mahmud Lodhi.   |
| AD 1533-1534              | Gujarat       | Defeated Bahadur Shah of Gujarat.  |
| AD 1539                   | Chausa        | Sher Shah Suri defeated Humayun.   |
| AD 1540                   | Bilgram       | Defeated by Sher Shah Suri<br>temporary end of Mughal Empire.                                  |

## The Sur Empire

### Sher Shah Suri (AD 1540-45)

- He was the founder of Sur empire. He began his career with the administration of his father Hasan's Iqta at Sasaram in Bihar. He moved to the court of the Afghan ruler of Bihar, Bahar Khan Lohani, who gave him the title *Sher Khan* for his bravery.

### Conquest of Sher Shah

| Years   | Territories | Specifics  |
|---------|-------------|--|
| AD 1544 | Samel       | Defeated Maldeo, the ruler of Marwar.                          |
| AD 1545 | Kalinjar    | Sher Shah captured fort, but died due to accidental explosion. |

### The Sur Administration

- An idea of Sher Shah's administrative structure is provided by his historian Abbas Khan Sarwani in the book *Tarikh-i-Sher Shahi*.

### Central Administration

| Departments     | Heads         | Works                        |
|-----------------|---------------|------------------------------|
| Diwan-i-wizarat |               | Financial matters            |
| Diwan-i-arz     | Arz-i-mamalik | Military department          |
| Diwan-i-insha   | Dabir         | Secretariat                  |
| Diwan-i-risalat | Sadr          | Religious and foreign matter |

### Local Administration

- Provinces were divided into Sarkars headed by Shiqdar-i-Shiqdar (incharge of law and order) and Munsif-i-mansifan (incharge of local revenue). Sarkars divided into Paraganas headed by Shiqdars and Munsif or Amin.
- Paraganas further divided into villages under headmen.

### Land Revenue Administration

- Sher Shah's Land Revenue Policy is an important landmark in the history of Indian Agrarian System.
- After a survey of the lands, Sher Shah settled the land revenue directly with the tillers of the soil.
- Peasants had to pay Jaribana (survey charge i.e. 2.5%) and Muhasilana (tax collection charge i.e. 5%).

Some important features of Sher Shah's land revenue arrangement were as follows:

- Assessment of land revenue on the basis of measurement of land. For measurement of the land, *Sikandari Gaja* (32 inches) was made the base.
- Drawing up of schedules of crop rates on the basis of the quality of land.
- Classification of land into three categories on the basis of their yield (Good, bad and middling).
- Computation of the produce of three kinds of land and fixing 1 / 3rd of their average as the land revenue, payable either in cash or kind.
- The rights and liabilities of the tenants were clearly defined in documents known as *pattas* (title deeds) and *qabooliyats* (deed of agreement). Each peasant thus, knew what he had to pay.

### Military Administration

- Dispensation of tribal levies and beginning of direct recruitment of soldiers. Payment of salaries to the soldiers in cash.
- Maintenance of chehra or descriptive rolls of soldiers and dagh or the branding of horses.
- Setting-up of cantonments in different places and posting a garrison in each of them.

### The Sur Architecture

- Sher Shah was also a great builder. He got build sarais or rest-houses along the roads for the convenience of the traders and travellers.
- Sher Shah's Chief architect Aliwal Khan constructed the tomb of Hasan Khan, the father of Shah and the octagonal mausoleum which Sher Shah built for himself at Sasaram. It is made of Chunar sandstone.
- The old fort (Purana Quila) in Delhi, whose surviving monuments are Qila-Kuhna Masjid and the Sher Mandal library, is another important architectural creation of Sher Shah.

## Infrastructure Development

- Sher Shah improved communications by building roads. *Four important roads constructed by him were as follows:*

  - Grand Trunk (GT) road from Sunargaon in East Bengal to Peshawar.
  - Road from Agra to Multan via Burhanpur and Delhi.
  - Road from Multan to Lahore.
  - Road from Mandu to Agra.
  - Out of four roads, the first was the most important. The roads built by Sher Shah are called the *arteries* of the *empire*.
  - Sher Shah introduced a regular postal service and attempted the standardisation of weights and measures.

## Reforms of Sher Shah

His currency reform deserves high praise. He issued a large number of silver coins (*dam*) and abolished all old and mixed metal currency. His silver rupia after elimination of its inscription was in use till 1835 and formed the basis of the later British Indian currency.

Other reforms include collection of customs duty on goods only twice, once at the time of entering the country and another at the time of sale of goods making the local headmen and Zamindars responsible for the loss of the goods of merchants on roads.

## Restoration of Humayun (AD 1556)

- With the help of a nobel officer Bairam Khan, Humayun defeated the weak rulers of the Sur dynasty and took control over Agra and Delhi in AD 1556. He died from the effects of an accidental fall from the stair case of his library at Delhi in AD 1556.

## Akbar (AD 1556-1605)

- He was born at Amarkot in the palace of Rajput Chieftain Rana Virsal in 1542. He was king of no land at the time of his coronation 1556 as the emperor of Hindustan.
- He fought the 2nd Battle of Panipat in 1556 with Hemu, the Hindu Minister of Mohammed Adil Shah.
- One of the greatest humanitarian measures of Akbar was abolition of slavery and the practice of converting prisoners of war to Islam, in AD 1562. He abolished pilgrimage tax in AD 1563 and Jaziya in AD 1564.

## Rajput Policy

- Akbar made the Rajputs not only his friends, but also took many Rajput princesses as his bride. He established matrimonial alliances with the royal families of the Rajput states, such as Amber, Bikaner and Jaisalmer.
- He granted the Rajputs equal rights with the Muslims and appointed them on high and elevated positions.

## Ibadat Khana

- In AD 1575, Akbar ordered the construction of the Ibadat Khana (*House of worship*) near the Jama Masjid in his newly built town of Fatehpur Sikri. Only the Sunnis were initially allowed to participate in religious discussions. Abdul Qadir Badayuni and Abul Fazl were the principal debaters. Both had been trained by Abul Fazl's father, Shaikh Mubarak.

## Special Invitees to Ibadat Khana

| Religions      | Invitees                                   |
|----------------|--|
| Hinduism       | Purushottam and Devi                       |
| Zoroastrianism | Maharaja Rana                              |
| Christianity   | Acquaviva and Monserrate (Both Portuguese) |
| Jainism        | Hira Vijaya Suri                           |

- Father Monserrate, a member of the first Jesuit mission at Akbar's court AD 1580-83, who accompanied the emperor in the Kabul campaign AD 1581 against his half-brother Mirza Hakim, has left a lively account of the religious debates during the journey.

## Din-i-Ilahi

- Father Daniel Bartoli, a later Jesuit author, claims that after his return from Kabul, Akbar made himself the founder and head of a new religion. This religion, Bartoli continues, was discussed by a council is regarded by modern scholars as the inauguration of Akbar's new faith, the Din -i-Ilahi (*Divine Monotheism*).
- In the Ain-i-Akbari, Abul Fazal deals with a number of laws made by Akbar for secularising the state, which were, however, termed as illegal by the orthodox Badayuni.
- For instance, Akbar prohibited polygamy and allowed a second wife only in exceptional circumstances.
- He also prohibited child marriages, the circumcision of boys below the age of twelve and the slaughter of animals on certain days totaling about half the year.

## The Conquest of Akbar

| Years   | Territories                          | Specifics  |
|---------|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1561    | Malwa                                | The ruler of Malwa was Baz Bahadur.  |
| 1564    | Garhakatanga (a kingdom in Gondwana) | Rani Durgawati and her minor son, Bir Narayan, died fighting Mughals. The Mughal army was led by Asaf Khan.                |
| 1567    | Chittor                              | The storming of the fortress of Chittor was one of the most famous military feats of Akbar. Rana Udai Singh was its ruler. |
| 1572-73 | Gujarat                              | Akbar built the famous Buland Darwaza at Fatehpur Sikri in commemoration of this victory.                                  |

| Years   | Territories             | Specifics   |
|---------|-------------------------|---|
| 1574-76 | Bihar and Bengal        | Akbar personally marched against Bihar and drove out Daud from Patna and Hajipur.                                     |
| 1576    | Battle of Haldighati    | Rana Pratap, the son of Udai Singh of Mewar, was severely defeated by the Mughal army under Maan Singh and Asaf Khan. |
| 1581    | Kabul                   | Mirza Hakim was defeated.   |
| 1586    | Kashmir and Baluchistan | —   |
| 1591    | Sindh                   | —   |
| 1592    | Orissa                  | The Mughal army was led by Maan Singh.  |
| 1595    | Qandhar                 | The Mughal army in this battle was commanded by Abdur Rahim Khan-e-Khanan.  |
| 1601    | Asirgarh                | The capture of Asirgarh marked the climax of Akbar's career of conquest.  |

## Nine Jewels (Navratnas) at Akbar's Court

- Following the footsteps of Chandragupta Vikramaditya of the Gupta period, Akbar maintained a court of nine distinguished persons who were known as *nine jewels* or *navratnas*.

### Nine Jewels

| Names          | Specifics  |
|----------------|--|
| Abdul Rahim    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Got the title of Khan-e-Khana by Akbar. He was a celebrated Hindi scholar. Remembered for the compilation of 'Rahim Satsai' (a collection of dohas). He was also a great scholar of Turki.</li> <li>He translated 'Baburnama' into Persian language. He wrote two books on Astrology, Kheta Kautukama and Dwawishd Yogavali.</li> </ul> |
| Abul Fazl      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A profound thinker and writer.</li> <li>He was known for the authorship of, 'Akbarname' and 'Ain-i-Akbari'.</li> </ul>  |
| Birbal         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A Brahman of Kalpi.</li> <li>He was known for his gift of humour and wits.</li> <li>Original name was Mahesh Dass. He was incharge of administration of justice at the royal court.</li> <li>Died fighting with the Yusufzai tribe on the North-West frontier of India.</li> </ul>  |
| Faizi          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A poet laureate of Akbar's court.</li> <li>Faizi is credited with the translation of 'Leelawati' into Persian.</li> </ul>   |
| Hamim Human    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A very close friend of Akbar.</li> <li>He was the chief of royal school (Pathasala).</li> </ul>   |
| Raja Man Singh | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A great Rajput general of Akbar.</li> <li>Credited with defeating Maharana Pratap, in the Battle of Haldighati and the Afghans.</li> </ul>  |

| Names           | Specifics   |
|-----------------|---|
| Mulla Do-Piyaza | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A Sufi, Shaikh Mubarak was the brain behind Akbar's Mahzar.</li> </ul>   |
| Tansen          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>He was born at Gwalior.</li> <li>He was known as Sangeet Samrat. He was a court singer of Akbar.</li> </ul>  |
| Todarmal        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>He was known for his expertise in land revenue matters.</li> <li>He evolved a Land Revenue System which was followed not only by Sher Shah and Akbar, but also by the Marathas.</li> </ul> |

## Jahangir (AD 1605-27)

- Prince Salim assumed the title of *Jahangir* and adhered to *Akbar's* ideals of the co-existence of all religious communities.
- He married Mehr-un-Nissa, later titled as *Nur Jahan*, who was an accomplished lady. She is said to have been the real power behind the throne.
- He shifted emphasis from illustrated manuscript to album and individual portrait.

## Conquest of Jahangir

- Jahangir defeated Amar Singh of Mewar.
- He conquered Ahmednagar in 1617 under prince Khurram, who was rewarded with the title *Shah Jahan*.
- In AD 1622, the Mughals lost Kandhar to the Iranian king, Shah Abbas.
- In AD 1606, Jahangir's son, Khusrau revolted, but was defeated and imprisoned. Guru Arjan Dev (*5th Guru of the Sikhs*), one of Khusrau's well wisher was beheaded.

## Shah Jahan (AD 1627-1658)

- He had to overcome the revolts of the Bundelas and the Afghan noble named Khan-i-Jahan Lodhi. Foreign travellers Bernier, Tavernier and Manucci visited his court. He reimposed pilgrimage tax. He revived the Jagirdari system.
- It is said that the kingdom founded by Babur, nurtured by Akbar, consolidated by Jahangir, reached to its zenith during the reign of Shah Jahan.

## Conquest of Shah Jahan

- He conquered Ahmednagar, in 1633 which was under Fateh Khan.
- Other Deccan states like Bijapur, Golconda, Khandesh, Berar, Telangana and Daulatabad came under Mughal rule.
- Aurangzeb was appointed the first Viceroy of Deccan.
- Shah Jahan tried to capture Kandhar. It was lost forever in the Mughal empire.
- Shah Jahan also expelled Portuguese from Hooghly as they were abusing trading privileges.
- Kamrup was also annexed.

## Aurangzeb (AD 1658 -1707)

- He was the third son of Shah Jahan. During his reign, the Mughal empire reached its territorial climax. His reign was marked by a gradual departure from Akbar's policy of co-existence. He was a proficient player of Veena. Being an orthodox Muslim, he forbade music in the court, ended Jharokha Darshan, use of almanacs and weighing of the emperor. *Aurangzeb fought the following battles of succession with his brothers*

### War of Successions

| Battles               | Years         | Significances   |
|-----------------------|---------------|---|
| Battle of Bahadurgarh | February 1658 | Sulaiman Shikoh and Raja Jai Singh of Amber defeated Shah Shuja.        |
| Battle of Dharmat     | April 1658    | Raja Jaswant Singh and Karim Khan were defeated by Murad and Aurangzeb. |
| Battle of Samugarh    | May 1658      | Dara Shikoh was defeated by Aurangzeb.                                  |
| Battle of Rupnagar    | June 1658     | Murad was captured and executed.  |
| Battle of Khajwah     | January 1659  | Shah Shuja was defeated by Aurangzeb.                                   |
| Battle of Deorai      | March 1659    | Defeated Dara Shikoh second time.                                       |

## Revolts Against Aurangzeb

- The *Jat revolt* was suppressed temporarily, but again Jats empowered themselves under the leadership of Churaman. The death of Aurangzeb led to the establishment of separate Jat kingdom.
- Satnami revolt* of peasants in 1672 was sparked off by a minor dispute between a peasant and a Mughal foot soldier, but finally the revolt was crushed.
- Bundelas* under Champat Rai and Chhatrasal revolted against policies of Aurangzeb. An independent Bundela state was established after Aurangzeb's death.
- Sikh* Guru Har Rai's good relations with Dara Shikoh brought him into direct conflict with the emperor. The next Sikh Guru, Tegh Bahadur opposed the religious policy of Aurangzeb openly.
- Aurangzeb invaded Ahom kingdom, Marwar, Bijapur and Golconda.

### The Mughal Period Administrations

| Departments/ Officers | Works   |
|-----------------------|---|
| Diwan-i-ala           | Finance Minister looked after revenue and expenditure of state. |
| Mir Bakshi            | Minister incharge of military establishment.                    |
| Sadr-us-sadr          | Ecclesiastical department                                       |
| Qazi-ul-Quzat         | Supervised and controlled entire judicial set-up.               |
| Khan-i-Saman          | Head of royal household.  |

## Mughal Administration

- Subah* was the largest unit equivalent to province. The head was known as *Nazim* or *Subedar*.
- Sarkar* was equivalent to district, headed by Faujdar or Shiqdar. Other officers were Amalgujars, Kotwal.
- The administrative unit next to Sarkar was *Paragana*. It was headed by Shiqdar who was incharge of law and order. Other officers were Amir, Kanungo, Qazis.
- Village* affairs were looked after by the Panchayat. Lambardar was the head of the Panchayat.

## Mansabdari System

- It was introduced in 1595-96, showing a noble's civil and military capacity. Twin rank(s) zat and sawar were allotted.
- Zat A noble's personal status.
- Sawar The number of troops a noble had to maintain.
- It had three scale gradation*
  - Mansabdar (500 zat and below)
  - Amir (between 500-250 zat)
  - Amir-i-umda (2500 zat and above)
- Salary of the Mansabdar was fixed on a month scale system. It was not a hereditary system. They were paid through revenue assignments Jagir.
- During Jahangir's reign, Duaspa, Sihaspa system was introduced through which a nobles sawars rank could be increased without affecting his zat.

## The Jagir System

- Jagir or tuyul was a unit of land, whose revenues were assigned to a Mansabdar in lieu of his salary. The Jagirs assigned in lieu of salary were known as *Tankhwah Jagirs*. Besides, there were the *Watan Jagirs* (Hereditary possessions) of the autonomous chiefs.
- Hence, the Jagir of the Mughal times was similar to the Iqta of the Delhi Sultanate. Like the Iqta, the assignment of a Jagir to a Mansabdar did not confer any hereditary rights to that Jagir on the Mansabdar.
- He could enjoy the revenues of the Jagir only as long as he held the Mansab or official rank and rendered services to the state.
- In other words, the Jagirdars, (*Holders of Jagirs*) owed their position to the Mughal emperor, there being no practical difference, between the state and the emperor in Mughal times.
- The Mughal emperors jealously guarded their privileged position against any hereditary claims to the Jagirs by the Jagirdars by following the policy of frequent transfer of Jagirs of the Jagirdars.

## Land Revenue System

- Land was classified into four types
  - (i) **Polaj** Continuously cultivated and very fertile.
  - (ii) **Parauti** Left fallow for a year or two to recover productivity.
  - (iii) **Chachar** Left fallow for 3/4 years.
  - (iv) **Banjar** Uncultivated for 5 years or more and infertile land.
- The three main principal revenue systems in the Mughal empire were as follows
  - **Ghallabaksh or Batai or Crop Division** Under this system, a share of each crop was taken by the state. This system prevailed in lower Sindh, a part of Kabul and Kashmir.
  - **Kankut** Cultivator and official arrived at a general estimate of produce of whole area the basis of sample survey by mutual agreement.
  - **Nasaq/Estimate** Past assessment determined the present. Todarmal collected the accounts of the Kanungos and in some places ascertained their accuracy by local enquiries. From these accounts he prepared the rent roll of the Subah. The Nasaq system did not depend upon survey or seasonal records of produce. It resembled the Zamindari settlement.

## Zabti or Bandobast System

- Todarmal framed a regulation or standard system of revenue administration known as the **Zabti system**. Under this system, lands were accurately surveyed and a new Jama was prepared.

## Dahsala System

- On the basis of the above Zabti system fresh reforms were undertaken by Todarmal. These reforms, collectively known as **Ain-i-Dahsala**, were completed in 1580. Under this system, land was classified into four categories, viz. **Polaj** - annually cultivated, **Parauti** - left fallow for a short period (1 or 2 years), **Chachar** - left fallow for 3 to 4 years and **Banjar** - uncultivated for 5 years or more.
- Further as Abul Fazl mentioned, according to Ain-i-Dahsala, a 10 years state of every Paragona was ascertained in regard to the category of cultivation and level of prices. The aim was to introduce a permanent Jama (Dastur-ul-amal) and remove difficulties and delays associated with yearly sanction.
- Dasturs for cash crops were fixed separately. In 1588, Todarmal introduced a uniform unit of measurement, **Ilahi Gaz**, which was a medium gaz of 41 digits (33 inches).
- The Karori experiment was started by Akbar with the extension of Khalisa land, so as to provide facilities to revenue department to collect extensive data.
- Khalisa land was divided into circles, each yielding the revenue of one karor. That is why, it is known as the **Karori experiment**.
- Each circle was placed under a revenue official Karori. Aim was to make as extensive a measurement as possible, then use it as a basis for compiling a new general assessment. Instead of a rope, a **Tanab** made of bamboo sticks joined by iron rings, came to be used for measuring land in 1575.

## Mughal Architecture

### Forts

- The Mughal emperors were great builders and that is why the Mughal period is called the **Golden Age of Architecture** in the Indian history. The first to undertake construction on a large-scale was Akbar. He constructed a series of forts, the most important, being the Agra Fort AD 1565, built in red sandstone.

### Palaces

- Humayun laid the foundation of the city **Din Panah** at Delhi. Akbar adorned his capital, Agra with magnificent buildings and the palace known as **Jahangiri Mahal**.
- The architecture of **Fatehpur Sikri** is an excellent blending of Persian, Central Asian and various Indian (**Bengal and Gujarat**) styles. Gujarat style buildings were for their Rajput wives.

### Mausoleums

- During Akbar's reign, **Humayun's tomb** at Delhi was the first Mughal tomb to be placed in the centre of a large park-like enclosure. It was built by his widow Haji Begum or Hamida Bano begum. It has a double dome of marble while the central dome is octagonal.

### Mosques

- During **Babur's** reign four mosques, one each at Sambhal (*in Rohilkhand*), Panipat (*in Kabul Bash*), Agra (*old fort*) and Ayodhya were built.
- **Humayun's** troubled reign left him little opportunity to indulge in artistic taste.
- **Jamia masjid** at, Fatehpur Sikri built during **Akbar's** reign is one of the most magnificent buildings.
- **Shah Jahan's** reign saw the climax as seen in **Moti masjid** at Agra.
- **Aurangzeb** cared little for architecture. He built Moti masjid in the Red Fort and Badshahi Mosque in Lahore.

### Gardens

- The special contribution of the Mughals was the laying out of beautiful gardens. Babur laid the first such garden in Agra. the Nur-i-Afshan All the Mughal buildings generally incorporate gardens. Jahangir, perhaps, is most famous for his gardens **Shalimar** at Srinagar and the garden in Lahore.

## Mughal Painting

- The Mughal art of painting like the Mughal architecture, was the outcome of many influences. In the beginning, during the reign of Babur and Humayun, it was affected altogether by the Persian influence.

### Under Humayun

- At Tabriz, he met two young painters, *Mir Sayyed Ali* and *Abd-us-Samad* (or *Abdus Samad*), to whom he gave hope of future employment in case he regained his kingdom. Later on those two joined him in Kabul and Abd-us-Samad gave drawing lessons to little Akbar.

### Under Akbar

- Under the supervision of *Mir Sayyed Ali* and *Abdus Samad* the imperial atelier of painters and calligraphers took shape. Their first endeavour was to complete the pictures for the earliest Mughal illustrated manuscript, the *Dastan-i-Amir Hamza*. Begun in 1550 under Humayun, it took 25 years to finish. He called a great number of artists to his court. Going by their names, the majority of these seemed to be Hindu.
- The chief painters were Mir Sayyed Ali, Abdus Samad (*already in the service of Humayun*), Farrukh Beg, Basawan and Daswant Mir Sayjid Ali and Abdus Samad trained the Mughal craftsmen in all the technical details of Persian miniatures.
- Many Indians such Basawan, Miskina and Daswant attained great positions as court artists and Abul Fazl in his '*Ain-i-Akbari*' (*Biography of Akbar*) bestows high praise on them.
- The *Tuti Namah* (*The Parrot's tale*) and '*Anwar-i-Suhaili*' show each bird and animal with detailed realism. This portrayal of animals foreshadows the perfection attained under Jahangir.

### Under Jahangir

- He had a predilection for the art of painting which he cultivated much more than architecture. During his residence at Allahabad as Salim, he had already employed a number of painters, notably Aqa Raza, whose son Abul Hasan later served under Jahangir.
- The co-operation of several painters on one work continued, but Jahangir could distinguish which part each artist had contributed.
- During this period, European influence manifested itself more and more. The custom of copying European paintings and engravings continued. By that time book illustrations became outdated except for the representation of fables, e.g. *Iyar-i-Danish* and '*Anwar-i-Suhaili*'. The portrayal of officers also continued.

- Jahangir preferred group portraits as well as court scenes and different episodes of his life. 'Jahangir embracing Shah Jahan' shows the same careful portrayal as in Akbar's time.
- Portrait paintings reached a climax in his period. The early portraits show the persons standing or seated either in front of the buildings or inside. During the last 10 years of Jahangir's reign Mughal paintings witnessed a change an increased predilection for symbolism.

### Under Shah Jahan

- Though, interested mainly in architecture, he continued to patronise painting. The visit of the emperor with his nobles and royal ladies to ascetics and dervishes constitutes a predominant theme of this period. Many night scenes were also painted for the first time in the Mughal period. A new technique, consisting of fine, delicate line drawings slightly tinted with washes of pale colours and gold and known as *Siyahi Qalam*, became fashionable.
- Emperor Shah Jahan on the peacock throne*, one of the best known *Mughal miniatures*, shows the famous peacock throne now lost, but much admired by contemporaries and described by the French traveller *Bernier*. On the other hand, it typifies the portraits of this time.

### Under Aurangzeb

- He did not patronise any arts. Culture lost its vitality and finally declined. Perhaps during his waning years he may have consented to have his portraits painted, for there are surviving examples where he is shown either as a bearded old man hunting or holding a copy of the Quran in his hand.

### Other Schools of Painting

- Besides, the Mughal painting, there grew up in this age two more schools of painting, *they are as follows*:
  - The Rajput School of Painting was developed in Rajputana, particularly Jaipur, in the 18th century. The Rajput paintings were excellent masterpieces from Hindu mythology.
  - In it, familiar and popular themes have been taken and an effort has been made to show or depict village life, an ordinary citizen, his religious rites and amusements. Religion and art are very closely related to each other in it and the spiritual and emotional themes have special importance in this school of painting.

### Kangra School of Painting

- Towards the end of the 18th century, another kind of painting was developed in Northern India, particularly Kangra, known as the *Kangra School of Painting*. The theme relates to Hindu Gods and Goddesses in this art. Many subjects were selected from the Hindu religious books like the *Ramayana*, the *Mahabharata*, the *Ram Mala*, *Geet Govinda* etc and they were depicted beautifully in pictures.
- Similarly, beautiful paintings (Portraits) of Shiva-Parvati, Radha-Krishna etc were produced.

## Mughal Literature

### Hindi Literature

- Malik Muhammed Jayasi wrote a poetical composition *Padmavat* on Padmani, the queen of Mewar in 1540.
- Akbar also gave impetus to Hindi poetry. His reign was the golden age of the Hindi poetry because it was in his time that some Hindi poets of immortal fame, such as Tulsi Das, Sur Das, Mira, Rahim and Ras Khan, lived.
- The greatest Hindi poet of Akbar's time was Sant TulsiDas 1532-1623 who wrote the famous *Ramcharitamanas*.

### Sanskrit Literature

- Akbar was the first Mughal monarch who patronised Sanskrit as well as Hindi. During his reign, many Hindi writers were also writers of Sanskrit. In his time, the first Sanskrit-Persian dictionary, named *Parsi Prakash* was compiled. Jahangir too extended royal patronage to Sanskrit writers and kept them in his court.

### Developments in Music

- The Mughal kings, except Aurangzeb, had a great attachment with music. Babur is said to have composed songs. However, it was due to Akbar's interest and patronage of this art that both kinds of music instrumental and vocal made unusual advancement. In his time, the *National Indian Music* took its birth by the blending of the Hindus and Muslims types of music. His court was adorned by famous musicians like *Tansen of Gwalior* and *Baz Bahadur of Malwa*.

- Shah Jahan was fond of vocal and instrumental music. The two great Hindu musicians of his time were Jagannath and Janardhan Bhatta. It is said that once Shah Jahan was so pleased with the singing of Jagannath, the royal poet of Sanskrit, that he weighed him against gold and gave him the whole of this gold as a prize.
- But Aurangzeb who was a puritan dismissed singing from his court. However, ironically, the largest number of books on classical music was written in his reign.

### Literature of the Mughal Periods

| Authores           | Name of the Works     | Specifics   |
|--------------------|-----------------------|---|
| Gulbadan Begum     | Humayun Nama          | History of Humayun                                    |
| Abul Fazl          | Ain-i-Akbari          | History of Akbar's reign                              |
| Abul Fazl          | Akbar Namah           | History of Akbar's reign                              |
| Badauni            | Muntakhab-ul-Tawarikh | History of Akbar's reign                              |
| Mulla Daud         | Tawarikh-i-Alfi       | History of Akbar's reign                              |
| Nizam-ud-din Ahmed | Tabaqat-i-Akbari      | History of Akbar's reign                              |
| Jahangir           | Tuzuk-i-Jahangiri     | Autobiography   |
| Mutamed Khan       | Iqbal Namah           | History of Jahangir's reign                           |
| Abdul Haq          | Nuriyya-i-Sultaniyya  | Theory of Kingship                                    |
| Abdul Hamid Lahori | Padshah Namah         | History of Shah Jahan's reign                         |
| Muhammad Waris     | Padshah Namah         | History of Shah Jahan's reign                         |
| Inayat Khan        | Shah Jahan Namah      | History of Shah Jahan's reign                         |
| Muhammad Salih     | Shah Jahan Namah      | History of Shah Jahan's reign                         |
| Dara Shikoh        | Safinat-ul-Auliya     | Biographies of Sufi saints                            |
| Dara Shikoh        | Sakinat-ul-Auliya     | Translation of Upanishads                             |
| Dara Shikoh        | Hasnat-ul-Arifeen     | His religious and philosophical ideas                 |
| Dara Shikoh        | Majma-ul-Bahrain      | His religious and philosophical ideas                 |
| Aurangzeb          | Raqqat-i-Alamgiri     | A collection of his letters                           |
| Khafi Khan         | Muntakhab-ul-Lubab    | History of Aurangzeb's reign                          |
| Muhammad Kazim     | Alamgir Namah         | History of Aurangzeb's reign                          |
| Muhammad Saqi      | Masir-i-Alamgiri      | History of Aurangzeb's reign                          |
| Aquil Khan Zafar   | Namah-i-Alamgiri      | History of Aurangzeb's reign                          |
| Mohammed Rafi Khan | Hamlai-Haidari        | History of Aurangzeb's reign                          |
| Sujan Rai Khatri   | Khulasat-ul-Tawarikh  | History of Aurangzeb's reign                          |
| Bhimsen            | Nuskha-i-Dilkusha     | History of Aurangzeb's reign                          |
| Iswar Das          | Futuhat-i-Alamgiri    | History of Aurangzeb's reign                          |
| Nimat Khan Ali     | Waqai-i-Hyderabad     | Conquest of Golconda by Aurangzeb                     |
| Faizi              | Masnavi Nala-in-Daman | Translation work of Nala-Damnyanti kalha (in Persian) |

# Self Check

# Build Your Confidence



1. (b)      2. (c)      3. (d)      4. (b)      5. (d)      6. (a)      7. (c)      8. (b)      9. (a)      10. (d)  
11. (d)      12. (b)      13. (b)      14. (b)      15. (c)

# Chapter fifteen

# The Maratha Empire

*The ground for the establishment of an independent Maratha state was prepared by the advance of Mughal armies in the South. The fall of Khandesh, the gradual disappearance of Ahmednagar and the creation of Mughal viceroyalty in the Deccan affected every aspect of Maratha life, which induced an awakening among the Marathas as a nation under the leadership of Shivaji and others that followed him.*

## Shivaji (AD 1627- 80)

- Shivaji was born in the fort of *Shivner* in AD 1627. He belonged to the Bhonsle family of Poona district. The family acquired military and political prominence in the Ahmednagar kingdom at the close of the 16th century.
- *Shahji Bhonsle*, the father of Shivaji, was a military officer at first in the State of Ahmednagar and then from 1636, in the State of Bijapur and he owned the territory of Poona as a Jagir. His mother was *Jija Bai*, a very religious lady.
- Shivaji was brought up at Poona under the careful supervision of his mother and an able Brahman *Dadaji Kondadev*. Shivaji also came under the religious influence of *Guru Samarth Ramdas*.
- In AD 1637, Shivaji's father entrusted the administration of the *Pune Jagir* to him. The administration of Jagir remained under the Dadaji's *de facto* control till AD 1647, when Shivaji assumed the full charge. Before that, at the age of 18, he overran a number of hill forts near Poona. He captured the fort of Torana in AD 1646. Shortly afterwards, he built new forts like *Raigarh* and *Pratapgarh*.
- In 1674, Shivaji was corenated at capital Raigarh and assumed the title of *Haindava Dharma-dharak* (*Protector of Hinduism*).

## Conquests

- Shivaji began his real career of conquest in 1656, when he conquered *Javli* from the Maratha Chief *Chandra Rao More*. Next, he attacked the Adil Shahi kingdom of Bijapur in AD 1657-58. In an audacious move, he killed Afzal Khan, General of Bijapur in his own camp.
- In AD 1660, a combined Mughal-Bijapuri campaign started against Shivaji.
- *Shaista Khan* (*Maternal uncle of Aurangzeb*) was appointed as Governor of Deccan, by Aurangzeb, to check the rising power of Shivaji.
- However, in AD 1663, Shivaji made a bold attack on military camp of Shaista Khan. He plundered Surat in AD 1664 and later Ahmednagar.
- Aurangzeb sent his son, Prince Muazzam and then on his failure, Mirza Raja Jai Singh of Amber against Shivaji.
- Jai Singh succeeded in surrounding Shivaji in the fort of Purandhar. Consequently, the *Treaty of Purandhar* AD 1665 was signed according to which
  - out of the 35 forts held by him, Shivaji agreed to keep only 12 forts (with annual income of 1 lakh of huns) in his possession. The remaining 23 forts (which yielded 4 lakhs huns every year) were to be returned to the Mughals.
  - Shivaji agreed to the condition attached with his possession of 12 forts—service and loyalty to the Mughal throne.
  - Shivaji agreed to help the Mughals against Bijapur.
  - Shivaji was to keep possession of the territory worth 4 lakhs huns a year, in the Bijapuri Konkan region.
  - the Balaghat territory of Bijapur was granted to Shivaji.

- Shivaji agreed to visit the imperial court of Aurangzeb at Agra.
- Shivaji reached Agra in AD 1666 and executed a miraculous escape after being humiliated by Aurangzeb in his court.
- Shivaji renewed his war against the Mughals by his second plunder of Surat in AD 1670 and gradually, recovered many of his forts.
- Aurangzeb sent Diler Khan and Bahadur Khan against Shivaji. However, Shivaji defeated them in the *Battle of Salher* in AD 1672.
- Shortly after his coronation, Shivaji formed an alliance with the Qutub Shahi rulers of Golconda and led a campaign into Bijapuri Karnataka (AD 1676-79) and conquered Gingee (*Jingi*), Vellore and many forts in Karnataka.
- He died at *Raigarh* in AD 1680, after ruling for only 6 years.

## Coronation of Shivaji

- Shivaji declared himself the independent ruler of the Maratha kingdom and was crowned Chhtrapati in AD 1674 at Raigarh. He made Raigarh his capital. Shivaji's coronation symbolises the rise of the people to challenge the might of the Mughals.

*It was significant due to the following reasons:*

- By coronating under the title *Haindava Dharmodharak* (*Protector of Hinduism*) of the new and independent state Hindavi Swarajya, Shivaji proclaimed to the world that he was no just a rebel son of a Maratha sardar in Bijapur court, but equal to any other ruler in India.
- Only a coronation could give Shivaji the legitimate right to collect revenue from the land and levy tax on the people. Ganga Bhatt, the priest presiding over the function, declared that Shivaji was Surya Vansi Kshatriya and gave the title of *Kshatriya Kalvatvamsa*.

## The Successors of Shivaji

### Sambhaji (AD 1680-89)

- The war of succession between Sambhaji, the elder son and *Rajaram*, the younger son of Shivaji, resulted in the victory of the former and imprisonment of the latter. Sambhaji or Shambhuji ascended the throne on 20th July, 1680.
- Distrust upon Maratha leaders led him to place his confidence in a Brahmin, named *Kanhoji*, whom he invested with the supreme control of the administration and the title of *Kavi Kalash* in AD 1680-81.
- Sambhaji provided protection and support to *Akbar II*, the rebellious son of Aurangzeb.
- In AD 1689, Sambhaji and Kavi Kalash were captured at Sangamesvar by a Mughal general, Muqarrab Khan and put to death.
- Mughal army, under Zulfiqar Khan, launched an attack upon Raigarh. All members of Sambhaji's family, including his son Sahu, were made captive.

### Rajaram (AD 1689-1700)

- At the time of Sambhaji's death, his son *Sahu* was only 7 years old. Rajaram, the younger son of Shivaji and step brother of Sambhaji, who had been kept in prison by the latter, was proclaimed king by the *Maratha Council of Ministers* and crowned at Raigarh in February AD 1689. But, soon thereafter, apprehending a Mughal attack, Rajaram left Raigarh and moving from place to place ultimately reached *Jinji* or *Gingee* in Karnataka.
- The Maratha Council of Ministers and other officials also joined him at Gingee till AD 1698, remained the centre of Maratha activity against the Mughals.
- With his two able generals, *Santaji Ghorpade* and *Dharaji Jadav*, Rajaram launched an attack upon the Mughal territories in Deccan.
- Rajaram's administrative changes included the creation of the new post of *Pratinidhi*, thus, taking the total number of ministers, in Ashtapradhan, to nine.
- Although, Sahu was given the title of *Raja* and granted a Mansab, he virtually remained a prisoner in the hands of Mughals till the death of Aurangzeb (1707).
- Jinji fell to the Mughals (AD 1698) and Rajaram escaped to Visalgarh (Maharashtra). He died in March, AD 1700 at Satara, which had become the capital after the fall of Jinji.

### Shivaji II and Tarabai (AD 1700-07)

- After the death of Rajaram, *Tarabai*, the widow of Rajaram put her other son, Shivaji II on the throne and herself became the regent. Tarabai's energy and ability made her the *de facto* ruler. She saved the Maratha state during a period of a grave crisis. Tarabai directed the conduct of both civil and military affairs with equal success.
- During the period, Marathas attacked Berar (AD 1703), Baroda (AD 1706) and Aurangabad. In the midst of this confusion and disorder, Aurangzeb died on 3rd March, 1707, while Tarabai was still in power.
- The Mughals, however, succeeded in dividing the Marathas into two rival camps: one under Tarabai and the other under Sambhaji's son, Sahu who succeeded in deposing Tarabai with the help of a Chitpavan Brahman named Balaji Vishwanath.

### Sahu (AD 1707-49)

- Sahu was released by the Mughal Emperor *Bahadur Shah* and this was the beginning of civil war (AD 1707-14) between him and Tarabai. Tarabai's army was defeated by Sahu at the Battle of Khed, 12th October, 1707 and Sahu occupied Satara.

- Now, the Maratha kingdom was split up into two antagonistic sub-states. Sahu was the head of the state at Satara while Shivaji II or really Tarabai, was the head of the other at Kolhapur. When Shivaji II died, another son of Rajaram, *Sambhaji II* ascended the gaddi of Kolhapur.
- The feud between these two rivals was finally settled by the *Treaty of Warna* in 1731, which provided that Sambhaji II should rule over the Southern division of the Maratha kingdom with Kolhapur as its capital and the Northern part with the capital at Satara would be the preserve of Sahu.
- Sahu's reign saw the rise of *Peshwaship* and transformation of the Maratha kingdom into an empire based on the principle of confederacy.

## Administration Under Shivaji

Shivaji laid the foundation of a sound system of administration. Shivaji's system of administration was largely borrowed from the administrative practices of the Deccan states. Most of the administrative reforms of Shivaji were based on Malik Ambar reforms in Ahmednagar.

### Central Administration

- Shivaji appointed Hindus on high posts. Marathi was made the state language instead of Persian. He ordered Pandit Hanumant to prepare a dictionary of state craft for official use, titled as *Raja Vyakaran Kosh*.
- The king was the supreme head of the state. He was assisted by a group of 8 ministers known as the *Ashtapradhan*. It cannot be termed as the Council of Ministers, as there was no collective responsibility and each minister was directly responsible to Shivaji. The Council of Ministers could not initiate policy; its functions were purely advisory.

### The Ashtapradhan

| Pradhans                                    | Posts/Responsibilities   |
|---|--|
| Peshwa or the Chief Minister/Mukhya Pradhan | Prime Minister, he looked after general administration and later assumed great importance.                 |
| Pratinidhi                                  | Rajaram created the new post of Pratinidhi, thus, taking the total number of minister to nine.             |
| Amatya or Majumdar                          | Accountant general, he later became Revenue and Finance Minister.  |
| Sachiv or Surunavis (Surnis)                | Also called <i>Chitnis</i> , he looked after the royal correspondence.                                     |
| Sumant or Dabir                             | Foreign affairs and the master of royal ceremonies.  |
| Senapati or Sar-i-Naubat                    | Military Commander, he looked after the recruitment, training and discipline of the army.                  |
| Mantri or Waqianavis                        | Personal safety of the king, he looked after the intelligence, posts and household affairs.                |
| Nyayadhisth                                 | Administration of justice.   |
| Pundit Rao                                  | Looking after charitable and religious affairs of the state. He worked for the moral uplift of the people. |

- All the ministers, except the Nyayadhisth (*Chief Justice*) and Pundit Rao usually held military commands besides their civil duties. Shivaji did not allow the high offices to become hereditary.
- There were 8 officers in each department to assist the Ashtapradhan—Diwan, Majumdar, Fadanvis, Sabanvis, Karkhani, Chitnish, Zamdar and Patnish.
- Shivaji divided the territory directly under his rule (*Swara*) into three provinces, each under a Viceroy. He further divided the provinces into Prants each of which was sub-divided into Parganas and Tarafs. The lowest unit was the village and each village had its headman or Patel.

### Revenue Administration

- Shivaji abolished the Jagirdari system and replaced it with Ryotwari system. Shivaji brought about changes in the position of hereditary revenue officials, variously called Deshmukhs, Deshpandes, Patils and Kulkarnis. Shivaji strictly supervised the *Mirasdars* i.e. those with hereditary rights in land.
- Though, he did not completely do away with these officials, he considerably reduced their powers by close supervision and strict collection of revenue from them.
- Appointment of revenue officials (Subahdars or Karkuns, *in charge of revenue administration of Prants*) helped in establishing a strong revenue system.
- The revenue system seems to have been patterned on the Kathi system of Malik Ambar, in which land was carefully measured with the help of a measuring rod or kathi.
- The assessment of revenue was made after a careful survey and classification of the lands according to their quality and yield. The share of the state was fixed at two-fifths of the gross produce.
- The cultivator was given the option of paying either in cash or kind. A new revenue assessment was completed by Annaji Datto in AD 1679.

### **Chauth and Sardeshmukhi**

These taxes were levied on those living outside Maratha kingdom (*Swarajya*), on an undefined belt of land which was legally part of the Mughal Empire or the Deccan states.

The **Chauth** amounted to one-fourth of the standard revenue assessment of the place, paid to Marathas as a safeguard

(*a kind of protection money*) against Shivaji's forces plundering or raiding their territory. While the **Sardeshmukhi** was an additional levy of 10% demanded from areas outside his kingdom because he claimed to be the hereditary Sardeshmukh (*Chief Headman*) of the entire Maratha country.

### **Military Administration**

- Shivaji organised a disciplined and efficient army. The ordinary soldiers were paid in cash, but the big chiefs and military commanders were paid through the grant of Jagirs (*Saranjam or Mokasa*).
- The army consisted of **infantry** (Mavali foot soldiers playing the most important role), the (**cavalry**) consisting of bargirs and silahdars, the former were provided with horses and equipment by the state, while the later maintained their own and the **navy** (consisting of two squadron each under a Hindu and a Muslim) officials of Shivaji's administration.
- A special feature of his military administration was the maintenance of a large number of forts.
- Each fort was under the joint command of three officers of equal rank (*qiladars*) as a precaution against treachery and they were frequently transferred.
- Pindaris were allowed to accompany the army who were allowed to collect 'Pal-patti', which was 25% of the war booty.

#### **Army Officers/Soldier**

| Posts                   | Responsibilities                                   |
|-------------------------|--|
| Sar-i-Naubat (Senapati) | Incharge of the army                               |
| Qiladars                | Officers of forts                                  |
| Nayak                   | Head of the 9-members unit<br>smallest of infantry |
| Havaldar                | Head of five nayaks                                |
| Jumladar                | Head of 2 to 3 havaldars                           |
| Paik                    | Foot soldier                                       |
| Ghuraw                  | Boats laden with guns                              |
| Gallivat                | Rowing boats with 40-50 rowers                     |

### **Maratha Power Under the Peshwas**

- Marathas also tried to establish a naval force with the help of 'Siddis of Janzibar'. However, with the strong presence of Portuguese, they could not succeed in revamping their naval base.
- After his release by the Mughal emperor Bahadur Shah in AD 1707, Sahu conferred upon **Balaji Vishwanath**, the title of *Sena-Karte* (*maker of the army*) and later on, elevated him to the post of **Peshwa** in AD 1713.
- With Balaji's appointment as the Peshwa, the office of the Peshwa became hereditary. Balaji and his successors became the *de facto* rulers of the Maratha kingdom. From now onwards, the Chatrapati became just a figure-head. In all, there were 7 Peshwas. Of these, the ablest was Baji Rao I and the weakest and most incompetent was Baji Rao II.

#### **Balaji Vishwanath (AD 1713-20)**

- He began his career as a small revenue official by Sahu in AD 1708 and was appointed as a Peshwa of Maratha empire in AD 1713. He played a crucial role in the civil war and was responsible for the final victory of Sahu by winning over almost all the Maratha sardars to the side of Sahu.
- He concluded an agreement with the Sayyed brothers (1719) by which the Mughal emperor (*Farrukhsiyar*) recognised Sahu as the king of the Swarajya and allowed him to collect Chauth and Sardeshmukhi from the 6 Mughal provinces of the Deccan.

#### **Baji Rao I (AD 1720-40)**

- Baji Rao I the eldest son of Balaji Vishwanath, succeeded him as Peshwa at the young age of 20. He was considered the greatest exponent of guerrilla tactics after Shivaji and Maratha power reached its zenith under him.
- His period saw the beginning of the system of confederacy and the rise of Maratha chiefs. Under the system, each prominent Maratha chief was assigned a territory as his sphere of influence, which he was supposed to conquer on his own and which he could administer autonomously. Consequently, several Maratha families became prominent and got themselves entrenched in different parts of India—(i) the **Gaekwad** at Baroda (ii) the **Bhonsle** at Nagpur (iii) the **Holkars** at Indore (iv) the **Scindias** at Gwalior and (v) **Peshwas** at Poona.
- After defeating and expelling the Siddhis of Janjira from the mainland (AD 1722), he conquered Bassein and Salsette from the Portuguese (AD 1733). He also defeated the Nizam-ul-Mulk near Bhopal and concluded the **Treaty of Durai Sarai**, by which he got Malwa and Bundelkhand from the latter (AD 1737).
- He led innumerable successful expeditions into North India to weaken the Mughal Empire and to make the Marathas the supreme power in India. He said, "Let us strike at the trunk of the withering tree and the branches will fall of themselves".

### Balaji Baji Rao (AD 1740-61)

- Popularly known as *Nana Saheb*, he succeeded his father at the age of 20. After the death of Sahu (1749), the management of all state affairs was left in his hands.
- An agreement was reached between the Mughal Emperor (*Ahmed Shah*) and the Peshwa (AD 1752) that the later would protect the Mughal Empire from internal and external (*Ahmed Shah Abdali*) enemies in return for the Chauth of the North-West provinces and the total revenues of Agra and Ajmer provinces. This agreement brought the Marathas in direct conflict with Ahmed Shah Abdali of Afghanistan.
- The *Third Battle of Panipat* (14th January, 1761) resulted in the defeat of the Maratha by Ahmed Shah Abdali and the death of *Viswas Rao* (son of *Nana Saheb*) and Sadasiv Rao *Bhau* (cousin of *Nana Saheb*) and several other Maratha leaders and 28000 soldiers. Nana Saheb died on hearing the news on 23rd June, 1761.

### Peshwa Madhav Rao I (AD 1761-72)

- Balaji Baji Rao was succeeded by his younger son Madhav Rao I. Raghunath Rao, the eldest surviving member of Peshwa family become regent to the young Peshwa and *de facto* ruler of the state. After the death of Madhav Rao, Peshwa ship had lost its all power.

### Later Peshwas

- Narayan Rao (1772-73)
- Sawai Madhav Rao (1774-95)
- Baji Rao II (1796-1818)

## Administration Under the Peshwas

- The Secretariat of the Peshwas i.e. Huzur Daftar, was located at Poona. Now, the feudals ruled over their Jagirs independently.

### Mahattara

- The term ‘Mahattara’ found on medieval inscriptions refers to the village officials under the central administration.
- Village was the smallest unit of administration headed by the Patils. Kulkarnis assisted the Patils in keeping the documents of village administration. Podtars were appointed to inspect the currency. *Balute system* of exchange was prevalent in the villages.

### Pattakila

- The term ‘pattakila’ of Early Medieval India refers to the village headmen which is called as *Patil* in the modern times.
  - Taraf, Pargana, Sarkar and Suba were the bigger units of administration. Mamlatdar was the highest officer and Kamvisdar subordinated him.
  - Deshmukh, Despande and Darakhdars were appointed to check corruption.
  - The Land Revenue Policy of the Peshwas was based on the interest of the peasants. Agricultural land was categorised according to its productivity.
  - Mirasdars had full right over the land while Upari undertook agricultural work with the permission of the Peshwa.
- ☞ *The Peshwas tried to organise their army on the lines of European system called Kampus.*

### Ballute System

Under this system, in-exchange of services provided, farmers had to make payment in kind, mostly in the form of fixed value of agricultural produce every year after the harvest.

## Maratha Confederacy

- The origin of the Maratha confederacy may be traced to the revival of the *Jagir* or *Saranjam system* by Rajaram. But, it was only in the time of Baji Rao I that the system made a base for itself.
- In this process, Sahu issued letters of authority to his various Maratha sardars for collecting Chauth and Sardeshmukhi from various parts of India.
- These letters of authority were called Saranjam. The holders of these Saranjams were called Saranjamdars. They merely recognised the Peshwas as their nominal head, after the death of Sahu.

### Prominent Dynasties

- Raghaji Bhonsle of Nagpur
- Gaekwad of Baroda
- Holkar of Indore
- Scindia of Gwalior
- The Peshwa of Poona

# Self Check

## Build Your Confidence

- 1.** Which of the following statements about Shivaji's administration is/are correct?
- (a) Pandit Rao or the royal chaplain was the Ashta Pradhan who did not hold a military command besides his civil duties
  - (b) Sachiv, the Ashta Pradhans was also known as Sarunavis or Chitnis
  - (c) Mantri, the Ashta Pradhan was incharge of intelligence or espionage
  - (d) All of the above
- 2.** Who among the following streamlined the Maratha administration after Sambhaji? [IAS 2000]
- (a) Raja Ram
  - (b) Balaji Viswanath
  - (c) Ganga Bai
  - (d) Nanaji Deshmukh
- 3.** The member of Shivaji's Astha Pradhana who looked after foreign affairs was [IAS 1998]
- (a) Peshwa
  - (b) Sachiv
  - (c) Pandit Rao
  - (d) Sumantr
- 4.** Near which of the following Forts acquired by Shivaji did he build the Fort of Raigarh, which was to become his future Capital?
- (a) Torna
  - (b) Janjira
  - (c) Supa
  - (d) Purandhar
- 5.** In what way did Sambhaji throw a challenge to Aurangzeb?
- (a) By harassing Mughal armies
  - (b) By capturing Mughal Forts
  - (c) By giving shelter to Aurangzeb's rebel son, Prince Akbar
  - (d) By extorting Chauth and Sardeshmukhi from newly acquired Mughal territories
- 6.** The immediate objective of the Treaty of Purandhar was to
- (a) remove the humiliation of defeat and keep Shivaji in good humour
  - (b) throw a bone of contention between Shivaji and the ruler of Bijapur
  - (c) place Shivaji on a treacherous course
  - (d) make him a tool in the hands of the Mughals
- 7.** Which of the following was not one of Shivaji's daring exploits which made him a legendary figure and struck terror in the hearts of his adversaries?
- (a) His murder of Afzal Khan with baghnakh or steel claws (1659)
  - (b) His attack on Shayista Khan, the Mughal Governor, in the latter's harem (1663)
  - (c) His military movement against of Raja Jai Singh at Purandhar (1665)
  - (d) His escape from Mughal custody at Agra in the baskets along with his son
- 8.** Consider the following statements.
- 1. Shivaji biography by Sabhasad is known as Bakhar.
  - 2. Watandars were the local elements in Maratha kingdom.
  - 3. The lowest unit of the country was termed as 'prants' in the Maratha kingdom.
- Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct*
- (a) 1 and 2
  - (b) 1 and 3
  - (c) Only 3
  - (d) All of these
- 9.** In medieval India, during the reign of Shivaji, the role of the official called chitnis was to
- (a) be the in-charge of king's personal security guard
  - (b) be the in-charge of, intelligence espionage activity
  - (c) be the master of ceremonies in the royal court
  - (d) be assisting the king with his correspondence
- 10.** At the time of Aurangzeb's death, the Maratha leadership was in the hands of [UPPCS 2012]
- (a) Sambhaji
  - (b) Rajaram
  - (c) Jijabai
  - (d) Tarabai
- 11.** Which of the following was responsible for cutting down the allowance and imposing various kinds of restrictions on Sahu II (1777-1808)?
- (a) Peshwa Narayana Rao
  - (b) Peshwa Madhav Rao Narayan
  - (c) Peshwa Bajirao II
  - (d) Nana Fadnavis
- 12.** Who was called 'Chanakya of Maratha Politics'?
- (a) Baji Rao II
  - (b) Balaji Vishvanath
  - (c) Nana Fadnavis
  - (d) Mahadaji Shinde
- 13.** Shivaji defeated the Mughals in the battle of [UPPCS 2005]
- (a) Purandhar
  - (b) Raigarh
  - (c) Salhar
  - (d) Shivner



1. (d)      2. (b)      3. (a)      4. (a)      5. (c)      6. (b)      7. (c)      8. (a)      9. (d)      10. (d)  
11. (d)     12. (c)     13. (c)

# Chapter sixteen

# Mughal Decline and Rise of Regional States

*The death of Aurangzeb, the mighty Mughal emperor, in 1707 is generally regarded as the beginning of the gradual decline of the powerful Mughal empire. Incompetent later mughals could not stop the emergence of regional power centres.*

## Later Mughals

### Bahadur Shah I (AD 1707-1712)

- After the death of Aurangzeb in 1707, a war of succession started amongst his three surviving sons namely Bahadur Shah I (*Governor of Kabul*) Azam (*Governor of Gujarat*) and Kam Baksh (*Governor of Bijapur*).
- Bahadur Shah-I killed his two brothers, defeated Kam Baksh in the *Battle of Jajau* 1707. He released *Sahu*, (*the son of Sambhaji*) and recognised the independence of *Mewar* and *Marwar*.
- Khafi Khan has called him as *Shah-i-Bekhabar*, since he liked to appease all the parties by grants of titles and rewards. He made peace with Guru Gobind Singh and Raja Chhatrasal. He granted the Marathas, the right to collect Sardesh Mukhi of the Deccan, but not Chauth. He led an unsuccessful campaign against *Banda Bahadur* (*Laxman Das*). He died during the course of this campaign. Thus, Banda Bahadur was able to create the first Sikh capital at Lohgarh Fort.
- A Dutch Representative Committee under the leadership of *Joshua Ketelar* visited his court in AD 1711. His death in AD 1712 was followed by a fresh war of succession among his four sons—Jahandar Shah, Azim-us-Shah, Rafi-us-Shah and Jahan Shah.

### Jahandar Shah (AD 1712-1713)

- He captured the throne, after liquidating his three brothers, with the help of *Zulfikar Khan*.
- Zulfikar Khan acted as the *de-facto* ruler. This was infact the beginning of the practice of nobles acting as the king makers. He was dominated by his mistress *Lal Kunwar*, who is said to have imitated the style of Nur Jahan. He gave the title of *Mirza Raja* to Jai Singh of Malwa and *Maharaja* to Ajit Singh of Marwar.
- He granted the Marathas, the Chauth and Sardeshmukhi of Deccan, but it had to be collected by Mughal officer and then handed over to the Maratha officials. Encouraged *ijara* or the revenue farming/contract farming and abolished Jaziya. He was the first Mughal emperor to be killed in captivity by the two Sayyed brothers—Abdullah Khan and Hussain Ali.

## Farrukh Siyar (AD 1713-1719)

- He was son of Azim-us-Shah also known as *Sahid-i-Mazlum*. He appointed Abdulla Khan as Wazir and Hussain Ali as Mir Bakshi.
- He appointed *Chin Quilch Khan*, better known as *Nizam-ul-Mulk*, as the provincial Governor of Deccan. Khan later laid the foundation of an independent state of Hyderabad in October 1724. He commissioned Raja Jai Singh Sawai of Amber to lead an expedition against the Jats.
- The Sikh leader Banda Bahadur was taken prisoner at Gurdaspur and later executed at Delhi on 19th June, 1716.
- The ascendancy of the Sayyed brothers excited the jealousy of Farrukh Siyar who attempted to get rid of them. But the Sayyed brothers punished the emperor by deposing and executing him in a horrible way, in April 1719.
- Peshwa Balaji Vishwanath visited the emperor's court asking for the right to collect Chauth and Sardesh Mukhi on Maratha land.
- Farrukh Siyar gave the English East India Company a firman granting trade privileges in India.

## Mohammed Shah (AD 1719-1748)

- He was grandson of Bahadur Shah. The real name of the king was *Raushan Akhtar*. He remained under the influence of Sayyed brothers, queen Qudsya Begum (*Udham Bai*) and foster sister Koki Jiu during the initial years of his reign. With the help of Chin Qulich Khan, he killed Sayyed brothers in AD 1720. He was the most pleasure loving ruler and was therefore called *Rangeela*.
- Marathas under Baji Rao I raided surroundings of Delhi in March 1737 for the first time.
- Nadir Shah of Persia* (*The Napoleon of Iran*) invaded India in 1739 with the help of Sadat Khan and defeated Mughal army in the *Battle of Karnal*. He took away the peacock throne of Shah Jahan and Kohinoor diamond from Delhi.
- Sadat Ali Khan (*Governor of Awadh*), Murshid Kuli Khan (*Governor of Bengal*) and the Rohillas in the Ganges valley declared their independence.

## Ahmed Shah (AD 1748-1754)

- His reign saw the first invasion of *Ahmed Shah Abdali*, the ruler of Afghanistan and the former General of Nadir Shah, who attacked India five times between 1748 to 1767, which culminated in the *Third Battle of Panipat*. His Wazir Ghulam Qadir blinded him and placed Alamgir II on the throne.

## Alamgir II (AD 1754-1759)

- He is also known as *Aziz-ud-din*. *Battle of Plassey*, 1757 took place during his reign. He was killed in 1759 by his wazir Imad-ul-Mulk and *Shah Jahan II* was placed on throne, who was soon replaced by Shah Alam II.

## Shah Alam II (AD 1759 -1806)

- He is also known as *Ali Gauhar*. He was defeated in the *Battle of Buxar* in 1764. The *Third Battle of Panipat* (1761) was fought in this period.
- In AD 1772, *Mahaji Scindia* helped the emperor to get back the throne.
- In 1803, English under the command of *Lord Lake* captured Delhi. Till then, it was under the control of Marathas.
- According to Allahabad treaty of 1765, Shah Alam II granted the diwani rights of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa to the British after the Battle of Buxar.
- Shah Alam II was the first Mughal emperor to become *pensioner* of East India Company. He died in AD 1806.

## Akbar II (AD 1806 -1837)

- Lord Hastings asked him to give away all ceremonial power and titles proclaimed by Mughal emperor.
- The circulation of Mughal coins was stopped in 1835 . He conferred the title of *Raja* on Rammohan Roy and requested him to go to England to plead for a hike in the emperors pension.

## Bahadur Shah II

(AD 1837- 1862)

- Bahadur Shah participated in 1857 revolt. Following the revolt, the British tried and executed him to Rangoon in Burma.
- He died in AD 1862 at Rangoon.
- He was an Urdu poet and having pet name *Zafar*. He also patronised *Mirza Ghalib* and gave him the Jagir of 'Loharu'.

## Causes for the Decline of the Mughal Empire

- Worthless and negligent late Mughal emperors.
- Absence of definite law of succession, leading to instability of government and growth of partisanship at cost of patriotism.
- A heterogeneous and non-hereditary nobility.
- Degeneration of nobility with factious feuds and intrigues.
- Jagirdari crisis and vast expansion of territory which made it difficult for the weak rulers to control it.
- Revolt of Rajputs, Sikhs, Jats and Maratha's due to Aurangzeb's religious policy.
- Failure of Aurangzeb's Deccan Policy.
- Invasions of Nadir Shah and Ahmed Shah gave a death blow to Mughal empire.

## Foreign Invasions

### Nadir Shah

- **Nadir Shah** of Persia captured Qandhar and eyed the Afghanistan territory on the Mughal border. The Mughal Subedar **Nasir Khan** without posing any resistance, he fled from Afghanistan.
- Nadir Shah entered Punjab through Peshawar. He met the royal Mughal army at **Karnal** on 13th February in 1739.
- The royal army's main contingent under the emperor Mohammed Shah and Nizam-ul-Mulk did not join the battle. As a result, the army under Sadat Khan, Khan-i-Dauran and Nasir Mohammed signed the treaty with Nadir Shah accepting to give Nadir ₹ 2 crore in lieu of protecting their territory.
- During his invasion, Nadir Shah entered Delhi on 20th March and ordered a general massacre, in which about 20000 citizens were killed. The property was ransacked and every part of the city was looted.

### Ahmed Shah Abdali

- Ahmed Shah Abdali, the successor of Nadir Shah launched his first invasion at Punjab in AD 1748. It was followed by another invasion in AD 1749, in which he defeated Moin-ul-Mulk, the Governor of Punjab.
- In AD 1752, Abdali invaded Punjab for the third time and fourth time in AD 1756. In the fourth invasion, he reached upto Delhi and looted Indian territory as far as Mathura and Agra. In course of all these invasions, he did not meet with any resistance.
- He invaded India for the sixth time in AD 1760 and regained Punjab. A fierce battle was fought on 14th January, 1761 between the Ahmed Shah Abdali and Marathas at Panipat. After initial success in what is known as the **Third Battle of Panipat**, the Marathas suffered a crushing defeat.

### Kohinoor Diamond

After the Battle of Panipat, Babur ordered his son Humayun to secure the treasures at Agra, which had been the capital of the Lodhi dynasty since 1502. When Babur joined Humayun at Agra, Humayun presented him with a magnificent diamond.

The Kohinoor was given to Humayun by the family of the **Raja of Gwalior**, whom he had given protection. Humayun later gave the diamond to Shah Tahmasp of Persia. The Shah sent it as a present to Nizam Shah in the Deccan. Somehow, the gem returned during the 17th century into the treasury of the Mughal emperor, **Shah Jahan**. When Nadir Shah plundered Delhi in 1739, he seized the diamond alongwith the other Mughal jewels and named it Koh-i-noor. The Kohinoor passed through several hands before finally resting in the **Tower of London**, where it remains on display even today.

## Rise of Regional States

- With the declining power of the Mughal empire in the 18th century, there emerged various autonomous states—Bengal under Murshid Quli Khan, Awadh under Sadat Khan, Burhan-ul- Mulk, Hyderabad under Nizam-ul Mulk Asaf Jah, Carnatic under Sadatullah Khan, Mysore under Hyder Ali, the Jats under Churaman and Surajmal and the Sikhs under Ranjit Singh etc.

### The Bengal

- After the death of Aurangzeb, Bengal became an independent viceroyalty for all practical purposes under Murshid Quli Khan.
- His *de-facto* rule from AD 1700 was, thus, made de jure in AD 1717, Murshid justified the confidence reposed in him by the efficient management, which raised Bengal to the highest degree of prosperity.

### Murshid Quli Khan (AD 1717-27)

- He was granted the governorship of Orissa by the emperor Farrukh Siyar in AD 1719.
- He transferred his capital from Dacca to Murshidabad and gradually assumed autonomy, though continuing to profess theoretical allegiance to the Mughal emperor and to pay tribute as well as presents.
- He improved the financial position of the region by measures such as transfer of large parts of Jagir lands into khalisa (*crown*) lands, introduced the system of revenue farming etc.
- He regulated the prices of articles and forbade the hoarding of grains.
- He introduced reforms in agriculture such as grant of Taccavi loans to peasants for personal use.
- He brought about re-organisation of administration and establishment of law and order by suppressing the rebellious zamindars.

### Shuja-ud-Din (AD 1727-1739)

- He was the son-in-law of Murshid.
- He continued the policies and reforms of Murshid. His principal advisers in the matter of administration were **Rai-i-Rayyan Alamchand** (*an able financer*) and **Jagat Seth** (*the famous banker*).
- He was also granted the governorship of Bihar by the emperor Mohammed Shah in AD 1733 (from this time onwards, the *nawabs of Bengal* ruled over Bengal, Bihar and Orissa). He appointed Alivardi Khan as the Naib Subedar of Bihar.

### **Sarfaraz Khan** (AD 1739-1740)

- He was the son of Shuja.
- He took the title of *Alam-ud-Daula Haider Jung*.
- He was defeated by Alivardi Khan, Governor of Bihar in the *Battle of Giriya* (AD 1740) and was murdered.

### **Alivardi Khan** (AD 1740-1756)

- He legalised his usurpation by receiving a farman from emperor Mohammed Shah after paying him ₹ 2 crore.
- He was opposed to the attempts of the English and French to strengthen their fortifications in *Calcutta* and *Chandernagore* respectively and compared them with 'Beehive'.
- He favoured and nominated *Siraj-ud-Daula* as his successor.

### **Siraj-ud-Daula** (AD 1756 -1757)

- He prohibited the English from fortifying their factories at Calcutta, but on their refusal to comply with his orders, he seized the English factory at *Kasimbazar* 4th June, 1756 and then Calcutta 15th June, 1756.
- Siraj defeated Shaukat Jung, Subedar of Purnia (*Bihar*) in *Battle of Manihari* (1756).
- The famous *Black Hole Tragedy*, in which more than 400 Englishmen died took place during his reign (20th to 21st June, 1756).
- On 9th February, 1757, he signed the 'Treaty of Alinagar' with company.

### **Battle of Plassey**

Fought the Battle of Plassey with English forces on June 1757, this battle saw the treachery of Mir Jafar and Rai Durlabh; bravery of a small force under Mohanlal and Mir Madan; desertion of the Nawabs forces and escape of Siraj and his capture and execution by Miran (*son of Mir Jafar*).

### **Mir Jafar** (AD 1757-1760)

- He granted the right to free trade in Bengal, Bihar and Orissa and the Zamindar of the 24 Paraganas to the British, besides paying them a sum of ₹ 17.7 million as compensation for the attack on Calcutta.
- He is also known as the *Jackal of Clive*.
- He made futile efforts to replace the English by the Dutch, but the Dutch were defeated by the English at Bedara in AD 1759.

### **Mir Qasim** (AD 1760-1763)

- He granted the zamindari of Burdwan, Midnapore and Chittagong to the British.
- He transferred his capital from Murshidabad to Munger (AD 1762).

- He stopped the misuse for the dastaks (*free passes allowed to the Company*) and abolished all duties on internal trade against British wishes in order to protect the Indian traders 1763.
- He appointed a German official *Walter Rin Hard (Samru)* for modernisation of army.
- Mir Qasim murdered Subedar Ramnarayan of Bihar and occupied the factory at Patna by defeating English officer, *Ellis*. Hence, in AD 1763, English announced Mir Jafar as the Nawab of Bengal and declared war against Mir Qasim.

### **Mir Jafar** (AD 1763-1765)

- His reinstatement in 1763 by the British took place after the outbreak of the war with Mir Qasim. He died in AD 1765.

- **Battle of Buxar** (22nd October, 1764) was fought between the British and three allies (Mir Qasim, Shuja-ud-Daula of Awadh and Shah Alam II). This battle ended in the defeat of the allies by the British forces under major Hector Munro.

### **Najm-ud-Daulah** (AD 1765-1772)

- He was the son of Mir Jafar.
- He was made the Nawab in AD 1765 and remained a puppet in the hands of the British during the period of 'Dual System of Government' under Robert Clive.

## **The Awadh**

### **Saadat Khan Burhan-ul-Mulk** (AD 1722-1739)

- He founded the autonomous Awadh state in AD 1722.
- He was appointed as the Governor of Awadh by emperor Mohammed Shah.
- Through, his military reforms, he made Awadh economically and politically strong.
- He treated Hindus and Muslims equally in the matter of employment. The highest post of his government was held by Maharaja Nawab Rai.

### **Safdar Jung/Abdul Mansur** (AD 1739-1754)

- He was the nephew and son-in-law of Saadat Khan.
- He led an expedition to Bihar and occupied Patna in AD 1742. He took part in the *Battle of Manpur* against Ahmed Shah Abdali (AD 1748). He was appointed as the Wazir of the Mughal empire and was granted the province of Allahabad as well, by the Mughal emperor Ahmed Shah in AD 1748.
- From AD 1748, the Nawab of Awadh came to be known as the *Nawab Wazir*, since, Safdar and his successors held both the 'Nawabship' of Awadh and the 'Wajirship' of the Mughal empire.

### **Shuja-ud-Daula** (AD 1754-1775)

- He was the son of Safdar Jung. *Ali Gauhar (Shah Alam)*, the heir apparent of the puppet Mughal emperor Alamgir II was provided protection at his court.
- He was driven out of Delhi by Turani Wazir, Imad-ul-Mulk. He was an ally of the Afghan invader Ahmed Shah Abdali.
- He concluded the *Treaty of Benaras* (AD 1773), with Warren Hastings whereby Kara and Allahabad were sold to the Nawab and British troops were stationed at Awadh to protect the Nawab, for which he had to pay a subsidy to the British.
- He defeated the Rohillas with the help of the British and annexed Rohilkhand to Awadh in AD 1774.

### **Asaf-ud-Daula** (AD 1775-1797)

- He signed the *Treaty of Faizabad* (AD 1755) with the British. He transferred his capital from Faizabad to Lucknow in AD 1775.
- He is also known for promoting Lucknow culture and built important monuments like Imambara and Rumi Darwaza.

### **Saadat Khan**

- He was elder brother of Asaf. He ascended the throne in AD 1798 with the help of the British.
- He signed a subsidiary treaty with Lord Wellesley in November AD 1801, by which the Nawab was deprived of about half of his territory for the maintenance of the subsidiary troops.

### **Wajid Ali Shah**

- He was also known as *Jaan-e-Alam* and *Akhtarpiya*. He was the last ruler of Awadh. During his period, Awadh was annexed by Lord Dalhousie in February AD 1856 on the pretext of mis-governance and he was pensioned off and deported to Calcutta.
- He promoted classical music and dance forms with performers like Kalka-Binda brothers in his court.

## **The Hyderabad**

### **Nizam-ul-Mulk Asaf Jah** (AD 1724-1748)

- He founded the autonomous State of Hyderabad in 1724. His first term as the Viceroy of the Deccan was between AD 1713 and AD 1715.
- His original name was Chinquilich Khan, but emperor Farrukh Siyar conferred on him the titles of *Khan-i- Duran* and later *Nizam-ul-Mulk*. His second term as the Viceroy of the Deccan fell between AD 1720 and AD 1722. He was appointed as a Wazir of the Mughal empire AD 1722-24 by Mohammed Shah.
- Mohammed Shah confirmed his Viceroyalty of Deccan and granted him the title of *Asaf Jah* in AD 1725. Though, virtually independent in Deccan, he continued to recognise the Mughal emperor as sovereign.
- He adopted tolerant policy towards the Hindus. Puran Chandra was appointed as his Dewan. He signed *Treaty of Bhopal* in 1738 with the Peshwas and acted as peace-maker in the *Battle of Karnal* in 1739.

### **Nasir Jung** (AD 1748-1750)

- He was defeated and murdered by Muzaffar Jung (*son of Nasir's sister and grandson of Nizam-ul-Mulk*).

### **Muzaffar Jung** (AD 1750-1751)

- He acceded to the throne with the help of the French. His rule came to an abrupt end with his accidental death.

### **Salabat Jung** (AD 1751-1760)

- He was the third son of Nizam-ul-Mulk.
- He came to the throne with the help of the French.
- Nizam Ali concluded *subsidiary treaty* with the English in AD 1798, thus, becoming the first state to do so.
- Nizams were great patron of art, culture and literature. They built *Salarjung Museum* in Hyderabad and *Chow Mahalla Palace*. It was in September 1948, with the efforts of SBV Patel that by *Operation Polo*, Indian military was successful in merger of Hyderabad into the Indian Union.

## **The Mysore**

- Mysore became independent under the Hindu Wodeyar dynasty in 1565 after the fall of Vijayanagara empire. Between AD 1731 and 1734, the two brothers *Devaraja* and *Nanaraja* usurped the power in the state and became the *de facto* rulers. The state became a bone of contention between the Peshwa and Nizam. During the Second Carnatic War, Nanaraja allied with the English, to capture Tiruchirapalli (*Tamil Nadu*), but later on, he shifted his allegiance from the English to the French.

### **Haider Ali** (AD 1760-1782)

- He started his career as a soldier in the service of the Mysore State, but was later promoted to the position of *commander in chief* and had a meritorious record as the *Faujdar of Dindigul*.
- He trained his troops on Western lines and established a modern arsenal (AD 1755) at Dindigul with French help.
- He defended Srirangapatnam (capital of Mysore) against the Marathas in AD 1759 and was rewarded by conferring the title of *Fateh Haider Bahadur* (brave victorious lion) on him by Nanaraja (the Prime Minister who was the *de facto* ruler though *Chikka Krishna Raja* continued to be the de jure ruler of Mysore).

- He allied with the French and the Nizam and gave a crushing defeat to the English in the **First Anglo-Mysore War** (AD 1767-1769) and forced them to conclude a humiliating treaty, **Treaty of Madras** in April 1769.
- In 1781, he was defeated by Eyre Coote in the **Battle of Portonovo**. He allied with the Marathas and the Nizam in the **Second Anglo-Mysore War** (AD 1780-84) and captured Arcot during the course of war and inflicted a very humiliating defeat on the English, again in AD 1782.
- He died on 7th December, 1782 during the course of the Second Anglo-Mysore war.

### **Tipu Sultan** (AD 1782-1799)

- He succeeded Haider Ali and in contrast to his father, he dethroned the Raja of Mysore and openly assumed the title of *Sultan* in AD 1786. He continued the **Second War with British** till AD 1784, when both the sides got tired and concluded peace by the **Treaty of Mangalore** March 1784 on the basis of mutual restitution of conquests.
- He defeated the coalition army of Marathas and Nizam.
- He fought the **Third Anglo-Mysore War** AD 1790-1792, in which the Marathas and Nizam allied with the British. He signed the **Treaty of Srirangapatnam** (March 1792) which led to the surrender of nearly half of the Mysore's territory to the victories allies.
- The **Fourth Anglo-Mysore War** (AD 1799) ended in complete collapse of Tipu's power and he died fighting.
- Tipu organised the infantry on the European lines and made attempts to build a modern navy establishment of two dockyard.
- He appreciated the importance of economic strength as the foundation of military strength of his empire.
- He sent ambassadors to France, Turkey, Iran, Peru and to Zaman Shah of Afghanistan to develop foreign trade.
- He introduced a new system of coinage, new scales of weights and measures and a new calendar.
- Like his father he also issued coins with the images of Hindu deities. He had great regards for **Jagadguru Shankaracharya** of Sringeri and offered him funds for the repairs of temples.

### **Important Facts Related to Tipu**

He was great admirer of Jagadguru Shankracharya of Sringeri and offered him funds for the establishment of image of Goddess Sharda which was vandalised by Marathas. **Tarikh-i-Khudai** is his autobiography. He wrote a military manual, **Fatahul Mujahidin**, in which rocket technology and rocket brigades was mentioned.

He completed Lal Bagh Project (Bangalore) started by Haider and also laid foundation of Krishnaraj Sagar Dam on Kaveri river.

Took keen interests in the French revolution and planted the tree of liberty at Srirangapatnam and became the member of the Jacobin club. He also called himself 'Citizen Tipu'.

The famous temple of Sri Rangnath was situated barely a handed yards from his place. He assumed the title of *Padshah* in 1797.

Treaty of Srirangapatnam 1792, signed by Tipu by which he had to cede half of his territory to the company of paid huge war reparation.

*Treaties signed by Haider Ali and Tipu Sultan:*

**Treaty of Madras** 1769, restored by conquered territories to their respective owners.

**Treaty af Mangalore** 1784, restored the conquered territories mutually and liberated war prisoners.

**Treaty of Srirangapatnam** 1792, signed by Tipu by which he had to cede half of his territory to the compaign and paid huge war reparation.

## **The Punjab**

### **Sikhism and Sikh Gurus**

- Guru Nanak established the Sikh religion in Punjab. *There were ten Sikh Gurus:*
  - Guru Nanak** (AD 1469 to 1539)
    - First Sikh Guru and he established the Nanak Panth.
    - He was contemporary to Ibrahim Lodhi and Babur.
  - Guru Angad** (*Lehna*) (AD 1539-1552)
    - He shifted the seat of Guru to Khadur and he discovered the Gurumukhi script and regularised the *langar system*.
  - Guru Amardas** (AD 1552-1574)
    - He shifted the seat of Guru to Goindwal.

### **Personal Details**

|               |                               |
|---------------|-------------------------------|
| Birth         | Talwandi                      |
| Death         | Kartarpur ( <i>Derababa</i> ) |
| Father's name | Kaluji                        |
| Mother's name | Tripta                        |
| Wife's name   | Sulakhni                      |
| Title         | Hajrat Rabbul Majjid          |

- Mughal emperor Akbar visited Goindwal to meet him. Akbar gave land grants to Bibibhani, daughter of Amardas.
- He divided his spiritual empire into 22 parts called **Manjis** and each **Manji** was put under the charge of a Sikh.

(iv) **Guru Ramdas** (AD 1574-1581)

- Mughal emperor Akbar granted him 500 bighas land on which he established the city of **Amritsar** (earlier known as *Ramdaspur*) and made the post of Guru hereditary.

(v) **Guru Arjun Dev** (AD 1581-1606)

- He is also known as **Saccha Badshah**.
- He constructed a lake at Amritsar and also Santosh sar lake at Ramdaspur. In AD 1589, he constructed the Harmandir Saheb in the mid of Amritsar lake.
- He founded the city of Tarantaran, Kartarpur and Govindpur.
- He levied a compulsory religious tax (first-tenth of one's income).
- In AD 1604, he wrote the ***Adi Granth***.
- He was executed by Mughal emperor Jahangir in AD 1606.

(vi) **Guru Hargovind** (AD 1606 -1645)

- He transformed the Sikhs into a warrior community.
- He fortified the city of Amritsar and built a 12 high 'Akal Takht' in the Harmandir Saheb complex at Amritsar.
- He permitted his followers to take non-vegetarian food and he founded the city of Kiratput in Kashmir.

(vii) **Guru Har Rayya** (AD 1645 -1661)

- He met Dara Shikoh, son of Aurangzeb.
- His son Ramraya visited Aurangzeb's court.

(viii) **Guru Harkishan** (AD 1661-1664)

- During his period, Ramraya established a separate seat at Dehradun. His followers were known as **Ramrayi**.

(ix) **Guru Teg Bahadur** (AD 1664 -1675)

- He shifted the seat of guru to Makhovali.
- He was executed by Aurangzeb. Sis Ganj Gurudwara at Delhi marks the site of his Martyrdom.

(x) **Guru Govind Singh** (AD 1675-1708)

- Tenth and last Guru of the Sikhs born in AD 1666 at Patna. He founded the city of Anandpur and established his seat there. He founded the city of Paonta in Himachal Pradesh and gave military training to his followers. He established the Khalsa Panth in AD 1699 on Baisakhi Day.
- War with the Mughals** Battle of Nandon (AD 1690), two Battles of Anandpur, Battle of Chamkaur and Battle of Khirdana (AD 1705).
- Adigranth was lost in the Battle of Khirdana, but he compiled it again. He summoned the assembly of Sikhs at Anantpur and selected 5 persons (*Panj pyare*), who took the water of immortality. The Sikhs were now required to keep 5 k's viz. Kesh, Kirpan, Kach, Kanga and Kara. He wrote Krishna Avtar, Chandi-di-war, his autobiography *Vichitra Natak* and *Dasven Padshah ka Granth*.

**Banda Bahadur** (AD 1708-1770)

- Guru Gobind Singh died in AD 1708 and after him Banda Bahadur assumed the leadership of the Sikhs in the first decade of the 18th century and began the Sikh war of independence against the Mughal imperial authority. He defeated Wazir Khan, the Governor of Sirhind and established himself in a strong hill fort which he named Lohgarh.
- His disciples called him **Saccha Padshah** or veritable sovereign and coins were struck in his name. Under Banda, the Sikhs became a formidable force in Punjab between AD 1707 and AD 1715 and the Mughal's had to put in immense efforts to control him.
- Abdus Samad Khan, the Mughal Governor of Lahore, ultimately succeeded in defeating and capturing Banda Bahadur and his followers. He and his son were tortured to death at Delhi during the reign of Emperor Farrukh Siyar on 19th June, 1716.
- The invasions of Nadir Shah in AD 1739 and Ahmed Shah Abdali, between AD 1748 to AD 1767, provided opportunities for the further assertion of Sikh influence and power in Punjab.
- In AD 1764, the Sikhs assembled at Amritsar and struck the first coin of pure silver with the legend **Degh, Tegh, Fateh**. This is regarded as the first proclamation of the Sikh sovereignty in Punjab.
- In AD 1770's, they organised themselves into 12 'misls' (military brotherhood with democratic set-up) or confederacies. The leaders of these misls exercised control over different areas in the Punjab.

**Ranjit Singh** (1780 -1839)

- Maha Singh, the father of Ranjit Singh, was the leader of **Sukerchakia Misl** and controlled the territory between the Ravi and the Chenab.
- Ranjit Singh ascended the throne in AD 1792, at the age of 12, but during the initial 5 years of his reign, he ruled through a Regency Council, headed by his mother. He took the complete charge of the government, in AD 1797, at the early age of 17 years.
- In AD 1798, **Zaman Shah** (son of Ahmed Shah Abdali) who considered himself to be the rightful ruler of Punjab, authorised Ranjit Singh to occupy Lahore and rule it on his behalf. He captured Lahore and Amritsar from the Sardars of Bhangi Misl and he made Lahore his political capital and assumed the title of **Maharaja of Lahore** in AD 1799.
- He established his authority over the entire territory from Sutlej to Jhelum. He defeated the confederacy of Sikh misls formed under Gulab Singh, thus, emerging a powerful leader of the whole Sikh community.

- Ranjit Singh, formed Dal Khalsa or the army of theocracy of Sikhs. He signed the *Treaty of Amritsar* in AD 1809 with the East India Company (*Lord Metcalf*) regarding rights over the Sutlej area.
- He helped Shah Shuja, grandson of Ahmed Shah Abdali, during the succession war in Afghanistan and in return, took the famous Kohinoor diamond from him. Later the throne was occupied by *Dost Mohammed*.
- Sikh forces, under the commandership of *Hari Singh Naula*, defeated the Afghan invader, Dost Mohammed.
- He renovated the Sikh shrine decorating the lower half with marble and the entire upper portion with copper surmounted with thin plate of gold and gave it the modern name of the *Golden Temple*.

### Tripartite Treaty 1838

Ranjit Singh signed **Tripartite Treaty, in AD 1838**, with Shah Shuja and the EIC (*Lord Auckland*), which gave freedom to the British troops to pass through the Punjab. Thus, the English restricted the advance of Russian forces in India through Punjab, with the help of Ranjit Singh.

### First Anglo Sikh War

- During the reign of Dalip Singh, the English invaded Punjab the First Anglo Sikh War, AD 1845-46), occupied Lahore and dictated a peace treaty, known as the *Treaty of Lahore* on 9th March, 1846.
- Since, Lahore Durbar was unable to pay the war indemnity, it agreed to transfer the company, the hill countries situated between the river Beas and Indus, including the province of Kashmir. *Gulab Singh*, who was instrumental in these negotiations, was given Kashmir by the company.

### Second Anglo Sikh War

- However, the things did not improve in Punjab which soon led to the **Second Anglo Sikh War** (AD 1848-1849) after which Punjab was annexed to the company by Lord Dalhousie. *Raja Dalip Singh* and *Rani Jindal* (*the queen of Ranjit Singh*) were sent away to London on fixed annual pensions. Sir Henry Lawrence became the first commissioner cum resident of Punjab.

### The Jats

- Spread mainly in the rural regions of Haryana, Punjab, Western parts of the Ganga Doab and Eastern Rajputana, the Jats were recognised as a group practicing agriculture, during the ancient and medieval periods. Being strong warriors, they were also employed as soldiers by Hindu as well as Muslim kings.

- Some important leaders of the community were as follows:

### Gokla

- He was the zamindar of Tilpat, who provided leadership to the Jat uprisings in AD 1669, which was suppressed by the Mughal Governor, Hasan Ali Khan.

### Rajarama (1670-1688)

- He was the Zamindar of Sinsani. He provided leadership to the Jat uprisings in AD 1685, which was suppressed by Raja Bishan Singh Kachwaha of Amber.

### Churaman (AD 1690-1721)

- He obtained Mansab from the Mughal ruler Bahadur Shah I and established the State of Bharatpur. He served in Bahadur Shah's campaign against Banda Bahadur.

### Badan Singh (AD 1722 -1756)

- He was the nephew of Churaman. Ahmed Shah Abdali gave him the title of *Raja*. He may be regarded as the real founder of the Jat States of Bharatpur.

### Suraj Mal (AD 1756 -1765)

- He was the adopted son and successor of Badan Singh. It was *Suraj Mal* who successfully welded the scattered Jat Zamindars near Agra into one powerful state. Under him the Jat kingdom reached its zenith. He had remarkable talents for war and diplomacy. He is remembered as the 'Plato of Jat tribe' and as 'Jat Ulysses.'

### Rajputs

- Rajputs were unhappy with the policies of emperor Aurangzeb and declared their independence. In AD 1708, Bahadur Shah invaded Jodhpur, followed by the Mughal Commander Hussain Ali in AD 1714. In AD 1721, Sayed brothers appointed Maharaja Jai Singh as the Subedar of Agra and emperor Mohammed Shah further gave him the area of Gujarat.

### Sawai Jai Singh II (AD 1688-1747)

- He was a distinguished statesman and an astronomer. He went on to construct observatories also known as *Jantar Mantar* in stone so as to calculate planetary positions at Varanasi, Delhi, Ujjain, Mathura and Jaipur which is a world heritage site. He also compiled a table of observations known as *Ziz-i-Jadid Muhammed Shahi*, also translated important works into sanskrit including Euclid's Geometry. He was a social reformer who tried to curb the practice of female infanticide.

### City of Jaipur

Foundations of the city was laid in AD 1727 by Sawai Jai Singh II. It was one of the first planned cities based on the principles of Vastu Shastra with the help of town planner Vidyadhar Bhattacharya. The king shifted his capital from Amber to Jaipur.

# Self Check

# Build Your Confidence



# Chapter seventeen

# Emergence of European Powers in India

*The landing of the Portuguese under the leadership of Vasco da Gama at Calicut, by the close of the 15th century is considered to be a landmark in the history of India's maritime trade. Their arrival on the Indian soil was followed by the advent of other European companies and the resultant monopolisation of India's coastal and maritime trade by the Europeans.*

## The Portuguese

- Prince Henry of Portugal encouraged voyages for the discovery of sea-routes to India following which Barolomeu Dias reached cape of good hope in AD 1498.
- *Vasco da Gama* (*colonial man*) from Lisbon, discovered a new sea route from Europe to Asia via Cape of good hope. He was helped by Gujarati navigator Ibn Majid. He landed at Calicut on 21st May, 1498. Calicut, then under the Zamorin enjoyed a high degree of prosperity. Vasco da Gama returned to Portugal in AD 1499.
- A second expedition, under Pedro Alvares Cabral in AD 1500. A fresh expedition under Vasco da Gama which started in AD 1502 demanded from the Zamorin the banishment of every Muslim resident from Calicut. He strengthened the factories at Cochin and Cannanore and left a squadron to supervise the Malabar coast and to destroy all Arab vessels coming to it from the Red sea.
- The Portuguese maritime empire acquired the name of Estado da India which intended to monopolise the pepper and spice trade of the East.

## Important Portuguese Governors

### Francisco-de-Almeida (AD 1505-1509)

- First Governor of Portuguese territory who also fortified fort manual in Cochin and built a fort at Anjediva.
- In a naval battle fought near *Chaul*, the combined Muslim fleet won a victory over the Portuguese fleet under Almeida's son, who was killed in the battle (January 1508). A year later, Almeida defeated the combined Muslim fleet in a naval *battle near Diu* (February 1509).

### Alfonso-de-Albuquerque

(AD 1509-1515)

- The *conquest of Goa from the Adil Shahi Sultan of Bijapur* was Albuquerque's first achievement February 1510. But as the city was quickly recaptured by the Sultan of Bijapur, he had to undertake second expedition.
- He recaptured the place and fortified it against any surprise attack. The conquest of Goa, put 'the seal on Portuguese naval supremacy along the South-West coast'.

### Nino Da Cunha (1529-1538)

- Established settlements at San Thome near Madras and at Hughli in Bengal and thus, developed commerce on the Eastern coast.
- In AD 1534, the Portuguese secured permission to build factories at Satgaon and Chittagong from the Sultan of Bengal.
- Cochin was the early capital of the Portuguese in India. Later the capital was transferred to Goa by Nino Da Cunha.
- In AD 1535, Cunha got possession of *Diu* and *Bassein* from Bahadur Shah of Gujarat. Gradually, almost all of their territories were lost to Marathas (Salsette and Bassein in AD 1739), Dutch and English. Only Goa, Diu and Daman remained with them until AD 1961.

- By AD 1571, the Asiatic empire Portugal was divided into three independent commands;
  - (i) A governorship at Mozambique, controlling the settlements on the African coast.
  - (ii) A viceroyalty at Goa, in charge of the Indian and Persian territories.
  - (iii) A governorship at Malacca, to control the trade of Java and the spice Archipelago.
- ⦿ *The Portuguese brought to India the cultivation of tobacco. The first printing press in India was set-up by the Portuguese at Goa in AD 1556; the first scientific work on Indian medicinal plants by a European writer was printed at Goa in AD 1563.*
- ⦿ *In AD 1661, the king of Portugal gave Bombay to Charles II of England as dowry when Charles II married to Catherine Braganza.*
- ⦿ *Vasco da Gama visited India three times and was buried at Fort Kochi. Francisco Xavier, a famous saint came to India in the period of Martin Dsousa to spread Christianity in India and Asia.*

## The Dutch

- Vereenigde Oostindische Compagnie (VOC) popularly known as, *Dutch United East India Company* was formed in AD 1602.
- The skilful administrative system and enthusiastic national support which the company enjoyed enabled it to monopolise the entire spice trade to Europe.

## Dutch Settlements in India

### On Malabar Coast

- The only port belonging to them on this side was *Vengurla* to the North of Goa. After a bitter struggle for power, Dutch were finally defeated by English in the *Battle of Bedara, 1759*.

### On Coromandel Coast

- After an earlier abortive attempt to start trade at Surat and on the Malabar coast, admiral van der Hagen opened up trade with the Coromandel coast and set-up a permanent factory at Masulipatnam (early in 1605).
- Soon another factory was founded at Devanampatnam (*Tegnapatnam*) or *Fort St David*. In AD 1610, upon negotiating with the king of Chandragiri, the Dutch found another factory at *Pulicat*, named *Fort Geldria*.

### Trade During Dutch Period

- *Exports* Textiles woven clothes according to special patterns constituted the chief export of the Coromandel coast. Other commodities exported by the Dutch were indigo and saltpetre opium, the most important export was consumed in Java and China and yielded enormous profits.

- *Imports* As regarding imports, apart from spices the chief articles of import to the Coromandel were sandalwood and pepper from the archipelago, copper from Japan and textiles from China.
- *Trade from Bengal* In Bengal, the Dutch first established a factory at Pipli, but soon abandoned it for Balasore which was in turn neglected when a firm footing was obtained at Chinsurah on the Hughli in AD 1653.
- The Dutch constructed fort Gustavus at Chinsurah. Subsequently, they established factories at Kasim Bazar and Patna.

## The English

- Before the East India Company established trade in India, John Mildenhall, an English merchant came to India over land route to trade with Indian merchants in 1599. Through, the charter granted by Queen Elizabeth I on 31st December, AD 1600 under the title of '*The Governor and company of Merchants of London trading into the East Indies*' was formed.
- The immediate aim of the company was the acquisition of the spices and pepper of the Eastern Archipelago and therefore, the first two voyages of the company, between AD 1601-1606, were made, not to India, but to Aching (in Sumatra), Bantam (in Java) and the Malaccas.
- Finally with the third voyage in AD 1608, the English initiated the process of the company's trade with India and Captain William Hawkins, who had experience in such ventures and could speak Turkish, was provided with a letter from King James I to Akbar.

## English Settlements on Western Coast

- *William Hawkins* journeyed from Surat and arrived at the *Jahangir's court* in AD 1609, but failed to get permission to erect a factory at Surat. However, the victory of English under captain best over Portuguese fleet at Swally (near Surat) in AD 1612 broke the tradition of Portuguese naval supremacy and a Farman was issued by Jahangir permitting the English to establish a factory at Surat AD 1613.
- *Sir Thomas Roe* The royal ambassador from King James I to the Mughal Emperor, succeeded in getting two Farmans by 1618, one of the Mughal Emperor Jahangir and the other of the Prince (*Khurram*) granting the permission to trade and erect factories in different parts of the empire.
- *Surat* was one of the chief centres of maritime trade, it is from Surat that the English extended their inland trading operations and by 1616 built subordinate factories at Ahmedabad, Baroda, Broach and Agra.
- Finally Bombay was declared as headquarter of the company on the West coast in AD 1687.

### Gerald Aungier

He was the first Governor of Bombay AD 1669 to 1677. Under Aungier, Bombay became a safe asylum for all merchants and manufacturers. He established vigorous and strict discipline over all the inhabitants of the city and allowed every community to enjoy the free exercise of its religion.

## English Settlements on Eastern Coast

- The English were permitted to trade in Masulipatnam in AD 1611 and in AD 1630 secured the 'golden farman' from the Sultan of Golconda AD 1632, which ensured safety and prosperity of their trade.
- In AD 1639, Francis Day obtained the site of Madras from the Raja of Chandragiri with permission to build a fortified factory, which was named Fort St George.
- It was only with the foundation of Madras by the English in 1639, their arrival at Hughli in AD 1650 and their establishment of a factory at Balasore in North Orissa that the position of the English on the Eastern coast became strong and permanent. Madras soon replaced Masulipatam as the headquarters of the English on the Coromandel coast and in AD 1641 all the English settlements in Eastern India (Bengal, Bihar and Orissa) and the Coromandel were placed under the control of the President and Council of Fort St George.

## English Settlements in Bengal

- In AD 1633, the Mughal Governor of Orissa gave the English merchants permission to establish factories at Hariharapur (near the mouth of *Mahanadi*), Balasore and Pipli. The English also succeeded to establish their factory at Hughli in AD 1651, followed by those at Patna, Dacca and Kasim bazar.
- In AD 1667, Aurangzeb gave the English a farman for trade in Bengal and 5 years later, in AD 1672, the Mughal Governor, Shaista Khan, issued an order confirming all the privileges already acquired by the English.
- The rebellion of Sobha Singh a Zamindar in the district of Burdwan, gave an opportunity to the English to fortify their settlement at Sutanuti in AD 1696. They were permitted by Azimuth Shah Governor of Bengal, to purchase the Zamindari of the three villages of Sutanuti, Kalikata and Govindpur on payment of ₹ 1200 to the old proprietors.
- In AD 1700, the directors constituted Bengal as a separate presidency independent of Madras and nominated Sir Charles Eyre as its first President.
- Aurangzeb's death in AD 1707 made the English at Calcutta fear that their growing trade would be swept away by the coming tide of civil war and anarchy. After protracted negotiations, the English got confirmation of their privileges from the new emperor *Shah Alam* and the *de facto* ruler of Bengal *Murshid Quli Khan*.

The most important event in the history of the company during these years was the diplomatic mission led by *John Surman* in AD 1715 to the court of the Mughal Emperor *Farrukhsiyar*, resulting in the grant of three famous farmans addressed to the officials in Bengal, Hyderabad and Gujarat. The farmans gave the company many valuable privileges, which are as follows:

- In *Bengal*, it exempted the company's imports and exports from additional customs duties, excepting the annual payment of ₹ 3000 as settled earlier. The company was allowed to rent additional lands around Calcutta.
- In *Hyderabad*, the company's old privileges of freedom from dues in trade was retained and it had to pay only the existing rent for Madras.
- At Surat, the company was exempted from the levy of all duties for its exports and imports in lieu of an annual payment of ₹ 10000 and the coins of the company minted at Bombay were to have currency throughout the Mughal Empire.
- In the subsequent years, the English East India Company began to extend its territorial claims. It defeated Battle of Bedara, 1759 (*Dutch*) and Battle of Wandiwash, 1760 (*French*) and by the end of the 18th century, it succeeded in establishing its Paramountcy.

## The Danes

- The Danes arrived in India in 1616. They established settlement at Tranquebar (*Tamil Nadu*) in 1620 and Serampore (*Bengal*) in 1676. Serampore was their headquarter. They were forced to sell their settlements to British in 1854.

## The French

- 'Compagnie des Indes Orientales' popularly known as the *French East India Company* was formed by *Colbert*, under state patronage in AD 1664.
- In AD 1667, an expedition was sent under Francois Caron, who established the first French factory in India at Surat. In AD 1669, Mascara founded another French factory at Masulipatam by securing patent from the Sultan of Golconda.
- In July 1672, French squadron under De la Haye occupied San Thome near Madras.
- In 1673, Francois Martin, director of the Masulipatam factory, obtained from Sher Khan Lodi, Governor of Valikondapuram, a site for a factory, which later developed into Pondicherry and its first Governor was Francois Martin.
- In Bengal, the French laid the foundation of their famous settlement of Chandranagar in AD 1690 on a site granted to them by Shaista Khan.

- The reconstituted company named the *United Compagnie des Indes* was formed by a royal edict and entrusted with the whole of French colonial trade.
- The arrival of *Dupleix* as French Governor in India in AD 1724 saw the beginning of Anglo-French conflict (*Carnatic wars*) resulting in their final defeat in India, at the Battle of Wandiwash in AD 1760.

## Economic Colonialism and British Rule

- RP Dutt* in his work *India Today* has suggested three phases of economic colonialism and exploitation.

### First Phase of Merchantalism (AD 1757-1813)

- In this phase, company purchased goods at cheap rates and sold commodities at high prices, apart from investment of surplus revenues for purchasing finished goods for export to England. This phase coincided with success of industrial revolution in Britain.

### Second Phase of Free Trade/ Industrial Capitalism (AD 1813-1858)

- This phase is marked by conversion of India as market of finished goods from Britain and a source of raw materials alongwith gradual decline in Indian industries including exports because of heavy duties. However, this phase continued till AD 1947.

### Third Phase of Financial Imperialism (AD 1858-1947)

- This phase was reflected by investment of surplus capital by British in India under Guarantee System i.e. private British capitals investment in India was guaranteed for safe returns i.e. guarantee of private investment of public cost.
- Single best example was railways and later on plantation, banking, shipping, export-import. The return of such investments constituted single biggest source of drain of wealth to Britain popularly known as *home charges* and such *capital investments* were termed as public debt at India.

## Land Revenue System

### Permanent Settlement

- Introduced in Bengal, Bihar and Orissa, districts of Banaras and Northern districts of Madras by Lord Cornwallis in 1793. John Shore planned this settlement.
- It declared Zamindars as the owners of the land. Hence, they could keep first-eleventh of the revenue collected to themselves while the British got a fixed share of tenth-eleventh of the revenue collected. The Zamindars were free to fix the rate.

### Ryotwari Settlement

- It was introduced in Bombay, Madras and Assam. Munro and Charles Reed recommended it. In this system, the direct settlement was made between the Government and the Ryots.
- The revenue was based on the basis of quality of the soil and the nature of the crop. The revenue was fixed for a period not exceeding 30 years. It was based on the Scientific rent theory of Ricardo. The position of the cultivator became more secure.

### Mahalwari System

- It was introduced in the area of Ganga valley, parts of Central India and Punjab. Revenue settlement was to be made by village or estates with landlords.
- In this system, a settlement was made with the village, which maintained a form of common ownership known as *Bhai Chara* or with *Mahals*, which were group of villages. Revenue was periodically revised.

### Drain of Wealth

Dadabhai Naoroji explained the Drain of Wealth theory in his book *Poverty and Un-British Rule in India*. It is that part of national wealth, which was not available for consumption of Indians and was being drained away to England without any economic or material return and this drain was continuous in nature. It included home charges and interest on foreign capital investments, foreign banking, shipping, insurance and managing agencies.

Home charges included Expenditure by Secretary of State and India Office in London, dividends of shareholders of East India Company, interest on public debt, war and military expenditure and store purchases in England.

### Economic Impact of British Rule

- Decline of handicraft industries beyond recovery not compensated by rise of modern industries.
- Adverse impact on agriculture because of new land tenure systems.
- Emergence of new social classes, landlords, moneylenders and officials.
- Increased rural indebtedness.
- Commercialisation of agriculture produce of specialised crops or cash crops not for local use or consumption, but for exports, saw its peak in plantation sector i.e. indigo, tea, coffee, rubber and sugarcane.
- It was a forced process where farmers were forced to sell their produce at marginal prices.

## Establishment of British Paramountacy

- After the disintegration of Mughal empire India was in a politically and territorially fragmented state. There was an opportunity for a new power to emerge and rule India. Various native dynasties and European companies were in cut throat competition. Britishers gradually defeated all powers and established its paramountacy.

### Anglo-French Conflict

- The British and French were not only the rivals in India; rather they were at constant war with each other in Europe and some other fronts outside the Indian borders. Therefore certain events, that took place outside India, also affected the course of struggle between these two in India.
- In all, three wars were fought between the English and the French in India. These wars are popularly known as **Carnatic wars**, because the area of conflict was the Mughal Subah of Carnatic which had become more or less independent.
- In 1720s, Saadutullah Khan (who was the *Governor of Carnatic* and nominally under the control of the *Nizam of Hyderabad*) laid the foundation of the autonomous State of Carnatic with its capital at Arcot.
- He was succeeded by Dost Ali and Safdar Ali. In 1743, the Nizam of Hyderabad intervened and appointed Anwar-ud-din as the Nawab of Carnatic, who was murdered by Chanda Sahib in 1749, with the help of French.

### First Carnatic War (AD 1746-1748)

- Under the influence, Austrian war of succession, both English and French companies came in conflict in India. The Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle (AD 1748) brought Austrian war of succession to an end.
- According to this treaty, the English got back Madras and the French got the Louisburg region in North America.

### Second Carnatic War (AD 1749-1754)

- The conflict began with the issue of disputed succession to the thrones of Hyderabad and Carnatic.
- The two companies supported rival candidates for the Nawabship of Carnatic.
- The French supported *Chanda Sahib* and the English wanted to install *Mohammed Ali* as the Nawab. In the war that followed the French were defeated and Chanda Sahib was beheaded.
- The Peace Treaty concluded between English and French and Mohammed Ali was recognised as the Nawab of Carnatic.
- The French disaster in the Second Carnatic war sealed the fate of Dupleix and Godeau replaced Dupleix as the Governor General of the French possession in India AD 1754.

### Third Carnatic War (AD 1756-1763)

- The final phase of the Anglo-French conflict started in AD 1756, when the 7 years war broke out in Europe. The French Army under Count-de-Lally (*French Governor-General*) captured Fort St David AD 1758.
- After the series of conflicts, the English Army under General Eyre Coote decisively defeated the French forces at Wandiwash a fort in the Carnatic state on 22nd January, 1760.
- English captured Pondicherry headhunters of French settlement Mahe and Jinji. The war came to an end with the termination of hostilities in Europe.
- The **Treaty of Paris** AD 1763 brought 7 years war to an end. According to this treaty, Pondicherry and some other French settlements were returned to the French.

## British Occupation of Bengal

- East Indian Company's ambition of becoming a political power and Nawab of Bengal's ambition of consolidating his power over Bengal brought two powers in direct conflict with each other.
- Conflict between **Nawab Siraj-ud-Daulah** and the East India Company intensified due to a number of reasons, *which are as follows:*
  - The illegal use of Dastaks, which were export trade permits issued by the Mughal Dynasty in the year 1717. The British used these permits as the excuse to avoid taxes to Bengal Nawab.
  - British interfered with Nawab's court and supported one of Siraj-ud-Daulah's aunt Ghaseti Begum, who was in opposition to the Nawab. *Ghaseti's treasurer's* son had escaped and took shelter in Fort William, but Siraj demanded for his return. *Mir Jafar Ali Khan*, who was grand-uncle of Siraj and Commander-in-Chief of Nawab's army, was in the conspiracy with Ghaseti Begum. Eventually, Mir Jafar joined the British side through the secret mediators.
  - Fort William became the safe shelter for the British and they added additional fortification and assembled permission of Nawab.
  - The policy of the British officials was to help the merchants such as Jagat Seth of Murshidabad to consolidate their own base.
  - Disloyalty of Mir Jafar and Rai Durlabh to the Nawab of the Bengal.

### Black Hole Tragedy

After the first conflict between Nawab and Company, English prisoners at Calcutta, which included some women and children, were lodged in a prison room of the fort. The number of prisoners were 146.

Out of these 146 white prisoners kept in the room, on 20th June, only 23 survived till the next morning, when the prison room was opened, the rest died due to excessive heat. The East India Company's authorities used the episode as a propaganda device to defame the Nawab and won support of the British public opinion for the war against Nawab.

## Nawabs of Bengal

### Mir Jafar

- Mir Jafar was the first Nawab of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa under the British rule in India. He succeeded Siraj-ud-Daulah. He is remembered in India by the name of *Gaddar-e-Hind*.
- By the process of cheating Siraj-ud-Daulah and surrendered the Nawab's army against Robert Clive in the battlefield he became the Nawab of Bengal. His rule is regarded as the initiation of the rule of British in India.
- British retaliated by compelling Mir Jafar to renounce the throne in favour of Mir Qasim, because he wanted help of Dutch to set free from English.

### Mir Qasim

- He was the oldest Nawab among the successors of Alivardi Khan. He transferred his capital from Murshidabad to **Munger**. It is because that he wanted to be at a safe distance from Calcutta and interference of the company.
- He also sought to recognise and modernise his army on the European pattern. He also made plans for the expansion of his territory Northward at the expense of the Nepalese.

## Battle of Buxar

- The reluctance of Mir Qasim to share the power with company led to the conflict between him and Clive. Finally, Mir Qasim formed an alliance with Shuja-ud-Daula and Shah Alam II and their combined forces were defeated by English under the leadership of Hector Munro at the Battle of Buxar.
- It was a watershed event in modern Indian history as the treaty which ensured in Allahabad also known as **Factory of Allahabad** gave the English Company Diwani Rights of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa.

## Treaty of Allahabad

- The Treaty of Allahabad was concluded by **Clive** with **Shuja-ud-Daula** and the Mughal Emperor **Shah Alam II**, according to which, the British got the right of free trade in Awadh and they were allowed to keep a British Army at the expense of the Nawab of Awadh.
- Shah Alam II got the districts of Kore and Allahabad and was also given an annual pension of ₹ 26 lakh. In return of his favour, Shah Alam gave the Diwani of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa to the British.
- The company, by another treaty, also agreed to pay a sum of ₹ 53 lakh per annum in lieu of the right of Nizamat to the mirror Nawab. Thus, the company acquired both the Diwani as well as Nizamat rights over Bengal, Bihar and Orissa.

## Anglo-Mysore Conflict

- Mysore was earlier the part of *Vijayanagara empire*.
- However, after the decline of the Vijayanagara empire in 1565, **Wodeyar dynasty** founded its rule.
- The process of the usurpation of royal authority of the Wodeyar ruler **Chikka Krishnaraja** I started during AD 1731-34 when two brothers, Devaraja and Nanjaraja controlled real power in the state and became the *de-facto* rulers.

### First Anglo-Mysore War (AD 1767-1769)

- The rise of **Haider Ali** was seen as a source of danger to the British power in India.
- Haider's ambition to drive the British away from the Carnatic and finally from India, the British realisation of the threat posed to them by Haider led to the formation of **Tripartite Alliance** against him by British, the Nizam and the Marathas.
- He played a diplomatic game, bought the Marathas, allured the Nizam with territorial gains and together with the latter launched an attack on British.
- In the war, Haider registered brilliant victories over the British and finally appeared at the gates of Madras.
- The panic stricken Madras Government was forced them to sign a humiliating treaty (*Treaty of Madras*) on 4th April, 1767. The treaty provided for: a mutual restitution of each others territories except for Karur and its district, which were to be retained by the *Mysore* ruler.
- All the captured employees of the Madras Government were to be released by Haider Ali.
- The **Raja of Tanjore** was to be treated as a friend and ally of Haider.
- The trade privileges of Bombay Presidency and English factories were to be restored.

### Second Anglo-Mysore War (AD 1780-1784)

- The cause of Second Anglo-Mysore War was the mutual distrust and refusal of English to fulfil the terms of the defensive treaty with Haider when he was attacked by the Marathas in 1771. Further, Haider found French more helpful in meeting his military demands for gun, saltpetre and lead than the English and therefore established a close alliance with them.
- The outbreak of the American War of independence and French alliance with the American colonists made Warren Hastings extremely suspicious of Haider Ali's relation with the French.
- Under these conditions, the English attempt to capture Mahe, (a French port on the Malabar coast), which Haider considered to be under its protection, was a direct challenge to Haider Ali.

- Thus, Haider formed a joint front with the Nizam and the Marathas on July 1780, attacked Carnatic and captured Arcot, defeating an English Army under Colonel Baillie.
- Meanwhile the English detached the Marathas and Nizam from the side of Haider on November 1781, in the Battle at Porto Novo, Haider was defeated by Sir Eyre Coote.
- In the following year, Haider inflicted a humiliating defeat on the English army under Colonel Braithwaite, while the war was in progress, Haider Ali died.

### Third Anglo-Mysore War (AD 1789-1792)

- The growing power of Mysore and the success of Tipu in strengthening his position by undertaking various internal reforms made the British, the Marathas and the Nizam apprehensive.
- **Lord Cornwallis** worked on the anti-Tipu suspicion of the **Nizam** and the **Marathas** and arranged a **Triple Alliance** (AD 1790) with them against Tipu.
- Convinced of a possible war with the English Tipu sought the help of the Turks by sending an **embassy to Constantinople** in AD 1784 and again in AD 1785 and the French king in AD 1787. Meanwhile, the Tipu's differences arose with the Raja of Travancore because the Raja purchased Jai kottai and Cranganore from the Dutch in Cochin state.
- Tipu considered the Cochin state as his tributary state and thus, considered the act of the Travancore Raja as violation of his sovereign rights and therefore, attacked Travancore in April, 1790. The English seeing an opportunity, sided with the Raja of Travancore and declared the war against Tipu.
- Tipu defeated Major General **Medows** in 1790, after which Cornwallis himself assumed the command of the English Army.
- Cornwallis approached **Srirangapatna** with the help of Marathas and Nizam's troops. Tipu offered a tough fight, but finding it impossible to prolong the struggle, signed the Treaty of Srirangapatna on March 1792.

### Treaty of Srirangapatnam

The treaty resulted in the surrender of nearly half of Mysorean territory to the victorious allies (the British, the Marathas and the Nizam). Tipu was to cede half of his territories, which were to be shared among the three allies.

In addition, Tipu was to make immediate payment of ₹ 1.6 crore out of the total indemnity agreed upon (₹ 3.6 crore) while the remainder (₹ 2 crore) was to be given in three installments.

Tipu was also to order the release of all prisoners of war. Pending fulfilment of these terms, two of his sons were to be detained as (British) hostages.

### Fourth Anglo-Mysore War (AD 1798-1799)

- To enlist the support of France against the English in India, Tipu enlisted himself as a member of Jacobin Club. Tipu also planted a Tree of Liberty at Srirangapatna. He sent embassies to Arabia, Zaman Shah of Afghanistan, Constantinople, the directory at Versailles and the French in the Isle de France or Mauritius France seized Mauritius in AD 1715 and later renamed it Isle de France.
- Realising the hostile intentions of Tipu, Lord Wellesley, the new Governor-General of India, was determined to remove this threat once for all.
- The war against Tipu began in 1799 and he was defeated, first by Stuart at Sedaseer (5th March) and then by General Harris at Malvelley (27th March).
- Then, the English captured Srirangapatna on 4th May, 1799 and Tipu died defending his capital.

### Anglo-Maratha Conflict

- The sudden growth in the company's cotton trade after AD 1784 to China from Gujarat through Bombay motivated the British authorities to play a more interventionist role in the Deccan region. This ambition of English brought them in direct conflict with Maratha power.

### First Anglo-Maratha War (AD 1775-1782)

- The war began with the Treaty of Surat on AD 1775 and ended with the Treaty of Salbai on AD 1782.
- The political ambition of the company to extend their influence towards the Maratha territory and the internal conflict among the Maratha leaders played a significant role in this war.

### Second Anglo-Maratha War (AD 1803-1805)

- **Wellesley** who came to India as Governor-General in 1798, believed that the only possible way to safeguard India against the French danger was to establish a strong military control upon the Indian princes. In this context, he pursued his aggressive policy of interference in the internal affairs of the Marathas with the desire to impose **subsidiary alliance** on them.
- Though, the Peshwa accepted the subsidiary alliance of the British, but the other Maratha chiefs showed resentment against it. They considered the subsidiary treaty as humiliating and a threat upon their independent political existence and thus, declared war against the British.
- The internal conflicts among the Maratha chiefs and the attack upon Peshwa, **Baji Rao II** by Holkar, led to the signing of subsidiary Treaty at Bassein on AD 1802 by the Peshwa with the British.
- Bhonsle signed **Treaty of Deogaon** on 17th December, 1803 and Scindia signed Treaty of Surji-Anjangaon on 30th December, 1803.

- In AD 1804, Yashwant Rao Holkar made an attempt to form a coalition of Indian rulers to fight against the British. His attempt however proved to be unsuccessful and after being defeated he was forced to conclude with Sir George Barlow the Treaty of Rajpурghat on 25th December, 1805.
- Thus, the war finally resulted in the establishment of British influence on the Maratha empire.

### Third Anglo-Maratha War (AD 1817-1818)

- The third and the final phase of the struggle began with the coming of Lord Hastings as Governor-General in 1813, who reassumed the Aggressive Policy of Wellesley and was determined to proclaim the British Paramountcy in India.
- The Maratha Confederacy was dissolved and the Peshwa, Baji Rao II, was dethroned and pensioned off at Bithur near Kanpur.
- With Holkar a subsidiary treaty known as the *Treaty of Mandsaur* was signed.
- To satisfy the Maratha pride, Pratap Singh, a descendent of Shivaji was made the ruler of a small kingdom of *Satara* founded out of the Peshwa's lands.

### Anglo-Sikh Conflict

- After the defeat of Bengal, Mysore and Marathas the only major Indian power that still retained its independence was Punjab under Ranjit Singh, who came to power in AD 1792.
- He organised an alliance of *Sikh Misls* West of the Sutlej in 1798, was successful in repelling the invasion of the Afghan ruler *Zaman Shah*. This success made him a powerful ruler and in 1801, these *Misls* accepted him as the Maharaja of Punjab.
- Ranjit Singh was soon able to extend his power to the vast territories including Peshawar, Multan, Kashmir, Kangra and other hill states.
- The death of Ranjit Singh was followed by political instability in Punjab. The line of weak successors followed—Kharak Singh; Nao Nihal Singh; Sher Singh and Dalip Singh, which led the Sikh empire to its downfall. The Sikh elements in the Army known as *Khalsa* became supreme and began to interfere in the affairs of the state.
- There were group rivalries and Khalsa took the role of king makers. This provided to the British a chance to interfere in the affairs of Punjab and establish their control over the region. This was necessary for extending the British empire, in India, to its natural frontiers towards the North-West.

### First Anglo-Sikh War (AD 1845-1846)

- During the reign of Dalip Singh, in First Anglo-Sikh War, the English invaded Punjab occupied Lahore and dictated a peace treaty known as the *Treaty of Lahore* on 9th March 1846, which included the following:
  - The Sikhs to renounce all their claims to the territories lying to the South of the river Sutlej.
  - A war indemnity of ₹ 1.5 crore was imposed on Lahore Durbar. The Sikh Army was limited to 20000 infantry and 12000 cavalry. A British resident was posted at Lahore.

- Since, the *Lahore Durbar* was unable to pay the war indemnity, it agreed to transfer to the company the hill countries situated between the river Beas and Indus, including the province of Kashmir. *Gulab Singh*, who was instrumental in these negotiations, was given *Kashmir* by the company.

### Second Anglo-Sikh War (AD 1848-1849)

- The Sikhs felt humiliation with the settlement of Punjab after the First Sikh war. The Sikhs did not like the interference of the English resident in the internal affairs of Punjab. The British, on their part were anxious to occupy Punjab.
- Dalhousie, the new Governor-General, was a strong imperialist. He was simple looking for a pretext for the annexation of Punjab, which was provided by the *rebellion of Mulraj* (AD 1848), Governor of Multan, against the company.
- The English forces attacked Punjab (AD 1848) and as the result of this Sikhs were badly defeated.
- Punjab was annexed to the British dominion in March AD 1849. Raja Dalip Singh, the minor son of Ranjit Singh and his mother, Rani Jindan, who acted as his regent, were sent away to London on fixed annual pensions.

## Conflict with Neighbouring States

### Anglo-Nepal Relations

- In AD 1792, Colonel Kilpatrick was sent on a commercial mission to Kathmandu and captain Knox was posted as British resident in Kathmandu from AD 1802-04.

### Anglo-Nepal War (AD 1814-16)

- The main reason behind the war was the frequent raids by the Gorkhas in British territory and in May, AD 1814 the Gorkhas attacked three police stations of Butwal. Thus, Lord Hastings declared war against the Gorkhas. General Gardener won over Almora while General Ochterlony defeated the Gorkha leader Amar Singh Thapa and forced him to surrender the fort of Malaun.
- *Treaty of Sugauli* (1815) was signed but Gorkhas did not ratify it.
- This led to second campaign against Gorkhas in 1816 and General Ochterlony defeated the Gorkhas at the *Battle of Makwanpur*. Now, the Treaty of Sugauli (1816) was accepted by the Gorkhas. The English acquired the hill stations of Shimla, Mussoorie, Nainital, Almora, Ranikhet etc.

## Anglo-Burmese Wars

- English ambition of exploiting Burma commercially through the acquisition of political power brought them in conflict with Burma kingdom.

### First Anglo-Burmese War (1824-1826)

- Lord Amherst declared war against Burma and Maha Bandula, the Burmese general was defeated and killed in the *Battle of Donaben*.
- *Treaty of Yandaboo* (1826) was signed by which a British resident was stationed at Burmese capital.

### Second Anglo-Burmese War (AD 1852-1853)

- The main reason behind the conflict was the oppression of English merchants settled in Burma by Burmese officials at Rangoon.
- Lord Dalhousie declared second war against Burma. Martaban, Rangoon, Prome and Pegu was annexed.

### Third Anglo-Burmese War (1885)

- The Burmese King Thibaw allowed trade concessions to the French and imposed fine on English company and arrested its officials. On the command of Lord Dufferin, English army marched on Burma and occupied the capital city Mandalay. As a result, the King of Burma was imprisoned and the whole of Burma was declared as the part of British empire. In 1935, Burma was separated from India Freedom Movement of Burma reached a new height and under leadership of Aung San and Burma got independence on 4th January, 1948.

## Anglo-Afghan Wars

- English ambition of creating a buffer zone between English empire and advancing Russian empire took them to Afghanistan in search of political influence.

### First Anglo-Afghan War (1839-1842)

#### Causes

- Dost Mohammad asked for English help in order to win Peshawar from Ranjit Singh. Lord Auckland rejected his proposal. Dost Mohammad then accepted the Friendship of the French. Auckland sent an English mission under Alexander Burns which was in turn, rejected by Afghan Chief.

#### Events During the War

- Auckland signed a Tripartite Treaty (1838) with Shah Shuja (*Prince of Afghanistan*) and Ranjit Singh. English Army crossed the (*territories of Sind*) Violating Treaty (1832) and occupied Kandhar, Ghazni and Kabul.

#### Results

- Shah Shuja was not accepted as chief by the Afghans and was killed in 1842. Afghans rose in rebellion and killed Englishmen Burns, Charles, Sir William and Elphinstone. Thus, English were forced to sign a humiliating treaty and to recognise Dost Mohammed as the Amir of Afghanistan.

## Second Anglo-Afghan War (1878-1880)

#### Causes

- Sher Ali, the Afghan Chief rejected the English missions sent by Lord Lytton under Sir Lewis Pelly and Sir Neville Chamberlain but accepted the Russian mission led by Stolietoff.

#### Events During the War

- English attacked from three sides-Khyber pass, Kurram pass and Bolan pass. Sher Ali was defeated and died later on.

#### Results

- *Yakub Khan* signed the Treaty of Gandamak (1879) by which a British resident was posted at Kabul and the districts of *Kurram, Pisin and Sibi* were given to the English. But, very soon the *British Resident Major Cavagari* was murdered. The war restarted and General Roberts occupied Kabul. Abdur Rehman, was the new Amir of Afghanistan.

### Third Anglo-Afghan War (1919)

- In 1919 *Habibullah*, the Amir of Afghanistan was murdered and his son Amanullah tried to declare his dependence from British regency.
- He invaded the British territories on the instigation of the German agent but was defeated.

#### Treaty of Rawalpindi

- It was signed according to which Amirs were now free to pursue their policy within their territory and their annual subsidy was stopped.

## Anglo-Tibet Relations

- Tibet was an autonomous state situated beyond the Himalayas in North.
- It always remained under the control of Buddhist rulers who happened to be their spiritual leaders also.
- Warren Hastings was the first to send a commercial mission under George Bogle to *Toast Lama* in 1774-75.
- Tibetans invaded and repulsed from Sikkim in 1887, thereafter the boundary between India and Tibet was settled in 1890.
- Lord Curzon sent a mission under Colonel Young Husband in 1905 and on the refusal of Tibetans to meet him British Army forced them to sign a treaty.
- Dalai Lama signed the Lhasa treaty on 7th September, 1904. According to the treaty, the British controlled trade centres which were established.

# Self Check

# Build Your Confidence

- 1.** How did Portuguese firstly affect Indian trade and industry?

  - By forcing Gujarat and Calicut to abandon construction of ships or even armed rowing boats
  - By monopolising port-to-port trade on the Malabar coast and the trade from Indian to Persian coast
  - Both 'a' and 'b'
  - By dictating the prices of horses imported by native Indian powers after ousting Arabs

**2.** What was the occasion of handing over of Mumbai (Bombay) to Britishers by the Portuguese?

  - Freedom of Portuguese from the control of Spain
  - Marriage of Charles II with the Portuguese princess Catherine of Braganza
  - Crushing of Spanish Armada by British in 1588
  - The Treaty of Madrid in 1630

**3.** What made Jahangir to issue a farman in AD 1613 to the English to establish a factory at Surat?

  - Reconciliation between the English and Portuguese
  - A secret offer of naval help to the Mughal emperor to oust the Portuguese
  - A heavy dose of bribe to Nur Jahan
  - The defeat of Portuguese naval squadrons by the English

**4.** Which one of the factors given below did not help the moneylenders to exploit the cultivators under the British rule in India?

  - The new legal system and new land revenue policy introduced by the British
  - The introduction of transferability of land
  - The growing commercialisation of agriculture
  - Support of moneylending traditions, prevalent for a very long-time

**5.** The founder of French East India Company for trade in India was

|                    |                     |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| (a) Colbert        | (b) Francois Martin |
| (c) Francois Caron | (d) DeLaHaye        |

**6.** Where was the first Presidency of English East India Company in India?

|                      |                 |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| (a) Chennai (Madras) | (b) Masulipatam |
| (c) Surat            | (d) Hughli      |

**7.** Aurangzeb ordered the arrest of all Englishmen and the seizure of all English factories throughout his dominion, because

  - the English had refused to pay local duties in Bengal
  - the English had attacked the Mughal ships on the Western coast
  - the English were fortifying their trading stations
  - All of the above

**8.** Consider the following statements with reference to Pondicherry (now Puducherry). [IAS 2010]

  - The first European power to occupy Pondicherry were the Portuguese.
  - The second European power to occupy Pondicherry were the French.
  - The English never occupied Pondicherry.

**Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?**

|            |                  |
|------------|------------------|
| (a) Only 1 | (b) 2 and 3      |
| (c) Only 3 | (d) All of these |

**9.** How was the control of company in Bengal legitimised?

  - The imperial grant of the 'diwani' of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa by Shah Alam II
  - The Treaty with Mir Zafar after the Battle of Plassey in 1757
  - The Treaty with Mir Zafar after the Battle of Buxar in 1764
  - The Treaty of February, 1765 with Nizam-ud-Daula

**10.** With reference to the entry of European power into India, which one of the following statements is not correct? [IAS 2003]

  - The Portuguese captured Goa in 1499
  - The English opened their first factory in South India at Masulipatnam
  - In Eastern India, the English company opened its first factory in Orissa in 1633
  - Under the leadership of Duplex, French occupied Madras in 1746

**11.** In 1600, the Charter to the English East India company for monopoly of Eastern trade for 15 years was given by

|                       |
|-----------------------|
| (a) Queen Elizabeth I |
| (b) Queen Victoria    |
| (c) James I           |
| (d) Oliver Cromwell   |

**12.** Which one of the following pairs is not correctly matched?

|                                |
|--------------------------------|
| (a) Jahangir : William Hawkins |
| (b) Akbar : Sir Thomas Roe     |
| (c) Shah Jahan : Tavernier     |
| (d) Aurangzeb : Manucci        |

**13.** Among the following factories in Bengal, the one established by the Portuguese was [UPPCS 2004]

|                 |                |
|-----------------|----------------|
| (a) Kasim Bazar | (b) Chinsurah  |
| (c) Hughli      | (d) Shrirampur |

**14.** The ruler of which one of the following states was removed from power by the British on the pretext of misgovernance? [IAS 2007]

|            |            |
|------------|------------|
| (a) Awadh  | (b) Jhansi |
| (c) Nagpur | (d) Satara |



1. (b)      2. (b)      3. (d)      4. (d)      5. (a)      6. (c)      7. (d)      8. (a)      9. (d)      10. (a)  
11. (a)      12. (b)      13. (c)      14. (a)

# Chapter eighteen

# Tribal and Peasant Uprisings

*The tribal movements were isolated outbursts against local (though more or less similar) grievances, which were primarily economic in nature. The primary targets were local vested interests; British official agencies were drawn into conflict, generally because grave questions of law and order were involved.*

## Tribal Uprising

- The laws introduced by the British rulers were too sophisticated to suit the tribal customs and conventions. Greedy moneylenders, traders and land-grabbers penetrated into tribal areas and exploited the simple, illiterate people whom law and administration did not protest.
- Increasing official control of forest zones for revenue purposes seriously disturbed tribal economy. They lost opportunities of shifting cultivation. They lost customary rights of using forest land for grazing and using forest timber as fuel. They found themselves exposed to exploitation by forest contractors.
- Their traditional religious life was disintegrated by the spread of Christianity by European missionaries. The new religion also affected their social customs and habits of life. This happened particularly in Bihar and the Assam hills.
- The social, political, economic and cultural life of Indians with the help of enactment of law led to discontentment amongst the Indians in general and peasants in particular. Absence of redressal of the same precipitated into rebellion and movement.

## Important Uprisings in Eastern India

### Faqir and Sanyasi Rebellion

- As a result of continuous wars and famines, combined with British exploitation of the land and people, Bengal witnessed great economic distress and political unrest in the 2nd half of the 18th century.
- A large number of uprooted and homeless people joined Hindu or Muslim groups of religious mendicants, known as *Sanyasis* or *Faqirs*, who formed large communities and earned their livelihood from beggary. Sanyasis began taking forcible what they could no longer get voluntarily.
- By 1772, there was a great sanyasi rebellion encompassing a wide belt from Rangpur to Dakha. Under their brave leader Majnu Shah Faqir, the Sanyasis defeated a company of sepoys and killed the commander. The Sanyasi rebellion continued till the end of the century.

### Pagal Panthis Uprisings

- Pagal Panthi was a semi-religious sect. Its members came mostly from the primitive tribes, Hajong and Garo.
- The founder of this sect was a darvesh or a mendicant called *Karam Shah*, whose son and successor Tipu, motivated by religious and political aims, organised an uprising of the Garo and Hajong peasants.
- Tipu openly took up their cause against the oppression of the zamindars, who realised illegal cases from the peasants. He asked his followers not to pay rent above a specified minimum.

- In January 1825, he led a mob of his armed brigands and attacked the houses of the Zamindars of Sherpur.
- The Pagal Panthi Uprising continued for about 10 years (1825-35) and was finally suppressed after massive military operations against them.

### **Ahom Revolt (1828-1833)**

- **Area** Assam
- **Leader** Gomdhar Konwar
- **Causes** The British had pledged to withdraw from Assam after the First Burma War (1824-26), but they tried to incorporate Ahom territories in the company's dominion.
- Finally, the company gave upper Assam to Maharaja Purandar Singh Narendra and part of the kingdom was restored to the Assamese king.

### **Kol Mutiny (1831-32)**

- **Area** Ranchi, Singhbhum, Hazaribagh, Palamu, Western parts of Manbhumi.
- **Leader** Buddhu Bhagat
- **Causes** Transfer of land from Kol headmen (*Mundas*) to outsiders like Sikh and Muslim farmers.
- Military operations were undertaken to settle the mutiny.

### **Khasi Uprising (1829-1833)**

- **Area** Tribal area of Garo, Khasi and Jaintia hills in present Meghalaya.
- **Leader** Tirath Singh
- **Tribes** Khasi, Garo, Kham Pti, Singh pos involved.
- **Causes** The British wanted to built a road connecting Brahmaputra valley with Sylhet. This led to infiltration of foreign population in the area.
- English military force suppressed the revolt by 1833.

### **Santhal Rebellion (1855-1856)**

- The Santhal Rebellion of 1855-56, was marked by some of the worst features of elemental tribal passions and open denunciation of British rule. The rebellion, covering the districts of Birbhum, Singhbhum, Bankura, Hazaribagh, Bhagalpur and Munger in *Orissa* (*Odisha*) and *Bihar* was precipitated mainly by economic causes.
- The moneylenders and colonial administrators both exploited them. The *Diku* (*outsider*) merchants charged interest on loans, ranging from 50 to 500% exploited and cheated the tribals in many other ways, often grabbing their lands.
- The tribals turned against the British Government under the leadership of two Santhal brothers, *Siddhu* and *Kanhu*, more than ten thousand Santhals assembled in June, 1855 when a divine order was issued asking the Santhals to get out of the control of their oppressors and take possession of the country and set-up a government of their own.

- The rebels cut off the postal and railway communications between Bhagalpur and Rajmahal, proclaimed the end of the company's rule and commencement of the Santhal regime. They attacked the houses of moneylenders, zamindars, white planters, railway engineers and British officials.
- The open war with the British continued till February, 1856, when the rebel leaders were finally captured and the movement was put down with a great deal of repression.

### **Munda Uprising (1899 -1900)**

- The Ulgulan of Birsa Munda in the region South of Ranchi in 1899-1900 is the best known tribal rebellion. Feudal, zamindari or individual tenures was the key to the agrarian disorders that climaxed in the religious-political Movement of Birsa. In March, 1879, Mundas under the leadership claimed that *Chota Nagpur* belonged to them.
- The Mundas envisaged an ideal and just society which would be free from internal as well as European exploiters, women also participated in the movement.
- Birsa Munda was the son of a share-cropper who had received some education from the missionaries and then came under Vaishnava influence. His initial popularity was based on medicinal and healing powers, by which Birsa claimed to make his followers invulnerable.
- The rebels were defeated in a fight and Birsa died in jail. There was some belated relief in the *Chota Nagpur* Tenancy Act of 1908, with recognition to joint farming rights and ban on both begari or forced labour.

## **Some Other Important Uprisings**

### **Chaur Uprising (1766-1772, 1795, 1816)**

- **Area** Midnapore district. (*Bengal*)
- **Causes** Famine, enhanced land revenue and economic distress. *HO Rising* The HO and Munda tribesman of Chota Nagpur district took arms against the company in 1820-22 and again, in 1831, till the final settlement was made in 1837.

### **Ramosi Revolt (1822, 1825-1826)**

- In 1822, the Ramosis revolted in Satara under Chittur Singh to oppose heavy land revenue assessment and revenue collection methods. Famine and scarcity drove them to a rebellion in 1825-26, this time under Umaji. The Ramosis' uprising which continued for 3 years, was finally ended when people were given land grants and admitted in the ranks of the hill police.

### **Khond Uprising (1837- 56)**

- The Khonds lived in vast hill tracts stretching from Tamil Nadu to Bengal and covering central provinces. Their uprisings from 1837 to 1856, were directed against the British. the movement was led by *Chakra Bisoi* in the name of the Young Raja.

- The main issue was the attempt by the government to suppress human sacrifice (*Mariah*), introduction of new taxes by the British and the influx of Zamindars and Sahukars into their areas, which was causing the tribals untold misery.
- Chakra Bisoi disappeared in 1855, after which the movement petered out. Another important leader of revolt was *Radhakrishna Dandasena*.

### **Naikada Revolt**

- The Naikada forest tribes in *Madhya Pradesh* and *Gujarat*, launched revolts against British officers and Hindus with religious fervour and attacked police stations in 1868, in a bid to establish a *Dharma Raj* under their charismatic leaders.

### **Kharwar Uprising**

- The crushing of the Santhal rebellion was followed by the Kharwar uprising of the 1870's which preached monotheism and internal reform at first, but had begun to turn into a campaign against revenue settlement operations just before it was suppressed.

### **Koya Rebellion**

It occurred in 1879-80, in the Eastern Godavari tract of present day Andhra Pradesh and also affected some district in Orissa. The rebellion was led by Tomma Sora and reflected problems faced by tribals, like erosion of customary rights over forests, police exactions, exploitation by money lenders and new excise regulations restricting domestic production of paddy.

Sora was shot dead by the police and the movement collapsed, but only with the use of six regiments of the Madras infantry. In 1886, another uprising took place here. The rebels, led by Raja Anantayyar, formed themselves into a Ram Sandhu (*Ram's Army*) and appealed to the Maharaja of Jeypore to help them in throwing out the British.

### **Bhil Uprising**

- In Southern Rajasthan, the Bhils were stirred to action by a Reform Movement under Govind Guru, who was a bonded labourer. By 1913, it developed into a bid to set-up a *Bhil Raj*. The British were able to suppress them only after considerable resistance.

### **The Kittur Rebellion**

- The British prevented the adopted son of the Chief of Kittur (*in Karnataka*) from assuming power by taking over the administration. What resulted was the Kittur uprisings of 1924-29 led by chennamma, the widow of the chief. The rebels declared Kittur an independent state before being crushed by the British.

### **Rampa Rebellion**

- A unique example of tribal militancy came from the Rampa region North of Godavari which had witnessed various uprisings in the 19th century.
- Their grievances were against moneylenders and forest laws. The movement was led by an outsider, Alluri Sitarama Raju, claiming astrological and healing powers, who has become a folk hero in Andhra Pradesh.
- He was inspired by the Non-Cooperation Movement and admired Gandhi, though he considered violence necessary to win tribal goals. The revolt came to an end after the execution of Raju in May, 1924.

### **Movements by the Deposed Rulers and Zamindars**

- These movements were caused by the Aggressive Policy of Annexation by the British and the subsequent disturbances in the economy of the regions.

#### **First Polygar War (1799)**

- Leaders Kattabomma Nayak, Subramania Pillai and Soundra Pandian Nayak.

#### **Polygar Rebellions (Kurnool, 1799-1805)**

- Polygars were the offshoots of the Nayakara system prevalent in the Vijayanagara administration. The conflict was on the question of the collection of taxes, rather, who should collect it, the traditional classes or the company officials.

#### **Second Polygar War (1800-1801)**

- Also known as the *South Indian Rebellion*, the rebellion broke out when polygar armies under Gopala Nayak, Kerala Varma and Krishnappa Nayak bombed the British barracks in Coimbatore in 1800. The suppression was followed by signing of the Carnatic Treaty, 1801, where by the British assumed direct control over Tamil Nadu and the Polygar system was replaced by the Zamindari settlement.

#### **Velu Thampi (1765-1809)**

- The Diwan of Travancore (*Kerala*), Velu Thampi revolted in 1808-09 after the British tried to take away his Diwanship and forced the state to conform with the conditions of the Subsidiary Alliance system. He was the only head of a state to be hanged during the British rule.

#### **Ganjam Revolt (1835)**

- Rebellion led by Gumsur Zamindar, Dhananjaya Bhanja erupted in 1835, in Ganjam district of Orissa (*Odisha*).

### The Mysore Rebellion (1840-1841)

- A revolt was organised by Dhondji Wagh after Tipu Sultan's death in Mysore, with the battlefield against the British, the revolt subsided.

### Sawantwadi Revolt (1844)

- The revolt in 1844, was led by a Maratha chief, *Phond Sawant* of Sawantwadi with the support of other sardars. The rebels captured forts in fighting the British, but were finally forced to seek refuge in Goa. The rebellion came to an end with the capture of the rebels.

### The Gadkari Revolt (1844)

- Gadkaris were the hereditary servants of the Marathas who became most displeased with the British regime for its Arbitrary System of Land Revenue Collection. Many Gadkaris were forced to give up their service and mamlatdars were asked to oversee the lands. So, the Gadkaris rebelled in 1844 in Kolhapur. They cost the British much of material loss before they were finally subdued.

### Peasant Movements

| Movement                                  | Location                             | Leader  | Cause  |
|---|--------------------------------------|---|--|
| Pagal Panthis (1825-35)                   | Bengal                               | Karam Shah, Tipu Shah (Hajong and Garo tribes)  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Against hike rent in Bengal.</li> </ul>   |
| Indigo Revolt (1860)                      | Nadia district of Bengal             | Digambar Biswas, Bishnu Bishwas, Harish Chandra Mukherjee (editor of newspaper Hindu Patriot) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Peasants were forced to grow Indigo in their field by European factory owners.</li> <li><i>Dinbandhu Mitra</i> had written about this revolt in his play <i>Neel Darpan</i> (translated into English by Madhusudan Datta).</li> </ul> |
| Poona Sarvajanik Sabha (1870)             | Pune                                 | By MG Ranade  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To popularise the peasants legal right.</li> </ul>  |
| Pabna Agrarian Uprising (1873)            | Pabna district of Bengal             | Shah Chandra Roy, Shambhu Patel   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Against oppression of peasants by Zamindar.</li> <li>Bengal Tenancy Act, 1885 passed.</li> </ul>  |
| Ramosi Uprising (1877-87)                 | Parts of Andhra Pradesh, Maharashtra | Vasudev Balwant Phadke  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It was against the British failure to take up an anti-famine measure.</li> </ul>  |
| Bijolia Movement (1905, 1913, 1916, 1927) | Rajasthan                            | Sitaram Das, Vijay Pathik Singh   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The movement arose due to imposition of 86 different type of cases on peasants.</li> </ul>  |
| Champaran Satyagraha (1917)               | Bihar                                | Gandhiji, Dr Rajendra Prasad, Raj Kumar Shukla  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Against the Tinkathia System imposed by the European Indigo planters.</li> </ul>  |
| Kheda Satyagraha (1918)                   | Gujarat                              | Gandhiji and Vallabhbhai Patel  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Against ignored appeal for remission revenue in case of crop failure.</li> </ul>  |
| Uttar Pradesh Kisan Sabha (1918)          | Uttar Pradesh                        | Indra Narayan Dwivedi, Madan Mohan Malaviya   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To organise a stronger peasant movement in Uttar Pradesh.</li> </ul>  |
| Awadh Kisan Sabha (1920)                  | Oudh                                 | Jawaharlal Nehru, Baba Rama Chandra   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To organise peasants.</li> </ul>  |
| Moplah Rebellion (1921)                   | Malabar region, Kerala               | Sayyed Ali, Sayyid Fazl   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Against the oppression and exploitation of Muslim Moplah peasants by Hindu Zamindars (Jennis) and British Government.</li> </ul>  |
| Eka Movement (1921)                       | Awadh                                | Madari Parsi  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Higher extraction of rent.</li> </ul>   |
| Andhra Ryots Association (1928)           | Andhra Pradesh                       | NG Ranga  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Abolition of Zamindari.</li> </ul>  |
| All India Kisan Sabha (1936)              | —                                    | Swami Sahajananda   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Protection of peasants from economic exploitation.</li> </ul>   |
| Tebhaga Movement (1946)                   | Bengal                               | Communists  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Against zamindars and moneylenders.</li> </ul>  |
| Telangana Movement (1951)                 | Hyderabad                            | —   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Against moneylenders and officials of Nizam of Hyderabad.</li> </ul>  |

# Self Check

## Build Your Confidence

- 1.** Siddhu was associated with [WBPS 2008]  
(a) Santhal Rebellion      (b) Munda Rebellion  
(c) Kol Rebellion      (d) Sanyasi Rebellion
- 2.** Consider the following statements regarding Munda tribal uprising.  
1. The Munda rebels were defeated in a fight and Birsa died in Jail.  
2. There was some belated relief in the chhotanagpur Tenacious Act of 1917 with recognition to joint farming rights and ban on both begain as forced labour.
- Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?*
- (a) Only1      (b) Only 2  
(c) Both 1 & 2      (d) Neither 1 nor 2
- 3.** Which British commander was defeated by the Santhals in 1855? [BPSC 2005]  
(a) Captain Nek Feville      (b) Lt Bastain  
(c) Major Burrough      (d) Colonel White
- 4.** Koya Movement was organised by  
(a) Guru Ram Das      (b) Guru Nanak  
(c) Tompa Soura      (d) Guru Gobind Singh
- 5.** The Rebellion started in 1816 and continued till 1832 was  
(a) Santhal Uprisings      (b) Kol Uprisings  
(c) Kutch Uprisings      (d) None of these
- 6.** Who published the Journal 'Din bandhu'?  
(a) NM Lokhandey      (b) Sasipada Banerjee  
(c) BP Wadia      (d) Lala Lajpat Rai
- 7.** The Gadkari Uprisings (1844-45) took place in  
(a) Punjab      (b) Bengal  
(c) Maharashtra      (d) Andhra Pradesh
- 8.** Kol Revolt of 1831-32 was led by [JPSC 2003]  
(a) Buddhu Bhagat      (b) Surga  
(c) Singrai      (d) Jatra Bhagat
- 9.** The Gadkari Uprising of 1844-45 was directed against the  
(a) Money lender      (b) British Government  
(c) Maharaja of Kolhapur      (d) Both 'a' and 'b'
- 10.** The demand for the Tebhaga Peasant Movement in Bengal was for [IAS 2013]  
(a) the reduction of the share landlords from one-half of the crop to one-third  
(b) the grant of ownership of land to peasants as they were the actual cultivators of the land  
(c) the uprooting of Zamindari System and the end of serfdom  
(d) writing off all peasant debts
- 11.** The rebellions of the Moplah peasants of malabar, during 1836 to 1854 were directed against the oppression by;
- 12.** Muslim Faqirs form their headquarters in the Nepal Terai wandered about the country levying contributions and defying the authority of the British government. Who of the following was their founder leader?  
(a) Chirag Ali Shah      (b) majnum Shah  
(c) Dadu Mian      (d) Titu Mian
- 13.** The play Neel Darpan (1860) of the famous Bengali writer Dinbandu Mitra portrays the oppression of the peasants by  
(a) the artisans      (b) the handloom weavers  
(c) the common man      (d) the Indigo planters
- 14.** What was the cause of the rebellion of the princes and the nobility of the old Ahom court in Assam in 1820s?  
(a) The failure of the British to withdraw and restore Ahom government on the conclusion of the Burmese war  
(b) The deposition of Gandhar Konwar, their popular ruler, by the British  
(c) The British intervention in the internal court politics of the Ahoms  
(d) The alarming rise in the activities of Christian missionaries
- 15.** Out of the numerous uprisings in Maharashtra, which of the following is popularly known as the Gadkari Revolt?  
(a) The insurrection of Narsappa for the restoration of the deposed Raja Pratap Singh of Satara (1841)  
(b) The rising organised by Dadaji Daulatrao Ghorpade in the interests of Kolhapur (1829)  
(c) The rising of the hereditary servants attached of forts, when threatened with disbandment by Dj Krishna Pandit, Minister of Kolhapur  
(d) The rising of Sawantwadi under the leadership of Phond Sawant (1844)
- 16.** Which of the following is known as Ramosi risings?  
(a) The revolt of the peasants and the hill tribes of the Maratha country against the British rule under the leadership of Umaji Naik (1827-28)  
(b) The revolt of ryots to Mysore against the Raja and the Zamindars (1831)  
(c) The revolt of the waghers of Okhamandal against the British rule  
(d) The revolt of the peasants and the Zamindars against the oppressive rule of colonel Hannay in Awadh (1778)
- 17.** The Ahrar Movement  
(a) was moved by loyalist politics of the Aligarh school and big nawab and zamindars  
(b) dislinked the loyalist politics of the Aligarh school and big nawab and zamindars  
(c) advocated participation in the Militant National Movement  
(d) All of the above



1. (a)      2. (a)      3. (c)      4. (c)      5. (b)  
11. (c)      12. (b)      13. (d)      14. (a)      15. (c)
6. (a)      7. (c)      8. (a)      9. (d)      10. (a)  
16. (a)      17. (d)

# Chapter nineteen

## Governor-Generals and Viceroy

*Role of Governor-Generals and Viceroys is indurable in the course of Modern Indian History. Infact, the rise and growth of India as a nation would be traced in the vision and works of these individuals. Though their works and contributions are directed to serve their mother nation, yet their role in making of Modern Indian can't be undermined.*

### Governor-Generals of Bengal

#### Warren Hastings (1772-1785)

- He became Governor of Bengal in 1772 and became Governor-General of Bengal in 1773 through the Regulating Act of 1773.
- Termination of dual administration in Bengal (1772).
- Introduced the Quinquennial settlement of land revenue in 1772 by the method of farming out estates to the highest bidder.
- Creation of Board of Revenue (1772). Created Diwani and Faujdari Adalat at the district level and Sadar Diwani and Nizamat Adalat. Codified Hindu and Muslim law known as **Father of Judicial Reforms in India**.
- To remove the possible clash between the Supreme Court and Sadar Diwani Adalat, he appointed Elijah **Impey**, the Chief Justice of Supreme Court, as Superintendent of Sadar Diwani Adalat.
- Stopped annual allowances of ₹ 26 lakh to Mughal Emperor Shah Alam II. Took away Allahabad and Kara from him and sold it to the Nawab of Awadh.
- Regulating Act 1773, appointed him the first Governor-General alongwith four councillors—Clavering, Francis, Monson and Barwell.

- Supreme Court was established at Calcutta in 1774. Impey was appointed as the first Chief Justice of the Supreme Court. He also established Calcutta Madarsa or Aliya Madarsa in 1781 for study of Islamic law.
- The Rohilla War (1774) and annexation of Rohilkhand by the Nawab of Oudh with help of the British.
- Trial of Nand Kumar and his judicial murder (1775).
- Chait Singh affair (1778) Chait Singh was the Raja of Banaras.
- He was the only Governor-General against whom impeachment proceeding were proceeded.
- Quinquennial settlement abandoned in 1777 and annual settlement of land revenue on the basis of open auction to the highest bidder was started.
- Foundation of Asiatic Society of Bengal by Hastings and Sir William Jones (1784). He was conservator of Asiatic Society and helped in translation of (*Abhigyan Shakuntalam*) book by Kalidas and (*Gita Govinda*) book of Jaideva into English.

#### Lord Cornwallis (1786-1793)

- Europeanisation of administrative services, introduction of civil services and reforms to purify and improve administration. Cornwallis is called the Father of Civil Service in India.
- The Police system was introduced. Sovereignty of law and all the official will be responsible to the courts.
- Introduction of the permanent revenue settlement or the Zamindari system in Bengal and Bihar (1793).

- Reform of the judiciary (1793) setting-up courts at different levels and separation of revenue administration from judicial administration.
- The District Faujdari Adalats presided over by Indian judges abolished and in their place four circuit courts were established, presided over by the European covenanted servants.

### Cornwallis Code

Cornwallis Code was introduced in 1793 with following features. It was based on the concept of separation of powers. The Collector was the head of the revenue administration and divested him of all the judicial and magisterial powers. District judge was appointed as the head of the judiciary at the district level. A gradation of civil courts was set-up. The distinction between revenue and civil cases abolished.

### Sir John Shore (1793-1798)

- As the President of the board of revenue he played an important role in the introduction of the Permanent Settlement (1793).
- Charter Act of 1793 came into force.
- Battle of Kharda took place between the Nizam and the Marathas (1795).
- A regulation prohibiting female infanticide was passed in 1795.

### Lord Wellesley (1798-1805)

- Called Himself as Tiger of Bengal. Vigorously applied the policy of Subsidiary Alliance to achieve British Paramountcy in India. (Dupleix was first to start the subsidiary alliance).
- Fourth Anglo-Mysore War (1799). The war resulted in the defeat and death of Tipu and the annexation of many parts of Mysore.
- Wellesley passes a regulation for controlling the press. Christian missionaries established a printing press at Serampore. Foundation of Fort Williams College. Sir John Gilchrist was appointed as head of Hindustani Language Department.
- Wellesley took the administration of Tanjore (25th October, 1799), Surat (March 1800) and Carnatic (31st July, 1801).
- Subsidiary Treaty of Bassein (1802) and the Second Anglo-Maratha War (1803-05). It resulted in the defeat of the Sindhia, the Bhonsle and the Holkar.
- Formation of the Madras Presidency after the annexation of the kingdoms of Tanjore and Carnatic. Under his energetic leadership Lord Lake captured Delhi and Agra in 1803 and took the emperor under the company's protection.

### Subsidiary Alliances

| Year | Ruler                     |
|------|---------------------------|
| 1798 | Nizam of Hyderabad        |
| 1799 | Mysore Tanjore            |
| 1801 | The Nawab of Oudh         |
| 1801 | The Peshwa                |
| 1803 | The Bhonsle Raja of Berar |
| 1804 | The Scindia               |

### Sir George Barlow (Officiation) (1805-1807)

- Vellore Mutiny (1806), 2nd Anglo-Maratha War ended. Slave trade abolished in the British Empire in 1807.

### Lord Minto I (1807-1813)

- Treaty of Amritsar with Ranjit Singh (1809), Rebellion in Travancore (Kerala).

### Lord Hastings (1813-1823)

- Anglo-Nepal War (1814-1816) The Gorkhas accepted the Treaty of Sagauli in March 1816. Due to his success in this war, he was made Marquess of Hastings (1816).
- Third Maratha War (1817-1818) Maratha power was finally crushed. Abolition of Peshwaship and annexation of all his territories and creation of Bombay Presidency (1818).
- Introduction of the Ryotwari Settlement in Madras Presidency by Governor Thomas Munro (1820).
- Bengal Tenancy Act, 1822.
- First coffee plantation was done in 1823 at Fort Gloster (*Benga*). Similarly, first tea plantation was discovered in Assam with the help of Andrew Charlton and Robert Bruce.

### Lord Amherst (1823-1828)

- The First Burmese War (1824-1826)
- Barrackpore Mutiny (1824)
- Capture of Bharatpur (1826)

## Governor-Generals of India

### Lord William Bentinck (1828-1835)

- Suppression of child sacrifices and infanticide, although it had been declared illegal by the Bengal Regulation XXI of 1795 and Regulation III of 1804.
- In 1829-1837, suppression of Thugi system. William Sleeman captured more than 1500 thugs in Meerut.
- In 1829, Sati system was abolished and Khasis revolted. Charter Act of 1833.
- Deposition of Raja of Mysore and annexation of his territories (1831). Annexation of Cachar and Jaintia (1832). Annexation of Coorg (1834).
- Educational reforms on the basis of Macaulay's Minute (1835) and introduction of English as the official language and the medium of instruction in India.
- He established the first Medical College in Calcutta.

## Sir Charles Metcalfe (Officiation)

(1835-1836)

- Passed education resolution proposed by Macaulay. Abolition of press restrictions known as **liberator of Indian Press**.

## Lord Auckland (1836-1842)

- In 1839, Lord Auckland has started construction of Grand Trunk (GT) road from Calcutta to Delhi.
- Deposition and deportation of the Raja of Satara.
- First Afghan War started (1836-1842). Disaster of British in the war and recall of Auckland.
- In 1838, Tripartite Treaty between Shah Shuja, Ranjit Singh and the British.

## Lord Ellenborough (1842-1844)

- Slavery abolished (1843).
- Conquest and annexation of Sind (1843) by Charles Napier.

## Lord Hardinge I (1844-1848)

- In 1845, the Danish possession sold to the English.
- 1845-46 the First Anglo-Sikh War and the Treaty of Lahore (1846).
- Prohibition of female infanticide and suppression of the practice of human sacrifice among the Khonds of central India. In 1846, the rebellion of Khonds took place .

## Lord Dalhousie (1848-1856)

- Lord Dalhousie's policy mainly focussed on seizure of different regions of India.
- Second Sikh War (1848-49) and annexation of Punjab (1849).
- Second Anglo-Burmese War and annexation of lower Burma or Pegu (1852). Dalhousie can be regarded as the father of the Electric Telegraph in India. O'Shaughnessy was appointed the Superintendent of the Telegraph Department in 1852. First telegraph line from Calcutta to Agra. Charter Act of 1853.
- In 1853, a new treaty was forced on the Nizam of Hyderabad compelling him to cede Berar to Company.
- Railway minute of 1853. The first railway line connecting Bombay and Thane was laid in 1853.
- In 1853, recruitment of the Covenanted Civil Service by competitive examination.
- Introduction of Doctrine of Lapse and annexation of Satara (1848), Jaitpur (1849), Sambhalpur (1849), Baghat (1850), Udaipur (1852), Jhansi (1853) and Nagpur (1854).
- In the educational sphere an important development was Charles Wood, (President of the Board Control) dispatch of 1854 and British assumption of the responsibility of educating the masses. Opening of Anglo-vernacular schools and Government colleges. JED Bethune opened a girls school in Calcutta in 1849.

- A new Post Office Act was passed in 1854, postage stamps were issued for the first-time. In 1856, Oudh was annexed on the pretext of the misgovernment. Bengal was placed under the charge of Lt Governor.

- A separate Public Works Department (PWD) was established in every province. Work on the Grand Trunk (GT) road was started. Ganges canal declared open (1854).

- Widow Re-marriage Act of 1856. In 1855-56, Santhal insurrection took place.

- First Engineering College, Thomson College for Civil Engineering was established at Roorkee.

## Viceroys of India

### Lord Canning (1856-1862)

- Establishment of universities in the Presidencies of Calcutta, Madras and Bombay in 1857.
- Outbreak of 1857 Mutiny.
- Last Governor-General after 1858 Governor-General came to be known as Viceroy.
- Queen Victoria's proclamation and the Government of India Act of 1858. It ended the rule of East India Company. Transfer of control from East India Company to crown.
- Enactment of Indian Penal Code.
- Withdrawal of Doctrine of Lapse.
- In 1861, Indian Council Act and enactment of Code of Criminal Procedure.
- Income tax was introduced with a uniform tariff of 10% apart from convertible paper currency.
- In 1861, the enactment of the Indian High Courts Act.

### Lord Elgin I (1862-1863)

- Suppressed Wahabi Movement.
- Due to his sudden death in 1862. The administration was carried on by Sir Napier and Sir Denison from 1862 to 1864.

### Sir John Lawrence (1864-1869)

- War with Bhutan in 1865.
- Indo-European telegraph from Karachi, Persia and Turkey in 1865.
- Masterly Inactivity Policy was followed i.e. policy of non-intervention with Afghanistan.
- Establishment of High Courts at Calcutta, Bombay and Madras in 1865.
- In 1868, the Punjab Tenancy Act, known as **Saviour of Punjab** and annual grant of 6 lakh of rupees to Sher Ali, Amir of Afghanistan and railway opened from Ambala to Delhi.

### **Lord Mayo (1869-1872)**

- Beginning of the system of state railways.
- Establishment of colleges for the education and political training of the Indian princes. Rajkot College in Kathiawar and the Mayo College at Ajmer.
- Organisation of statistical survey of India under W Hunter (first census in 1871) and establishment of department of agriculture and commerce.
- Initiated the process of financial decentralisation in India. In 1870, he took first-step in the direction of separation of central and provincial finances and in 1872, a convict in the Andamans assassinated Mayo. The only Viceroy to be murdered in office.

### **Lord Northbrook (1872-1876)**

- In 1872, Kuka Revolt took place in Punjab under Bhagat Jawahar Mal. Visit of Prince of Wales (later Edward VII) in 1875.

### **Lord Lytton (1876-1880)**

- The British Parliament passed the Royal Titles Act, 1876 investing Queen Victoria with the title of *Kaiser-i-Hind* or *Queen Empress of India*. Imperial Durbar at Delhi in 1877.
- Vernacular Press and Arms Act, 1878, Dramatic Performances Act, 1876. These were the repressive measures of Lytton against the rising wave of Indian nationalism.
- In 1878, appointment of the first Famine Commission under Sir Richard Strachey, the finance member of the Viceroy council.
- Proposed the plan of Statutory Civil Services in 1878-79 and lowered the maximum age limit for civil services from 19 to 21 Years.
- Second Anglo-Afghan War in 1878-80 and fight of Sher Ali.

### **Lord Ripon (1880-1884)**

- Repealed the Vernacular Press Act, 1882. First Factory Act, 1881
- Second census took place in 1881. The population estimated at 254 million.
- Continued the process of Financial Decentralisation. Division of the finances of the centre in 1882.
- Introduction of Local Self-Government in 1882, called **Father of Local Self-Government**.
- Appointed Hunter Commission in 1882 to review the education. In 1883, Famine code formulated.

### **Lord Dufferin (1884-1888)**

- In 1885, two Acts passed (a) Bengal Tenancy Act and (b) Bengal Local Self-Government Act.
- **Third Anglo-Burmese War** (1885-86). King Thibow of Burma was deposed to Ratnagiri fort (*Maharashtra*).
- In 1886, Upper Burma was annexed and delimitation of Afghan Northern boundary took place.
- Formation of Indian National Congress. Aitchison Committee was constituted.

### **Lord Lansdowne (1888-1894)**

- In 1891, second Factory Act was passed.
- In 1892, the Indian Council's Act passed.
- Division of the Civil Services into imperial, provincial and subordinate.
- Appointment of Durand Commission in 1893. It defined the boundary, known as Durand Line, between British India and Afghanistan.
- Age of Consent Bill (1891), which increased the marriageable age, with efforts of social reformer Behramji Malabari.

### **Lord Elgin II (1894-1898)**

- In 1896, famine took place all over India. Lyall Commission was appointed after famine.

### **Lord Curzon (1899-1905)**

- Calcutta Corporation Act, 1899.
- The Indian Coinage and Paper Currency Act, 1899.
- Punjab Land Alienation Act, 1901.
- In 1901, a commission was appointed under the Chairmanship of Sir Colin Scott Moncrieff to investigate into the whole question of irrigation. The work on Jhelum canal was completed.
- A Famine Commission was appointed under the Chairmanship of Sir Antony MacDonnell.
- Appointment of Police Commission (1902) under Sir Andrew Frazer, to review the Police administration and suggest reforms.
- Appointed a commission under **Sir Thomas Raleigh** in 1902 to suggest reforms regarding Universities. On its recommendation the Indian Universities Act, 1904 was passed.
- Ancient Monument Preservation Act, 1904. Implemented the Co-operative Credit Societies Act, 1904.
- In 1904, Colonel Young husband expedition sent against Tibet.
- **Partition of Bengal** 1905 was declared.
- Imperial Agricultural Department was set-up. Establishment of an agriculture research institute at Pusa in Samastipur, Bihar.
- A new department of commerce and industry was established.
- Resigned from his office because of his controversy with Kitchner (August 1905). The controversy was popularly known as **Curzon Kitchner** controversy over defence budget.

## Lord Minto II (1905-1910)

- On 16th October 1906 Partition of Bengal came into force. It gave birth to Anti-Partition and Swadeshi Movement.
- In October 1906 George Arundel Committee on political reforms submitted its report.
- In 1906 Lord Minto received the Muslim delegation headed by Aga Khan. Foundation of Muslim League (1906).
- Surat Session and split in Congress (1907).
- On 8th June, 1908, two acts passed (a) Explosives Substance Act passed and (b) Newspaper (*Incitement of Offences*) Act,
- Morley Minto reforms or the Indian Council Act of 1909.
- In 1910, Press Act was passed.

## Lord Hardinge II (1910-1916)

- Partition of Bengal annulled. Capital shifted to Delhi. Delhi Darbar on 12th December, 1911.
- On 23rd December, 1911 bomb thrown on Lord Hardinge.
- In 1912, Islington Commission on Civil Services constituted.
- In 1914, Forest Research Institute and College opened at Dehradun.
- In 1916, Sadler Committee on Universities appointed.

## Lord Chelmsford (1916-1921)

- Gandhi returned from South Africa. Foundation of Sabarmati Ashram (1916) with the help of Ambalal Sarabhai. Satyagraha at Champaran (1917), Ahmedabad (1918) and Khaira (1918).
- September, 1916, Home Rule League was formally inaugurated by Besant.
- Lucknow Session and the reunion of Congress (1916).
- Lucknow Pact between the Congress and the League (1916).
- Foundation of first Women's University at Poona (1916) by Maharsi Karve.
- July 1917 Austen Chamberlain resigns and succeeded by Montague as Secretary of State for India. August declaration by Montague (1917). Montford reforms or the Government of India Act of 1919.
- Sadler Commission on Education in 1917.
- Appointment of SP Sinha as the Lieutenant Governor of Bihar.
- On 10th November, Rowlatt (*Sedition*) Committee appointed and submitted its report in April 1918.
- Lahore High Court founded in 1919.
- Rowlatt Act** (March 1919) and the **Jallianwala Bagh Massacre** (13th April, 1919).
- Formation of Khilafat Committee and the launching of Khilafat Movement (1919-20).
- In 1920, Aligarh Muslim University was founded .
- In 1921, Shore Committee appointed to prepare a scheme for the complete Indianisation of the officers in the Indian army.

## Lord Reading (1921-1926)

- Moplah rebellion in Kerala (1921).
- Chauri Chaura incident (5th February, 1922) and the withdrawal of NCM by Gandhi.
- Repeal of Press Act of 1910 and the Rowlatt Act of 1919.
- Resolution passed for the holding of simultaneous examination for ICS in England and India from 1923.
- In 1924, Lee Commission on civil services submitted its report.
- On June 1925, Indian Sandhurst (also known as **Skeen**) Committee was appointed on the employment of Indians in the army.
- On 22nd August, 1925, VJ Patel elected the first Indian President of the Legislative Assembly.

## Lord Irwin (1926-1931)

- Popularly known as **Christian Viceroy**.
- In 1926, Indian school of mines opened at Dhanbad.
- Appointment of the **Simon Commission** (November 1927).
- Royal Commission on Agriculture was constituted in 1927.
- Appointment of the Harcourt Butler Indian States Commission in November 1927, to recommend the measures for the establishment of better relations between the Indian States and the Central Government.
- Convening of the All India States People Conference in December, 1927 by the states people.
- In 1929, Imperial Council of Agricultural Research set-up and Hartog Committee was appointed to give its report on the growth of education in British India and potentialities if its further progress.
- 31st October, 1929, Lord Irwin announced that the goal of the British policy was the attainment of dominion status by India. This announcement also known as **Deepavali Declaration**.
- 12th March, 1930, Gandhi started his **Dandi March**.
- First Round Table Conference (RTC) inaugurated by George V and continued upto 19th January, 1931.

## Lord Willington (1931-1936)

- 1st December, 1931, **Ramsay Mc Donald** (British PM) announces the decision to constitute NWFP into a Governor's province and Sindh was made a separate province.
- Participation of Gandhi in the Second Round Table Conference.

- Ramsay McDonald announced Communal Award. Gandhi's fast unto death in the Yerawada Prison.
- Third Round Table Conference took place during his region.
- Foundation of Congress Socialist Party by Acharya Narendra Dev and Jai Prakash Narayan (1934).
- Government of India Act 1935.
- Separation of Burma from India (1935).
- Formation of All India Kisan Sabha in (1936).

### **Lord Linlithgow (1936 -1944)**

- Formation of the Congress Ministries in majority of the Provinces (1937).
- October 1937, Gandhi formulated Wardha Educational Scheme.
- Resignation of the Congress Ministries after the outbreak of World War II (1939). Resignation of the Congress Ministries as the Deliverance Day.
- August offer by Viceroy (1940), Congress rejected August offer.
- 7th August, 1942 Congress Session started in Bombay. Passing of the Quit India Resolution (8th August, 1942) and the launching of Quit India Movement started.

### **Lord Wavell (1944-1947)**

- 25th June, 1945 Simla Conference to discuss Wavell plan begins.
- End of the World War II (1945).
- 28th January, 1946 Wavell announces Government's intention to set-up an Executive Council of political leaders.
- 18th February 1946 Mutiny of the Indian naval ratings in Bombay. INA trials begins (1946).

- 15th March, 1946 Attlee announces the Cabinet Mission; Cabinet Mission, under Pethick Lawrence, Stafford Cripps and AV Alexander, arrives in Delhi on 24th March, 1946.
- 6th August, 1946 Wavell invites Nehru to form an Interim Government.
- 16th August, 1946 Muslim League begins the 'Direct Action Day'.
- Formation of interim government by the Congress (September 1946). League joined in October 1946.
- 20th February, 1947 Attlee announces end of British rule in India.

### **Lord Mountbatten (1947-1948)**

- Sworn in as Viceroy on 24th March, 1947.
- 2nd June, 1947 Mountbatten plan was announced.
- 3rd June, 1947 the plan to partition India announced.
- 4th June, 1947 Mountbatten announces transfer of power on 15th August.
- 4th July, 1947 India Independence Bill was introduced in the House of Commons.
- 6th July, referendum took place in NWFP, Boycotted by Abdul Ghaffar Khan.
- On 15th August, 1947 Indian Independence.
- Two Boundary Commission were set-up for Bengal and Punjab under Cyril Radcliffe.

### **C Rajagopalachari (1948 -1950)**

- The last Governor-General of free India.
- The only Indian Governor-General, remained in office till January 1950.

# Self Check

# Build Your Confidence

**1.** Match the following

| <i>List I<br/>(Governors of Bengal)</i> | <i>List II<br/>(Associated Events)</i>                  |
|---|---|
| A. Robert Clive                         | 1. Abolished dual Government of Bengal (1772)           |
| B. Vanisttart                           | 2. Bengal Famine (1770)                                 |
| C. Cartier                              | 3. Battle of Buxar (1764)                               |
| D. Warren Hastings                      | 4. Established dual Government in Bengal from (1765-72) |



3. Which of the following statement(s) about Warren Hastings is/are correct?

  1. He was the last Governor of Bengal.
  2. He wrote introduction to the first English translation of 'Gita' by Charles Wilkins.
  3. He started Diwani and Faujdari Adalats at the district level and Sadar Diwani and Nizamat Adalats (*appellate courts*) at Calcutta.

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

- 4.** Consider the following statements and mark the correct option.

  1. Lord Irwin was popularly known as Christian Viceroy.
  2. A separate State of Bihar and Orissa was created during the Governorship of Lord Hardinge.
  3. During Lord Wellington's tenure Communal award was propagated in August 1932.

**Which of the statements(s) given above is/are correct?**

(a) 1 and 3      (b) Only 1      (c) 1 and 2      (d) All of these

- 5.** Which one of the following pair is correctly matched?  
[IAS 2002]

- (a) Warren Hastings : The Battle of Plassey
  - (b) Lord Cornwallis : The Permanent Settlement of Bengal
  - (c) Lord Wellesley : The Prohibition of Sati
  - (d) Lord Dalhousie : Local Self-Government

6. Which of the following statements about Lord Dalhousie is correct?

  - (a) He abolished titles and pensions and passed Widow Re-marriage Act
  - (b) He recommended the Thromsonian System of Vernacular education for whole of the North Western provinces
  - (c) An engineering college was established at Roorkee during his tenure
  - (d) All of the above



1. (b)      2. (d)      3. (d)      4. (d)      5. (b)      6. (d)      7. (c)      8. (b)      9. (d)      10. (b)  
11. (c)      12. (b)      13. (b)

7. Who among the following Governor-Generals created the Covenanted Civil Service of India which later came to be known as the Indian Civil Service? [IAS 2010]

- (a) Warren Hastings      (b) Wellesley  
(c) Cornwallis            (d) William Bentinck

- 8.** Consider the following statements

1. Warren Hastings was the first Governor General, who established a regular Police force in India on the British pattern.
  2. A Supreme court was established at Calcutta by the Regulating Act, 1773.
  3. The Indian penal code came into effect in the year 1860.

**Which of the statements given above are correct?**

(a) 1 and 2    (b) 2 and 3    (c) 1 and 3    (d) All of these

9. At a time when empires in Europe were crumbling before the might of Napoleon, which one of the following Governor- Generals kept the British flag flying high in India? [IAS 1999]

- (a) Warren Hastings      (b) Lord Cornwallis  
(c) Lord Wellesley      (d) Lord Hastings

- 10.** Who among the following Governor-Generals formed the Triple Alliance against Tipu Sultan? [IAS 2012]  
(a) Warren Hastings      (b) Lord Cornwallis

- (a) Warren Hastings      (b) Lord Cornwallis  
(c) Lord Wellesley      (d) Lord William Bentinck

11. Match the following Lord William Bentinck

| <i>List I</i><br>(Governor-General) | <i>List II</i><br>(Important Policy) |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| A. Lord Cornwallis                  | 1. Partition of Bengal               |
| B. Lord Wellesley                   | 2. Doctrine of Lapse                 |
| C. Lord Dalhousie                   | 3. Permanent Settlement              |
| D. Lord Curzon                      | 4. Subsidiary Alliance               |

- Codes

|     |   |   |   |   |  |     |   |   |   |   |
|-----|---|---|---|---|--|-----|---|---|---|---|
| (a) | A | B | C | D |  | A   | B | C | D |   |
|     | 3 | 4 | 2 | 1 |  | (b) | 1 | 2 | 4 | 3 |
| (c) | 3 | 2 | 4 | 1 |  | (d) | 1 | 4 | 2 | 3 |

- 12.** Consider the following statements about main features of the Government of India Act, 1935. [IAS 2014]

1. Abolition of dyarchy in the Governor's provinces.
  2. Power of governors to veto legislative action and to legislate on their owners.

- ### 3. Abolition of the principle of communal representation



- 13.** Which one of the following is not correct about the subsidiary Alliance?

- (a) It was formulated by Wellesley.
  - (b) British army was posted in the subsidiary state.
  - (c) It did not recognise an adopted heir to a subsidiary state.
  - (d) A British resident was posted in the subsidiary state.

# Chapter twenty

# Development of Modern Education and Press

*Modern education and development of press and education side evolved during the British rule in India.*

*Modern education came with modern political, social and economic thoughts and these thoughts were propagated through the nationalist press. Some half-hearted initiatives were taken by British Government of India for the development of education, but many full-hearted obstacles were placed in the way of evolution of independent press by same government.*

## Development of Education

- The traditional schools of learning in India suffered under the impact of colonial expansion. For one, the political tumult under the British regime could hardly foster concern on intellectual pursuits and secondly, the public endowments to these schools were not forthcoming any more. But later, plea to promote learning by the Indian officers of the company and others finally bore fruit.
- The **Calcutta Madarsa** established by Warren Hastings in 1781 for the study of Muslim law.
- The **Sanskrit College** established by Jonathan Duncan at Banaras in 1791 for the study of Hindu law and philosophy.
- **Fort William College** established by Wellesley in AD 1800 for training of civil servants of the company in Indian languages and customs (closed in AD 1802).

## 1813 Act and the Education

- The English missionary activists, such as Charles Grant and William Wilberforce, compelled the East India Company to give up its policy of non-intervention in education.
- For the first time, the British Parliament included in 1813 Charter, a clause under which the Governor-General in council was bound to keep a sum not less than ₹ 1 lakh for education. However, the company used this fund for promoting Indian language and literature.
- Establishment of **Calcutta College** in 1817 with the efforts of Raja Ram Mohan Roy for imparting Western education. Three Sanskrit colleges were set-up at Calcutta.

## General Committee of Public Instructions, 1823

- In 1823, a General Committee of Public Instruction was appointed to look after the development of education in India.
- The Orientalists dominated the committee and advocated the promotion of oriental learning rather than the Anglican one.
- However, different sections both in England and in India created mounting pressure on the company to promote Western education.

## Orientalist-Anglicist Controversy

- The General Committee of Public Instruction consisted of 10 members. Within the committee, there were two groups, the orientalists who advocated the policy of giving encouragement to oriental literature and the Anglicist or the English party, which favoured the adoption of English as a medium of instruction.
- As a member of the Executive Council Macaulay wrote his famous *Minute on Educational Policy*, dated 2nd February, 1835 and placed it before the council. Macaulay favoured the viewpoint of the Anglicist party. He said that a single shelf of a good European library was worth the whole native literature of India and Arabia. Macaulay aimed to create a class of persons who should be Indian in blood and colour, but English in tastes, in opinions, in morals and in intellect.

## Lord Macaulay's Education Policy, 1835

- In 1835, Lord Macaulay was appointed as a law member of the Governor-General Council. Soon, under the Macaulay system of education (approved by Governor-General Bentinck).
- Persian was abolished as the court language and was substituted by English.
- Printing of English books was made free and these were available at a relatively low price.
- The approved Macaulay system was an attempt to focus on educating the upper strata of society through English and leaving it up to these people to promote vernacular languages and literature. Western learning would also seep through to the masses in this manner.
- Bethune School** was founded by JED Bethune at Calcutta (1849).
- Agriculture Institute** was established at Pusa (Bihar).
- Engineering Institute** was established at Roorkee.

## Wood's Dispatch, 1854

- In 1854, Charles Wood prepared a dispatch on an educational system for India which came to be called the **Magna Carta of education** in the country.

According to Wood's scheme:

- the government needed to spread Western education through English medium for higher education. But, vernacular primary schools should be set-up in rural areas.
- Its other recommendations were:
  - A grants-in-aid system to encourage private enterprise's involvement in education.
  - A department of public instruction in each of the five provinces.
  - Universities in Calcutta, Bombay and Madras.
  - Teacher's training institutions.
  - Promotion of education for women.

## Hunter Commission (1882)

- To evaluate the progress achieved under the Dispatch of 1854, a commission under William Wilson Hunter was set-up in 1882. *The commission's views, restricted to primary and secondary education, emphasised:*
  - the state's role in extending primary education.
  - literary and practical learning for secondary level education.
  - that female education had been largely ignored.
  - a whole-hearted attempt to involve private enterprise in education.
- Many institutions were set-up to promote oriental and Indian learning as well. Teaching-cum-examining universities sprang up, an example being the **Punjab University** established in 1882. In 1887, the **Allahabad University** was founded.

## Curzon's Reforms

- Under Curzon (1899-1905), education was restricted by official control and educated persons were motivated to express loyalty to the British rule. For improving the working and prospects of Indian universities, a commission was appointed in 1902. It was headed by Sir Thomas Raleigh. The commission's report led to the **Indian Universities Act**, which was passed in 1904.

## Provisions of Indian Universities Act, 1904

- More stress was given over research activities. The number of fellows of a university and their period in office was reduced. Government can veto universities' Senate Regulations. Strict regulation for affiliation of private colleges. ₹ 5 lakh were to be sanctioned per annum for 5 years, for improvement of higher education.
- The act lay down that the number of fellows of a university shall not be less than 50 or not more than a 100.

## Sadler Commission (1917-1919)

- The Sadler Commission was appointed to study the problems of the Calcutta University though its recommendations were applicable to other universities as well.

*The commission's suggestions included:*

- A 12-years school course.
- A 3-years degree course after the intermediate stage.
- More flexibility in laying down university regulations.
- Centralised unitary residential teaching bodies with autonomy to replace traditional Indian universities.
- Facilities for teacher's training and female education.
- Instituting university degrees and diplomas and applied science and technology courses.

- Following the recommendations of the commission, from 1916 to 1921, seven universities were set-up. The control of the Education Department was put in the hands of provincial ministries after the Montagu-Chelmsford Reforms (1919).

## Hartog Committee, 1929

- Recommended the policy of consolidation and improvement of primary education. Recommended a selective system of admission to universities and diversified courses leading to industrial and commercial careers. Universities should be improved. **Wardha Scheme of Basic Education** (1937), worked out by the **Zakir Hussain Committee** after Gandhiji published a series of articles in the Harijan.

## Wardha Scheme, 1937

- Gandhi proposed his Wardha Scheme for Basic Education that aimed at learning through activity and emphasised on vocational education. The details, as prepared by the Zakir Hussain Committee, focused on manual productive work. As the Congress ministries soon resigned, the scheme could be taken up only after 1947.

## Sargent Plan, 1944

- The Sargent Plan, worked out by the Central Advisory Board of Education in 1944, called for elementary and higher secondary schools, universal, free and compulsory education for children up to the 6-11 age group, and a 6 years school course for the 11-17 age group.
- Though the plan aimed to reconstruct education in 40 years, it was later restricted to 16 years.
- Sir John Sargent was the educational advisor to the Government of India.

## Development After Independence

- After independence, the *Radhakrishnan Commission* was set-up in November, 1948 to review university education. *The main recommendations were as follows:*
  - 12 years of pre-university studies.
  - Higher educational set-up to impart general, liberal and occupational education, increased focus on subjects such as agriculture, law and medicine, and improvement of engineering and technical institutes.
  - University education must not be made compulsory for administrative services.
  - Subject-wise exams at different stages for acquiring the first degree.
  - Uniform examination standards in all universities.
  - Raised pay scale for teachers.
  - The establishment of a University Grants Commission.
- For the national pattern of education and “general principles and policies for development of education”.
- The Indian Government adopted a resolution in 1968 which was mostly based on the recommendations of the *Kothari Commission* appointed in 1964. The resolution laid down.
- The resolution also called for a three-language formula which would involve regional languages as well.
  - Promotion of science and research, agriculture and industry- related studies; and increased emoluments for teachers and a better status for them.
  - On the recommendation of Radhakrishnan Commission, the *University Grants Commission* was constituted in 1953.

### Development of Technical Education

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| <b>1794</b> | Guindy College of Engineering (affiliated to Madras University)  |
| <b>1835</b> | Medical College at Calcutta, Agriculture College at Pune   |
| <b>1847</b> | The Engineering College at Roorkee   |
| <b>1856</b> | The Calcutta College of Engineering  |
| <b>1858</b> | Overseers' School at Poona developed into Poona College of Engineering (affiliated to Bombay University) |

## Development of Press

- The evolution of the Indian media was fraught with developmental difficulties, illiteracy, colonial constraints and repression. Patriotic movements grew in proportion with the colonial ruthlessness and a vehicle of information dissemination became a tool for freedom struggle. In the struggle for freedom, journalists in the 20th century performed a dual role as professionals and nationalists.
- The first attempts to publish newspapers in India were made by the disgruntled employees of the East India Company who sought to expose the malpractices of private trade. The first newspaper in India entitled *Hickey's Bengal Gazette* or *The Calcutta General Advertiser* was started by James Augustus Hickey in 1780.
- Soon other newspapers came into existence in Calcutta and Madras— the *Calcutta Gazette*, the *Bengal journal*, the *Oriental Magazine*, the *Madras Courier* and the *Indian Gazette*.
- During the first half of 19th century, several newspapers were running in the country. Many of these like *Bangadoot* of Ram Mohan Roy, *Rastgoftar* of Dadabhai Naoroji etc., advocated social reforms and thus, helped to arouse national awakening.
- In 1857, *Payam-e-Azadi* was started in Hindi and Urdu, calling upon the people to fight against the British.
- Again, the first Hindi daily, *Samachar Sudhavarashan* and two newspapers in Urdu and Persian respectively, *Doorbeen* and *Sultan-ul-Akhar*, faced trial in 1857, for having published a ‘firman’ by Bahadur Shah Zafar, urging the people to drive the British out of India.
- This was followed by the notorious *Gagging Act of Lord Canning*, under which restrictions were imposed on the newspapers and periodicals.
- The first book published in India was by the Jesuits of Goa in 1557. In 1684, the EIC set-up a printing press in Bombay. However, for about a century after this no newspaper was published in the country because the company’s servants in India wished to withhold the news of their malpractices and abuses of private trading; from reaching London.

## Press Laws and Regulations in British India

- The earliest regulatory measures can be traced back to 1799, when Lord Wellesley promulgated the Press Regulations, which had the effect of imposing pre-censorship on an infant newspaper publishing industry. The onset of 1835, saw the promulgation of the Press Act, by Charles Metcalf undid with most of the repressive measures. He was also known as *The liberator of Indian Press*.

### Censorship of the Press Act, 1799

- Imposed by Lord Wellesley on the grounds of apprehension of the French attack on India. The Censorship of Press Act 1799, imposed almost wartime restrictions on the press. The regulations required.
  - The newspaper to clearly print in every issue the name of the printer, the editor and the proprietor.
  - The publisher to submit all material for pre-censorship to the Secretary to the Government.
  - The restrictions on press were relaxed to some extent under Lord Hastings.

### Licensing Regulations, 1823

- Promulgated by John Adams Press Regulations of 1823, proved more stringent than any that had been in force earlier.
- The new regulations required the act was particularly aimed at Indian language newspapers or those edited by Indians.
- Every printer and publisher to obtain a license for starting a press or using it.
- The penalty for printing and publishing any literature without the requisite license was ₹ 400 for each such publication or imprisonment in default thereof. Magistrates were authorised to attach unlicensed presses.
- As the consequence of the act Raja Ram Mohan Roy's Mirat-ul-Akbar had to stop publication.
- The Liberation of the Indian Press, 1835 Act, Metcalfe, Governor-General (1835-36) repealed the obnoxious 1823 ordinance and earned the epithet, liberator of the Indian Press. The New Press Act (1835) required a printer/publisher to give a precise account of premises of publication and cease functioning, if required by a similar declaration. The result of a liberal Press Policy was a rapid growth of newspapers.

### Licensing Act, 1857

- The act imposed restrictions upon the press on the grounds of emergency caused by the rebellion of 1857.
- The act prohibited the keeping or using of printing presses without a license from the government and the government reserved the discretionary right to grant licensees or revoke them at any time.
- Metcalf's Act was still applicable. *The Press and Registration of Books Act XXV* of 1867 finally replaced it.

### Vernacular Press Act, 1878

- The purpose of the act was to facilitate better control and to curb the Vernacular Press, which had become highly critical of the government policies since 1857 and mobilised public opinion on a large scale against the imperialist act of Lytton.
- The worst feature of the act was that it discriminated between the English Press and the Vernacular Press and no right of appeal to a court of law was given.
- In this context, the *Amrita Bazaar Patrika* turned overnight into an English newspaper to escape the restrictions of the act. Lord Ripon finally repealed it, in 1882.

### Newspapers Act, (Incitement to Offences) 1908

- The period 1903-05 saw the rise of nationwide protests against the anti-nationalist activities of Lord Curzon.
- To curb the Swadeshi and Boycott movements and to repress the militant nationalist trends, restrictions were imposed on the press.
- The act empowered the magistrates to confiscate printing presses and other assets of newspapers, which published objectionable materials that offended government's interests.
- The editors and printers of the offending newspapers enjoyed the right to appeal to the High Court within 15 days of the order of forfeiture of the press.

### Indian Press Act, 1910

- The act further strengthened the repressive hands of the government and is said to have revived the worst features of Lytton's Press Act of 1878.
- The act empowered the Local Government to demand security, at the time of registration from the printer or the publisher of a newspaper and to forfeit it, if the newspaper publishes any objectionable material.
- The printer of every newspaper was required to submit two copies of each issue to the local government.

### Developments during First World War

- During the First World War, 1914-18, the Defence of India was promulgated. The executive used these powers not only to repress the political agitations, but also to suppress the free public criticism.
- In 1921, a Press Committee was appointed under the Chairmanship of Sir Tej Bahadur Sapru, then law member of the Viceroy's Executive Council, to review the working of Press Laws. On the recommendations of the committee, the Press Acts of 1908 and 1910, were repealed.
- With the nationalistic struggle intensifying in 30s especially under the impact of the Civil Disobedience Movement launched by Mahatma Gandhi, the *Press Ordinance of 1930*, was issued. This act, revived the provisions of the Press Act of 1910.

- It was followed by the **Indian Press Emergency Powers Act 1930**, to provide for the better control of the Press. The act invested immense powers in the hands of the provincial governments, to suppress the propaganda for the Civil Disobedience Movement.

### **Developments during Second World War**

- The government, under the Defence of India Act, assumed special powers during the Second World War (1939-45).

- Pre-censorship was in force. Amendments were made in the Official Secrets Act and Press Emergency Act.

### **Developments after Independence**

- Press (Objectionable Matters) Act, 1951 was passed alongwith an Amendment to Article 19 (2) of the Indian Constitution.
- This act empowered the government to demand and forfeit security for publication of 'objectionable matter'.

### **Important Newspapers, Journals and their Founders**

| Newspaper/Magazine                           | Founder/Editor   |
|--|--|
| Bengal Gazette<br>(India's first newspaper)  | James Augustus Hickey (1780)                             |
| Dighadarshan                                 | Marshman   |
| Calcutta Journal                             | JS Buckingham  |
| Samvad-Kaumudi                               | Ram Mohan Roy (1821)                                     |
| Mirat-ul-Akabar (First newspaper in Persian) | Ram Mohan Roy (1822)                                     |
| Bangdoot                                     | Ram Mohan Roy  |
| Brahmanical Magazine                         | Ram Mohan Roy  |
| Rast Goftar (First newspaper in Gujarat)     | Dadabhai Naoroji   |
| Vichar Lahari                                | Krishnashastri Chiplunkar                                |
| Hindu Patriot                                | Grish Chandra Ghosh (Later Harish Chandra Mukherjee)     |
| Som Prakash                                  | Ishwar Chandra Vidyasagar                                |
| Indian Mirror                                | Devendra Nath Tagore                                     |
| Bangalee                                     | Grish Chandra Ghosh (Taken over by SN Bannerjee in 1879) |
| Indu Prakash                                 | Gopal Hari Deshmukh 'Lokhitavadi'                        |
| Native Opinion                               | VN Mandalik  |
| Kavi Vachan Sudha                            | Bharatendu Harish Chandra                                |
| Amrita Bazaar Patrika                        | Motilal Ghosh, Shishir Kumar Ghosh                       |
| Sudha Vani                                   | Akshay Chandra Sarkar                                    |
| Bangadarshan                                 | Bankim Chandra Chatterjee                                |
| Statesman                                    | Robert Knight  |
| Hindi Pradeep                                | Bal Krishna Bhatta                                       |

| Newspaper/Magazine     | Founder/Editor                                |
|------------------------|---|
| Hindu                  | Vir Raghavacharya and GS Aiyar (1878)         |
| Maratha                | Kelkar and Tilak                              |
| Kesari                 | Agarkar, Tilak and Chiplunkar                 |
| Bangavasi              | Joginder Nath Bose                            |
| Hindustan              | Madan Mohan Malaviya                          |
| Modern Review          | Ramanand Chatterjee                           |
| Indian Review          | GN Nateshan                                   |
| Swadeshamitram (Tamil) | GS Aiyar                                      |
| Sulabh Samachar        | Keshav Chandra Sen                            |
| Sanjibani              | Krishna Kumar Mitra                           |
| Hindustan Standard     | Sachidanand Sinha                             |
| Yugantar               | Barindra Kumar Ghosh and Bhupendra Nath Dutta |
| Sandhya                | Brahmavandhav Upadhyaya                       |
| Pratap                 | Ganesh Shankara Vidyarthi                     |
| Al-Hilal               | Abul Kalam Azad                               |
| Al-Bilag               | Abul Kalam Azad                               |
| New India              | Annie Besant                                  |
| Commonweal             | Annie Besant                                  |
| Young India            | Gandhi and Indulal Yagnik                     |
| Indian Sociologist     | Shyamji K Verma                               |
| Bande Mataram          | Bhikaji Madam Cama                            |
| Talwar                 | Birendra Nath Chatopadhyaya                   |
| Free Hindustan         | Tarak Nath Das                                |
| Hindustan Times        | KM Pannikar                                   |
| Kranti                 | Mirajkar, Jogekar, Ghate                      |

# Self Check

# Build Your Confidence



1. (d)      2. (a)      3. (c)      4. (a)      5. (c)      6. (c)      7. (a)      8. (b)      9. (b)      10. (a)  
11. (b)      12. (d)      13. (a)

# Chapter twenty-one

# Revolt of 1857

*The Revolt of 1857 has been hailed as the watershed or the great divide in the colonial history of British India. The Revolt of 1857 was fundamentally different from earlier rebellions by the soldiers, peasants and tribals of the 19th century. The scale and spread of the Revolt of 1857 was larger, sepoys at many centres mutinied and this was accompanied by civil disturbances. The extent of the revolt was mostly over North, Central and parts of Western India. It was the most significant movement of resistance against European colonial rule.*

## The Great Revolution of 1857

- The Revolt of 1857 was a product of the character and policies of British colonial rule. The causes of revolt emerged from all aspects—socio-cultural, economic and political. Moreover, it was not an isolated rebellion rather a chain of rebellions were already taken place in different areas of their territory, prior to 1857.

### Early Precedents

- In 1806, the sepoys at Vellore mutinied, but were crushed with terrible violence.
- In 1824, the 47th Regiment of Sepoys at Barrackpore refused to go to Burma by the sea-route.
- In 1844, seven battalions revolted on the question of bhatta and salaries.
- There were mutinies in 1825 (Assam), 1838 (*Sholapur*), 1844 (*Sind*) and 1849-59 (*Punjab*) as well.

### The Causes of Revolt

#### Immediate Cause

- The issue of greased cartridges and military grievances has been over emphasised, as the factor for the Revolt of 1857. The grease was in some instances composed of beef and pig fat. The sepoys, Hindu as well as Muslim, were enraged. The use of the greased cartridges would endanger their religion. However, the recent research has proved that the cartridge was neither the only cause nor even the most important. In fact, the multiple causes i.e. social, religious, political and economic worked together to produce the rebellion.

#### Social and Religious Causes

- The British had abandoned its policy of non-interference in the socio-religious life of the Indians. Abolition of Sati (1929), Hindu Widow Remarriage Act (1856) were such as direct interference of colonial power into Hindu religious beliefs.
- Christian missionaries were allowed to enter India and carry on with their mission of proselytising by an act in 1850.
- The Religious Disabilities Act of 1850 modified the traditional Hindu Law. According to it, the change in religion would not debar a son from inheriting the property of his father.

#### Economic Causes

- British rule led to breakdown of the village self-sufficiency, commercialisation of agriculture, which burdened the peasantry, adoption of free trade imperialism from 1800, de-industrialisation and drain of wealth all of which led to overall decline of economy.

#### Military Grievances

- The extension of British dominion in India had adversely affected the service condition of the sepoys. They were required to serve in area away from their homes without the payment of extra bhatta.
- An important cause of military discontent was the General Service Enlistment Act, 1856, which made it compulsory for the sepoys to cross the seas, whenever required. The Post Office Act of 1854, withdrew the free postage facility for them.

## Political Causes

- The last major extension of the British Indian territory took place during the time of Dalhousie. Dalhousie announced in 1849, that the successor of Bahadur Shah II would have to leave the Red Fort.
- The annexation of Baghat and Udaipur were however, cancelled and they were restored to their ruling houses.
- When Dalhousie wanted to apply the Doctrine of Lapse to Karauli (Rajputana), it was overruled by the Court of Directors.

## Doctrine of Lapse

- According to the policy of Doctrine of Lapse, introduced by Lord Dalhousie, the adopted sons of the deceased kings were de-recognised as heirs to the throne, which subsequently led to the annexation of large number of kingdoms.

### Chronology of Dalhousie's Annexation through Doctrine of Lapse

| State                   | Year of Annexation |
|-------------------------|--------------------|
| Satara                  | 1848               |
| Jaitpur (Uttar Pradesh) | 1849               |
| Sambhalpur (Orissa)     | 1850               |
| Baghat                  | 1850               |
| Udaipur                 | 1852               |
| Jhansi                  | 1853               |
| Nagpur                  | 1854               |

- Dalhousie annexed Awadh in 1856, on the ground of misrule. The annexation of Awadh was also represented by Bengal Army, three-fifth of whom belonged to Awadh. Sir James Outram, who had been the British resident in Awadh since 1854, was appointed as the first Chief Commissioner in 1856, but he was replaced by Sir Henry Lawrence. He was the Chief Commissioner when revolt broke out.
- Dalhousie abolished the titles of the *Nawab of Carnatic* and the *Raja of Travancore* and refused to grant the pension to the adopted son (Dhondu Pant, better known as *Nana Sahib*) of the last Peshwa, (Baji Rao II) after the latter's death in 1851.
- Canning announced in 1856, that the successors of Bahadur Shah were to be known only as princes and not as kings.

## Agrarian Causes

- The Summary Settlement of 1856, which was first introduced in the North-Western provinces, was extended to Awadh.
- Heavy over-assessment of land revenue impoverished the peasants.
- The introduction of the institution of private property rights in land by which land became a commodity, which could be bought, sold, rented or leased.

## The Course of Revolt

### March 1857

- The revolt was sparked on 29th March, 1857. The 19th infantry at Berhampur (*Barrackpore*), refused to use the newly introduced enfield rifle. The infantry was disbanded. Colonel Mitchell was its Commanding Officer.
- Mangal Pandey, a sepoy of the 34th Native Infantry at Barrackpore attacked and fired at his British officers. The mutiny was suppressed and the leader of the mutiny, Mangal Pandey, was finally trial and executed.

### April-May 1857

- 90 men of the 3rd Native Cavalry stationed at Meerut refused to use the greased cartridge. 85 of them were dismissed and sentenced to 10 years imprisonment on 9th May.
- The next day, on 10th May, the entire Indian garrison revolted. On 11th May, 1857, a band of sepoys from Meerut, who had defied and killed the European officers the previous day, marched to the Red Fort (Delhi).
- Bahadur Shah II was proclaimed the Shahenshah-e-Hindustan. The sepoy then set out to capture and control the imperial city of Delhi.

## Areas Affected by the Revolt

- Very soon, the rebellion spread throughout Northern and Central India at Lucknow, Allahabad, Kanpur, Bareilly, Banaras, in some parts of Bihar, Jhansi and other places. However, the Southern India remained quiet. Mutinies took place at a few places in Punjab (*Naushera* and *Hoti Mardan*), but Sir John Lawrence (Chief Commissioner of Punjab) easily put them down.

## Other Important Events

At Jhansi, **Rani Laxmibai**, the widow queen of Raja Gangadhar Rao, the last Maratha ruler of Jhansi, led the rebellion.

In Bihar **Kunwar Singh**, of Arrah, raised the banner of rebellion, which soon spread to many parts of Bihar, including Danapur, ChotaNagpur, Ranchi, Palamu etc. The tribals of the region also joined the rebellion. Kunwar Singh overthrew the British authority in Shahabad and established his own government. He marched to Kalpi to help Nana Sahib for a joint attack on Kanpur.

Prince **Firoz Shah** raised the banner of revolt at Mandson (*Madhya Pradesh*) and kept the British forces engaged in Central India. Driven out of central provinces, he campaigned in Ruhelkhand and Awadh. He also joined the forces of Tantia Tope in Rajputana.

**Khan Bahadur Khan** raised the banner of revolt in Ruhelkhand with epicenter at Bareilly. He proclaimed himself the Nawab Nazim.

### Opinions About the Nature of the 1857 Revolt

| Author            | Opinion / View   |
|-------------------|--|
| Sir John Seeley   | Wholly unpatriotic and selfish Sepoy Mutiny with no native leadership and no popular support.                        |
| LER Ries          | A war of fanatic religionists against Christians.  |
| TR Holmes         | A conflict between civilisations and barbarism.  |
| Outram and Taylor | A Hindu-Muslim conspiracy.   |
| VD Savarkar       | Indian War of Independence.  |
| Bipin Chandra     | The entire movement lacked a unified and forward looking programme to be implemented after the capture of power.     |
| SN Sen            | What began as a fight for religion ended as a War of Independence.   |
| Benjamin Disraeli | Is it a military mutiny or is it a National revolt?  |
| Dr RC Majumdar    | The so-called First National War of Independence of 1857 is neither first, nor National and nor War of Independence. |

### Reasons for Failure of Revolt

- The poor organisation and lack of coordination among the rebels were perhaps the most important cause of its failure. English had better resources, modern weapons and materials of war.
- Telegraph services kept Commander-in-Chief informed about the movement of rebels.
- Lack of unity among Indians, many ruling chiefs and big zamindars, actively helped British to suppress the revolt.
- The modern educated Indians also did not support the revolt.
- Neither the leaders nor sepoys were inspired by any high ideals of patriotism and nationalism.

### Consequences of the Revolt

The Revolt of 1857, resulted in significant changes in administrative structure, policies of the government and the British attitudes. Lord Canning at a Durbar at Allahabad in the Queen's Proclamation issued on 1st November, 1858, declared that those who laid down arms by 2nd January, 1859 would be pardoned except those directly involved in the murder of British subjects. Official services would be open to all without any discrimination of race or creed.

To give expression to this pledge the **India Civil Services Act of 1861** was passed, which provided for an annual competitive examination to be held in London for recruitment to the Covenanted Civil Service. Due regard would be given to ancient usages and customs of India.

The Queen's Proclamation declared to stop any further extension of territorial possessions and promised to respect the rights, dignity and honours of native princes.

The Government of India Act of 1858 was passed in the wake of the Revolt of 1857. The act also known as the **Act of the Good Government of India**, abolished the East India Company and transferred the powers of government, territories and revenues to the British Crown.

### Different Leaders Associated with the Revolt of 1857

| Places                | Leaders   |
|-----------------------|---|
| Barrackpore           | Mangal Pandey   |
| Delhi                 | Bahadur Shah II, Bakht Khan Hakim Ahsanullah (Chief Advisor to Bahadur Shah II)             |
| Lucknow               | Begum Hazrat Mahal, Brijbir Qadir, Ahmadullah (Advisor of the ex-Nawab of Awadh)            |
| Kanpur                | Nana Sahib, Rao Sahib (nephew of Nana), Tantia Tope, Azimullah Khan (Advisor of Nana Sahib) |
| Jhansi                | Rani Laxmibai   |
| Bihar (Jagdishpur)    | Kunwar Singh, Amar Singh  |
| Allahabad and Banaras | Maulvi Liyakat Ali  |
| Faizabad              | Maulvi Ahmadullah (he declared the revolt as Jihad against English)                         |
| Farrukhabad           | Tufzal Hasan Khan   |
| Bijnor                | Mohammed Khan   |
| Muradabad             | Abdul Ali Khan  |
| Bareilly              | Khan Bahadur Khan   |
| Mandsor               | Firoz Shah  |
| Gwalior/Kanpur        | Tantia Tope   |
| Assam                 | Kandapareswar Singh, Manirama Datta   |
| Orissa                | Surendra Shahi, Ujjwal Shahi  |
| Kullu                 | Raja Pratap Singh   |
| Rajasthan             | Jaidayal Singh and Hardayal Singh   |
| Gorakhpur             | Gajadhar Singh  |
| Mathura               | Devi Singh, Kadam Singh   |

### British Officials Associated with Revolt

| British Official       | Place  |
|------------------------|--|
| General John Nicholson | Captured Delhi on 20th September, 1857 (Nicholson died soon due to a mortal wound received during the fighting).   |
| Major Hudson           | Killed Bahadur Shah's sons and grandsons in Delhi.   |
| Sir Hugh Wheeler       | Defence against Nana Sahib's forces till 26th June, 1857. British forces surrendered on 27th on the promise of safe conduct to Allahabad.  |
| General Neil           | Recaptured Banaras and Allahabad in June 1857. At Kanpur, he killed Indians as revenge against the killing of English by Nana Sahib's forces. Died at Lucknow while fighting against the rebels. |
| Sir Colin Campbell     | Final recovery of Kanpur on 6th December, 1857. Final reoccupation of Lucknow on 21st March, 1858. Recapture of Bareilly on 5th May, 1858.   |

| British Official       | Place   |
|------------------------|---|
| Henry Lawrence         | Chief Commissioner of Awadh, who died during the seizure of British residency by rebels at Lucknow on 2nd July, 1857.   |
| Major General Havelock | Defeated the rebels (Nana Sahib's force) on 17th July, 1857. Died at Lucknow in December 1857.  |
| William Taylor and Eye | Suppressed the revolt at Arrah in August 1857.  |
| Hugh Rose              | Suppressed the revolt at Jhansi and recaptured Gwalior on 20th June, 1858. The whole of Central India and Bundelkhand was brought under British control by him. |
| Colonel Onsell         | Captured Banaras.   |

### Participation of Peasants, Zamindars and Weavers in the Revolt of 1857

- Excessive demands of revenue was the major cause of hardships of Indians in general peasants, and zamindars in particular. Peasant participation in the rebellion was provoked first by over-taxation and secondly, by the fact that the sepoys themselves came from the villages.
- Apart from this, the Free Trade Imperialist Policy meant that Indians, particularly spinners and weavers, were thrown out of employment as more than a quarter of the total textile consumption of India was now met by imports from Britain.

- It is not surprising that urban weavers were especially enthusiastic in their support of the revolt, many even joining as armed volunteers.

### Authors and Books of 1857 Revolt

| Author                  | Book   |
|-------------------------|--|
| Dr SN Sen               | Eighteen Fifty-Seven   |
| John Kaye               | History of the Sepoy War in India (later completed by Colonel GB Malleson) |
| SB Chaudhary            | Civil Rebellion in the Indian Mutinies 1857-59                             |
| BC Majumdar             | The Sepoy Mutiny and the Revolt of 1857                                    |
| AT Embree               | 1857 in India  |
| Eric Stokes             | The Peasant and the Raj  |
| HP Chattopadhyay        | The Sepoy Mutiny 1857  |
| PC Joshi                | Rebellion 1857   |
| Maulana Abul Kalam Azad | Eighteen Fifty-Seven   |
| VD Savarkar             | The Indian War of Independence 1857  |
| Ashok Mehta             | 1857 a Great Revolt  |

# Self Check

# Build Your Confidence

- 1.** As regards, the grievances of the sepoys relating to the conditions of service, which of the following was the most serious?

  - Question of promotion and pay
  - Non-observance of caste distinctions
  - Frequent campaigns in distant lands
  - Absence of proper and equitable procedure for discipline and control

**2.** Which of the following classes did not support the rebellion?

  - The princes
  - The peasants and artisans
  - The landed aristocracy and the zamindars
  - The new middle class

**3.** Where did the first signs of unrest appear early in 1857?

  - Awadh
  - Bengal
  - Meerut
  - Upper provinces

**4.** Who had first opined Revolt of 1857 as the first 'Indian War of Independence'?

  - Karl Marx
  - VD Savarkar
  - Disraeli
  - Bahadur Shah II

**5.** Who incited the sepoys in Jhansi, the hurl defiance at their officers and to commit violence and murder?

  - Rani Laxmibai
  - Tantia Tope
  - Lachman Rao
  - Damodar Rao

**6.** The leader of the Revolt of 1857 in Assam was

  - Diwan Maniram Dutta
  - Kandarpesvar Singh
  - Purandar Singh
  - Piafi Barua

**7.** What was the approach adopted towards the Indian princes in the Proclamation of Queen Victoria?

  - It affirmed the treaties made between the British and Indian princes
  - It established feudatory like relationship between the government and the Indian prince
  - Both 'a' and 'b'
  - It affirmed the continuation of the Policy of Annexation of Princely States

**8.** During the Revolt of 1857, the most trusted advisor of Emperor Bahadur Shah was

  - Hakim Ahsanullah
  - Prince Zawan Bakht
  - Queen Zeenat Mahal
  - Prince Bakht Khan

**9.** Rani Laxmibai of Jhansi captured Gwalior with the help of

  - Rao Sahib, brother of Nana Sahib
  - Tantia Tope
  - Both 'a' and 'b'
  - Nana Sahib

**10.** The most fundamental weakness of the Revolt of 1857 was that

  - it lacked planning, programme and fund
  - the rebels failed to understand the significance of contemporary scientific advancements
  - the entire movement lacked a modern, unified and forward looking programme
  - there was no understanding of the character of the enemy's political organisation among the rebels

**11.** Which one of the following pairs is incorrectly matched?

| Places of Revolt | Leaders              |
|------------------|----------------------|
| (a) Allahabad    | : Maulvi Ahmadullah  |
| (b) Banaras      | : Maulvi Liyakat Ali |
| (c) Farrukhabad  | : Tufzal Hasan Khan  |
| (d) Bijnor       | : Mohammed Khan      |

**12.** Which one of the following pairs is incorrectly matched?

| Authors         | Books                       |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| (a) TR Holms    | : Sepoy War                 |
| (b) PC Joshi    | : 1857 in India             |
| (c) Eric Stokes | : The Peasant and the Raj   |
| (d) Ashok Mehta | : 1857, The Great Rebellion |

**13.** After the Revolt of 1857, the British recruited the soldiers from the

  - Brahmins of Uttar Pradesh and Bihar
  - Bengalis and Orias from the East
  - Gurkhas, Sikhs and Punjabis in the North
  - Madras Presidency and Marathas

**14.** Which one of the following territories was not affected by the Revolt of 1857?

  - Jhansi
  - Chittor
  - Jagdishpur
  - Lucknow

**15.** What was/were the object/objects of Queen Victoria's Proclamation (1858)? [IAS 2014]

  - To disclaim any intention to annex Indian states.
  - To place the Indian administration under the British Crown.
  - To regulate East India Company's trade with India.

**Select the correct answer using the codes given below**

  - 1 and 2
  - Only 2
  - 1 and 3
  - All of the above



1. (a)      2. (d)      3. (b)      4. (b)      5. (c)      6. (a)      7. (c)      8. (a)      9. (c)      10. (c)  
11. (a)      12. (b)      13. (c)      14. (b)      15. (a)

# Chapter twenty-two

# Social and Religious Reform Movements

*The intellectual skill among the English educated middle class prompted a group of people to introspect about the backwardness of Indian society and the way and means to overcome that. The zeal to eradicate these social evils and superstitions which had become part of the religious belief of 19th century India, led to a series of reform movements.*

## Rise of the Movements

- Introduction of Western education and ideas played an important role in bringing the knowledge of some advanced ideas of the Western world and of modern science to India.
- From the late 18th century, a number of Indian scholars began the study of ancient India's philosophy, science, religion and literature. It helped the reformers in their work of religious and social reform. For their struggle against social evils, superstitions and inhuman practices and customs, the reformers used the authority of ancient texts.
- Thus, Indian religious and social reformers made use of their knowledge of Western ideas as well as of ancient learning.
- Press acted as a medium of communication and was used as an instrument for building an opinion, e.g. from Raja Ram Mohan Roy to Gandhiji, everyone used the medium of press.

## Characteristics of the Movements

- Base of social reforms was newly emerging middle class and Western educated intellectuals.
- These movements emerged in different periods of time in different parts of India, but having considerable similarities in their objectives. Religious reformation was a pre-condition for social reformation.
- There was cultural ideological struggle against backward element of traditional culture. The movement could not reach to the masses of peasantry and urban poor.

## Major Issues of the Movements

- **Religious Sphere** To revitalise religion in the life of modern science and religion. As there was no aspect of Indian life, which, religion didn't influence.
- **Social Sphere** Poor position of women and evil of caste system.
- **Political Sphere** Generating political opinion of the people by vernacular pamphlets, newspapers etc.

## Brahmo Samaj

- The Brahmo Samaj was the first important organisation of religious reform. It forbade Idol worship and discarded meaningless rites and rituals. The samaj also forbade its members from attacking any religion. To propagate the monotheistic doctrine of Hindu scriptures, Raja Ram Mohan Roy, founded the **Atmiya Sabha** (1815-19). In 1828, he established the **Brahmo Sabha**, later the **Brahmo Samaj**. The Brahmo Samaj believed that God is the cause and source of all that exists; so that nature, the Earth and heaven all, are his creations.
- In the Brahmo conception of God, there is no place for such doctrines as incarnation and meditation. It does not recognise any specially privileged priestly class as mediators between God and man.

- In Brahmo Samaj, no sacrifice was permitted. The Brahmo religion laid emphasis on the love of mankind, irrespective of colour, race or creed and upon the service of humanity as the highest rule of life.
- Raja Ram Mohan Roy gave enthusiastic assistance to David Hare, who founded the famous Hindu College in Calcutta. Established a Vedanta College (1825), in which courses both in Indian and Western social and physical sciences were offered.
- Roy and his associates had to face the bitter enmity and ridicule from the orthodox Hindus. The influence of Brahmo Samaj, however, spread and branches of the samaj were open in different parts of the country. Though, the Brahmo samajists were never large in number, they represented the new spirit of rationalism and reform.
- They attacked caste rigidity, started taking their food with the people of the so-called lower castes and those of other religions, opposed restrictions about food and drink, worked for improving the status of women in the society, devoted their lives to the spread of education and condemned the old Hindu opposition of sea voyages.

### Adi Brahmo Samaj and Brahmo Samaj of India

In 1866, there was a split in the Brahmo Samaj. **Devendranath Tagore** founded Adi Brahmo Samaj and Brahmo Samaj of India was founded under leadership of **Keshab Chandra Sen**.

Keshab Chandra Sen and his group held views which were more radical than those of other Brahmo samajists. They proclaimed freedom from the bondage of caste and customs and from the authority of scriptures. They advocated and performed intercaste marriages and widow remarriages, opposed the custom of purdah and condemned caste divisions. These radical view led to the split in 1866. Keshab Chandra Sen established Tab eracle of New Dispensation and Indian Reform Association.

### Arya Samaj

- Another influential movement of religious and social reform in Northern India was started by Dayanand Saraswati.
- At the age of 14, he became a rebel by rejecting idol worship. Soon after, he left home and led the life of wandering scholar in search of knowledge. During this period, he acquired mastery over Sanskrit language and literature.
- In AD 1863, Dayanand started preaching his doctrine—there is only one God and he should be worshipped not in the form of images, but as a spirit. He held that the Vedas contained all the knowledge imparted to man by God and essentials of modern science could also be traced there.
- He looked on the Vedas as India's Rock and Ages. The true original seed Hinduism. His motto was *India for the Indians*.

- He said 'Go back to Vedas', by this, he meant revival of Vedic learning and Vedic purity of religion and not revival of Vedic times. With this message, he went about all over the country and in 1875 founded the *Arya Samaj in Bombay*. Dayanand preached and wrote in Hindi.
- The *Satyarth Prakash* was his most important book. The use of Hindi made his ideas accessible to the common people of Northern India. He wrote three books—*Satyartha Prakash*, *Veda-Bhashya Bhumika* and *Veda Bhashya*.
- The members of Arya Samaj were guided by ten principles, of which the first one was studying the Vedas. The rest were tenets on virtue and morality.
- Dayanand framed for them a code of social conduct, in which there was no room for caste distinctions and social inequality. The Arya samajists opposed child marriages and encouraged remarriage of widows.
- A network of schools and colleges for boys and girls was established throughout Northern India to promote the spread of education.
- In 1886, Lala Hardayal instituted the *Dayanand Anglo Vedic School* of Lahore, which soon developed into a premier college of Punjab, set the pattern for such institutions. Here, instruction was given through English and Hindi on modern lines.
- Those among his disciples who wanted to maintain the original spirit of Dayanand, founded the Gurukul at Haridwar. This was set-up on the pattern of ancient ashrams.
- Dayanand, asserted the infallibility of Vedas. The influence of Dayanand and Arya Samaj, however, in the promotion of education, uplift of the position of woman and weakening the hold of the caste system was deeper than that of many other reform movements.

### Shuddhi Movement

- Dayanand tried for reconversion of those Hindus who had been converted to other religions, like Islam and Christianity. For this purpose, a purificatory ceremony called *shuddhi* was organised by him.

### Ramakrishna Mission

- Another important reformer of the latter half of the 19th century was Ramakrishna Paramahansa (1836-86), who was a priest in a temple at Dakshineswar, near Calcutta.
- After coming in contact with the leaders of other religions, he accepted the sanctity of all faiths.
- Almost all religious reformers of his time, including Keshab Chandra Sen and Dayanand, called on him for religious discussions and guidance.

- The contemporary Indian intellectuals, whose faith in their own culture had been shaken by the challenge from the West, found reassurance from his teachings.
- In order to propagate the teachings of Ramakrishna and put them into practice, Ramakrishna Mission was founded in 1897 at Belur Math near Calcutta by his favourite disciple Vivekananda. The mission stood for social service. '*The best way to serve God is to serve mankind*' was its motto.
- Ramakrishna Mission**, since its beginning, has grown into a very powerful centre of numerous public activities. These include organising relief during floods, famines and epidemics, establishing hospitals and running educational institutions.
- Vivekananda (1863-1902) (Original name— Narendranath Dutta) had a character altogether different from that of his master. He studied deeply Indian and Western philosophies, but could not find peace of mind, until he met Ramakrishna. He was, however, not content just with spirituality. The question that constantly agitated him was the degenerated condition of his motherland.
- After an all India tour, he found everywhere "poverty, loss of mental vigour and no hope for future." He frankly stated, "It is we who are responsible for all our misery and all our degeneration". He urged his countrymen to work for their own salvation. For this purpose, Vivekananda took upon himself the task of awakening his countrymen and reminding them of their weaknesses.
- He inspired them "to struggle unto life and death to bring about a new state of things—sympathy for the poor and bread to their hungry mouths, enlightenment to the people at large". A band of workers devoted to this cause were trained through the Ramakrishna Mission.

### Parliament of Religions, 1893

- Vivekananda's activities outside India helped in promoting an understanding of Indian culture abroad. In 1893, he participated in the All World Religious Conference (Parliament of Religions) at Chicago in the USA. His address there made a deep impression on the people of other countries and thus, helped to raise the prestige of Indian culture in the eyes of the world.

### Young Bengal Movement

- David Hare, an associate of Ram Mohan, founded Hindu College for modern education. He was basically a watch-maker. Derozio taught in Hindu College from 1826 to 1831. Derozio took inspiration from French Revolution. Because of his radical ideas, he could not have strong base, even though his ideas were much modern than of Roy's.
- Because of radical ideas, Derozio was dismissed from Hindu College. Derozio edited the paper *Calcutta Gazette* and *India Gazette*. Like Roy, he spread political consciousness through newspaper, pamphlets etc.

### Ishwar Chandra Vidyasagar

The Sanskrit College in Calcutta, of which Ishwar Chandra was the Principal for a few years, conferred on him the title of Vidyasagar. He introduced the study of modern Western thought in the Sanskrit College and admitted students belonging to the so-called lower castes to study Sanskrit.

He was attacked by the orthodox Hindus for his powerful support to the cause of widow remarriage as well as for his efforts at promoting education of the girls.

When, in 1855, he was made special **inspector of schools**; he opened 35 schools operated completely from his pocket. He was closely associated with Bethune, who had started the first school for girl's education in Calcutta in 1849. The school was named Bethune School and he became its Secretary.

### Prarthana Samaj

- Beginning in Bengal, the religious and social reform movements spread to other parts of India.
- In 1867, the Prarthana Samaj of Bombay was founded with the aim of anti-caste and women upliftment.
- Two of its chief architect was Mahadev Gobind Ranade and Ramakrishna Bhandarkar. The leaders of the Prarthana Samaj were influenced by the Brahmo Samaj. Ranade believed that without social reforms, it was not possible to achieve any progress in the political and economic fields.
- He was a great advocate of Hindu-Muslim unity and declared that in this vast country, no progress is possible unless both Hindus and the Mohammedans join hands together.

### Gopal Hari Deshmukh and Jyotiba Phule

Two other great reformers in Western India were Gopal Hari Deshmukh, popularly known as *Lokhitwadi* and *Jyotirao Govindrao Phule*, popularly known as *Jyotiba*.

G H Deshmukh supported reorganisation of society on the principle of modernity, secularism and humanism. Mahatma Phule dedicated himself to the cause of the oppressed sections of society and of women's upliftment. In 1848, he started a school for the girls of the so-called lower castes and educated his wife; so that she could teach in that school. In 1873, he founded the **Satyashodhak Samaj**, which was open to everyone without any distinction of caste and religion. Its aim was to work for winning equal rights for the people of the oppressed castes. Jyotiba was given the title of *Mahatma* for his work for the cause of the oppressed.

## Theosophical Movement

- The Theosophical society was founded by Westerners, who drew inspiration from Indian thought and culture. **Madame HP Blavatsky** (1830-91) laid the foundation of the movement in the United States in 1875. Later Colonel MS Olcott (1832-1907) joined her in New York.
- In 1882, they shifted their headquarters to India at Adyar, in Madras. The members of this society believe that a special relationship can be established between a person's soul and God by contemplation, prayer, revelation etc.
- The society accepts the Hindu beliefs in reincarnation, karma and draws inspiration from the philosophy of the Upanishads and Samkhya, Yoga and Vedanta school of thought. It aims to work for universal brotherhood of humanity without distinction of race, creed, sex, caste or colour.
- The society also seeks to investigate the unexplained laws of nature and the powers latent in man. The Theosophical Movement gave a sense of pride to Indians by praising Indian culture.
- In India, the movement became popular with the election of Mrs Annie Besant as its President. Mrs Besant was well acquainted with Indian thought and culture and her approach was Vedantic as is very evident from her remarkable translation of the *Bhagavad Gita*.
- Besant laid the foundation of the **Central Hindu College in Banaras**, in 1898, where both the Hindu religion and the Western scientific subjects were taught. The college became the nucleus for the formation of Banaras Hindu University in 1916. Mrs Besant also did much for the cause of female education. She also formed the **Home Rule League** on the pattern of Irish **Home Rule Movement**.
- The Theosophical society provided a common denominator for the various sects and fulfilled the urge of educated Hindus. Its impact was limited to a small segment of the Westernised class.

## SNDP Movement

- Shri Narayana Dharma Paripalana Yogam or SNDP Movement (1902-03), a significant movement for the emancipation of the oppressed sections of society was started by Sree Narayana Guru in Kerala. Narayana Guru was born in 1854 in an Ezhava family. The Ezhavas were considered untouchables. Narayana Guru acquired Sanskrit education and devoted himself to the uplift of the Ezhavas and other oppressed people.
- He started establishing temples in which Gods or their images had no place. He founded his first temple by installing a stone from the nearby stream. Narayana Guru, in 1903, founded the Shri Narayana Dharma Paripalana Yogam, which became an important organisation for social reform. Narayana Guru considered differences based on caste and religion as meaningless and advocated what he called **One caste, One Religion and One God** for all.

## Temple Reform Movements

- Many reformers in Southern India concerned themselves with the reform of certain practices connected with Hindu temples. They advocated the ending of Devadasis, who were attached to the temples. They also wanted that the wealth of the temples, some of which were very rich, should not be amassed by the priests, but that the public should exercise control over it. In many temples, people of the so-called lower castes were not allowed to enter and sometimes even some roads adjoining the temples were barred to them.
- The reformers launched powerful movements for temple entry and against other evil practices which had become associated with temples. Unfortunately, inspite of the work done by reformers, since the 19th century, even now there are instances in some parts of the country when some people are debarred entry into the temples on grounds of caste.

## Muslim Reform Movements

- Among the Muslims, the first signs of awakening appeared in the early 19th century, under the leadership of people like Syed Ahmed of Bareilly in Uttar Pradesh and Shariatullah of Bengal. They held that because of the degeneration of Islam in India, it had fallen into the hands of British. They set themselves to the task of purifying and strengthening Islam and purifying Islamic learning.
- The influence of Western ideas and modern education spread among the Muslims, later than among some sections of Hindus.
- Most of them kept themselves away from it because of the attitude of the **ulema**, who were traditional custodians of Islamic learning and the unwillingness of the upper class Muslims to reconcile themselves to British rule.
- The British had gradually robbed both these groups of their influence and rendered them powerless. Deprived of English education and its social and economic advantages, a middle class did not grow among the Indian Muslims for a long time.
- The ill feeling between the British and the Muslims greatly increased as a result of the Revolt of 1857, in which, Muslims had actively participated. But later, few section of Muslims were used by Britishers against rising nationalism.
- A few movements were also launched aiming at the spread of modern education and removing social abuses, like purdah and polygamy. The **Mohammedan Literary Society of Calcutta** founded in 1863 by Nawab Abdul Latif, was one of the earliest organisations to take steps in this direction.

## Wahabi Movement

- The earliest organised Muslim response to Western influences appeared in the form of the Wahabi Movement, which was popularly known as **Waliullah Movement**.
- It was essentially a revivalist movement and was inspired by the teachings of Shah Walliullah. Shah Walliullah (1702 - 62) was the first Indian Muslim leader of the 18th century, who expressed concern at the degeneration which had set in among Indian Muslims. He tried to organise the Indian Muslims around the two-fold ideals of this movement.
  - Firstly**, the desirability of creating harmony among the four schools of Muslims jurisprudence, which had divided the Indian Muslims. He sought to integrate the best elements of the four schools.
  - Secondly**, the recognition of the role of individual conscience in religion. He held that in cases where the *Quran* and the *Hadis* provide conflicting interpretations, the individual could make a decision on the basis of his own judgement and conscience.
- Initially, the movement was directed against the Sikhs in Punjab, but after the British annexation of Punjab (1849), the movement was directed against the British. The movement was suppressed by the superior military force of the British in the 1870s.

## Titu Mir's Movement

- Mir Nithar Ali, popularly known as Titu Mir, was a disciple of Syed Ahmed of Rae Bareli, the founder of Wahabi Movement. Titu Mir organised the Muslim peasants against the Hindu landlords and the British indigo planters.
- The movement was not as militant as the British records made it out to be only in the last year of Titu Mir's life was there a confrontation between him and the British police. He was killed in action in AD 1831.

## Faraizi Movement

- The movement, also called the Faraizi Movement because of its emphasis on the Islamic faith, was founded by Haji Shariat-Allah.
- The movement was popular in East Bengal and aimed at eradication of social innovations prevalent among the Muslims of the region. Under the leadership of Haji's son Dadu Mian, the movement became revolutionary from AD 1840 onwards.
- Dadu Mian gave the movement an organisational system from village to the provincial level with a Khalifa or authorised deputy at every level. The Faraizi also organised paramilitary forces to fight the Hindu landlords and even the police.

## Aligarh Movement

- The most important movement for the spread of modern education and social reform among Muslims was started by Sir Syed Ahmed Khan (1817-98).
- Syed Ahmed Khan was deeply concerned at the depressed position of the Muslims and raising them from their backwardness became his lifelong passion. He strove hard to remove the hostility of the British rulers towards the Muslims and to persuade the Muslims to accept the religious and educational reforms.
- He appealed to the Muslims to return to the original Islamic principle of purity and simplicity.
- He advocated English education for the regeneration of Muslims in India. For this, Syed Ahmed Khan had to face opposition from the orthodox section of Muslims. However, with courage and wisdom, he overcame these obstacles.
- In 1864, he founded the **Translation society** which was later renamed as **Scientific society**. The society was located at Aligarh. It published Urdu translations of English books on scientific and other subjects and an English Urdu journal for spreading liberal ideas on social reform.
- His greatest achievement was the establishment of the **Mohammedan Anglo Oriental College** at Aligarh in 1875. In course of time, this college became the most important educational institution of Indian Muslims. It provided for education in humanities and science through English medium. The college received support from the leading Muslims throughout India and the British showed much interest, both officially and otherwise in its development.
- The Mohammedan Anglo Oriental (MAO) College, which later on became the **Aligarh Muslim University** (AMU) fostered a modern outlook among the generations of students that studied there.
- Though, Syed Ahmed Khan opposed the Indian National Congress, he emphasised the unity between Hindus and Muslims.
- In AMU, not only Muslims students, there were Hindu students also, moreover, it had Hindu professor also, one of them teaching Sanskrit.
- Syed Ahmed Khan opposed the activities of the Indian National Congress. He believed, like many other leaders at that time, that Indians were not yet ready to govern themselves and that their interest would be best served by remaining loyal to the British rule.
- He wanted more time for the Indian Muslims to organise and consolidate their position and thought that this could be best done by maintaining good relations with the British rulers.

## Ahmadiyya Movement

- This movement was founded by **Mirza Ghulam Ahmed** in 1889. The movement was based on liberal principles.
- It described itself as the standard bearer of Mohammedan Renaissance and based itself, like the Brahmo Samaj, on the principle of universal religion of all humanity, opposing Jihad (sacred war against non-Muslims). The movement spread Western liberal education among the Indian Muslims.

## Deoband Movement

- The Deoband Movement was organised by the orthodox section among the Muslim ulema.
- It was a revivalist movement whose twin objectives were as follows :*
  - To propagate among the Muslims, the pure teachings of the Quran and the Hadis.
  - To keep alive the spirit of Jihad against the foreign rulers.
- The ulema under the leadership of Muhammad Qasim Nanotavi (1832-80) and Rashid Ahmed Gangohi (1828- 1905) founded the school at Deoband in Saharanpur, district of UP in 1866. The objective was to train religious leaders for the Muslim community.
- In the school, the instruction was imparted in original Islamic religion. The aim was moral and religious regeneration of the Muslim community. The school curriculum did not include English education and Western culture.
- Thus, in contrast to the Aligarh Movement, which aimed at welfare of the Muslim community through Western education and support of the British Government, the **Deoband School** preached Islamic faith.
- Similarly, on the political front, the Deoband School welcomed the formation of Indian National Congress in 1885. In 1888, the Deoband ulema issued a religious decree (*fatwa*) against Syed Ahmed Khan's organisations— The United Patriotic Association and the Mohammedan Anglo Oriental Association.
- Shibli Numani, a supporter of Deoband School, favoured the inclusion of English language and European sciences in the system of education. He founded the **Nadwatal Ulema** and **Darul Ulum** in Lucknow in 1894-96. He believed in the idealism of Congress and cooperation between the Hindus and Muslims of India to create a state in which both could live peacefully.
- Together, they started a journal Rast Goftar, for the purpose and played an important role in the spread of education.

## The Ahrar Movement

### (Majlis-i-Ahrar-i-Islam)

A number of nationalist Muslims of Punjab, mainly religious leaders, called themselves **Ahrars**, who organised Majlis-i-Ahrar-i-Islam. They were former members of the provincial branch of the All India Khilafat Committee. The first Ahrar conference convened on 31st July, 1931 declared to achieve independence for the country, make better communal relations among different communities; establish an Islamic system in the country and uplift the Muslim masses to acquire their lost glory of the past.

## Sikh Reform Movements

### Nirankari Movement

- Founded in 1840s by **Baba Dayal Das**. He preached against the practice of Hindu ceremonies that were being performed by Sikhs. He denounced idol worship and rejected rituals. He emphasised the worship of God as nirankari (*formless God*) and asked his disciples to obey the shabad (*preaching*) of the Guru and to serve their parents and avoid bad habits. Eating meat, consuming liquor were also forbidden.

### Namdhari Movement

- It was founded as an offshoot of Kuka Movement that was founded by Balak Singh. In 1857, Balak Singh's disciple **Baba Ram Singh** formally inaugurated Namdhari Movement.

### Singh Sabha

- It was founded in 1875 at Amritsar under the guidance of **Thakur Singh Sandhawalia** and **Giani Gian Singh**. Two main objectives were:
  - To bring to Sikh community, the benefits of Western enlightenment through Western education.
  - To counter Hindu and Christian missionaries that were influencing the Sikh community at large and to revive the community by publishing historical text, religious books and to propagate knowledge. The Sabha opened Khalsa schools/colleges.

### Akali Movement

- It was an offshoot of **Singh Sabha Movement**, mainly founded with the objective of fighting the prevalent corruption amongst the community, specially that of the Mahantas. **Shiromani Gurudwara Prabandhak Committee** was elected in 1920. In 1921, Akali launched a Non- Cooperation **Satyagraha Movement** against the Mahantas.

## Other Reform Movements

### Dharma Sabha

- It was an orthodox society founded by Radhakant Deb (1794-1876) in 1830. They opposed the abolition of Sati, but they played very active role in promoting Western education, even among girls.

### Paramhansa Mandali

- Founded by Dadoba Pandurang and Bal Shastri Jambhekar in 1849. Members took food cooked by low caste people. Believed in permitting widow remarriage and in education of women.

### Rehnumai Mazdayasan Sabha

- The Rehnumai Mazdayasan Sabha was founded in 1851 for the “regeneration of the social conditions of the Parsis and the restoration of the Zoroastrian religion to its purest form”. The movement had Naorofi Furdonji, Dadabhai Naoroji, KR Cama and SS Bengalee as its leaders.

### The Radhaswami Movement

- This movement was founded in 1861 by a Banker of Agra, Tulsi Ram, popularly known as *Shiv Dayal Saheb* or *Swamiji Maharaj*. The Radhaswami believes in one supreme. The sect recognises no temples, shrines or sacred places. Works of faith and charity, the spirit of service and prayer, are laid down as necessary duties. The sect admires company of pious people.

### Deccan Education Society

- Founded by MG Ranade, VG Chidbonkar, GG Agarkar in Pune 1884. Objective was to contribute to the cause of education and culture in Western India. The society founded the Ferguson College.

### Self Respect Movement

- It was a radical movement founded in Tamil Nadu in 1925 by EV Ramaswami Naicker popularly known as *Periyar*, who opposed Brahman domination and advocated simple marriages without Brahman priests and rituals, forcible temple entry, burning of Manusmriti etc.

### The Bharat Dharma Mahamandala

- This was an All India Organisation of the orthodox educated Hindus, who rose in defence or orthodox Hinduism against the teachings of the Arya Samaj, the theosophists and the Ramakrishna Mission.

### Lokahitawadi

- Started by Gopal Hari Deshmukh. Believed in reorganisation of Indian society on rational principles and modern, humanistic, secular values.

### Indian National Social Conference

- Founded by MG Ranade and Raghunath Rao in Bombay in 1887. Focus was to abolish polygamy and Kulinism and promote intercaste marriages. The conference is also referred as *social reform cell of INC*.

### The Deva Samaj

- This sect was founded in 1887 at Lahore by Shiv Narain Agnihotri, who was earlier a follower of Brahmo Samaj. The teachings of the samaj were compiled in a book called *Deva Shastra*, which emphasises on the supreme, being eternity of soul, the supremacy of the Guru and emphasis on good action.

### Aravippuram Movement

- This movement was launched in 1888 by Shri Narain Guru, a great socio-religious reformer of Kerala. He was opposed to the Brahmin priestly domination and was of the view that even a person of the lower caste could consecrate an image and act as a priest in the temple.
- On the Shivaratri festival in 1888, Shri Narain Guru, in spite of belonging to a lower caste, installed the idol of Shiva at Aravippuram, which was the beginning of this movement.

### Poona Seva Sadan (1909)

- It was established by GK Devadhar and Ramabai Pande in Pune. Its objectives were economic uplift and employment of women.

### Niskam Karma Math (1910)

- It was established by Dhondo Keshav Karve and objectives were social reform, selfless service to mankind, educational progress in women. It was founded as India's first women university in Pune, 1916.

### The Social Service League

- Narayan Malhar Joshi, one of the leading members of the servants of Indian Society, founded the Social Service League in 1911. The league opened a number of day and night schools, libraries, dispensaries and started boy's clubs and scouts corps.

### The Servants of Indian Society

- It was founded in 1915 by Gopal Krishna Gokhale to build a dedicated group of people for social service and reforms. In the field of famine relief, union organisation, cooperatives and uplift of tribals and depressed, the society did a very commendable work.

### The Indian Women's Association (1917)

- Started By Annie Besant in Madras, for the upliftment of women.

### Justice Party Movement (1915-1916)

- By TM Noor, P Tyagraj Chettiar and CN Mudaliar in Chennai (Tamil Nadu). Protest against the domination of Brahmin in government service, education and in the political field. The newspaper *Justice*, was their main organ for expressing views and opinions.

### Bahiskrit Hitkarini Sabha

- It was founded by BR Ambedkar in 1929 in Bombay to propagate social equality among Hindus and untouchables and demanded constitutional safeguard for the depressed classes.

### Harijan Sevak Sangh (1932)

- It was started by Mahatma Gandhi at Pune for the removal of untouchability and social discrimination against untouchables.

## British Initiatives for Social Reforms

### Abolition of Female Infanticide

- The practice of killing female infants immediately after birth was common among upper class Bengalis and Rajputs, who considered females to be an economic burden.
- The *Bengal Regulations XXI of 1795* and *III of 1804* declared infanticide illegal and equivalent to murder. Similarly, an act was passed in 1870 which made it compulsory for parents to register the birth of all babies. The *Act of 1870* also provided for verification of female children for some years after birth, particularly in areas where the custom was resorted to in utmost privacy.

### Abolition of Sati

- Enlightened Indian reformers led by Raja Ram Mohan Roy urged William Bentinck to take necessary steps and declare the practice of Sati illegal. The loss of his sister in law by Sati had stirred Ram Mohan Roy to action and he had published a number of articles condemning the practice.
- Finally, *Regulation XXII of December 1829* declared the practice of Sati or of burying alive of widows illegal and punishable by the criminal courts as culpable homicide.
- The Regulation of 1829 was applicable in the first place to Bengal presidency alone, but in 1830 was extended in slightly modified forms to Madras and Bombay presidencies.

### Suppression of Thugi

- Another great reform to the credit of William Bentinck is the suppression of thugs. The thugs, i.e. cheats were a sect of hereditary assassins and robbers, who lived by preying upon innocent and defenseless travellers.
- A more appropriate name for thugs was *pansigar*, derived from the scarf and noose used by the thugs to strangle their victims. The public opinion solidly supported the government measures to suppress Thugi in 1830.
- These thugs belonged to both the Hindu and Muslim religions and worshipped the Hindu Goddess like Kali, Durga or Bhawani, to whom they offered the heads of their victim as sacrifices. The thugs were hardened criminals and were particularly active in the entire area from Oudh to Hyderabad and in Rajputana and Bundelkhand.
- The thugs believed that Thugi was ordained means of livelihood for them and their victims were ordained to die at their hands.
- The operations against thugs were put in charge of Colonel William Sleeman. Colonel Sleeman arrested as many as 1500 thugs and sentenced them to death or imprisonment for life.
- Thugi on an organised scale ceased to exist after 1837.

### Abolition of Slavery

- Slavery was another institution which came under attack in British India. Evangelical propaganda against slavery led by Wilberforce helped in focusing public attention in Britain on the evils of slavery in India.
- Though Britain abolished slave trade in her dominions in 1820, the company in India acknowledged the legality of slavery on the grounds that it was a traditional practice with religious sanction.
- However, later a clause was inserted in the *Charter Act of 1833* requiring the Governor-General in Council to abolish slavery in India. Finally, the *Act V of 1843* declared slavery illegal in India and all existing slaves were emancipated without any compensation to slave owners.

### Widow Remarriage

- The Brahmo Samaj had the issue of widow remarriage high on its agenda and did much to popularise it. Later, the efforts were made by Pandit Vishnu Shastri, who founded the Widow Remarriage Association in the 1850s.
- Another prominent worker in this field was Karsondas Mulji, who started the Satya Prakash in Gujarati in 1852 to advocate widow remarriage. But it was mainly due to the efforts of Pandit Ishwar Chandra Vidyasagar (1829- 91), the principal of Sanskrit College, Calcutta, that the Hindu widow's Remarriage Act, 1856, which legalised marriage of Widows and declared issues from such marriages as legitimate, was passed by the government.
- Though the issue of widow remarriage got the legal sanction by the act, it still needed the social acceptance. Thus, the social reformers continued their task of popularising the issue.
- In Western India, Professor DK Karve took up the cause of widow remarriage and in Madras, Veerasalingam Pantulu made efforts in the same direction.
- Professor Karve started his career as a teacher in the girl's college at Bombay and in 1891, became a professor at Fergusson College, Pune.

- Karve devoted his life to the cause of upliftment of Hindu widows and became the Secretary of Widow Remarriage Association. He himself married a widow in 1893 and in 1899. He opened a widow's home in Poona to provide vocational training to the high caste widows. He crowned his work by setting up an *Indian Women's University at Bombay* in 1916.
- The right of widows to remarriage was also advocated by BM Malabari, Justice Govind Mahadeo Ranade and K Natarajan among others.

## Prohibition of Child Marriage

- Legislative action in prohibiting child marriage came in 1872 when by the Native Marriage Act, the marriage of girls below the age of 14 and boys below 18 years were forbidden.
- The act was popularly known as *Civil Marriage Act*. This act however had a limited impact. Later, the relentless efforts of a Parsi reformer, BM Malabari, were rewarded by the enactment of the *Age of Consent act, 1891* which forbade the marriage of girls below the age of 12.
- *The Sharda Act, 1929* further pushed up the marriage age and provided for penal action in marriages of boys below 18 and girls less than 14 years of age.
- In free India, the *Child Marriage Restrain (Amendment) Act, 1978* raised the age of marriage for girls to 18 years and for boys to 21.

## Various Social Legislations Under British Rule

|         |  |
|---------|--|
| 1795    | Abolition of infanticide by British Regulation.  |
| 1802    | Abolition of infanticide by Lord Wellesley.  |
| 1811    | Abolition of slavery under Regulation X by Bengal Government.  |
| 1829    | Abolition of Sati by Lord William Bentinck (under Regulation XVII). Pioneering efforts in this direction were made by Raja Ram Mohan Roy.                                      |
| 1831-37 | Abolition of Thugi by William Bentinck, operation by William Sleemen.  |
| 1843    | Abolition of slavery by Lord Ellenborough.   |
| 1844-48 | Lord Hardinge suppressed the practice of making human sacrifice that had prevailed among the tribes of Gonds.  |
| 1856    | Approval of widow remarriage by Hindu Widow's Remarriage Act by the efforts of Ishwar Chandra Vidyasagar.  |
| 1872    | Banning of the child marriage by Native Marriage Act.  |
| 1891    | Age of marriage for the girls was increased to 12 years by Age of Consent Act, by the efforts of Behramji Malabari.  |
| 1929    | The age of marriage was increased to 18 years in the case of boys and 14 years in the case of girls by the Child Marriage Restraint Act, commonly known as <i>Sharda Act</i> . |
| 1931    | Banning of child marriage by Infant Marriage Prevention Act.   |
| 1937    | Right to property given to women.  |

# Self Check

## Build Your Confidence

- 1.** "What we see around us today is a fallen nation a nation whose primitive greatness lies buried in ruins". Who said this?  
(a) Swami Vivekanand      (b) Raja Ram Mohan Roy  
(c) Dayanand Saraswati      (d) Keshab Chandra Sen
- 2.** By virtue of whose efforts Hindu Widow Remarriage Act was passed in 1856?  
(a) Ishwar Chandra Vidyasagar  
(b) Raja Ram Mohan Roy  
(c) HV Derozio  
(d) None of the above
- 3.** What is/are true about Brahmo Samaj?  
1. It laid emphasis on human dignity.  
2. It opposed idol worship.  
3. It criticised social evils like Sati.  
4. It incorporated the teaching of other religions.  
*Select the correct answer using the codes given below*  
(a) 1 and 2      (b) Only 3      (c) 1, 2 and 3      (d) All of these
- 4.** Which of the following are true about Raja Ram Mohan Roy's views on women?  
(a) The polygamy should be abolished  
(b) The widow remarriage should be encouraged  
(c) Women to be given the right to inheritance and property  
(d) All of the above
- 5.** Match the following
- | List I                      | List II      |
|-----------------------------|--------------|
| A. Indian Social Conference | 1. MG Ranade |
| B. Brahmo Samaj             | 2. RRM Roy   |
| C. Brahmo Samaj of India    | 3. KC Sen    |
| D. Sadharan Brahmo Samaj    | 4. AM Bose   |
- Codes**
- |     | A | B | C | D |     | A | B | C | D |
|-----|---|---|---|---|-----|---|---|---|---|
| (a) | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | (b) | 1 | 3 | 2 | 4 |
| (c) | 1 | 2 | 4 | 3 | (d) | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 |
- 6.** Consider the following statements  
1. Namdhari Movement also known as Kuka Movement because of the following resorting to shricks while in ecstasy.  
2. Mahar Satyagraha was led by Dr Ambedkar claiming the rights of Mahar's to use tanks and temples.  
3. Sati was abolished in 1829 by the efforts of Raja Ram Mohan Roy.  
*Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?*  
(a) 1 and 2      (b) Only 1      (c) All of these      (d) None of these
- 7.** Who founded Arya Mahila Samaj and made first attempt to educate widows?  
(a) Ramabai      (b) Muthulakshmi Reddy  
(c) Vidyasagar      (d) Sartadevi Chaudharani
- 8.** The Arya samajists split on the issue of  
(a) meat eating vs vegetarianism  
(b) Anglicised vs Sanskrit based education  
(c) Both 'a' and 'b'  
(d) Neither 'a' nor 'b'
- 9.** Consider the following statements  
1. Ramakrishna Paramahansa used to say "all different religion views but different ways leading to the same goal."  
2. Swami Vivekanand established Vedant College in 1825.  
3. Raja Ram Mohan Roy's first philosophic work was 'Tuhbatul Muwahhidin.'  
*Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?*  
(a) Only 3      (b) 1 and 2  
(c) All of these      (d) None of these
- 10.** Which of the following statement(s) is/are correct regarding Brahmo Samaj? [IAS 2012]  
1. It opposed idolatry.  
2. It denied the need for a priestly class for interpreting the religious texts.  
3. It popularised the doctrine that the Vedas are infallible.  
*Select the correct answer using the codes given below*  
(a) Only 1      (b) 1 and 2  
(c) Only 3      (d) All of these
- 11.** Who was the earliest and the best-known woman social reformer of modern India?  
(a) Pandita Ramabai      (b) Mrs Annie Besant  
(c) Tarabai Shinde      (d) Muthulakshmi Reddy
- 12.** Annie Besant was [IAS 2013]  
1. responsible for starting the Home Rule Movement.  
2. the founder of the Theosophical society.  
3. once the President of the Indian National Congress.  
*Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?*  
(a) Only 1      (b) 2 and 3      (c) 1 and 3      (d) All of these
- 13.** What is the chronological order of following movements/schools?  
1. Atmiya Sabha  
2. Adi Brahmo Samaj  
3. Brahmo Samaj of India  
4. Sadharan Brahmo Samaj
- Codes**
- |                |                |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| (a) 1, 2, 3, 4 | (b) 1, 2, 4, 3 | (c) 4, 3, 2, 4 | (d) 3, 2, 1, 4 |
|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
- 14.** The Brahmo Samaj was based on the twin pillars of  
(a) reasons and humanism  
(b) humanism and Vedas  
(c) reason, Vedas and Upanishads  
(d) None of the above

1. (d)  
11. (c)2. (a)  
12. (c)3. (d)  
13. (a)4. (d)  
14. (a)

5. (c)

6. (c)

7. (a)

8. (c)

9. (b)

10. (b)

# **Chapter twenty-three**

# **Growth of Nationalism and Struggle for Independence (1885-1919)**

*The rise and growth of Indian nationalism has been traditionally explained in terms of Indian response to the stimulus generated by Britishers through creation of new institutions, opportunities, resources etc. Infact Indian nationalism grew partly as a result of colonial policies and partly as reaction to it.*

## **Factors for the Rise of Nationalism**

- Unification of administration, Modern Education System, Revolt of 1857 and other factor grew the nationalism in Indian people. Following were the main causes of national consciousness :

### **Administrative Unification of India**

- Modernisation was essential for the colonial scheme of administration and this modernisation in one sense gave birth to Indian nationalism.
- Common subjection, common institutions and common laws began to shape India in a common mould.
- The establishment of political unity fostered the spirit of one mindedness.

### **Economic Causes**

- The economic policies of the British adversely affected the interests of almost all sections of Indian society viz the peasants, middle classes, workers, industrialists etc. The huge economic drain of India's resources, commercialisation of agriculture, the policy of land settlements accompanied with periodic famines was disastrous.

- Discriminatory British economic and fiscal policies gave rise to economic nationalism in India. People came to realise that colonial rule was the real cause of India's economic backwardness.
- Thus, the spirit of nationalism received a powerful stimulus in the process.

### **Spread of Western Education and Thought**

- *English Language* It was made the medium of instruction in schools and colleges in 1835 and it became the language of the educated people of India.
- The introduction of Modern System of Education afforded opportunities for assimilation of modern Western ideas and made the Indians realise the evil effects of foreign rule, which in turn gave a new direction to Indian political thinking.
- The liberal and radical thought of European writers like *Milton, Bentham, Rousseau and Voltaire* etc. Inspired the Indians in general and intelligentsia in particular with the ideals of liberty, nationality and self-government.

## Development of the Means of Communication

- Development of railways, Modern Postal System and the introduction of electric telegraph during the reign of Dalhousie unified the country and facilitated the growth of nationalism.
- Railways led to increase in passenger traffic which in turn increased interaction between the people and maintained a regular contact between them.

## Emergence of Modern Press

- The rapid growth of press helped the nationalist Indians in spreading the message of patriotism and modern liberal ideas and to create a strong public opinion against the excesses and inequities of the colonial administration.
- It helped to spread ideas of nationalists leaders, self-government democracy, civil rights and industrialisation.

## Rediscovery of India's Past

- Historical researches by European scholars, such as Max Muller, Monier Williams, Sassoon and Roth and by Indian scholars such as RG Bhandarkar, RL Mitra and Swami Vivekananda opened new vistas of India's rich socio-political, economic and cultural heritage. This gave new sense of self respect and confidence among the nationalists.
- Bankim Chandra wrote Anand Math to expose the true character of British Rule.
- Din Bandhu Mitra wrote Neel Darpan to expose the exploitation by indigo planters and Bharatendu Harishchandra put forward the idea for the use of swadeshi things.

## Socio-Religious Movement

- Various socio-religious reform movements like *Brahmo Samaj*, *Arya-Samaj*, the *Ramakrishna Mission* were launched to reform the society.
- In the religious sphere, the reform movements criticised religious superstition, idolatry, polytheism and hereditary priesthood. These movements criticised the caste system, untouchability and other social and legal inequalities.
- They played a vital role in arousing nationalist feeling, like Swami Dayanand for instance, was the first to use the word *Swaraj*. Many Arya Samajis were in the forefront of the National Movement and were primarily responsible for the rise of extremism in the INC.

## Rise of Urban Middle Class Intelligentsia

- The Western education, British administrative and economic innovations gave rise to a new urban middle class in towns.
- This class had close ties with the ruling class and were aware of the imperialistic policies of the British, came to the forefront.

## Impact of Contemporary Global Movements

- Some contemporary national movements in the European nations like German Unification, Italian Unification, nationalist movements against the Turkish empire, Liberation Movement of Greece and Italy in general and of Ireland in particular helped Indian nationalism.

## Lord Lytton's Reactionary Policies

- The highly expensive Second Afghan War, which was financed out of Indian revenues, the abolition of import duties on British textile and the Arms Act of 1878, which was an attempt to disarm the Indian people, created widespread discontent against the British empire.
- Another anti-Indian move of Lytton's regime was the lowering the age limit (from 21 to 19) for appearing in the Indian Civil Service Examination that was held only in London. Against this Indian Association started a massive agitation under the leadership of SN Bannerjee and Lal Mohan Ghose. The Grand Durbar organised by Lord Lytton in 1877 at Delhi to proclaim the assumption of imperial title by *Queen Victoria* when the country was in the severe grip of famine.

## Vernacular Press Act

- The Vernacular Press Act, (1878) that curbed the liberty of the Indian Press (later the act was repealed by Lord Ripon), was popularly known as *Gagging Act*. To bypass the restrictions imposed by Vernacular Press, Amrita Bazaar Patrika was immediately converted to an English paper. The founding of the newspaper Hindu in Madras was also in reaction to Lytton's Press Act.

### The Ilbert Bill Controversy (1883)

Officially called the *Criminal Procedure Amendment Code Bill* was introduced by Sir Courtenay Ilbert (law member in the Governor-General Executive Council) in the Governor-Generals Legislative Council in February, 1883. Its aim was to give Indian District Magistrates and sessions judges the right to try European and British offenders, in criminal cases. The bill gave birth to strong protest movement by the members of the European community and they stood united against the Bill.

They sought to protect their rights and privileges by forming a European and Anglo-Indian Defence Association. Ripon had to modify the bill which now provided the European British subjects, accused of criminal offences, the right to claim trial by jury, to which no less than half the member had to be Europeans or Americans. The Ilbert Bill Controversy proved an eye-opener to the Indians and intensified the growing feeling of unity and nationalism among Indians.

## Pre-Congress Political Associations

- During the course of 19th century, various organisations started emerging at regional level to represent interests of various sections of Indian society. These organisations prepared the foundation for the emergence of a Pan-India nationalist organisation.

### In Bengal

#### Bangabhasha Prakasika Sabha

(Associates of Raja Rammohan Roy, 1836)

- It is said to be the first organised political association of India. It was mainly founded to safeguard the interests of the landlords. The organisation worked in co-operation with the British India Society in London and appointed a committee to supply it with regular information about Indian grievances and demands. Dwarkanath Tagore was one of its very active members and was responsible in founding Bengal British India Society in 1843.

#### Landholder's Society

(Landholders of Calcutta, 1837)

- Also known as *Zamindari Association*, was founded to safeguard the interest of landlords through constitutional agitation.

#### British India Society

(Mr William Adams, 1839)

- It was founded in England with the efforts of William Adam, a friend of Raja Rammohan Roy. In 1841, this society started printing a newspaper British Indian advocate.

#### British Indian Association

(George Thompson, 1851)

- The British Indian Association was founded by merging landholders society and the Bengal British India society. During the years following the Revolt of 1857, the British Indian Association was the most important political body in India and its organ, the *Hindu Patriot* was the most influential newspaper in the country.

#### East India Association

(Dadabhai Naoroji, 1866)

- The aim of the East India Association was popularisation of Indian grievances so as to influence British public opinion.

#### India League

(Sisir Kumar Ghosh)

- Sisir Kumar Ghosh was a journalist and founder editor of the Amrita Bazar Patrika.

#### Indian Association

(Anand Mohan Bose, SN Bannerjee, 1876)

- The Indian Association formed the centre of an all India movement by providing the leadership for agitation on issues such as the age limit for the Indian Civil Services examination and the *Ilbert Bill Agitation*.
- It is considered to be the most important Pre-Congress political organisation. It was the only Pre-Congress organisation, which seriously tried to become all India body and in this context it sponsored an All-Indian National Conference in 1883 and 1885 at Calcutta.

### In Deccan

#### Bombay Association

(Jaganath Shunkerset, 1852)

- It was the first political organisation of the Bombay Presidency established to vent public grievances to the British Government of India.

#### Poona Sarvajanik Sabha

(MG Ranade and GV Joshi, 1870)

- In 1875, the members of the Poona Sarvajanik Sabha submitted a petition to the house of commons demanding India's direct representation in British Parliament.

#### Bombay Presidency Association

(Pherozeshah Mehta, KT Telang, Badruddin Tyabji, 1885)

- Pherozeshah Mehta was its the President and remained so till 1915.

### In South India

#### Madras Native Association

(GL Chetty 1852)

- The Madras Native Association sent a petition to the British Parliament on the eve of the passing of the Charter Act of 1853, making demands similar to that of the British Indian Association.

#### Madras Mahajan Sabha

(M Vira-Raghavachari, G Subramania Iyer, Ananda Charlu, 1884)

- P Rangaiah Naidu was the first President of the Sabha with R Balaji Rao as its secretary. In September, 1885, the sabha in collaboration with the Bombay Presidency Association and the Indian Association, sent a delegation to England.

### Popular Campaigns

Pre-Congress political associations organised various campaigns in reaction to British policies.

*These were as follows:*

- For imposition of import duty on cotton (1875).
- For right to join volunteer corps.
- For an All India Fund for Political Agitation.
- For indianisation of Government Service (1978-79).
- Campaign in Britain to vote for Pro-India party.
- Against Lytton's Afghan campaign.
- Against Vernacular Press Act, (1878).
- Against Arms Act, (1878).
- Against lowering the maximum age for appearing in Indian Civil Service.
- Against plantation labour.
- Against Inland Emigration Act.
- In support of Ilbert Bill.

## Evolution of Civil Services

- The Civil Services in India during British Rule went through constant experimentation and innovation. It has evolved over a period of two centuries and has been crafted very meticulously by way of a series of legislations by the British authorities.
- The Pitt's India Act of 1784, established a Board of Commissioners to supervise the Civil and Military Government of the company also called the Board of Control.
- The act placed the Civil and Military Government of the company in due sub-ordination of the Government in England.
- Lord Cornwallis** introduced first major reforms in Civil Services. He was the one who introduced the category of covenanted and non-covenanted service in the company's bureaucracy.
- The covenanted was exclusive preserve of firstly the British then the European. This was the precursor of much famous Indian Civil Service. Cornwallis introduced very attractive pay scales for the covenanted civil servants who entered into a covenant with the company's government.
- In 1800, **Lord Wellesley** founded the *College of Fort William* at Calcutta for the purpose of training of new recruits to the covenanted services.

- As per **Charter Act of 1853**, the services were thrown open to all the citizens of British kingdom, including Indians. But, for all practical purposes the selection process remained highly biased against the entry of Indians.
- The main reasons for low representation of Indians in the services were the very low maximum age of eligibility for giving the entrance exam and the location of examination centre in England.
- Infact, after successive reductions the maximum age was reduced to 19 years during the tenure of Lord Lytton.
- Facilitation of entry of Indians in the elite Civil Services remained one of the strongest demand of the early political agitations, so that the first all India political association the *India Association* headed by Surendra Nath Bannerjee started the 'Civil Services Agitation' all over India.

## Indian Civil Servants

**Satyendranath Tagore** was the first Indian to Joint the Civil Services (1863). Three more Indians entered in 1871, RC Dutt (wrote Economic History of India), Bihari Lal Gupta and SN Bannerjee.

**Subhash Chandra Bose** joined Civil Services in 1921 and resigned in the same year. He ranked fourth in the list of Civil Services.

**Gurusaday Dutt** was the first Indian who secured the first rank in the ICS examination, in 1905.

## Commissions/Acts Related to ICS

### Sir Charles Aitchison Commission, 1886

- Appointed by Lord Dufferin to consider the demand for simultaneous examination and the lowering of maximum age. It recommended that the term 'covenanted' and 'uncovenanted' be dropped.
- He suggested that services be divided into three classes— (i) Imperial Indian Civil Services, (ii) The Provincial and (iii) The Sub-ordinate Service.
- The first was to recruited in England and the later in India exclusively out of Indians.
- He recommended that the minimum and maximum age limits be fixed at 19 years and 23 years respectively.
- It rejected the idea of simultaneous holding of examination in both India and England and recommended the abolition of statutory Civil Services.

### Montague-Chelmsford Commission, 1919

- Conceded to the demand of holding of examination simultaneously in India as well as England.
- The commission recommended that one-third of the superior posts in the Indian Civil Services were to be recruited in India and this proportion is to be increased by 1.5% annually.

### LEE Commission, 1923

- It recommended that the Secretary of State should continue to recruit the Indian Civil Service, the Irrigation Branch of the Service of Engineers and the Indian Forest Services.
- On the basis of Government of India Act, 1919, it recommended the establishment of a Public Service Commission. It stipulated that 20% of the officers should be recruited by promotion from provincial civil services and of the remaining 80% half should be Indian and half British.

### Government of India Act, 1935

- The provision was made for establishment of a Federal Public Service Commission. Despite all these reforms the Indian Civil Services remained essentially a colonial apparatus, which proved to be the proverbial Steel Frame of British Rule in India.
- But, with the ushering of the independent India's Constitution some ground breaking changes were made to the then existing set-up of Civil Services to make it useful in meeting the lofty goals of freedom struggle.

## Birth of Indian National Congress (INC), 1885

- Congress was the natural and inevitable product of various forces of the 19th century. The credit for the birth of the Congress is often given to AO Hume, who with the blessings of the Viceroy Lord Dufferin successfully organised the prominent political leaders and founded Indian National Congress.

### Background of INC

- Indian Association* decided to hold its first Indian Conference in Calcutta at the same time, so that it can reach to the masses, but the plan failed.
- In 1884, at the annual convention of the *Theosophical Society* at Adyar in Madras, **AO Hume** proposed formation of a committee, so as to make necessary preparations for a session at Pune to be held in 1885.
- Members of the committee included AO Hume, SN Bannerjee, Narendra Nath Sen, Subramanya Aiyar, P Ananda Charlu, Sardar Dayal Singh, Lala Sriram, KT Talang and VN Mandalik.
- Before the formation of Indian National Congress, two sessions of the *Indian National Conference* had been held in 1883 and 1885 under the guidance of SN Bannerjee and Anand Mohan Bose.
- AO Hume was a retired British member of Indian Civil Services. He played an important role in the foundation of the Indian National Congress in 1885.
- Earlier, he founded the Indian National Union in 1884, which is considered to be the fore runner of the Indian National Congress.
- He served as the General Secretary of INC from 1885 to 1906.
- AO Hume published a pamphlet, an old men's hope in the Madras Session in 1887.

### Formation of INC

- Indian National Congress was finally formed on 28th December, 1885.
- The first Session of the Indian National Congress was held on 28th December, 1885 at Tejpal Sanskrit Pathshala, Bombay under the Presidentship of WC Bannerjee.
- In 1886, the delegates to Congress became 436. Moderate leaders dominated the Congress in its early phase. The moderate belief in the essential sense of justice and goodness of the British nation was strong.
- In 1889, a British Committee of Indian National Congress was founded under the Chairmanship of W Wedderburn (biographer of AO Hume) in London and a journal India was also started.

### The Safety Valve Controversy

There is a controversy over the actual motives of Hume in foundation of INC. It was started with the WC Bannerjee's statement in 1898 that Hume was acting under the direct advice of Dufferin. It was believed that at Dufferin's idea was to have a political organisation through which the government could ascertain the real wishes of the people and save the administration from any possible political outbursts in the country.

This theory (popularly known as *Safety Valve Theory*) got enough support from radical critics like Lala Lajpat Rai, RP Dutt etc. This theory however, has lost its basis with the opening of Dufferin's private papers.

Hume only took advantage of an already created atmosphere. Probably the exaggerated idea of Hume's potential influence in official circles and his being above regional loyalties made him more acceptable among Indians.

### The Prominent/Important Sessions of Congress

| Date           | Place     | President          | Related Facts   |
|----------------|-----------|--------------------|---|
| December, 1885 | Bombay    | WC Bannerjee       | Held at Gokaldas Tejpal Sanskrit Pathshala, Bombay. Earlier the session was to be held at Poona, but the venue was shifted due to the outbreak of Cholera at Poona. Attended by 72 delegates. |
| December, 1886 | Calcutta  | Dadabhai Naoroji   |   |
| December, 1887 | Madras    | Badruddin Tyabji   | First session to be presided over by a Muslim President.  |
| December, 1888 | Allahabad | George Yule        | First session to be presided over by an Englishmen.   |
| December, 1889 | Bombay    | William Wedderburn | A committee on Indian National Congress was endorsed.   |
| December, 1890 | Calcutta  | Pherozeshah Mehta  | Kadambini Ganguly the first Woman Graduate of Calcutta University addressed the session.  |
| December, 1907 | Surat     | Rash Behari Ghosh  | The session witnessed the split between the moderates and the extremists. The candidate of extremist at this session who lost the presidential election was Lala Lajpat Rai.                  |
| December, 1917 | Calcutta  | Annie Besant       | First Woman President. She gave first flag to Congress, Green and Red.  |

| Date           | Place    | President   | Related Facts   |
|----------------|----------|---|---|
| December, 1919 | Amritsar | Motilal Nehru   | Resignation of moderates like SN Bannerjee.   |
| December, 1924 | Belgaum  | Mahatma Gandhi  | The only session where Gandhiji was the President.  |
| December, 1925 | Kanpur   | Sarojini Naidu  | First session to be presided by Indian woman.   |
| December, 1928 | Calcutta | Motilal Nehru   | First All India Youth Congress came into existence return of Gandhi to active politics after 6 years.                                     |
| December, 1929 | Lahore   | Jawaharlal Nehru  | Poorna Swaraj Resolution; Congress Working Committee authorised to launch CDM. Nehru report got a decent burial.                          |
| December, 1930 |          |   | On account of the Civil Disobedience Movement no Congress Session could be held in 1930, but Jawaharlal Nehru continued as the President. |
| March, 1931    | Karachi  | Vallabhbhai Patel   | Resolution on Fundamental Rights and National Economic Policy<br>Pt Jawaharlal Nehru drafted the resolution on FR.                        |
| 1937           | Faizpur  | Jawaharlal Nehru  | First session to be held in village.<br>Demanded the formation of a Constituent Assembly.<br>Adoption of an Agrarian Programme.           |
| February, 1938 | Haripura | Subhash Chandra Bose  | National Planning Committee was set-up under the Chairmanship of Pt Jawaharlal Nehru.   |
| March, 1939    | Tripuri  | Subhash Chandra Bose, After defeating Dr Pattabhi Sitaramayya | Resignation of Subhash Chandra Bose (Rajendra Prasad took over) and formation of Forward Block.   |
| November, 1946 | Meerut   | Acharya JB Kripalani  | He was the President of Congress when India achieved independence.  |
| 1947           | Delhi    | Rajendra Prasad   |   |

## Struggle for Independence

- Indian National Movement was a struggle of Indian public at two fronts. At one front Indian public tried to become a nation and at other front fought against the British to become a nation state by restoring sovereignty to Indian people.

### Moderate (1885-1905)

- During this period (1885-1905) the Congress was dominated by such leaders who by their method of functioning were termed moderates or liberal. They appealed through petitions, speeches and articles loudly professing loyalty to the Raj. The methods of the moderates can best be described as Constitutional agitation.

### Demands of Moderates

- The political demand of Congress were moderate while its economic demands were radical and anti-imperialist. Expansion and reform of legislative councils, leading to popular control of administration.
- Removal of restriction on freedom of the press and the speech.
- Separation of the judiciary from the executive.
- By the beginning of the 20th century, the moderate nationalists put forward the claim of self-government within the British empire. Gokhale first made this demand from the Congress platform in 1905.

- Dadabhai Naoroji made this demand in 1906, in his presidential address at Calcutta Session of Congress.
- A strong point made by the nationalists during this phase was about the **economic drain of India**.
- In this context, they demanded the end of India's economic drain.
- Abolition of discriminatory laws.
- Opportunities for Indians in administrative jobs and holding ICS examination simultaneously in England and India.
- Abolition of salt tax, reimposition of import duties on cotton goods, reduction in high military expenditure were their other economic demands.

### Achievements of Moderates

- Creation of a wide national awakening.
- Popularisation of the ideas of democracy and nationalism.
- Exposed the exploitative character of British imperialism.
- In this context, the 'Theory of Drain of Wealth' popularised by the moderates played the most important role.
- Their major concrete achievements were the appointment of a Public Service Commission in 1886. The enactment of the Indian Council Act of 1892, which provided, some powers to elected local bodies.
- Their efforts resulted in a resolution of the house of commons (1893) for simultaneous examination of the ICS in London and India and appointment of the Welby Commission on Indian Expenditure (1895).

## The Extremists (1905-1918)

- The moderate policies of the early Congress disillusioned many of its younger leaders known as *neo-nationalists* or *extremists*. The extremists advocated, boycott of foreign goods, use of Swadeshi goods, national education, passive resistance and Swaraj. For some extremists, Swaraj referred to complete autonomy or independence and not just self-government as was declared by moderates.
- The Boycott of British made goods and use of Swadeshi or home made products was designed to encourage Indian industries. The idea of a National Scheme of Education was to encourage the boycott of government controlled universities and colleges.
- The extremists well understood and highlighted the negative role of Britain in India. They talked of democracy, constitutionalism and progress and talked of broadening the social base of the National Movement. They also realised that these objectives could not be realised without pressure tactics and some sort of direct action. The policy of the extremists yielded good dividends. The Partition of Bengal was annulled in 1911, which gave a new self-confidence and self-assurance to Indian nationalists.

## Causes for the Rise of Extremists

- There was a growing consciousness among the Indians of the exploitative character of the British colonial rule in India. The writings of early nationalist leaders had exposed the true nature of British Rule in India e.g. Ranade's essay on Indian Economy (1898), Dadabhai Naoroji's Poverty and Un-British Rule in India (1901), RC Dutt, Economic History of India (1901) etc. *Some of the repressive policies of the British Government which led to the discontent among the people and resulted in the growth of extremism were as follows:*
  - The deportation of Chapekar brothers without trial in 1897.
  - The enactment of law making it an offence to preach nationalism (1898).
  - University Act of 1904.
  - The enactment of the Indian Official Secrets Act, to restrict the freedom of the press (1904).
  - The controversial partition of Bengal in 1905.
- The immediate cause for the rise of extremism was the reactionary rule of Lord Curzon (1889-1905). Curzon considered the Congress as an unclean thing and seditious organisation.
- The *Calcutta Corporation Act* (1899), the Official Secrets Act and the *Indian Universities Act* created great resentment in India. The worst and most hated aspect of Curzon's administration was the *Partition of Bengal in 1905*. Curzon partitioned Bengal, ostensibly for administrative convenience, but in reality for curbing the growing nationalism. It is said that partition aided rather than deterred the forces undermining the British position in India.

## Prominent Extremists

### Bal Gangadhar Tilak (1856-1920)

- Known as *Lokmanya* to the Indians and as the Father of Indian Unrest to the British, he was regarded as 'one of the most dangerous pioneer of disaffection'. He began his political career as a moderate, but by the beginning of the 20th century became an extremist.
- He used religious orthodoxy as a method of mass contact through his organisation of the Ganapati festival (1893) and Shivaji festival from 1896 onwards. He was the first to give the slogan of Swarajya, Swadeshi and Boycott.
- He was a distinguished member of the Deccan Education Society and he was instrumental in founding the New English School, which later became the Ferguson College. He also edited two newspapers (Maratha in English and the Kesari in Marathi).
- In 1916, Tilak organised his own Home Rule League at Poona and declared 'Swaraj is my birthright and I will have it'.
- He played a prominent role in Anti-Partition Movement of 1905-08 and was responsible in making it an All India Movement. During Swadeshi Movement he declared, Swaraj is essential for the exercise of Swadharma, without Swaraj there could be no social reform, no industrial progress, no useful education and no fulfillment of national life.

### Lala Lajpat Rai (1865-1928)

- Popularly known, as the *Punjab Kesari*, he was the leader of the 'College faction' of the Arya Samaj. The Gurukul faction was led by Lala Munshi Ram. Lajpat Rai became an extremist leader in the beginning of the 20th century and played an important role in Anti-Partition Movement.
- He was the editor of the Punjabee and authored a book 'Unhappy India'. He had declared that political rights could not be won by an organisation which could not distinguish between begging rights and claiming them. In Punjab, the cult of Swadeshi was propagated by Lala Lajpat Rai. While leading an anti-simon procession he was wounded and later died of injuries.

### Bipin Chandra Pal (1858-1932)

- Known as the *Father of Revolutionary Thought* in India, BC Pal began his career as a journalist and started the Paridarsak (a weekly) and later became the Assistant Editor of Bengal Public Opinion and the Tribune. He started New India in 1901 to propagate his brand of nationalism revolving around the ideals of Swaraj, Swadeshi, Boycott and National education.

- He began his political career as a moderate, but later drifted towards the extremism. In 1902, he wrote, the Congress here and its British Committee in London are both begging institutions.

### Aurobindo Ghosh (1872-1950)

- Aurobindo Ghosh published *New Lamps for Old* in 1893-94 (While serving as a lecturer in Baroda) in which he criticised the moderate politics of the Congress. He described the Congress leader's pleas to the government on issues like Legislative Councils and simultaneous Civil Services Examination in London and India as playing with bubbles. He advocated the Doctrine of Passive Resistance in a series of articles in 1907 in *Bande Mataram*.
- Aurobindo played an important role in Anti-Partition Movement and propounded the theory of organised and relentless boycott of British goods, British System of Education, Judiciary and Executive.
- After his release from the jail, in 1910, he went to Pondicherry and thereafter concentrated on philosophical, spiritual and literary activities. Some of his books were *Savitri* (The longest epic poem in English), the *Life Divine* etc.
- Aurobindo Ghosh raised patriotism to the pedestal of mother worship and said. *I know my country as my mother. I adore her. I worship her.*
- In his work, Bhavani Mandir wrote our mother country is not a piece of the Earth, neither a figure of speech nor a fiction of mind. It is mighty Shakti composed of the Shaktis of all the millions of units that make up the nation.

### Partition of Bengal, 1905

- Among the Lord Curzon's administrative measures, the one that elicited the strongest opposition was the Partition of Bengal in 1905.
- Real attack on Bengal came as early as 1899 when Curzon reduced the number of elected members in the Calcutta corporation primarily to satisfy the European business interests in the city, who often complained of delay in the grant of licenses and similar other facilities.

### British Idea Behind Partition

- The idea of partition was first given by William Ward in 1896 (Chief Commissioner of Assam).
- Later, to meet the growing nationalist challenge in Eastern India, Curzon and his advisors, Sir A Fraser, (the Lieutenant Governor of Bengal), and HH Risley, (Secretary, Home Department, Government of India) searched for an effective answers and eventually, found it in the division of the Bengali-speaking people.
- The official statement made by Risley was, Bengal united is a power and Bengal divided will pull in several different ways. Similarly, Curzon also said, "The Indians only business was to be governed and it was sacrilege on its part to have any other aspiration". Another objective behind the partition was to split up the Hindus and Muslims.

### Road to Partition

- The Curzon scheme to partition Bengal came to be publicly known from the time the Viceroy wrote his minute on Territorial Redistribution on 1st June, 1903.
- The province came into existence on 16th October, 1905, by breaking up Bengal and its 41.5 million Bengali speaking people.
- After the Partition of Bengal the two new provinces that came into existence were East Bengal and Bengal.
- The truncated new province of Bengal with its capital at Calcutta was to comprise 11 District of West Bengal, the district of Darjeeling, as also the whole of Bihar and Orissa (Majority of the population being Hindu).

### Swadeshi Movement, 1905

- The initial objective of the movement was the annulment of Partition of Bengal. However, it was soon superseded by the greater objective of attainment of Swaraj.
- Aurobindo Ghosh came out with the theory of organised and relentless boycott of British goods, British system of education, judiciary and executive and the social boycott of the loyalists and civil disobedience of unjust laws. The boycott of British products was followed by the advocacy of Swadeshi and holding of Swadeshi melas. Charkha came to signify the popular concern for the country's economic self-sufficiency.
- An important aspect of the Swadeshi Movement was the emphasis placed on self-reliance or *Atmasakti* (Advocated by Rabindranath Tagore). Several exclusive Indian industrial ventures such as the Calcutta Potteries, Bengal Chemical Swadeshi Stores (Opened by Acharya PC Ray), Lakshmi Cotton Mills, Mohini Mills and National Tannery were started.
- The government made attempt to suppress the students by threatening to withdraw grants, scholarships and affiliations of the institutions to which they belonged, through the infamous circular of 22nd October, 1905 issued by Carlyle, the Chief Secretary of the Government of Bengal (the circular is also known otherwise as the Carlyle Circular).
- The Congress supported the Boycott Movement only for Bengal at its Banaras Session in 1905. Extremists wanted to extend the movement to the other parts of the country, but the moderates refused to accept this.
- In 1906, Session of Congress at Calcutta Dadabhai Naoroji declared the aim of Congress to be Swaraj like that of UK and other colonies.

- The four compromise resolutions passed at this session were—Swadeshi, Boycott, National Education and Self-Government. Here the demand for Swaraj was raised for the first time from the Congress platform.
- Indian Society of Oriental Art** was set-up in 1907. Nanda Lal Bose became the first recipient of scholarship offered by the society.
- A large number of national volunteer bodies or Samitis sprang up in. *Some of the distinguished society among them were as follows:*
  - Dawn Society (Named after the journal—Dawn) by Sachindra Mukherjee
  - The Anti-Circular Society
  - The Swadesh Bhandav
  - The Anushilan by Promotha Mitter
  - The Dacca Anushilan Samiti by Pulin Das
- Samitis preached the essential of Swadeshi and Boycott, took up social work during famines and epidemics, imparted physical and moral training, organised crafts and national schools and set-up arbitration committees and village societies.
- Many prominent Muslims joined the Swadeshi Movement including Abdul Rasul (the famous barrister), Liaquat Hussain (the popular agitator) and Guznavi (the businessmen). Maulana Abul Kalam Azad joined one of the revolutionary terrorist groups.
- With the split of Congress at Surat the Swadeshi Movement lost its major strength and force and was finally suppressed by the British through repressive measures like imprisonment and deportation of many of its leaders in 1908.
- However, the Swadeshi Movement was the beginning of the organised movement in India. The significance of the movement can be assessed from the fact that Mahatma Gandhi wrote the real awakening in India took place after the Partition of Bengal.

### Annulment of Partition of Bengal

- In December 1911, King George V and the Queen Empress visited India (He was the only British King to visit India).
- On 12th December, 1911 a magnificent coronation Durbar was held in Delhi, which was chosen as the seat of the imperial function.
- The official proclamation regarding the annulment of the Partition of Bengal and the transfer of British capital from Calcutta to Delhi was made at Delhi Durbar.
- After the annulment of partition the West and East Bengal were integrated and three separate states created
  - Bengal (Comprising East and West Bengal)
  - Assam (of same status it had in 1874)
  - Bihar and Orissa (finally separated in 1935).

### Hardinge Bomb Case

23rd December, 1912 was fixed as the date for the Viceroy's state entry into the new capital, Delhi. On that day, when the Viceroy and Vicereine, the ruling princes and senior officials were being taken in long procession through Chandni Chowk in Delhi, a bomb was thrown at the elephant carrying the Viceroy.

Hardinge was badly wounded. Rash Behari Bose threw the bomb. Bhai Bal Mukund was sentenced to death in the Hardinge Bomb case.

### Surat Split, 1907

- The differences between the moderates and the extremists widened during the Swadeshi movement. The issues being spread of Boycott movement outside Bengal, choice of the method for struggle, conflict of ideologies and clash of personalities.
- The extremist wanted to extend the idea of Boycott and Swadeshi to the regions outside Bengal and also to include the government services, law courts, Legislative Council and all other forms of associations with the British in their programme. The moderates on other hand were not in favour of this.
- The growing differences between the moderates and the extremists came to the fore at the Surat Session of the Congress in 1907, when against the wishes of the extremists who preferred Lala Lajpat Rai; Rash Behari Ghosh was chosen as the President.
- Finally, the moderates who were in majority gained complete control over the Congress organisation and the extremists were suspended from the INC.

### All India Muslim League

- Simla Deputation** The Partition of Bengal created a communal divide. On 1st October, 1906, a Muslim deputation led by the Agha Khan, met Lord Minto at Simla.
- The address presented by the deputation claimed a privileged position for Indian Muslims on the grounds of political importance, military service and the historical memories of their lost political glory. Minto gave a categorical assurance that the political rights and interests of the Muslims as a community would be safeguarded.
- The Simla deputation was followed in Eastern Bengal by Muslim meetings in support of the Partition of Bengal. Nawab Habibulla (or Salimullah) of Dacca, favoured by Lord Curzon, took the leadership of the Pre-Partition movement.

- A meeting was held at Dacca on 30th December, 1906, where it was decided to form a political association, called the *All India Muslim League* with three objectives :
  - To promote among Muslims loyalty to the British Government.
  - To protect and advance the political rights of the Muslims.
  - To prevent the rise among the Muslims of any feeling of hostility towards other communities without prejudice to other objects of the league.
- To propagate his Anti-League views Maulana Mohammed Ali started an English Journal *Comrade* and an Urdu Paper 'Hamdard'. He also started Al-Hilal, which served as a mouthpiece of his nationalist views.

### Indian Council Act, 1909

- Viceroy and the Secretary of state for India (Minto-Morley) decided to work out some scheme to reform the legislative councils. This culminated as Indian Council Act, 1909.
- It introduced separate and discriminatory electorates.
- For the provincial councils a provision of three categories was made viz. General, special and chambers of commerce.
- For the central council, one more category Muslims was added. This was for the first that, the seats in the legislative bodies were reserved on the basis of religion for Muslim. This is called as Communal Representation.

#### Demand for Separate Electorate

The Amritsar Session of the League, held in 1908, under the Presidentship of Sir Syed Ali Imam, demanded a separate electorate for the Muslims, which was conceded to them by the Morley-Minto reforms 1909.

Jinnah for many years opposed the league. In 1910, at the Allahabad Session of the Congress, he moved a resolution condemning the system of communal electorates.

### Home Rule Movement, 1916

- The Home Rule Movement was the Indian response to the World War I and represented the emergence of a new trend of aggressive politics. Annie Besant and Bal Gangadhar Tilak proved to be the pioneers of this new trend. However, the idea of starting a Home Rule League in India originated with Annie Besant.
- The definite campaign for Home Rule, began with the publication of weekly, the *Commonweal*, on 2nd January, 1914. Tilak started the Indian Home Rule League in April, 1916 and 5 months later in September, 1916 Mrs Annie Besant started the Home Rule League.
- Tilak's League was to work in Maharashtra (Excluding Bombay City), Karnataka, the Central province and Berar and Annie Besant League was given charge of rest of India.

- The Home Rule Movement had borrowed the term Home Rule from a similar movement in Ireland. The main objective of Home Rule League was to attain home-rule for India within the British empire, on the lines of the autonomous colonies of Australia, New Zealand etc.

#### Tilak's Home Rule League

- Tilak's Home Rule League, launched at the Bombay Provincial Conference held at Belgaum in April, 1916, was organised into 6 branches; Tilak launched propaganda in favour of Home Rule through Maharatta and Kesari.
- It published pamphlets in Kannada, Gujarati, Marathi and English.
- The demands included Swaraj, formation of linguistic states and education in vernaculars.
- It was during the Home Rule Movement that Bal Gangadhar Tilak was given the title of *Lokmanya*.

#### Annie Besant's Home Rule League

- Annie Besant had come to India from England in 1893 to work for the Theosophical Society. She had set up her headquarters at Adyar near Madras.
- Annie Besant's Home Rule League was formally inaugurated in September, 1916, in Madras, with George Arundale, as the organising secretary.
- Most of leagues work was carried on by Annie Besant and her lieutenants— Arundale, CP Ramaswamy Aiyer and BP Wadia.
- Annie Besant also brought out the papers *New India* and *Commonweal*. The Commonweal adopted as its cardinal programme, religious liberty, national education, social reform and political reform aiming at self-government for India within the British Commonwealth.
- The main aim of Weekly Commonweal was to popularise the idea of and achieving self-government for India within the British Commonwealth. Jawaharlal Nehru in Allahabad and B Chakravarti and J Bannerjee in Calcutta joined the league.
- The repression of the government only served to harden the attitude of the agitators and strengthen their resolve to resist the government.
- After Montague's Declaration (August, 1917) also known as August Declaration, Mrs Besant finally dropped her league, but Tilak continued his movement.

#### Lucknow Pact (1916)

*The Lucknow Session (1916) is memorable for the following two important developments :*

- The first was the readmission of the extremists.
- The second was the bond of alliance between the Congress and the Muslim League.

- The league at its Annual Session of 1915 in Bombay which was also attended by many Congress leaders (Gandhi, Malviya and Sarojini Naidu) appointed a committee to draw up a scheme of political reforms in consultation with other communities.
- During simultaneous annual sessions of the league and Congress held at Lucknow in December, 1916 both passed resolution separately for a joint scheme of constitutional reforms and reached an agreement to cooperate in the political field on the basis of a common programme. Tilak and Annie Besant dominated the Lucknow session.
- This agreement is generally known as the *Lucknow Pact* or the *Congress League Scheme*. The pact had resulted largely due to Tilak's effort.
- The Lucknow Pact exhorted the British Government to confer self-government on India as early as possible, to expand Provincial Legislative council and the Governor-Generals Legislative council and to provide for greater representation of the elected members on the expanded council.
- It further demanded that the powers of making appointments to the Indian Civil Services should vest in the Government of India and that the commissioned and non-commissioned ranks in the military and naval services should be thrown open to Indians. The pact also marked the formal acceptance of separate electorates for Muslims.
- The pact succeeded in getting the reforms through Montague Chelmsford Reforms of 1919.
- However, the All-India Hindu Mahasabha led the crusade against the Lucknow Pact, at its conference held in Lucknow, VP Madhav Rao, in his presidential address and attacked the principle of separate electorates.
- The Congress league or the Lucknow pact survived till the suspension of the Non-Cooperation movement in February, 1922, after the Chauri-Chaura incident.
- The basic defect of the Lucknow pact was that it was based on the wrong notion that Hindus and Muslims formed separate communities and therefore, the pact proved to be only a temporary truce.

## **Montague Declaration (1917)**

- The aftermath of the World War I, the rapid growth of the revolutionary activities and the popularity of the Home Rule Movement pressurised the British to effect a change in its policies and adopt a conciliatory attitude towards the demands of the Indian nationalists. On 20th August, 1917, Montague (Secretary of State of India) made, a historic declaration in the house of commons defining the goal of British policies in India.

- Shortly thereafter, Montague visited India in November, 1917, to ascertain the views of all shades of political opinion in India. On the basis of these discussions a detailed report on Indian Constitutional reforms was prepared, which was published in July, 1918. This report in turn formed the basis of the Montague Chelmsford reforms or the Government of India Act, 1919.

## **Second Split in INC (1918)**

- Reactions within the Congress sharply varied. The moderates welcomed it as the Magna Carta of India, while others criticised it as falling far short of the legitimate expectations of India.
- The division of opinion within the Congress on the Montague declaration ultimately resulted in the second split in the party, this time the moderates walking out. The INC in a special session (August, 1918) criticised the August declaration as disappointing and unsatisfactory and suggested important modification.
- The moderates led by Surendranath Bannerjee, supported the declaration in a separate conference (November, 1918).
- This brought about the second split in the Congress. The ultra moderates started a new party called the *National Liberal league* in 1918, later on known as *All-India liberal Federation*.

## **Revolutionary activities**

### **First Phase**

- Vasudev Balwant Phadke, known as Father of militant nationalism, gathered backward classes including Kols and Bhils and tried to create rebellion within British empire. But he was caught and deported to Aden. By 1902, four revolutionary groups were set-up in Calcutta and Midnapur :
  - (i) Midnapur Society by Sarla Ghosal
  - (ii) Anushilan Samiti
  - (iii) Atmonnoti Group
  - (iv) Yugantar group by Barindra Kumar Ghosh, Raja Subodh Malik and Hemchandra Qanungo.
- First political robbery was conducted in 1906, known as *Rangpur Dacoiti*.
- A bomb manufacturing unit was set-up at Maniktala (Calcutta).
- Kingsford attempt to murder case, 1908 Yugantar group planned to kill Kingsford, the Magistrate of Muzaffarpur, but failed.
- Aurobindo Ghosh was arrested and Khudiram Bose was arrested and executed in Hijni jail, Hazaribagh.
- There was an assassination attempt on the life of Governor-General, Lord Hardinge (December, 1912) by Master Amir Chandra, Awadh Bihari and Basant Kumar Biswas.
- In Madras, revolutionary activities were carried on by Bharat Mata Association under Vanchi Iyer and supported by VO Chidambaram pillai.

- Indian revolutionary activities outside India were based on the principle of absolute political freedom. *Prominent groups were as follows:*
  - **India House** by Shyamji Krishna Verma set-up in London. He also started the newspaper *The Indian Sociologist*. VD Savarkar was its member, who later started the secret societies Abhinav Bharat and Mitra Mela.
  - **Other Members** Lala Hardayal, VN Chatterjee, MPT Acharya, PM Bapat, VSS Iyer and Madan Lal Dhingra (assassinated British Officer Curzon Wylie in 1909).
- **Paris Indian Society** It was founded by Madam Bhikaji Cama. She started two newspapers Vande Mataram and Madans Talwar.
- **India Independence Committee** was set-up by Virendranath Chattopadhyay in Berlin.
- **Ghadar Party Movement** (1913) Indian nationalists including students like Tarak Nath Das, who published Free Hindustan Newspaper in North America helped in rising awareness about nationalism.
  - Similarly, Hind Association of Pacific coast was set-up in 1913 by Sohan Singh Bhakna and also started a newspaper, *Hindustani Ghadar*, edited by Lala Hardayal.
  - Soon activities of the association came to be known as **Ghadar Party movement**, which was first secular, democratic, revolutionary movement.
- Its headquarter was known as *Yugantar Ashram* in San Francisco (USA). They published the newspaper Hindustani Ghadar.
- In Punjab, Bharat Mata society under Kartar Singh carried the Ghadar movement. Similarly in Hong Kong a Sikh priest, Bhagwan Singh, carried the movement.
- The movement ended with the arrest of Lala Hardayal, beginning of World War and Komagata Maru incident (chartership of Gurudith Singh carrying Muslim and Sikh immigrants from Vancouver, but the British Government did not allow anyone to leave the ship at Calcutta and violent protests broke out).

### **Second Phase**

- Bhagat Singh founded the Naujawan Bharat Sabha.
- Kakori Train Dacoity Case 1925 — Ram Prasad Bismil and Ashafaqulla were accused.
- Murder of Saunders (ASP of Lahore), 1929 — Bhagat Singh was accused.
- Assembly Bomb Case (Delhi), 1929 — Bhagat Singh, Batukeshwar Dutta and Rajguru.
- Surya Sen was accused in Chittagong Armoury Dacoity, 1930.
- Udham Singh murdered General Dyer in London in 1940.

# Self Check

# Build Your Confidence

- 1.** Consider the following statements [SCRA 2012]

  1. The Lucknow Pact of 1916 promoted the spirit of unity between the Indian National Congress and the All India Muslim League.
  2. Tilak was opposed to the signing of the Lucknow Pact.

Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?

(a) Only 1 (b) Only 2  
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2

**2.** Who among the following rejected the title of knighthood and refused to accept a position in the Council of the Secretary of State for India? [IAS 2008]

(a) Motilal Nehru (b) MG Ranade  
(c) GK Gokhale (d) BG Tilak

**3.** Who were the main architects of the Indian National Conference?

(a) Surendranath Bannerjee and Anand Mohan Bose  
(b) Surendranath Bannerjee and Dadabhai Naoroji  
(c) BG Tilak and Aurobindo  
(d) None of the above

**4.** Which of the following movements can be said to have initiated the process of associating the workers with the wider nationalist struggle against British?

(a) Swadeshi movement  
(b) Home Rule movement  
(c) Non-Cooperation movement  
(d) Anti-Simon agitation

**5.** Match the following

| List I<br>(Authors)  | List II<br>(Books)   |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| A. Annie Besant      | 1. Conquest of Self  |
| B. EMS Namboodiripad | 2. Crisis into Chaos |
| C. Mahatma Gandhi    | 3. Golden Threshold  |
| D. Sarojini Naidu    | 4. Wake up India     |

**Codes**

| A     | B | C | D | A     | B | C | D |
|-------|---|---|---|-------|---|---|---|
| (a) 4 | 2 | 1 | 3 | (b) 3 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| (c) 4 | 1 | 2 | 3 | (d) 3 | 2 | 1 | 4 |

**6.** Consider the following statements

  1. Though the All Indian National Congress took up social reform issues from very beginning, but it was Gandhiji who gave top priority to the removal to untouchability.
  2. Bal Gangadhar Tilak denounced untouchability and resolved to remove it.

Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?

(a) Only 1 (b) Only 2  
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2

**7.** Consider the following campaigns

  1. Imposition of import duty on cotton in 1875.
  2. Against Arms Act of 1878.
  3. Against Inland Emigration Act.
  4. In support of Ilbert Bill.

Which of the above campaigns organised by pre-Congress associations before the struggle begins?

(a) 1, 3 and 4 (b) 1, 2 and 3  
(c) 2, 3 and 4 (d) All of these

**8.** Which one of the following submitted in 1875 a petition to the house of commons demanding India's direct representation in the British Parliament? [IAS 2002]

(a) The Deccan association  
(b) The Indian association  
(c) The Madras Mahajan sabha  
(d) The Poona Sarvajanik sabha

**9.** Dadabhai Naoroji organised 'East India association' to serve which one of the following purposes?

(a) To promote nationalism among the peasant of India  
(b) To discuss the Indian questions and influence British public to promote Indian welfare  
(c) To unite all nationalist leader under one organisation  
(d) To start an independent organisation apart from Congress

**10.** Consider the following statements

  1. The objective behind the Partition of Bengal, 1905 was to weaken the rising sentiments of nationalism.
  2. Partition of Bengal began a transformation of the Indian National Congress from a middle-class pressure group into a Nationwide Mass movement.
  3. Partition of Bengal suppressed the rising sentiments of the nationalism.

Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?

(a) Only 1 (b) Only 2 (c) 1 and 2 (d) All of these

**11.** **Assertion (A)** Earlier Congress leader did not adopt aggressive approach towards the British Government and followed a moderate approach.  
**Reason (R)** Earlier Congress leaders knew the limit of their activity.

**Codes**

(a) Both A and R true and R is the correct explanation of A  
(b) Both A and R true, but R is not the correct explanation of A  
(c) A is true, but R is false  
(d) A is false, but R is true



1. (a)      2. (c)      3. (a)      4. (a)      5. (a)      6. (b)      7. (d)      8. (d)      9. (b)      10. (c)

# Chapter twenty four

## Struggle for Independence

### Second Phase (1919-1927)

*Major consequence of the world war was the erosion of the myth of white man's prestige.*

*An impetus to the National movement was given by the impact of the Russian Revolution of November, 1917. The Nationalist movement in India was also affected by the fact that the rest of the Afro-Asian world was also convulsed by nationalist agitation after the war.*

- Montague described the Government of India Act, 1919 as a bridge between the government by Parliament and government by the representatives of the people of India. It was a transitional stage in the development of self-government.

#### The Rowlatt Act, 1919

- In 1917, the Governor-General Chelmsford had appointed a committee under the Chairmanship of *Justice Sydney Rowlatt* to investigate the nature and extent of revolutionary activities and to suggest legislation if necessary so as to deal effectively with them. The committee was known as the *Sedition or Rowlatt Committee*.
- In this act, they provided trial of offences by a special court consisting of three High Court judges. There was no appeal against the decision of this court and it could take into consideration evidence not admissible under the Indian Evidence act. The bill gave authority to the government to search a place and arrest a person without a warrant, detention without a trial for maximum period of two years was also provided in the bills.

#### Anti-Rowlatt Satyagraha

- Gandhi launched his campaign against the bill and for this, formed a Satyagraha sabha on 24th February, 1919 in Bombay.
- The Rowlatt Act gave powers to the government regarding the suspension of the right of Habeas Corpus. Gandhi inaugurated his Satyagraha by advising to observe a day of hartal.
- Gandhi's move of starting Satyagraha was condemned by liberals like Sir DE Wacha, Surendranath Bannerjee, TB Sapru, Srinivas Shastri and others like Annie Besant.
- These leaders opposed the Anti-Rowlatt satyagraha because they thought that it would hamper the reforms from the side of British Government.
- The date for hartal was fixed to 6th April, 1919. In Delhi, the hartal was observed on 30th March and ten people were killed in police firing.
- In Amritsar, Dr Kitchlew and Dr Satyapal were arrested on 10th April, 1919. This led to mob violence and government buildings were set on fire, five Englishmen were murdered and a woman assaulted.

#### Jallianwala Bagh Massacre

- After the hartal of 6th April, 1919, Punjab was facing a violent situation. Therefore, the Civil Government handed over the administration to the military authorities under Brigadier General Dyer.
- Dyer also banned all public meetings and detained all the important political leaders, including the two Congress leaders, Dr Satyapal and Dr Kitchlew, who were associated with the Reception committee for the Annual Session of the INC to be held on December, 1919.
- On 13th April, 1919, General Dyer ordered his troops to fire on a peaceful unarmed crowd, without warning, assembled at Jallianwala Bagh to protest against the arrest of Dr Satyapal and Dr Kitchlew the occasion was the Baisakhi celebration.

- According to official figure, 379 persons were killed, but the unofficial accounts gave much higher figure. The Martial law was immediately enforced in Punjab on the night of 13th April.
- In protest of the Jallianwala Bagh tragedy, Rabindranath Tagore surrendered the knighthood conferred on him by the British Government and Sir Sankaran Nair, a former President of the INC, resigned his membership of the Viceroy's Executive Council.
- After this massacre, Gandhiji withdrew this movement and called it as 'It was my *Himalayan Blunder*'.
- To enquire into this massacre, British Government appointed Hunter committee, its report was called by Gandhiji as a *Official Whitewash*.

## Khilafat Movement, 1919

- The Sultan of Turkey, ruler of the vast Ottoman empire, was the Caliph of the Islamic world and the Indian Muslims regarded him as their spiritual leader Khalifa. In the World War I, Turkey was defeated. The harsh terms of the Treaty of Sevres (1920) with Turkey further added the fuel. Thirdly revolts in Arab land engineered, at British instigation, against the Sultans made the Muslim sentiments in India to flare up, hence, the Muslims started the Khilafat movement.
- The main demand of the khilafatists was that, the Ottoman Caliph should retain his empire with sufficient temporal power to defend Islam, the Arab lands should remain under Muslim rule and the Sultan of Turkey should be the warden of the places sacred to the Muslims.
- MA Ansari demanded the restoration of the Arab lands to the Caliph, at the Muslim league's 1918 Annual Session in Delhi which was supported by the Congress.

## Course of the Movement

- In April-May, 1919, the All India Khilafat conference was formed in Bombay. At a conference in Lucknow in September, 1919, an All India Khilafat committee was set-up with Seth Chhotani of Bombay as President and Maulana Shaukat Ali as Secretary.
- Other leaders associated with the committee were Maulana Azad, Hakim Ajmal Khan, Muhammed Ali and Hasrat Mohani.
- Gandhiji was elected President of the All India Khilafat conference (November, 1919). The Amritsar Session of the INC (December, 1919) gave a great fillip to the Khilafat agitation.
- Lokmanya Tilak passed away in the early hours of 1st August and people all over the country observed hartal and took out processions, kept fast and offered prayers. Tilak Swarajya fund was created to collect money for movement.

- Finally, Gandhi succeeded in persuading the Congress leaders to support the movement. Finally, at the special Calcutta session (September, 1920), Congress endorsed the programme of non-cooperation. The Nagpur session of the Congress (December, 1920) ratified the resolution passed at Calcutta Congress Session. *The Khilafat Committee as well as the congress outlined four stages of non-cooperation i.e.*
  - Resignation of titles and honorary posts.
  - Resignation from civil services under the government.
  - Resignation from Police and Army services.
  - Non-payment of taxes for redressal of the Punjab grievances, rectification of the khilafat wrongs and the establishment of Swaraj.
- The All India Khilafat Conference held at Karachi on 8th July, 1921 called upon Muslim soldiers in the Indian Army to quit their jobs.

## Non-Cooperation Movement, 1920

- The Congress accepted to launch Non-Cooperation movement for two wrongs (i) Khilafat issue and (ii) Punjab wrong. The third main aim of Non-Cooperation movement i.e. Swaraj was added at Nagpur Session of INC December, 1920.

## Opposition to NCM

- Some leaders opposed the programme of NCM. Lala Lajpat Rai opposed the programme of Educational Boycott, CR Das opposed the programme of Boycott of Legislature and MM Malaviya and Jinnah opposed the goal of Swaraj.
- The Congress session at Nagpur started from 26th December, 1920, ratified the non-cooperation resolution, earlier passed at Calcutta (September, 1920).
- The Nagpur session was historic due to two important amendments to the Constitution of the Congress. *Firstly*, the goal of the Congress was changed from the attainment of self-government by constitutional means to the attainment of Swaraj by peaceful and legitimate means.
- Secondly*, revolutionary changes were brought about in the Congress organisation. *The changes were as follows:*
  - Formation of Working committee of 15 members.
  - Formation of an All India Congress committee of 300 members.
  - Formation of Congress committee from town to village level i.e. creating a hierarchy of district, Taluka and Village Congress committee.
  - Reorganisation of Provincial congress Committee on a linguistic basis.
  - Opening of Congress membership to all adults i.e. men and women of the age of 21 or more on payment of 4 annas as annual subscription.
- The programme of the Non-Cooperation movement had two main aspects:*

|                      |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|
| (i) Constructive and | (ii) Destructive |
|----------------------|------------------|

- The AICC meeting at Vijayawada on 31st March, 1921 outlined two more programmes:
  - (i) To collect 1 crore rupees for the Tilak Memorial Swarajya fund.
  - (ii) To introduce 20 lakh charkhas into Indian household.

### Growth and Spread of Movement

- The Non-Cooperation movement was the first real mass movement launched under Mahatma Gandhi. Thousands of students left schools and colleges and joined more than 800 national schools and colleges.
- The newly started national institutions like the Kashi Vidyapeeth, the Gujarat Vidyapeeth and the Jamia Millia Islamia and others accommodated many students.
- Many leading lawyers of the country like CR Das, Motilal Nehru, MR Jayakar, Saifuddin Kitchlew, Vallabhbhai Patel, C Rajagopalachari, T Prakasam and Asaf Ali gave up their practices.
- Between January and March, 1921, the districts of Rae Bareli, Pratapgarh, Faizabad and Sultanpur witnessed widespread agrarian riots under the leadership of Baba Ram Chandra.
- In late 1921, there was another strong peasant outburst which is popularly known as the *Eka movement* under the leader Madari Pasi.
- The *Bijolia movement* in Mewar and the *Bhil movement* under Motilal Tejavar acquired impetus from Non-Cooperation movement.
- The programme to start the civil disobedience was approved by the Congress session at Ahmedabad. Bardoli Taluq was selected as a place from where Gandhiji would launch Civil Disobedience campaign.
- On 5th February, Congress volunteers were fired at by the police at Chauri Chaura at Gorakhpur district in Uttar Pradesh. In retaliation, the infuriated mob killed 22 policemen.
- The Congress Working committee, which met at Bardoli on 12th February, 1922, called off the movement (the resolution popularly known as *Bardoli resolution*). The country was shocked at Mahatma's decision to call off the movement.
- Subhash Chandra Bose called it a *national calamity*.

### Swarajya Party

- In December, 1922, the Gaya session of the Congress, became a battleground between the supporters of the council entry and no council entry. Finally, the 'no-changers' led by Rajagopalachari defeated the 'pro-changers'. CR Das resigned alongwith Motilal Nehru as the President and the Secretary of the Congress (Gaya session 1922).

- CR Das with Motilal Nehru and others pro-changer on 31st December, 1922 announced the formation of the Congress-Khilafat Swaraj party better known as the *Swaraj party*. CR Das became its President and Motilal Nehru its Secretary.
- The swarajists got clear majority in the Central provinces; they were the largest party in Bengal and they fared quite well in Bombay and Uttar Pradesh though not in Madras and Punjab because of strong castes and communal currents. Justice Party in Madras and Unionist in Punjab, were more powerful.
- In the Legislative assembly, since swarajists were not in majority, a coalition of seventy members was formed known as the *Nationalist party* with the support of independents led by Jinnah and the liberals.

### Objective of Swarajists

- The immediate objective of swarajists was speedy attainment of full dominion status.

### Achievements of Swarajists

- In the very first session, Motilal Nehru put forward the national demand for framing a new Constitution.
- Rangachari moved a resolution requesting the Governor-General in Council to revise the Act of 1919 to secure for India provincial autonomy and dominion status.
- Motilal moved an amendment in favour of a Round Table conference to recommend a scheme of full responsible government.
- In the Central legislature, the swarajists forced the appointment of Alexander Muirhead committee (in 1924) to inquire into the defects of the Act of 1919 and to suggest remedies.
- When the recommendation of the Lee commission constituted under the Chairmanship of Viscount Lee to enquire into the organisation and condition of public services came for approval of the assembly, Motilal moved an amendment which was carried by the majority vote.
- The swarajists further succeeded in throwing out the budget forcing the government to rely on its power of certification.
- Further in March, 1925, the swarajists succeeded in electing Vithalbhai Patel, a leading swarajist, as the President of the Central Legislative assembly.
- Lajpat Rai joined the Central Legislative assembly as swarajists and accepted the deputy leadership of the party. ML Nehru accepted the membership of Skeen committee, which was set-up to report on the early Indianisation of the Army.

### Resignation of the Swarajists

- In the 1926 elections, though the Swarajya party won 40 seats in the Central legislature and half of the seats in Madras, in other provinces, it suffered badly. The swarajists finally walked out of the legislature in 1930.

### Important National Activities (1922-27)

Vallabhbhai Patel launched the Sarabandi (no tax) campaign in Gujarat in 1922.

All-India Khilafat Committee lost relevance after the abolition of Khalifa in Turkey by Mustafa Kamal Pasha in 1924. This led to the revival of All India Muslim League with Jinnah as its leader in 1924.

The Hindu Mahasabha a communal organisation of the Hindus founded in December, 1915 gained strength with MM Malaviya accepting its presidency at the Belgaum session of Sabha in December, 1924

Various Non-Brahmin organisation of South India joining hands to form a single All-India Body. Finally, All India Non-Brahmin Conference was held at Belgaum on 28th December, 1924 with A Ramaswami Mudaliar as the Chairman. The conference demanded communal representation for non-Brahmins both in elected bodies as well as government jobs.

**Akali Movement** intensified British authorities under fear that it may affect the loyalty of Sikh soldiers in the British Army as well as the Sikh peasantry.

To pacify Sikhs, a bill was passed in July, 1925 which created Shiromani Gurudwara Prabandhak Committee (SGPC) to manage the affairs of Gurudwaras.

**Nagpur Flag Satyagraha** was launched in mid 1923 against a local order banning the use of the Congress flag.

**Borsad Satyagraha** (1922) in Kheda district (Gujarat) was launched to protest against the imposition of a Poll Tax on every adult to pay for police reinforcement required to suppress increasing rate of dacoities. Finally, the tax was cancelled on January, 1923.

Ezhava Congress leader TK Madhavan in 1924-25 demanding temple entry for untouchables led Vaikom Satyagraha in Travancore, other lower castes like Nairs also participated.

Communist Party of India was formed on December 26, 1925 at Kanpur. P.C. Joshi was appointed its first General Secretary in 1935 and held the office till 1947. The Swarajists finally walked out of the legislature in 1930 as a result of the Lahore Congress resolution and the beginning of civil disobedience.

### Muddiman Committee (1924)

- In the Central Legislative Assembly, the Finance bill was rejected and thrown out in 1924. Swarajists led by Motilal Nehru introduced an amendment in 1924. They demanded the framing of an Indian Constitution by an Indian Constituent Assembly.
- As a response the government appointed a Nine Member Reforms Enquiry committee under the Chairmanship of Sir Alexander Muddiman (home member in the Executive council) to examine the working of Dyarchy of the Montague-Chelmsford reforms.

### Recommendations

- The minority (consisting of only non-official Indians) stated that the Act of 1919 had failed. It also opined that a Constitution was needed to be framed for automatic progress. Therefore, it recommended the appointment of Royal Commission. Lord Birkenhead the Secretary of State for India said that action would be taken on the basis of majority report.

### Butler Committee (1927)

- In 1927, the people of Princely States formed the State Peoples' Conference with a view to introduce self-government institution. This move threatened the interests of princes who sought the help of British in this matter. The result was the setting up of a Three Member committee consisting of Harcourt Butler, WS Holdsworth and SC Peel. Harcourt Butler was the Chairman of the committee.
- Purpose was to inquire into the relationship between the Indian States and the paramount power and to suggest ways and means for more satisfactory adjustments of the existing economic relations between them and British India.
- The committee was officially called the *Indian States Committee*. The committee visited 16 states and submitted its report in 1929.

### Recommendations

- According to the committee, the relationship of the paramount power with the state was not merely a contractual relationship, but a living, growing relationship shaped by circumstances, policy and resting on a mixture of history and theory.
- The committee laid stress on preservation of Princely State through British paramountcy.
- According to it, state should not be transferred without their own agreement to a relationship with a new government in British India responsible to an Indian legislature.
- Simon Commission substantially endorsed the Butler committees finding and agreed that the Viceroy should be the agent of the paramount power in its relation with the princes.

## Early Political Life of Gandhiji

- Gandhi's rise to power was 'phenomenal'. Suddenly, he arrived at the Indian political scene and came to the centre-stage of all activities against the British Rule. Gandhiji believed in Satyagraha, which was based on truth and non-violence. It was influenced by Thoreau, Emerson and Tolstoy. He was anxious to distinguish Satyagraha from passive resistance.

## Gandhiji in Africa

- Gandhiji reached Durban in 1893 to sort out the legal problems of Dada Abdullah, a Gujarati merchant.
- There, he was deeply shocked by the political and social disabilities which were imposed by law, administrative and social measures of the Europeans upon the Indian residents.
- He revolted against the racial injustice, discrimination and degradation to which Indians had to submit in the South African colonies.
- Gandhiji soon assumed the leadership of the struggle against these conditions and during 1893-1914 was engaged in a struggle against the racist authorities of South Africa.
- It was during this struggle that he evolved the technique of Satyagraha based on truth and non-violence.
- He founded a political association known as the *Natal Indian Congress* and also a newspaper called *Indian Opinion* with a view to educating Indians in political matters and giving publicity to their grievances.

## Gandhi's Success in Africa

- He used passive resistance or civil disobedience or Satyagraha for the first time against a legislation making it compulsory for Indians living in South Africa to take out certificates of registration. He also protested against restrictions on Indian migration.
- The Indians defined this law by crossing over from one province to another without producing the licences. In 1906, he set-up the Tolstoy Farm in Transvaal with the help of his German architect friend, Kallenbach, to house the families of the Satyagrahis.
- He led a struggle against a judgement of the South African Supreme Court, which invalidated all marriages not conducted according to Christian rites and registered by the Registrar of marriages. In 1909, Gandhiji released his book *Hind Swaraj*. The Gandhian ideas are illustrated in this book.

## Gandhiji in India

- On receipt of instructions from GK Gokhale, Gandhi returned to India from South Africa in January, 1915.
- Instead of immediately entering in Indian politics, he spent 1915 and much of 1916 touring India, visiting places as far apart as Sind and Rangoon, Banaras and Madras in order to get to know his homeland and to make himself known to his countrymen.

- His only excursion into politics was his demand (October, 1915) for the abolition of the system of indentured labour for manual work outside India.
- No Satyagraha was started because the Government of India abolished the system before the date fixed by him (31st July, 1917). His constructive work began with the foundation of the Sabarmati Ashram at Ahmedabad in May, 1915.
- Till the beginning of 1917, Gandhi was more of a freelance preacher and social worker than a recognised politician. Gokhale was his closest ally and teacher.

## Initial Political Activities

- It was through involvement in three local disputes in Champaran (In North Bihar) in Kheda (in Gujarat) and in Ahmedabad in 1917-18 that Gandhi emerged as an influential political leader. In Champaran, he took up the cause of peasants against landlords, in Kheda that of farmers against revenue officials and in Ahmedabad that of mill-workers against mill-owners.
- In every case, the strategy was Satyagraha and the principles were truth and non-violence. In every case, the real force working under Gandhi was 'mass participation'. Champaran struggle was the first struggle of Gandhi in India.

## Champaran Satyagraha (1917)

- The major problem at Champaran in Bihar was of the Indigo planters. The European planters forced the peasant to grow indigo on 3/20th of the total land area (tin katie system). Peasants were also forced to sell their produce at the prices fixed by the Europeans. When the German syntactic dyes replaced indigo, the planters demanded for high rents and illegal dues from the peasants in order to maximise their profit.
- Through tours in rural areas, he established direct contact with ordinary people and talked about their concerns in the language which they understood. This was a novel political technique; it had never been practiced by the educated leaders of the Congress.
- For the first time, the peasants were drawn into political agitation under a new type of leadership.
- For the first time in India, Gandhi was displaying that magnetic personality, which was to draw multitudes to him and to earn him the title of Mahatma and the nickname of Bapu. Under pressure from the Government of India, the Government of Bihar appointed a committee of enquiry (June, 1917). The recommendations of the committee were implemented, by the Champaran Agrarian Act of 1917. He was also member of this committee.

- Some of leaders associated with Gandhiji in this Satyagraha were JB Kripalani, Rajendra Prasad, Mahadev Desai, Narhari Parikh etc.
- Based on this movement a book *Neel Darpan* was written by *Dinbandhu Mitra*.

### Ahmedabad Satyagraha (1918)

- While Gandhiji was still engaged in his task in Bihar, he received a letter from Shrimati Anasuyabai. She informed him about the condition of workers in Ahmedabad mills and requested him to take up their cause with the mill owners.
- The terrible plague of 1917-18, led to a heavy decline in the number of workers in the major industrial city of Ahmedabad. In order to attract the workers, the mill owners started paying them 75% of their wages as plague bonus.
- The mill owners declaration of locking out the mills on 22nd February, 1918 made the situation even more serious. At last, the issue was resolved with the intervention of Mahatma Gandhi. The mill owners agreed to give 35% of wages as bonus. This offer was accepted by the workers.
- Gandhiji intervened in a dispute between the workers and mill owners and he took a fast unto death to force a compromise.

### Kheda Satyagraha (1918)

- It was first Non-Cooperation movement in India. In 1917 most of the *kharif crops* of the farmers of Kheda district in Gujarat were destroyed due to heavy rains thus, incapacitating them to pay the land revenue to the government. When the government refused to comply with the peasant's demand to remit the land revenues, Gandhiji advised them to withhold the payment and launch a struggle against the government on 22nd March, 1918.
- Gandhiji with his lieutenants like Vallabhbhai Patel, the young lawyer of Kheda (who had become Gandhiji's follower during this Satyagraha), Indulal Yagnik and many other youth, toured villages to encourage the peasants.

## Acquisition of Political Prominence

- Champanar, Kheda and Ahmedabad were the testing ground of Gandhian style of politics in India. These were non-violent mass based campaigns. In the process of these campaigns, Gandhiji was able to recruit a number of committed political workers, who played vital role in the national movement in the years to come.
- Prominent among them were Rajendra Prasad, JB Kripalani, Vallabhbhai Patel, Mahadev Desai and Indulal Yagnik. By the end of 1918, through three limited campaigns, he had demonstrated that Satyagraha was viable in India. By this time, he also attained considerable public position and achieved some authority in specific areas.
- What distinguished him was his weapon of political agitation which seemed to meet the need of the day. Satyagraha could involve people, bring them directly into the fold of nationalist agitation and give them a sense of participation.
- The Satyagrahas of Champanar, Kheda and Ahmedabad made Gandhiji very popular among the masses. He started emerging as a leader of the masses and won the admiration and respect of political workers. Finally, these struggle brought Gandhiji in close contact with the masses whose interests he pursued all his life.
- In fact, he was the first Indian nationalist leader, who identified his life and his manner of living with the life of the common people. Very soon he became the symbol of poor India, nationalist India, rebellious India and of course the independent India.

## Ideology and Thoughts of Gandhiji

### Satyagraha

- One of the most important aspects of Gandhi's political ideology is Satyagraha which means *truth* and *non-violence*.
- To Gandhi, Satyagraha was the only road to achieve Swaraj. Satyagraha entails non-violent, non-cooperation and self-sacrifice.
- The principles of Satyagraha were opposed to wrongs and injustice. A satyagrahi was not to compromise with evil, injustice and wrong. The suffering of the Satyagrahis are intended to generate compassion and awaken ahimsa in the hearts and minds of the contending party.
- The truth was to be established and a change of opponent's heart was to be brought about not by any forceful or violent means, but by arousing the conscience of the opponent or by inflicting of suffering on oneself.
- Gandhian Satyagraha is the weapon of brave. It was infact, a struggle without fear and cowardice. According to Gandhi, a satyagrahi must be fearless.

### Non-Violence

- The doctrine of non-violence is another important aspect of Gandhi's ideology. "My creed is non-violence under all circumstances. My method is conversion, not coercion; it is self-suffering, not the suffering of the tyrant." This statement by Gandhi captures the basic principles of non-violence.
- The Gandhian ideal of 'active ahimsa' entails not just abstaining from all violence, but fully embracing an enemy with love. It 'requires deliberate self-suffering' and therefore 'calls for the greatest courage.' Ultimately, the self-suffering of a practitioner of ahimsa is intended to awaken and convert the soul of the enemy, who will then be overpowered by pity and love.

### **Swadeshi**

- Gandhiji was a champion of swadeshi, which he believed was essential to Satyagraha and Swaraj. Swadeshi entailed complete self-sufficiency in the political, economic and religious life of the Indian people. Swadeshi was an integral part of Gandhi's overall vision for an independent India - one in which self-sufficient, self-governing village republics were the foundation of the country.
- Gandhiji believed that if the Indian masses followed the Swadeshi doctrine, "Then every village of India will... be a self-supporting and self-contained unit, exchanging only such necessary commodities with other villages where they are not locally producible."

### **Novel Ideas of Gandhiji**

- The novelty value of Gandhi's political method is of great significance. Beside Satyagraha, it includes civil disobedience, non-cooperation, court arrest, hartal, hunger strike, marches etc. These novel methods became an indispensable part of the overall nationalist programme and strategy. Moreover, they were used effectively and to a great extent successfully in our struggle for independence.

### **Gandhi and Imperialism**

- The ultimate aim of Gandhian struggle was not political freedom alone but a life of dignity for the masses. He believed that the mere removal of the British by the Indian rulers would result in nothing more than English Rule without Englishmen. He was of the opinion that the real enemy was the entire forces of imperialism and colonialism. It was these forces that gave sustenance to the exploitation of poor by rich and British rule was just a manifestation of that.

### **Socio-Economic Outlook**

- His concerns for Hindu-Muslim unity, for the upliftment of Harijans, for raising the status of women in the society, promotion of khadi, village reconstruction etc., are expression of broad social outlook of Gandhiji.
- The Socio-Economic programme of Gandhiji helped to spread the message of nationalism down to the lowest and most oppressed section of the society. This in one sense developed pan-Indian loyalty towards the Congress and National Movement.
- He was also instrumental in the abolition of the system of indentured labour.

### **Religious Outlook**

- His Hinduism revolved around a few fundamental beliefs: in the supreme reality of God, the unity of all life, and the value of ahimsa as a means of realising God. He had faith that "Religions are different roads converging to the same point". Because he saw all religions as essentially the same, he advocated mutual tolerance and respect between different religions to Gandhiji.

### **Constructive Programme**

- The constructive work is the significant aspect of Gandhian strategy. It included development of Khadi, cottage industries, spinning, women's upliftment, Hindu-Muslim unity, upliftment of Harijans, national education etc. In the course of time, these became symbolic of rendering one's contribution towards his country. The most important significance of the constructive programmes is that it facilitated the involvement of even those, who did not have aptitude and taste for political and Parliamentary activity and secondly it also helped in sustaining the sense of activism during the passive phases of the mass movement.

# Self Check

# Build Your Confidence



1. (b)      2. (b)      3. (d)      4. (d)      5. (a)      6. (c)      7. (d)      8. (c)      9. (d)      10. (a)  
11. (b)      12. (d)      13. (c)      14. (a)      15. (c)

# Chapter twenty-five

## Struggle for Independence

### Third Phase (1927-1939)

*The political atmosphere in the country was marked by a ferment of revolutionary and terrorist activities. Communalism was also growing as a festering wound, which erupted sporadically in riots and bloodsheds. Amidst this atmosphere came the sudden appointment of the Simon Commission in 1927.*

#### Simon Commission

- Lord Birkenhead, Secretary of State for India announced the appointment of a Statutory Commission under the Chairmanship of Sir John Simon on 8th November, 1927. Simon Commission was officially known as *Indian Statutory Commission*. All the seven members of the commission were Englishmen, who were the members of British Parliament.
- The commission was appointed to review the performance of reform of 1919 and suggested further reforms.
- White Commission with no Indian representative was greeted with strong protest. The Congress, at its session at held Madras in December 1927, resolved to boycott the commission.
- However, the league led by *Mohammed Safi* as also Justice Party in Madras, Unionist Party in Punjab, Central Sikh Sangh and All India Achhut Federation did not oppose the commission.
- The commission paid two visits to India (February-March, 1928 and October, 1928) and April, 1929), each time it faced boycott. The report of Simon omitted any mention of Dominion Status even as a distant goal and rejected all ideas of transfer of power at the centre.
- The proposals of Simon Commission were completely rejected by the major political parties in the country, including the Muslim league.

#### Nehru Report

- In response to the appointment of Simon commission and challenge given by Lord Birkenhead Secretary of State for India, the All Parties Conference was called at Delhi on 12th February, 1928.

- It was presided by MA Ansari. On 19th May, 1928 at its meeting at Bombay, the All Parties Conference appointed a committee with Motilal Nehru as its Chairman. The purpose was to consider and determine the principles of the Constitution for India.

- The committee consisted of Sir Tej Bahadur Sapru, Sir Ali Imam, MS Aney, Mangal Singh, Shoaib Qureshi, GR Pradhan, NM Joshi, MR Jayakar and Subhash Chandra Bose.

#### Recommendations of Report

- India must be given dominion status, which meant independence within the British Commonwealth.
- India would be a federation, having a bicameral legislature at the centre to which the ministry would be responsible.
- The Governor-General would be only the constitutional head with the same powers as the British Crown.
- There was no provision for separate electorate. Citizenship was also defined and Fundamental Rights were enunciated.
- The Annual Session of the INC held in Calcutta in December 1928, approved the Nehru Report and also served an ultimatum on the British Government to accept the Nehru Report on 31st December, 1929, failing which the party would launch another Mass Movement, with a new goal of Poorna Swarajya.
- The open session of the Muslim League meeting at Delhi on 28th March, 1929, rejected the Nehru report and accepted Mr Jinnah's Fourteen Points.

## Jinnah's 'Fourteen Points'

- The Fourteen Points were announced by Jinnah in Delhi on 28th March, 1929 at a meeting of the Muslim League. It did not accept the Nehru report on the ground that it discarded separate electorates and other demands of minorities and rather presented his Fourteen Points.
  - (i) The form of the future Constitution of India should be federal with residuary powers vested in the provinces.
  - (ii) A uniform measure of autonomy should be granted to all provinces.
  - (iii) All legislatures and other elected bodies should be constituted on the definite principle of adequate and effective representation of minorities.
  - (iv) In the Central legislature, Muslim representation should not be less than one-third.
  - (v) Representation of communal groups should continue to be by separate electorates as at present, provided that it should be open to any community at any time to abandon its separate electorate in favour of joint electorate.
  - (vi) Any territorial redistribution should not affect the Muslim majority in Punjab, Bengal and the NWFP.
  - (vii) Full liberty of belief, worship and observance, propaganda, association and education should be guaranteed to all communities.
  - (viii) No bill or resolution or any party should be passed in any legislature or any other elected body if three-fourths of the members of any community in that body opposed it as being injurious to the interests of that community.
  - (ix) Sind should be separated from the Bombay Presidency.
  - (x) Reforms should be introduced in the NWFP and Baluchistan on the same footing as in other provinces.
  - (xi) Adequate share for Muslims should be provided in the Constitution in all services of the state subject to the requirements of efficiency.
  - (xii) Adequate safeguards for the protection and promotion of Muslim culture, education, language, religion, personal laws and charitable institutions.
  - (xiii) No cabinet, either Central or Provincial, should be formed without atleast one-third of the ministers being Muslims.
  - (xiv) No change should be made in the Constitution by the Central Legislature except with the concurrence of the state constituting the Indian federation.

## Lahore Session of the Congress (December, 1929)

- Historic Lahore Session of the Congress was presided by Jawaharlal Nehru.
  - The Lahore Session of the Congress passed a series of landmark resolutions.
  - The Nehru Committee report had lapsed (i.e. dominion status was now not acceptable).
  - As per the Poorna Swaraj resolution passed at the Lahore Congress the word Swaraj in the Congress Constitution would mean complete independence.
  - All future elections were to be boycotted.
  - Round Table Conference, decided to be held in London, should be boycotted.
  - A Programme of Civil Disobedience was to be launched. The Congress Working Committee allowed Gandhi to determine the time place and issue on which CDM was to be launched. Gandhi decided to inaugurate the movement by violating the Salt Laws on the sea-coast at Dandi.
- On 31st December, 1929 Jawaharlal Nehru, the President of the Congress unfurled the flag of India's independence on the banks of the Ravi in Lahore.
- The Congress Working Committee, which met on 2nd January, 1930, decided that 26th January, 1930, should be observed as the Poorna Swaraj Day (Independence Day).

## Civil Disobedience Movement (First Phase)

- Gandhi placed as an ultimatum on 31st January, 1930 eleven points of administrative reform and stated that if Lord Irwin accepted them there would be no need for agitation. *The important demands were as follows :*
  - (i) The rupee sterling ratio should be reduced.
  - (ii) 50% reduction in land revenue.
  - (iii) Abolition of the Salt Tax and government salt monopoly. 50% cut in military expenditure.
  - (iv) Salaries of highest grade service should be reduced by half.
  - (v) Change Arms Act allowing citizens to bear arms for self-protection.
  - (vi) Protection for Indian Textile Industry.
  - (vii) Reservation of coastal shipping for Indians.
  - (viii) Release of all political prisoners.
  - (ix) Total prohibition of intoxicants.
  - (x) Carry out reforms in Criminal Investigation department.

## Dandi March (Salt Satyagraha)

- On 12th March, 1930, Gandhi started the historic march from his Sabarmati Ashram with 78 followers.
- After a 24 days long march, he symbolically broke the Salt Law at Dandi on 5th April, 1930. The breaking of the Salt Law formally inaugurated the civil disobedience.
- Soon the defiance of Salt Law started all over the country. In Tamil Nadu, C Rajagopalachari led a Salt March from Trichinopoly to Vedaranniyam on the Tanjore coast.
- In Malabar, K Kelappan, the hero of the Vaikom Satyagraha walked from Calicut to Payyanur to break the Salt Law.
- As a consequence of Salt Satyagraha, the Indian National Congress was declared illegal by the colonial rulers in April, 1930.

## Course of the Movement

- In United Province and Gujarat, a No Tax campaign was launched on 18th April, the Bengal revolutionaries led a seize to the Chittagong Armoury and fought a Pitched Battle on Jalabad hill on 22nd April under the able leadership of Surya Sen.
- On 21st May, with Sarojini Naidu, Imam Sahib and Gandhi's son, Manilal in front ranks, a band of 2000 marched towards the police cordon that had sealed off the Dharasana salt works.
- The Working committee in May, 1930 sanctioned; non-payment of land revenue in Ryotwari areas, non-payment of Chaukidari (village police) tax in Zamindari region and Forest satyagraha.
- The Viceroy took the initiative of releasing the Congress leaders and invited Mahatma Gandhi for talks which led to the Gandhi-Irwin pact and the suspension of the Civil Disobedience movement.

## Gandhi-Irwin Pact

(5th March, 1931)

- During the course of Civil Disobedience movement the Simon Commission report was published and to consider its recommendation the First Round Table conference was called in London in November, 1930.
- Some of the liberal leaders like Tej Bahadur Sapru, VS Shastri and MR Jayakar on their return from the First Round Table conference tried to persuade Gandhi on the same lines.
- Gandhiji initiated a talk with Irwin on 14th February, 1931, which culminated in the Delhi pact of 5th March, 1931. The pact is popularly called **Gandhi-Irwin pact**.
- According to the pact, the Congress agreed to join the Second Round Table conference for drafting the constitutional reforms on the basis of (a) Federation (b) Responsibility and (c) Safeguards or reservation in the interest of India for such matters as defense external affairs, minorities and the financial credit of India.
- On behalf of the Congress, Gandhiji agreed to discontinue the Civil Disobedience movement.
- The government agreed to release all political prisoners, except those guilty of violence and restore the confiscated property of the satyagrahis.
- Gandhiji requested for remitting the death sentence on *Bhagat Singh, Sukhdev and Rajguru* was turned down by the Viceroy.

## Civil Disobedience Movement

### (Second Phase)

- The Second Round Table conference (September, 1931) failed to satisfy Congress or provide anything substantial to the country.
- The Gandhi returned to India disheartened and disillusioned. Meanwhile Lord Wellington had succeeded Irwin as the Viceroy and had flouted many provisions of the Gandhi-Irwin pact.
- On 4th January, 1932, a fresh batch of Congress leaders including Gandhiji and Sardar Patel were arrested Gandhi was kept in Yervada prison (Pune) during Civil Disobedience movement and at Aga Khan Place (Pune) during Quit India movements.
- The announcement of Communal award (16th August, 1932) by Ramsay MacDonald (British PM) the strength and the pace of Civil Disobedience movement began to decline.
- In the background of the Communal award and Gandhi's fast unto death, the Civil Disobedience movement lost its momentum. After the Poona pact, Gandhi lost interest in the movement and got fully involved in the anti-untouchability struggle, which led to the foundation of Harijan Sevak Sangh.
- In its place, Mahatma Gandhi launched Individual Civil Disobedience on 1st August, 1933. However, the Civil Disobedience movement continued to linger till early April, 1934 when Gandhiji decided to formally withdraw in April, 1934.

## Impacts of Civil Disobedience Movement

- The Congress swept polls in most provinces in 1937.
- The left parties emerged as an-alternative in politics.
- Some Congress activist formed socialist group.
- Nehru and Subhash Chandra Bose emerged as leader.

## Three Round Table Conferences

### First Round Table Conference

- Sir John Simon recommended British Government to call a conference consisting of the representatives of both the British India as well as the Indian States, so as to take a final decision on the issue of constitutional reforms for India and by a declaration of Lord Irwin Round Table conference was called.
- The First Session of the Round Table conference began on 12th November, 1930. The British Indian delegation comprised 58 members, rest were British officials. Some prominent members who participated were as follows :

| Organisation      | Leader   |
|-------------------|--|
| Hindu Mahasabha   | MR Jayakar, MS Moonje  |
| Sikh              | Sardar Sampurna Singh  |
| Christians        | KT Paul  |
| Liberal           | TB Sapru, CY Chintamani, Srinivas Shastri  |
| Muslim League     | Aga Khan, Mohammed Shafi, Jinnah, Muhammed Ali, Fazlul Haq                             |
| Depressed Classes | BR Ambedkar  |
| Princes           | Akbar Hydari (Diwan of Hyderabad), Mirza Ismail (Diwan of Mysore), Maharaja of Bikaner |

### Second Round Table Conference

- Wellington succeeded Lord Irwin in Delhi in April, 1931. Sir Samuel Hoare, a leading conservative became Secretary of state for India.
- The Congress had suspended Civil Disobedience movement, but reiterated Poorna Swaraj as its ultimate political goal.

#### Participants

| Party/Ideology | Representative                        |
|----------------|---------------------------------------|
| Congress       | Mahatma Gandhi                        |
| Muslim         | Mohammed Iqbal                        |
| Depressed      | BR Ambedkar                           |
| Liberals       | TB Sapru                              |
| Capitalist     | GD Birla                              |
| Others         | Sarojini Naidu, MM Malaviya, Ali Imam |

- The Second Session made recommendation such as :
  - The composition of the Indian federation.
  - Structure of the federal judiciary.
  - The mode of accession of states to the federation.
  - Distribution of financial resources.
- It was agreed at the conference that responsible government would be established immediately, both at the centre and in the provinces, including complete control over finance, army, defence and external relations.

### Third Round Table Conference

- The Third Round Table conference was called on 17th November, 1932. The Congress boycotted it. The prominent members were TB Sapru and Ambedkar.
- The British Government, on the basis of the discussion at the three sessions, drafted its proposals for the reform of the Indian Constitution, which were embodied in the white paper published in March, 1933.
- The white paper was examined and approved by a Joint committee of the British Parliament (October, 1934) and a bill, based on the report of this committee, was introduced and passed in the British Parliament as the Government of India Act, 1935.

### Communal Award and Poona Pact

- On 16th August, 1932, Prime Minister Ramsay Mac Donald announced in the British Parliament the proposal on minority representation known as the **Communal Award**. The award reserved a number of seats in the Provincial legislature (Lower House only). According to this award, Muslim, Christian, Anglo Indians, European and Sikh voters would elect their candidates by voting in separate communal electorates.
- The award declared the depressed classes (officially described as scheduled castes) also to be a minority community entitled to separate electorates and thus, separated them from the rest of the Hindus. They also had the right to vote in the remaining general constituencies also.
- Mac Donald, however, promised to accept any alternative scheme mutually agreed upon by the Hindus and the depressed classes.
- Gandhiji reacted strongly to the proposal and wrote to the British Prime Minister on 18th August, 1932.
- He went on fast unto death on 20th September, 1932 to enforce his demand. The 20th of September was observed as a day of fasting and prayer. Temples, wells, etc were thrown open to the depressed classes all over the country.
- Pandit Madan Mohan Malaviya summoned a conference of various castes and political parties, including Dr BR Ambedkar to sort out the issue.
- On 25th September, 1932, the sixth day of Gandhiji fast, they arrived at an agreement in Poona, popularly known as **Poona pact**. *Poona pact between Gandhi and Ambedkar was concluded with the following terms :*
  - The Principle of Joint and Common Electorate was accepted, for all Hindus.
  - 48 seats in different Provincial legislature were reserved for the depressed classes in place of 71 (as provided in the Communal award).
  - 18% of the seats in the Central legislature were reserved for the depressed classes.
  - Adequate representation would be given to the depressed classes in the civil services.

### Election of 1937 and Congress Ministries

- The Lucknow Session of April, 1936, presided by Jawaharlal Nehru, Congress resolved to contest election.
- Jawaharlal Nehru in his presidential speech (Lucknow session) advocated socialism and took three socialists into the Congress Working committee i.e. Jayaprakash Narayan, Acharya Narendra Deo and Achyut Patwardhan.

#### All India Kisan Sabha

The Lucknow session was important from another point of view as well. It was during this session that the First Meeting of the All India Kisan Sabha was held under the Presidentship of Swami Sahajanand Saraswati.

The Faizpur session held at December, 1936, under the Presidentship of Jawaharlal Nehru, attacked fascism and Congress passed resolutions condemning Italian aggression of Abyssinia and Japanese aggression of China. In this session, Congress demanded the formation of a Constituent assembly.

*The session passed some important resolutions such as :*

- The people of the princely state should have the same right of self-determination as those of the rest of the India, but the struggle for liberty was to be carried out by the people of states themselves.
- The provincial units were asked to conduct agrarian enquiries.

## Elections

- The elections to the provincial legislatures were held in January–February, 1937. Congress won 715 out of 836 seats. In five provinces, it had a clear majority (Madras, United Provinces, Central Provinces, Bihar and Orissa).
- In NWFP, Assam and Bombay Congress emerged as the single largest party. In Bengal, Punjab and Sind, the Congress did not have majority. The Congress could not do well in the election to upper houses as the franchise, there was limited to the upper strata only. As far as reserved seats were concerned.
- The government therefore formed Interim Ministries (e.g. Nawab Chhatari of National Agriculture party formed his ministry in United Province and Sir Dhunjishah formed his ministry in Bombay).
- In July, 1937, the Congress formed ministries in the United Provinces, Central Provinces, Orissa, Bihar, Madras and Bombay. Later Assam and the NWFP also came under the Congress rule.
- In Punjab, the Unionist party and the Muslim league formed a coalition government.

### Ministries Formed in Different Provinces

| Province                     | Ministry   |
|------------------------------|--|
| Bombay                       | BG Kher  |
| United Province              | Govind Vallabh Pant  |
| Madras                       | C Rajagopalachari  |
| Orissa                       | Hari Krishna Mehtab  |
| Central Province             | Dr NV Khare  |
| Bihar                        | Sri Krishna Sinha  |
| North-West Frontier Province | Dr Khan Saheb  |
| Bengal                       | Fazlul Huq of Krishak Praja party, with the support of Muslim league, but later on Muslim league was installed with HS Suhrawardy as the premier. It remained in power till August, 1947 |
| Sind                         | Ghulam Hussain Hidayatullah and Allah Bakhsh   |
| Assam                        | Bardoli, supported by Congress   |
| Punjab                       | Sikandar Hayat Khan of Unionist party (Remained in power till March, 1947)   |

## Congress Ministries in Office (1937-1939)

- In all the Congress remained in power in eight provinces for 28 months. During this period, it made efforts to work for the benefit of Indians.
- In all the Congress ruled provinces the efforts were made to protect the peasant's from the moneylenders and to improve irrigation facilities.
- In the United Provinces and Bihar, Tenancy Bills were passed.
- The Congress Government in Bombay appointed a Textile Enquiry committee in 1937, which recommended a wage increase and health and insurance cover to worker.
- The Bombay ministry also introduced an Industrial Disputes act in November, 1938, based on the principles of arbitration, to prevent strikes and lockouts. In the field of civil liberties, all political prisoners were released and Constructive programme undertaken *The other major achievements of the Congress ministries were as follows :*
  - Reduction in salaries of ministries.
  - The declaration of Fundamental Rights.
  - Welfare schemes for tribals.
  - Carrying jail reforms.
  - Carrying out commercial and economic surveys and uplift of village industries.
  - Promotion of education, especially primary education through the introduction of basic education.
- The Congress Government also joined the efforts to develop planning through the National Planning committee appointed in 1938 by the Congress President Subhash Chandra Bose.

# Self Check

# Build Your Confidence



1. (c)      2. (a)      3. (d)      4. (c)      5. (a)      6. (c)      7. (a)      8. (d)      9. (a)      10. (d)

# Chapter twenty six

# Struggle for Independence

## Fourth Phase (1940-1947)

*The outbreak of the World War II and British unilateral declaration that India is party to war, without consultation with the Indian leaders in particular and its people in general, made the Congress to demand a clear cut definition of the British Government's war and peace aims applicable to India.*

### The August Offer (1940)

- Viceroy Lord Linlithgow issued a statement from Simla on 8th August popularly known as the '*August Offer*'. The main purpose of this proposal was to secure Congress co-operation during the World War II.
- The offer turned down the Congress demand for setting up the provincial National Government, but promised for
  - immediate expansion of the Viceroy's Executive Council by increasing the number of Indians.
  - a representative Constitution making body to be set-up after the war.
  - a war Advisory Council would be set-up consisting representative of British India and the Indian States.
  - dominion status in the unspecified future.
  - right to secede for some provinces.
- In this offer, the Viceroy had promised the Muslim League and other minorities that the British Government would never agree to a Constitution or Government in India, which did not enjoy their support.

### Reaction of August Offer

- The Congress rejected the 'August Offer' because there was no suggestion for a National Government and it encouraged anti-Congress forces like the Muslim League.
- The British however, went ahead with its implementation and accordingly in July, 1941, the Viceroy's Executive Council was enlarged from 7 to 12 members, of whom 4 were British and 8 Indians (as against 3 Indians earlier). But, no member of the Congress or the league joined the new council. The immediate impact of the failure of August Offer was the launching of Individual Satyagraha.

### The Individual Satyagrahas

- There were two opinions in Congress about the launching of Civil Disobedience. Gandhi felt that the atmosphere was not in favour of civil disobedience as there were differences and indiscipline within the Congress. While some leaders of Congress, socialists and the All India Kisan Sabha were in favour of immediate struggle.
- The August Offer had disillusioned the Congress. Finally, Gandhiji had a long meeting with the Viceroy at Simla in September 1940, after which, he was convinced that the British would not modify their policy in India.
- He therefore, decided to launch *Individual Satyagraha*. The aim of the satyagraha was to disprove the British claim of India supporting the war effort wholeheartedly.
- On 17th October, 1940, *Acharya Vinoba Bhave* (*the first Satyagrahi*) inaugurated the satyagraha by delivering an anti-war speech at Paunar; Bhave had been personally selected by Gandhiji for this.
- Mahatma Gandhi suspended it on 17th December, 1940 due to little enthusiasm it created. Jawaharlal Nehru was the second to offer Satyagraha after Vinoba Bhave. It was during Individual Satyagraha that Gandhi declared Nehru as his chosen successor. Individual Satyagraha was also known as *Delhi Chalo Satyagraha*.

## Cripps Mission, 1942

- As the World War II situation worsened (after Germany invaded Russia), President Roosevelt of the USA and President Chiang Kai-Shek of China as also the Labour Party leader of Britain put pressure on Churchill, to seek the active co-operation of Indians in the war.
- So, a mission headed by **Sir Stafford Cripps** (member of the British War Cabinet and a left-wing labourites) was sent to India to resume the dialogue between Congress and other political parties to join the British war efforts.
- The Congress argued that without the transfer of de-facto power and responsibility, the change contemplated would not be of any significance. The Working Committee had further objection to the composition of the Constitution making body, in which the representative from the princely states would be nominated by their rulers and not elected by the people.
- The Congress did not want to rely upon future promises. It wanted a responsible government with full powers and also a control over the country's defence.
- To the provision relating to the non-accession of province to the union, Gandhiji rightly described it as "an invitation to the Muslim League to create Pakistan". On the overall assessment, Gandhiji termed the proposal as a post-dated cheque on a crashing or failing bank.
- The Muslim League demanded a definite declaration by the British in favour of the creation of a separate state for the Muslims and also seats for the Muslims League on a 50:50 basis with the Congress in the Interim Government.
- *The league also rejected the Cripps offer on two grounds;*
  - (i) It did not recognise separate electorates for the Constitution making body.
  - (ii) That there was no clear cut acceptance of the demand for partition.
- The depressed classes—the Sikhs, the Indian Christians and the Anglo-Indians demanded more safeguards for their communities. The British Government also refused to accept the demand for the immediate transfer of effective power to the Indians and for a real share in the responsibility for the defence of India.

## Quit India Movement (QIM) or August Revolution, 1942

- The Japanese had reached India's Eastern frontier. In May 1942, Congress Working Committee adopted a resolution calling for complete non-violent non-co-operation with any forces invading India.
- Gandhiji came to believe that "the presence of the British in India is an invitation to Japan to invade India and their withdrawal removes the bait".
- On 14th July, 1942, the meeting of Congress Working Committee held at Wardha passed the Quit India Resolution. Gandhiji asked the British 'to leave India in God's hand'.
- During Quit India Movement, Gandhi gave the slogan of 'Do or Die'. The Historic August meeting took place at **Gowalia Tank** in Bombay and this place is now known as the August Kranti Maidan.

## Course of Movement

- The AICC meeting ended at around midnight on 8th August, 1942. On the morning of 9th August, police arrested Mahatma Gandhi, Maulana Abul Kalam Azad and other eminent Congress leaders.
- From 9th-13th August, 1942, there were widespread disturbances in Bombay, Ahmedabad, Poona, Delhi etc and the events of these 4 days in August, 1942 are known as the Great August Uprising. A parallel government was established in Satara (Maharashtra), which continued to function for a long time.
- In Bengal, Tamluk Jatiya Sarkar functioned for a long time in Midnapore district.
- The longest running parallel government was run by Chittu Pandey in Balia (*Uttar Pradesh*).
- It now took the shape of revolutionary activities directed against blowing up of communication networks and attack on police personnel. The prominent members of underground movement were Achyut Patwardhan, Aruna Asaf Ali, Ram Manohar Lohia, Sucheta Kripalani, Chootubhai Puranik, Biju Patnaik, RP Goenka etc.
- Later **Jaiprakash Narayan** and **Ramnandan Mishra** joined the underground movement after escaping from Hazaribagh jail on 9th November, 1942. The most significant act of the underground movement was the establishment of **Congress Radio** with **Usha Mehta** as its announcer.

## Responses and Trend

- The Quit India Movement got a massive response from the people of Bombay, Andhra, Bihar, Gujarat, Orissa, Assam, Bengal, Karnataka etc, but the responses in Punjab, Sind, NWFP etc were weak. Congress was declared illegal. Therefore, the Congress Committee was revived under different names—Congress Workers Assembly or Representative Assembly of Congressmen rendering the ban on Congress Committees ineffective.

### Reaction of Other Parties

The Muslim League kept aloof from the movement, but some members of Muslim Community extended support by providing shelter to underground workers. The Hindu Mahasabha condemned the movement.

The Communist Party of India opposed the movement. The princes and landlords were supporting the British War effort and did not sympathise with the movement. Some Congressmen like Rajagopalachari and Bhulabhai Desai did not participate in

### Repression by the Government

- The government used airplanes to gun down people at various places. There were countless lathicharge, floggings and imprisonments.
- Gandhiji commenced a fast on 10th February, 1943 in jail. He declared the fast would last for 21 days. Groups of people secretly reached Poona to offer Satyagraha outside the Aga Khan Palace, where Gandhiji was being held in detention.
- The native State of Awadh whose ruler was pro-nationalist and has got the Constitution of his state drafted by Gandhiji, provided invaluable support by offering shelter to the Prati Sarkar activist.

#### Parallel Government Established During Quit India Movement

| Place                 | Ruler   |
|-----------------------|---|
| Tamluk (Midnapur)     | Jatiya Sarkar under Satish Samant   |
| Talcher (Orissa)      | Lakshman Nayak  |
| Satara (Maharashtra)  | Prati Sarkar under Nana Patil.  |
| Balia (East Province) | Chittu Pandey first one to come into being; Chittu Pandey called himself a Gandhian |

### Subhash Chandra Bose and INA

- He was born in 1897. He graduated from Calcutta University, studied Philosophy in Cambridge and qualified for the Indian Civil Services. His political mentor was Deshbandhu Chittaranjan Das.
- He was elected as Mayor of Calcutta while in jail, in 1932.
- In 1939, he defeated Gandhiji's nominee Pattabhi Sitaramayya to be re-elected Congress President.
- Rabindranath Tagore regarded him as *deshnayak*. Subhash Chandra Bose founded the Forward Bloc, in January, 1941.
- He made anti-British propaganda from the Berlin Radio Station and raised free India units with the Indian prisoners of war in Germany.

### Indian National Army (INA)

- Major Fujiwara, a Japanese Army Officer persuaded Captain Mohan Singh, a prisoner of war, to work in collaboration with the Japanese for India's freedom. Mohan Singh first conceived the idea of the INA in Malaya.
- In March 1942, a conference of Indians was held in Tokyo and they formed the Indian Independence League. The major role in its formation was played by Ras Behari Bose.
- This was followed by a conference in Bangkok (June 1942) where Ras Behari Bose was elected as President of the league and a decision was taken to raise the *Indian National Army* or *Azad Hind Fauj* to fight for India's independence. Bangkok conference also invited Subhash to come to Japan.
- Ras Behari Bose resigned from the chairmanship of Indian Independence League in favour of Subhash Chandra Bose, who was also named as Supreme Commander of INA.
- Bose returned to Singapore and formed the Provincial Government of Free India (*Azad Hind Sarkar*) on 21st October, 1943. In November 1943, the Japanese announced their decision to handover the administration of Andaman and Nicobar islands to the INA. Japanese Government promised full support to INA to enable India to achieve full independence. Bose renamed Andaman and Nicobar as Shaheed and Swaraj.
- On March 1944, the INA commenced its military offensive and advanced towards Assam through Burma and crossed Indian frontier on 18th March, 1944. The INA soldiers reached Kohima in Nagaland and captured it in May 1944. However, the INA failed to capture Imphal due to failure of Japanese to supply the necessary material and air cover and due to advancing monsoon.
- Meanwhile, the status of war turned against Japan and the British troops recaptured Rangoon in May, 1945 and the INA troops were forced to surrender and made prisoner. Three months later, Subhash Chandra Bose died in an air crash near Taiwan in August, 1945.
- Bose set-up two INA headquarters i.e. in Rangoon and in Singapore. The INA had three fighting brigades named after Gandhiji, Azad and Nehru. Soon, other brigades were raised namely, the Subhash brigade and the Rani Jhansi brigade. The Rani Jhansi brigade was the women's brigade of INA. The overseas Indians contributed heavily in terms of money and material.
- Bose in a broadcast on Azad Hind Radio had addressed Gandhiji as the Father of Nation. Gandhiji returned the compliment by describing, Subhash as *The Prince among Patriots*. The slogan of INA were *Jai Hind* and *Delhi Chalo*.

## The INA Trails

- The trial of INA prisoners began on 5th November, 1945 at the historic Red Fort, Delhi. Some prominent INA officers put on trial were General Shah Nawaz, Gurdial Singh Dhillon, Prem Sehgal etc.
- The AICC at its session held in Bombay from 21st to 23rd September, 1945 adopted a strong resolution declaring its support for the cause of INA soldiers. The Congress organised an INA Relief and Enquiry Committee. Tej Bahadur Sapru, KN Katju, Jawaharlal Nehru and Asaf Ali, under the leadership of Bhulabhai Desai took up the defence of the INA prisoners in the trial.

## Rajagopalachari Formula (1944)

- C Rajagopalachari, who had resigned from the Congress in 1943 realised the necessity of a settlement between the Congress and the Muslim League for the attainment of independence of India, evolved in 1944 and a formula to hold talks with Jinnah.
- *The main contents of this formula were as follows:*
  - The Muslim League while endorsing the Indian demand for independence should cooperate with the Congress in the formation of Provincial Interim Government for the transitional period.
  - After the end of war, a commission to be appointed for demarcation of contiguous districts in the North-West and North-East, which had absolute Muslim majority.
  - Plebiscite for inhabitants in them on the question of separate state on the basis of adult suffrage.
  - It will be open to all parties to advocate their point of view before the plebiscite is held.
  - In the case of separation, essential common services like defence, commerce, communication and other essential sectors were to be run together.
  - Any transfer of population shall only be on an absolute voluntary basis.
  - The scheme would only be implemented after the full transfer of power by the British.
- Jinnah turned down Rajagopalachari proposal saying that it offered a 'Mutilated and moth-eaten Pakistan', but agreed to hold talks with Gandhi.
- Jinnah demanded that the Muslims alone were to be entitled to vote for partition and not the whole population of the disputed areas. Gandhiji refused to accept this as it was based on Two-Nation Theory.

## Desai-Liaquat Proposals (1945)

- Gandhiji directed Bhulabhai Jivanji Desai to make another attempt to appease the league leaders and find a way, out of the 1942-45 political impasse.
- Desai being the leader of the Congress in the Central Assembly and a friend of Liaquat Ali (Deputy Leader of the Muslim League), met him in January 1945, gave him proposals for the formation of Interim Government at the centre. After Desai's declaration at Peshawar on 22nd April, 1945. Liaquat Ali published the list of the agreements.

*These agreements are as follows:*

- Nomination of equal number of persons by both in the central executive.
- Representation of the minorities in particular of the Scheduled Castes (SCs) and the Sikhs.
- The government was to be formed and was to function with the framework of the existing Government of India Act, 1935.

## Wavell Plan (1945)

- Since the resignation of Congress Ministries in 1939, there was a kind of political deadlock in the country. In an attempt to resolve the deadlock in India, in March 1945, Viceroy went to England for consultation.
- *Viceroy Lord Wavell* to create conducive atmosphere for dialogue ordered on 14th June, 1945, the release of all the Congress Working Committee members. On this day, Wavell broadcast a plan, popularly known as **Wavell Plan**.
- The Wavell Plan proposed for the formation of a new Executive Council at the centre, in which all the members except the Viceroy and Commander-in-Chief would be Indian. Moreover, all the portfolios except defence were to be under the control of Indian members.
- In the proposed Executive Council which was to have 14 members, the Muslims who constituted only about 25% of the total population of India were given the right to be over represented by selecting six representatives.

## Cabinet Mission Plan (1946)

- The decision to send Cabinet Mission was taken on 22nd January, 1946. On 19th February, 1946, the British Prime Minister CR Attlee Government announced in the House of Lords about the mission and the plan to quit India. A high-powered mission of three British Cabinet members: (Sir Pathick-Lawrence (*Secretary of State for India*)), Sir Stafford Cripps, (*President of the Board of Trade*) and AV Alexander, (*first Lord of Admiralty*) reached Delhi on 24th March, 1946.
- The purpose of the mission was to find out ways and means for the peaceful transfer of power in India, to suggest measures for the formation of a Constitution making machinery and also to set-up Interim Government.

### Purpose of Cabinet Mission Plan

- On 16th May, 1946, the Cabinet Mission announced its own recommendations which were as follows:
  - The unity of India had to be retained.
  - It rejected the league's demand for a full-fledged Pakistan on the ground that it would not solve the communal minority problem. On the other hand, partition would create many serious problems related to defence, communication etc.
  - It proposed a very loose union of all the Indian territories (comprising both British India and princely states) under a centre that would control merely the defence, the foreign affairs and the communication. The union would have the powers necessary to raise the finances to manage these subjects.
  - All subjects other than union subjects and residuary power would vest in the provinces of British India.
  - The princely state would retain all subjects and all residuary power other than those ceded to the union.
  - The provincial legislatures would then elect a Constituent Assembly or a Constitution making body with each province being allotted a specified number of seats proportionate to its population (roughly in the ratio of one representative to a million population).
  - The proposed Constituent Assembly was to consist of 292 members from British India and 93 from the Indian States.
  - The British India members were to be divided into 210 General, 78 Muslims and 4 Sikh seats.
  - In the preliminary meeting, the assembly was to elect not only a Chairman and other office bearers, but also an Advisory Committee.
  - The members so elected will divide up into three sections:*
    - (i) Section A for the non-Muslim majority provinces (Bombay, the United Provinces, Bihar, the Central Provinces, Orissa and Madras).
    - (ii) Section B for the Muslim-majority provinces in the North-West (Sind, NWFP and Punjab).
    - (iii) Section C which would consist of Bengal and Assam, here Muslims had small majority over the rest. Among the Chief Commissioners' provinces, three i.e., Delhi, Ajmer-Marwar and Coorg would join Group A whereas one i.e., Baluchistan would join Group B.
  - All these sections would have the authority to draw up provincial Constitution and if necessary, group Constitution and setting up thereby provincial and sectional legislature and executives.
  - After the first general election, a province could come out of a group. After 10 years, a province could call for reconsideration of group or union Constitution.
- The grouping of provinces was devised to satisfy the Muslim League, so as to give it a substance of Pakistan to exercise almost complete autonomy in Muslim majority provinces.
- The Congress further wanted the grouping to be optional (because of the opposition of NWFP and Assam of their being dragged into Section B and C), whereas the league wanted the grouping to be compulsory.

- The Akali Sikhs attacked the proposals on the ground that the inclusion of the Sikh Community in the North-Western Muslim Block (Group B) would leave the Sikhs at the mercy of the Muslims and imperil Sikh religion and culture.

### Direct Action Day

The league decided on 30th July, 1946 that **16th August, 1946** would be observed as **Direct Action Day** throughout the country. The Bengal Government led by the league leader **HS Suhrawardy** had declared, 16th August, a public holiday. In Calcutta, on 16th August, the league organised public demonstration and hartal, which turned into clashes and rioting all over the city.

### Interim Government

- On 12th August, 1946, the Viceroy Lord Wavell invited Congress to form the government under the leadership of Jawaharlal Nehru, which finally came into being on 2nd September, 1946. The Muslim League kept out, initially.
- On 13th October, the Muslim League decided to join the Interim Government.
- On 26th October, five nominees of the league joined the government. Congress appointees resigned to make room for the league nominees (two seats were already vacant while Mr Sarat Bose, Syed Ali Zahir and Sir Shafat Ahmed Khan resigned).

### Ministers of Various Departments

| Minister             | Department   |
|----------------------|--|
| Jawaharlal Nehru     | Vice-President of the Executive Council, External Affairs and Commonwealth Relations |
| Vallabhbhai Patel    | Home, Information and Broadcasting   |
| Baldev Singh         | Defence  |
| Dr John Matthai      | Industries and Supplies  |
| C Rajagopalachari    | Education  |
| CH Bhabha            | Works, Mines and Power   |
| Rajendra Prasad      | Food and Agriculture   |
| Asaf Ali             | Railways   |
| Jagjivan Ram         | Labour   |
| Liaquat Ali Khan     | Finance (Shanmugam Chettiar after Liaquat Ali's resignation)                         |
| TT Chundrigar        | Commerce   |
| Abdur Rab Nishtar    | Communication  |
| Ghazanfar Ali Khan   | Health   |
| Jogendra Nath Mandal | Law  |

### Constituent Assembly

- The election to the Constituent Assembly was held in July, 1946. Out of the total 292 seats allotted to British India, the Congress won 201; the Muslim League 73; the independents 8 and 6 members from other parties. Four seats remained vacant because of the Sikh refusal to join the assembly.

- The Constituent Assembly met for the first time on 9th December, 1946 in the library of the Council Chamber, Delhi and 205 members attended the meet. The league representatives and the nominees of the princely states abstained. On 11th December, the assembly elected Dr Rajendra Prasad as its permanent President.

### Objective Resolution

The most important resolution known as the *objective resolution* which declared the assembly's firm and solemn resolve that India would be an independent sovereign state, was adopted on 22nd January, 1947. It was later to be incorporated into the Preamble of the Indian Constitution. The league in context of its decision, rejecting the Cabinet Mission Plan refused to join the Constituent Assembly.

### Mountbatten Plan, 1947

- The British Prime Minister Attlee announced on 20th February, 1947 in the House of Common that British would withdraw from India by 30th June, 1948, this was known as *Attlee's Declaration*.
- Attlee believed that announcement of the fixed date for the British withdrawal from India would bring pressure on the Indians to settle their differences before them. Lord Mountbatten, the 34th and the last British Governor-General and Viceroy, arrived in India on 22nd March, 1947.
- Mountbatten was convinced that partition was the only choice. After the reluctant consent of the Congress for the partition of India, Lord Mountbatten held final discussion with the Congress, the league and the Sikh leaders, to seek their agreement on his Partition Plan. Shortly, after this, Lord Mountbatten paid a visit to London for consultation in May 1947.
- According to the plan, India would be divided, but in a manner that maximum unity was maintained, Pakistan would be created, but it would be as small as possible. The plan declared that power would be handed over by 15th August, 1947 on the basis of dominion status to India and Pakistan. The plan laid down the procedure by which power will be transferred.

*The procedure are as follows:*

- The Provincial Legislative Assembly of Bengal and Punjab would meet in two parts separately, one representing the Muslim majority district and the other representing the remaining district, to decide by vote for the partition of the province.
- In the case of Sind and Baluchistan, Legislative Assembly was to take its own decision at a special meeting.
- A provision of referendum was provided for in the case of the NWFP and Muslim majority district of Sylhet.
- With regard to the Indian States, the British Government would cease to exercise the powers of paramountcy.
- It would then be open to the states to enter into political relation with the successor government. The plan also made provisions for the setting up of a Boundary Commission to demarcate boundaries in case, partition was to be effected.

- Mountbatten delayed the announcement of Boundary Commission Award, even though it was ready by 12th August, 1947 which aggravated the partition tragedy.
- The provincial assemblies of East Bengal, West Punjab and Sind voted for Pakistan. In Baluchistan, the decision to join Pakistan was made by a meeting of the Quetta Municipality. In the North-West frontier province and Sylhet, the majority voted in favour of joining Pakistan.
- The Congress Working Committee, which met on 3rd June, 1947, approved the Partition Plan. The AICC which met in New Delhi on 14th-15th June ratified the proposal.
- Pandit Govind Vallabh Pant** moved the resolution for ratification. Pandit Govind Vallabh Pant while moving the resolution had said, "This was the only way to achieve freedom and liberty for the country".

### Some Nationalist Leaders who Disapproved the Plan

- Frontier Gandhi regarded the partition as treachery on the part of the Congress and felt that "The Khudai Khidmatgars were being thrown to the wolves".
- They even boycotted the referendum held in NWFP. Khan Abul Gaffar Khan wanted an independent Pathan State in NWFP.
- Suhrawardy and Abul Hasan were for an independent united Bengal. The Hindu Mahasabha too opposed the partition.
- The non-Muslim majority areas in Punjab and in Bengal, as also the entire province of Assam (except a part of Sylhet) remained within the boundaries of India.

### Indian Independence Act

The British Government introduced in Parliament on 4th July, 1947- *The Indian Independence Bill*, which was enacted on 18th July.

The act provided for the partition of India and the establishment of two dominions (India and Pakistan) from 15th August, 1947. The legislature of each dominion would have full power to make laws for that dominion.

The territories of the dominion of India would include the whole of British India exclusive of the territories constituting Pakistan, i.e. West Punjab, Baluchistan, NWFP, Sind and East Bengal. The exact boundaries of the two dominions would be determined by a Boundary Commission.

## Partition of India

- Communal riots, which began in Calcutta on 16th August with the observance of the Direct Action Day, spread like a chain-reaction. Jinnah blamed Gandhiji, the Viceroy and the British.
- Mountbatten's judgement in the summer of 1947, that division of the country was the only practical solution, was accepted by the three main parties i.e., the British Government, the Indian National Congress and the All India Muslim League.
- The partition of India was a personal triumph for Jinnah. Political developments finally convinced Congress leaders that it was imperative to secure immediate British withdrawal, even if it meant acceptance of the partition of India.

### Radcliffe Boundary Commission

- A Consultative Committee created in July 1947 to recommend how the Punjab and Bengal regions of the Indian subcontinent were to be divided between India and Pakistan, shortly before each was to become independent from Britain.
- The commission appointed by Lord Mountbatten, the final viceroy of British India consisted of four members from the Indian National Congress and four from the Muslim League and was chaired by Sir Cyril Radcliffe.
- The commission's mandate was to draw boundaries in the two regions that would keep intact as much as possible, the most-cohesive Hindu and Muslim populations within Indian and Pakistani territory, respectively.

### Reasons for Partition

- Partition of India was basically the result or outcome of the communal politics. The communal problem at its base was more politically motivated than religiously oriented. Apart from the Hindus and Muslims, British acted as the third party in the communal triangle.
- There was an increase in religious hostilities between Hindus and Muslims. The rise and growth of communal politics was the basis for mobilising people against the other community and it usually culminated into communal discord. Jinnah succeeded in influencing majority of the Muslims and generated a fear that an independent India would be dominated by Hindus. Jinnah adopted the slogan *Pakistan or perish*.
- An attempt to draw up a compromise solution acceptable to both Hindus and Muslims failed because of obstinate and unyielding approach of Jinnah.
- Violence broke out in August 1946 in Calcutta, in which around 5000 people were killed. Nehru formed a cabinet, but Jinnah believed that Hindus could not be trusted to treat the Muslims fairly. He called for a day of direct action in support of a separate Pakistan.
- Louis Mountbatten was sent as the new Viceroy and he soon decided that partition was only to avoid Civil War.

## Integration of Princely States after Independence

- According to the Indian Independence Act in 1947, it was decided that all Indian states will be free to accede to either the new Dominion of India or Pakistan. There was a decision of completely abolishing the practice of monarchy and all princely states were to be annexed. Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel headed the State Department in the National Provisional Government built at the time of independence.
- Sardar Patel alongwith his Chief Assistant VP Menon convinced Indian princes to join the Indian union. Lord Mountbatten also aided Sardar Patel and his team in the mission for integration of states. The annexations were made on the basis of mainly three factors: Defense, Foreign affairs and Communication. This resulted into 136 jurisdictional states acceded to Indian union by 15th August while many states signed the Instrument of Accession a bit later like Kashmir in October 1947 and Hyderabad in 1948.
- VP Menon successfully negotiated instruments of accession with a number of small states beginning with integration of different tiny provinces of Orissa into a single state of Orissa, alongwith this formed the Union of Kathiawar by including minor states in Kathiawar in February 1947. This all was followed by the subsequent accession and merger of many tiny remaining states over the next 5 months.
- Many other annexed states were namely Baroda, Kolhapur, Gujarat were annexed to the then Bombay Province. A second form of integration of 61 states was the formation of the seven centrally administered areas which resulted into the formation of Himachal Pradesh, Vindhya Pradesh (present day Madhya Pradesh), Tripura, Manipura, Bhopal, Kachchh and Bilaspur. Apart from these, the states of United States of Matsya, Union of Vindhya Pradesh, Madhya Bharat, Patiala and East Punjab States Union, Rajasthan and United States of Cochin-Travancore were also integrated to the India.
- Despite of so many integrations, still unification was incomplete but was complete with the surrender of Pondicherry (Puducherry) and Chandannagar to India on 1st November, 1954 by the French authorities. Later in December 1961, Indian Army fully liberated Goa, Daman and Diu from the control of Portuguese government. Thus, the hard work of Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel and his team of assistants fruitfully integrated the Indian states to form a unified nation of India.

# Self Check

# Build Your Confidence



1. (d)      2. (c)      3. (d)      4. (a)      5. (b)      6. (c)      7. (d)      8. (d)      9. (b)      10. (b)  
11. (b)      12. (b)

# Chapter twenty-seven

# Religion and Philosophy

*The term culture refers to the language, beliefs, values and norms, customs, dress, diet, knowledge and skills and all other things that people learn that make up 'the way of life' of any society. Culture is passed on from one generation to the next through the process of socialisation.*

## Indian Culture

- The culture of India is one of the oldest and unique. In India, there is amazing cultural diversity throughout the country. The South-North and North-East have their own distinct cultures and almost every state has carved out its own cultural niche.
- There is hardly any culture in the world that is as varied and unique as India. India is a home to some of the most ancient civilisations including four major world religions i.e. Hinduism, Buddhism, Jainism and Sikhism.
- Indian cultural history has been derived by the absorbing customs, traditions and rituals from both invaders and immigrants. Many Indian customs, cultural practices and languages are examples of this co-mingling over centuries.
- With the following invasions of the Islamic rulers, the culture of India was heavily influenced by Persian, Arabic, Turkish culture. 5000 years old Indian culture is both ancient and varied. But, unity in diversity, which is the main mantra of Indian civilisation can be seen if anyone monitors its various art forms and traditional diversity.

## Features of Indian Culture

### Variety and Unity

- A large number of languages and dialects are spoken in India, which is the main reason for the growth of a great variety of literature. The vastness of the country and variation in its physical and climatic features and the inter-mingling among various ethnic groups are the reasons behind the variety in the country.

### Universalism

- India has a universal outlook and it has been promoting the message of peace and harmony to the entire world.

### Continuity and Change

- Despite major changes and upheavals significant threads of continuity can be traced throughout the course of Indian history, right upto the present day.

### Secular Outlook

- The secular character of Indian culture is a result of the inter-mingling of people belonging to diverse cultural groups over a long period of time. Religion is a collection of belief systems, cultural systems and world views that relate humanity to spirituality and sometimes to moral values. Religion is different private belief in its social character.

## Religions

- Religion is a set of beliefs concerning the cause, nature and purpose of universe, human life and often contain a moral code governing the human affairs.
- Religious diversity and religious tolerance are both established in the country by law and custom. Four of the worlds major religious traditions; Hinduism, Buddhism, Jainism and Sikhism are originated at India.

## Hinduism

- Hinduism is also known as **Sanatan Dharma** or the everlasting religion. Hinduism is the oldest religion in the world. Hinduism is world's third largest religion after Christianity and Islam.
- Hindu religion is based on the concept that human and animal spirits come back to Earth to live many times in different forms. The Hindus believe that a soul moves up and down hierarchy on the basis of behaviour.
- Central to Hinduism are the concepts of reincarnation, the caste system, merging with Brahman, finding morality and reaching Nirvana (the peaceful escape from the cycle of reincarnation). According to Hinduism, the paths to salvation include rituals, devotion and the way of knowledge (realisation of reality and self-reflection).
- The main Hindu scriptures are Sruti (what is heard), Smriti (what is remembered) the Vedas, the Brahmanas, the Upanishads, the Puranas.
- The Sruti include deeply religious things communicated to a seer and recorded. The Vedas, the religious writings, include mantras (hymns of praise), brahmanas (sacrificial rituals) and Upanishads (108 sacred teachings). The Smriti include the law (books of laws), puranas (myths, stories, legends).
- The oldest surviving text of Hinduism is the Rigveda, produced during the Vedic period (1700-1100 BC). The Vedas center on worship of deities such as Indra, varuna and Agni and on the Soma rituals.

## Buddhism

- The founder of Buddhism, Siddhartha Gautama (563 and 483 BC) was a prince of the Sakya tribe. He left the comforts of his home to seek answer to the cause of human sufferings. Gautama became the enlightened one, the Buddha, after wandering and meditation for 6 years. Siddhartha attained knowledge at Bodh Gaya. Gautama Buddha delivered his first sermon at Sarnath, near Varanasi.
- To preach his religion, Buddha wandered in the North-East India for about 40 odd years. His hard work bore fruit and a community or Sangha of monks and nuns developed around him. The Sangha pursued practice and propagation of Buddhism.
- At present, Buddhism is one of the major world religions. After originating in India, Buddhism spread throughout the Central Asia, Sri Lanka, Tibet, South-East Asia, as well as the East Asian countries of China, Mongolia, Korea, Japan and Vietnam.

- The fundamental principle of Buddhism is to follow the middle path. Buddhism teaches its followers to perform good and wholesome actions and to purify and train the mind. These practices are aimed at ending the suffering of cyclic existence.
- Buddhist emphasises the principles of harmlessness and moderation. Buddhism does believe in the existence of supernatural beings, but it does not ascribe the power for creation, salvation or judgement to them.
- *Four Noble Truths of Buddhism:*
  - (i) Life is suffering.
  - (ii) Suffering is due to attachment.
  - (iii) Attachment can be overcome.
  - (iv) There is a path for accomplishing this.
- *Eightfold Paths of Buddhism:*

|                         |                            |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| (i) Right view          | (ii) Right aspiration      |
| (iii) Right speech      | (iv) Right action          |
| (v) Right livelihood    | (vi) Right effort          |
| (vii) Right mindfulness | (viii) Right concentration |

## Jainism

- The Jain religion is traced to **Vardhamana Mahavira** (599-527 BC). Mahavira was the 24th and last of the Jain Tirthankars. Mahavira was born in a ruling family of Vaishali, located in the modern State of Bihar, India. At the age of 30, Mahavira renounced royal life and devoted himself to the task of discovering the meaning of existence. At the age of 42, he attained enlightenment and spent the rest of his life meditating and preaching Jainism.
- Jainism rests on a real understanding of the working of karma, its effects on the living soul and the conditions for extinguishing action and the soul's release. Jainism considers the soul as a living substance that combines with various kinds of non-living matters. The Jain religion rests on complete inactivity and absolute non-violence (Ahimsa) against all living beings.
- The Jain community evolved into two main divisions: the Digambara and the Svetambara. For centuries, Western and Southern India have been Jain strongholds. In the mid-1990s, there were about 7 million Jains, the majority of whom live in the States of Maharashtra, Rajasthan and Gujarat. Karnataka, conventionally a stronghold of Digambaras, also has a considerable Jain community.
- Daily rituals of the Jains may include meditation, bathing the images, offering food, flowers and light lamps for the images. The Jains celebrate the 5 major events in the life of Mahavira- conception, birth, renunciation, enlightenment and final release after death.

## Sikhism

- The word *Sikh* means a *disciple* and thus, Sikhism is essentially the path of discipleship. The true Sikh remains unattached to worldly things. The Sikh must do his duty to his family and to the community.
- Sikhism was established by Guru Nanak. It preaches the existence of only one God and teaches universally acceptable ideals of honesty, compassion, humbleness, piousness, social commitment and tolerance for other religions.
- Guru Nanak Dev included the good beliefs of other religions in Sikhism. In Sikhism, everyone has equal rights irrespective of caste, creed, colour, race, sex or religion. Sikhism rejects unnecessary rituals.
- A Sikh believes in one God and in the teachings of the Gurus, which are embodied in *Sri Guru Granth Sahib*. Gurdwara is Sikh's place of worship. The Hari Mandir (the Golden temple) at Amritsar is considered the holiest shrine of Sikhism. One of the distinct features of Sikhism is the common kitchen called *Langar*.
- Guru Nanak Dev, the founder of the Sikh religion, was its first Guru. After him, there were 9 more Gurus who were the highest religious authority of the Sikhs. The last Guru of the Sikhs, Guru Gobind Singh, declared that after him the Guru of the Sikhs would be the holy book of Sikhism, *Guru Granth Sahib*. *Guru Granth Sahib* is written in Gurumukhi script.
- Takht Sri Damdama Sahib is situated in the Talwandi village near Bhatinda. Here, Guru Gobind Singh stayed for about a year and compiled the final edition of the *Guru Granth Sahib*. Takht Sri Keshgarh Sahib is situated at Anandpur Sahib. It is the place where the Khalsa (the Sikh brotherhood) was born in 1699 by Guru Govind Singh.

## Islam

- It is the second largest religion in the world. Islam is a monotheistic religion articulated by the Quran and the teachings and normative examples of prophet Muhammed. According to the traditional Islamic view, Quran began with revelations to Muhammed when he was 40 years old.
- In India, the Muslims are divided into two main sects- Sunni and Shia. Each one of these two sects has many different schools. Alongwith these main divisions, the Indian Muslims also have other divisions. It is mainly because different communities that adopted Islam have different names. The Bohra and the Khoja Muslim communities are prominent in West India. The Nawai call themselves as descendants of Arab and Persian immigrants.

- One of the prominent religions of India, Islam forms about 12% of India's population. Though India's contact with Islam had begun much earlier, the real push came in the 8th century when the province of Sindh was conquered. Though the Muslims form only 12% of the total population of India but the influence of Islam on Indian society is much stronger. The main reason for this strong influence is that over a long period of time many Muslim rulers ruled in different parts of India.
- The country with the largest Muslim population today is Indonesia and it is followed by India. The followers of Islamic religion, Muslims constitute India's largest religious minority. They number about 105 million. This makes India one of the largest Islamic nations in the world.

## Christianity

- It is the world's largest religion. Christians believe that Jesus is the son of God and savior of humanity. The three largest group of Christianity are Roman Catholic Church, Eastern Orthodox Church and the Protestants. *The Old Testament* and *The New Testament* are the sacred texts of Christians. Confession is the practice by which people may confess their sins committed after Baptism and absolve them by a priest.
- Christianity is one of the prominent religions in India. At present, there are about 25 million Christians in India. Kerala, Goa and Mizoram states have high concentration of Christian population in India. Kerala has the largest number of Christians among the states. Christians including Catholics, Orthodox and Protestants for the third largest group in India.
- About 73% of the Christians in India are Catholics. The Catholic Church in India is composed of 3 individual Churches: Latin, Malabar and Malankara. Christian community includes Syrian Christians, Knanaya Christians, Goan Christians, Tamil Christians, Anglo-Indians, Naga Christians etc. All these Christian communities differ in language, social customs and economic status.

## Sufism

- The followers of Sufism were liberal in their religious approach. They believed in the unity of all religions. Their method of preaching spirituality was through music. Sufism basically had its origin in Iran and found a favourable atmosphere in India during Turkish rule. The Sufis were organised into religious orders or silsilahs.

## Judaism

- It is one of the oldest religion in the world today, whose history extends back through the ancient Israelite and Hebrew people. Through centuries of suffering, persecution dispersion and occasional victory, Judaism has continued to exert a profound influence around the world.
- Today approximately 14 million people identify themselves as a member of this monotheistic faith. Modern Judaism is composed of different branches, each of which has a different approach to religious life, such as adherence to the law.

## Zoroastrianism

- It is the ancient, pre-Islamic religion of Persia i.e. modern Iran. It survives there in isolated areas but more prosperously in India, where the descendants of Zoroastrian Persian immigrants are known as Parsis. This religion was founded by the Iranian prophet and reformer Zoroaster in the 6th century BC.
- Zoroastrianism contains both monotheistic and dualistic features. Its concepts of one God, judgement, heaven and hell likely influenced the major Western religion of Judaism, Christianity and Islam.

## Indian Philosophy

- Philosophy is the study of general and fundamental problems, such as those connected with reason, values, knowledge, reality and existence.
- According to a traditional principle of classification, most likely adopted by orthodox Hindu thinkers, the schools or systems of Indian philosophy are divided into two broad classes, namely, orthodox (*astika*) and heterodox (*nastika*).

## Philosophy

- The first group belong to the 6 chief philosophical systems (popularly known as *sad darsana*), namely Mimamsa, Vedanta, Samkhya, Yoga, Nyaya and Vaisesika. These are regarded as orthodox (*astika*), not because they believe in God, but because they accept the authority of the Vedas.
- Under the other class of heterodox systems, the chief three are the schools of materialists like the Charvaka, the Buddhas and the Jainas. They are called heterodox (*nastika*) because they do not believe in the authority of Vedas.

*Schools Astika of Indian system of philosophy are as follows:*

### The Samkhya System

- Samkhyan, an atheistic and strongly dualist theoretical exposition of consciousness and matter.
- It is a philosophy of dualistic realism, attributed to the sage Kapila. It admits two ultimate realities namely, *Purusa* and *Prakrti*, which are independent of each other in respect of their existence.

### The Nyaya System

- Logic, explores source of knowledge (Nyaya sutras)
- It is the work of the great sage Gautama. It is a realistic philosophy based mainly on logical grounds. It admits 4 separate sources of true knowledge, viz, perception (prataksha), inference (anumana), comparison (upamana) and testimony (sabda). The objects of knowledge, according to the Nyaya are the self, the body, the senses and their object, cognition (buddhi), mind (manas), activity (pravrtti), mental defects (dosa), rebirth (pretyabhava), the feelings of pleasure and pain (phola), suffering (dukha) and freedom from sufferings (apavarga).

### The Yoga System

- A school emphasising meditation, contemplation and liberation.
- The sage Patanjali is the founder of the yoga philosophy. The yoga is closely allied to the samkhya. It mostly accepts the epistemology and the metaphysics of the samkhya with its 25 principles, but admits also to the existence of God. The special interest of this system is in the practice of yoga as the means of the attainment of Vivekajnana or discriminative knowledge, which is held in the samkhya to be the essential condition of liberation.

### The Vaisesika System

- It was founded by the sage Kanada also named *Uluka*. It is allied to the Nyaya system and has the same end in view, namely the liberation of the individual self.
- It brings all objects of knowledge i.e. the whole world, under the 7 categories of substance (dravya), quality (guna), action (karma), generality (samanya), particularity (visesa), the relation of inherence (samavaya) and non-existence.

### The Mimamsa System

- The mimamsa school was founded by Jaimini. Its primary object is to defend and justify vedic ritualism. In course of this attempt, it had to find a philosophy supporting the world view, on which ritualism depends.
- The authority of the Vedas is the basics of ritualism and the mimamsa formulates the theory that the Vedas are not the works of any person and are, therefore, free from errors that human authors commit.

### The Vedanta System

- This system arises out of the Upanishads, which mark the culmination of the vedic speculation and are fittingly called the *Vedanta* or *end of the Vedas*. Of all the systems, the Vedanta, especially as interpreted by Sankara, had exerted the greatest influence on Indian life and it still persists in some form or other in different parts of India.

### Nastika Schools of Indian System of Philosophy

| Nastika School | Related Fact   |
|----------------|--|
| Charvaka       | Believes only in materialism. No life beyond death, no soul no God.  |
| Jaina 540 BC   | The names of 2 Tirthankaras, Rishabhanath and Aristhanemia finds mention in Rigveda. 23rd was Parsva, son of Ishvaku king Asvasena said to have flourished 300 years before Mahavira. Mahavira, the last Tirthankara born in Kundagrama near Vaishali. His father Siddhartha was the head of Jnatrika clan and mother Trisala was the sister of Chetaka, a Lichchhavi noble. Chetaka's daughter was married to Bimbisara the King of Magadha. Mahavira was married to Yasoda. Left home at 30 and attained Kaivalya at 42. He accepted 4 doctrines of Parsva and added celibacy to it. Chandragupta Maurya patronised it. Passed away at Pawapuri. |
| Buddha 566 BC  | Gautama (known as Siddhartha as prince) was born in Lumbini near Kapilavastu to Suddhodana, the king of Saka republic and Mayadevi, who died 7 days after his birth. Gautama was married to Yasodhara from whom he had a son Rahul. 6 years of meditation led to enlightenment. First sermon in Sarnath known as set in motion the wheel of law. Eightfold paths, Buddhism denies efficacy of Vedic rituals and superiority of Brahmanas. Followers were upasakas and bhikshus. Died at the age of 80 in Kushinagar.   |

## Indian Languages

- Indian languages can be divided into several families with the major ones being Indo-Aryan, Dravidian, Austro-Asiatic. The highest spoken languages are from the Indo-Aryan family i.e. Hindi, Sanskrit, Bengali, Kashmiri etc. The second highest spoken languages are from the Dravidian family i.e. Tamil, Telugu, Kannada and Malayalam.

### Sanskrit

- Sanskrit is one of the most ancient language in the world. It is the mother of many Indian languages. The Vedas, Upanishads, Puranas and Dharmasutras were all written in Sanskrit.

### Hindi

- Hindi is a direct descendant of the Sanskrit language through Prakrit and Apabhramsha. Words from various languages like Persian, English, Arabic etc has also helped in the enrichment of Hindi language.
- The literature of Hindi language can be divided into four different styles i.e. Bhakti (devotional), Shringar (beauty), Veer-Gatha (praising brave warriors) and Adhunik (modern). The evolution of Hindi literature can be better understood through four stages, i.e. Adikal (1050-1375), Bhaktikal (1375-1700), Riti-Kavyakal (1700-1900) and Adhunikkal (1900 onwards).

## Dravidian Languages

- The four Dravidian languages: Tamil, Telugu, Kannada and Malayalam contributed a lot in the field of literature. Sangam literature is the oldest literature in Tamil language.

### Telugu

- Telugu language and literature flourished during Vijayanagara period. Krishnadeva Raya, the greatest of the Vijayanagara emperors, was himself a great poet. Amukta Malyada is an excellent prabandha in Telugu literature. Eight Telugu literary luminaries known as *Ashtadiggajas* adorned his court.

### Kannada

- King Nripatunga Amoghavarsha I, a Rashtrakuta king wrote *Kavirajamarg*, which is the earliest known literary work in Kannada language. Pampa known as the *Father of Kannada* wrote his great poetic works like *Adi Purana* and *Vikramarjiva Vijaya*. Dharmanthapurana was written by Madhava, which is related to the 15th Tirthankara.

### Malayalam

- Bhasa Kautilya, a commentary on *Arthashastra* and *Kokasandisan* are two great works written in Malayalam. Malayalam is spoken in Kerala and neighbouring areas. Rama Pannikar is one of the well known authors of Malayalam literature.

### Odia gets classical language status

Odia in February, 2014 became the 6th language of the country to get 'classical language' status. It is now in the same league as Sanskrit, Tamil, Telugu, Kannada and Malayalam. Odia is billed as the first language from the Indo-Aryan linguistic group. It has no resemblance to Hindi, Sanskrit, Bengali and Telugu.

The criteria for declaring a language as classical mandates high antiquity of its early texts/recorded history over a period of 1500-2000 years, a body of ancient literature/texts, which is considered a valuable heritage by generations of speakers and a literary tradition that is original and not borrowed from another speech community.

# Self Check

# Build Your Confidence

- 1.** Yapaniya was a school of [IAS 2003]

  - Buddhism
  - Jainism
  - Saivism
  - Vaisnavism

**2.** Consider the following statements.

  - A Chaitya is a shrine cell with a votive Stupa placed in the centre. It was used as a worshipping hall.
  - Viharas were monasteries primarily cut out of rocks for the residence of monks.

**Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?**

  - Only 1
  - Only 2
  - Both 1 and 2
  - Neither 1 nor 2

**3.** Consider the following statements about 'Jatak stories'

  - The Jatakas include the legends or stories of various incarnation of Lord Buddha before he attained enlightenment.
  - These intrusive stories have various beasts and birds as characters, teaching a moral which has much ethical value.

**Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?**

  - Only 1
  - Only 2
  - Both 1 and 2
  - Neither 1 nor 2

**4.** Which of the following are Saiva sects?

  - Pasupata
  - Jangama
  - Satvata
  - Kepalika

**Select the correct answer using the codes given below**

  - 1, 3 and 4
  - 2, 3 and 4
  - 1, 2 and 4
  - 1, 2 and 3

**5.** The famous phrase 'Tattvavamsi' is found in which one of the following Upanishads?

  - Chhandogya
  - Mundaka
  - Mandukya
  - Isavasya

**6.** Match the following

| List I                  | List II       |
|-------------------------|---------------|
| A. Bahauddin Zakaria    | 1. Chisti     |
| B. Syed Mohammed Jilani | 2. Suharwardi |
| C. Nizamuddin           | 3. Qadiri     |
| D. Muhammed Ghaus       | 4. Shattari   |

**Codes**

|     | A | B | C | D |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| (a) | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| (b) | 2 | 1 | 4 | 3 |
| (c) | 2 | 3 | 1 | 4 |
| (d) | 1 | 4 | 3 | 2 |

**7.** Consider the following statements regarding Chaityas

  - They have a long rectangular hall ending in a semi-circle at the rear end.
  - This long hall is internally divided into a nave, an apse and two side circles.
  - The aisles are separated from the nave by four rows of pillars.

**Which of the statements given above are correct?**

  - 1 and 2
  - 2 and 3
  - 1 and 3
  - All of these

**8.** The depiction of the stories of the previous lives of Gautam Buddha was firstly done in the art of

  - Sarnath Pillar of Ashoka
  - Bharhut Stupa
  - Ajanta Caves
  - Ellora Caves

**9.** To which order or Silsilah of the Sufis was Sheikh Bahauddin Zakariya associated?

  - Chisti
  - Qadiri
  - Naqshbandi
  - Suharwardi

**10.** The Mahayana Buddhism had two philosophical schools. Which of the following belonged to Mahayana Buddhism?

  - Madhyamika and Yogachara
  - Vijnanavada and Sthaviravada
  - Mahasanghika and Theravada
  - Acharyavada and Sarvasfivada

**11.** With reference to the history of ancient India, which of the following was/were common to both Buddhism and Jainism? [IAS 2012]

  - Avoidance of extremities of penance and enjoyment.
  - Indifference to the authority of the Vedas.
  - Denial of efficacy of rituals.

**Select the correct answer using the codes given below**

  - Only 1
  - 2 and 3
  - 1 and 3
  - All of these

**12.** Who among the following is a lady Alvar saint?

  - Tirupan
  - Perumal
  - Madhur Kavi
  - Andal

**13.** Match the following

| List I            | List II            |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| A. Ramanuja       | 1. Suddhadvaita    |
| B. Madhvacharya   | 2. Dvaitadvaita    |
| C. Nimarka        | 3. Dvaita          |
| D. Vallabhacharya | 4. Vishishtadvaita |

**Codes**

|     | A | B | C | D |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| (a) | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 |
| (b) | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| (c) | 3 | 1 | 4 | 2 |
| (d) | 2 | 4 | 1 | 3 |

# Chapter twenty eight

# Music, Dance, Theatre and Festivals

*Music and Dance are two important expressions of Indian culture. Diversity of Indian Society found sophisticated representation in various forms of music and dance. Various music and dance related festivals and personalities have been instrumental in projecting India's soft power abroad.*

## Indian Music

- It includes multiple varieties of folk, popular pop, classical music and R and B. India's classical music tradition including Carnatic and Hindustani music, has a history spanning millennia and developed over several eras.
- The Indian music is of two types namely Marga-Sangit (*mystical*) and Desi Sangit (*secular*). Indian music is divided into ragas or melody types.

## Ragas

- The gamut of several note woven into a composition may be called a *raga*. The Ragas can be sung without any instrumental accompaniment, but generally take tabla (*drum*) for the purpose besides any stringed instrument. They are sung at particular seasons and time of the day or night.
- Indian classical music consists of six principle ragas and 30 raginis. Music is adapted to the season of the year, hours of the day and mood of the performer. The Indian year is divided into six seasons and each season has its own raga. The principle ragas are Bhairav, Hindol, Megha, Sri raga, Deepak and Malkaus.
- The day is divided into six parts and each part is allotted to a particular raga. Thus, Bhairavi raga is usually sung from 4 am to 8 am, Hindol from 8 am to 12 noon, Megha from 12 noon to 4 pm, Sriraga from 4 pm to 8 pm, Deepak from 8 pm to 12 midnight and Malkaus from 12 midnight to 4 am.

- Music also has its rhythmic beats which are divided into *tala*, *laya* and *matra*. *Tala* is a complete cycle of a metrical phrase composed of a fixed number of beats. *Laya* is tempo-slow, medium-fast. *Matra* is the smallest unit of the *tala*.

## Hindustani Classical Music

- It is the Hindustani or North Indian style of Indian classical music found throughout the Northern Indian subcontinent.
- The style is sometimes called *North Indian Classical Music or Shastriya Sangeet*. It is a tradition that originated in Vedic ritual chants and has been evolving since, the 12th century CE.

## Characteristics

- The tradition was born out of a cultural synthesis of several musical traditions the Vedic chant tradition, dating back to approximately one thousand BCE, the equally ancient Persian tradition of *Musiqi-e assil* and various folk traditions prevalent in the region.
- Around the 12th century, Hindustani classical music diverged from what eventually came to be identified as Carnatic classical music. The central notion in both these systems is that of a melodic *mode* or *raga*, sung to a rhythmic *cycle* or *tala*.
- The tradition dates back to the ancient Sama Veda, which deals with the norms for chanting of srutis or hymns such as the Rig Veda.

- These principles were refined in the musical treatises *Natya Shastra* by Bharata (2nd–3rd centuries CE) and *Dattilam* (probably 3rd–4th century CE).
- In medieval times, the melodic systems were used with ideas from Persian music, particularly through the influence of Sufi composers like Amir Khusro and later in the Mughal courts. Noted composers such as Tansen flourished, along with religious groups like the Vaishnavites.
- After the 16th century, the singing styles diversified into different Gharanas patronised in different princely courts. Around 1900, Vishnu Narayan Bhatkhande consolidated the musical structures of Hindustani classical music called *ragas*, into a number of thaats. Indian classical music has 7 basic notes with 5 interspersed half-notes, resulting in a 12 note-scale.

### Types of Compositions

- The major vocal forms or styles associated with Hindustani classical music are dhrupad, khayal and tarana. Other forms include dhamar, trivat, chaiti, kajari, tappa, tap-khyal, ashtapadis, thumri, dadra, ghazal and bhajan; these are folk or semi-classical or light classical styles, as they often do not adhere to the rigorous rules of classical music.

#### Dhrupad

- It is an old style of singing, traditionally performed by male singers. It is performed with a tambura and a pakhawaj as instrumental accompaniments. The lyrics, some of which were written in sanskrit centuries ago, are presently often sung in Braj Bhasha. The rudra, veena an ancient string instrument, is used in instrumental music in dhrupad.
- Dhrupad music is primarily devotional in theme and content. It contains recitals in praise of particular deities. Dhrupad compositions begin with a relatively long and acyclic alap.
- The great Indian musician Tansen sang in the dhrupad style. A lighter form of dhrupad, called *dhamar*, is sung primarily during the festival of Holi. Two centuries ago, dhrupad gave way to the somewhat less austere khayal, a more free-form style of singing.

#### Khayal

- It is a Hindustani form of vocal music, adopted from medieval Persian music and based on dhrupad, khayal, literally meaning thought or imagination in Hindi-Urdu, is unusual as it is based on improvising and expressing emotion. A khayal is a two to eight line lyric set to a melody. Khayals are also popular for depicting the emotions between two lovers, situations of ethological significance in Hinduism and Islam or other situations evoking intense feelings.
- The origination of khayal is controversial, although it is accepted that style was based on dhrupad and influenced by Persian music. Many argue that Amir Khusro created the style in the late 16th century.

#### Tarana

- Another vocal form, taranas are medium to fast-paced songs that are used to convey a mood of elation and are usually performed towards the end of a concert. They consist of a few lines of poetry with soft syllables or bowls set to a tune. The tillana of carnatic music is based on the tarana, although the former is primarily associated with dance.

#### Tappa

- It is a form of Indian semi-classical vocal music whose specialty is its rolling pace based on fast, subtle, knotty construction. It originated from the folk songs of the camel riders of Punjab and was developed as a form of classical music by Mian Ghulam Nabi Shori or Shori Mian, a court singer for Asaf-ud-Doula, the Nawab of Awadh.
- Nidhubabur Tappa or tappas sung by Nidhu Babu were very popular in 18th and 19th century Bengal.

#### Thumri

- It is a semi-classical vocal form said to have begun in Uttar Pradesh with the court of *Nawab Wajid Ali Shah*, (1847-1856). There are three types of thumri: Poorab Ang, Lucknavi and Punjabi thumri. The lyrics are typically in a Proto-Hindi language called *Brij Bhasha* and are usually romantic.

#### Ghazal

- It is an originally Persian form of poetry. In the Indian subcontinent, Ghazal became the most common form of poetry in the Urdu language and was popularised by classical poets like Mir Taqi, Mir Ghalib, Daagh, Zauq and Sauda amongst the North Indian literary elite.

### Indian Musical Instruments

| <b>Instruments</b> | <b>Related Facts</b>  |
|--------------------|---|
| Dholak             | List of Indian musical instruments, dholak is a very popular folk drum of Northern India, Pakistan and Bangladesh as well. It is barrel shaped, at times a cylindrical drum, with skins on both sides.                        |
| Dumroo             | Dumroo is probably the oldest and traditional form of percussion instrument in India. Dumroo is the only remaining form of hour-glass drums which are seen in ancient Indian statues.   |
| Ghatam             | It replicates or conveys the meaning of the pot in Sanskrit. It is an ancient percussion instrument and ancient like other musical instruments mridangam, veena etc.  |
| Ghungroos          | These are very famous musical instrument in India. Ghungroos are usually the small brass bells. It is a musical accessory used by performers of all classical dances.   |
| Kanjeera           | The Kanjeera is a very old and traditional instrument which is very popular in South Indian classical performer Mances. Kanjeera is secondary percussion which is played as an accompaniment with the mridangam.              |
| Kartal             | Kartal literally means rhythm of the hand which is made of wooden blocks with holes for the fingers and circular copper plates, pairs of katalas are played with both hands.  |
| Khol               | It is usually used traditionally for accompanying bhajans and kirtans. Its high skin is relatively small with a diameter of about 9 - 10 cm, which gives it a particularly high, piercing sound.                              |
| Manjeera           | It is basically a set of small cymbals and is a ubiquitous component of dance, music and bhajans. It is a very ancient instrument seen on ancient temple walls. Manjeera is the most inexpensive and easy to play instrument. |
| Mridangam          | The Indian musical instrument mridangam is one of the most popular classical instrument of South India. Mridangam accompanies vocal, instrumental and dance performances.   |
| Pakhawaj           | The Pakhawaj in India is also called <i>Mardal, Pakhawaj, Pakuaj, Pakhvaj, Pakavaj</i> or <i>Mardala</i> , as it is a barrel-shaped, two-headed drum.   |

#### **Wind Instruments**

|           |  |
|-----------|--|
| Bansuri   | It is basically a folk instrument, invariably linked to the lives and playfulnesses of Krishna. However, it was during the Bhakti Movement that bansuri raised to prominence.                                      |
| Harmonium | Harmonium usually belongs to the family of free-reed aerophones. The instrument is a small, table top size organ which has bellows at the back that is pumped by one hand while the other hand plays the keyboard. |
| Shehnai   | Shehnai the wind instrument is believed to have been introduced in India by the Muslims. Shehnai is the predominant double-reed wind instrument used in North Indian music.  |

#### **String Instruments**

|         |   |
|---------|---|
| Sarangi | Sarangi has a hollow body and made of teak wood adorned with ivory inlays. It consists of 40 strings of which 37 are sympathetic.   |
| Sarod   | It is a popular Indian classical musical instrument, which is similar to the Western lute in structure. Among the followers and connoisseurs of Hindustani classical music, Sarod is one of the most important musical instruments.               |
| Sitar   | It is one of the most popular Indian classical instruments and it comes under the category of a chordophone in the lute family. Sitar has neck crafted from toon or teakwood and a resonator carved from a large seasoned gourd.                  |
| Tanpura | Tanpura in India is a drone instrument that accompanies dhrupad singing and is the most fundamental of all instruments of Indian classical music.   |
| Veena   | Veena the traditional instrument of India is also known as <i>Saraswati Veena</i> , which is a musical instrument of South India. Veena is a classical instrument basically plucked stringed instrument that is used to accompany carnatic music. |
| Tabla   | It is the most popular pair of drums in the Indian sub-continent. Tabla is a pair of drums which consists of a small right hand drum called <i>dayan</i> and a larger metal one called <i>bayan</i> .   |

**Instrumentalists**

|         |   |
|---------|---|
| Sarod   | Ali Akbar Khan, Alaudin Khan, Amjad Ali Khan, Buddhadev Dasgupta, Bahadur Khan, Sharan Rani, Zarin S Sharma     |
| Tabla   | Alla Rakha Khan, Kishan Maharaj, Nikhil Ghosh, Zakir Hussain  |
| Violin  | Baluswamy Dikshitar, Gajanan Rao Joshi, Lalgudi G Jayaraman, MS Gopala Krishnan, Mysore T Chowdiah, TN Krishnan |
| Shehnai | Bismillah Khan  |
| Sitar   | Nikhil Bannerjee, Ravi Shankar, Vilayat Khan, Hara Shankar Bhattacharya   |
| Flute   | Hari Prasad Chaurasia, Pannalal Ghose, TR Mahalingam  |
| Veena   | KR Kumaraswamy iyer, Doraiswamy Iyengar   |

**Vocalists**

|            |   |
|------------|---|
| Hindustani | Shubha Mudgal, Bheemsen Joshi, Madhup Mudgal, Mukul Shivputra, Pandit Jasraj, Parveen Sultana, Naina Devi, Girija Devi, Ustad Ghulam Mustafa Khan, Gangubai Hangal, Krishna Hangal, V Rajput, Kumar Gandharva, Faiyyaz Khan, Mallikarjun Mansur, Kishori Amonkar, Ustad Rashid Khan |
| Carnatic   | MS Subbalakshmi, Balamuralikrishna, Bombay Jaishree, HK Raghavendra, HK Venkataram, Sitarajam, Mani Krishnaswamy, Akhil Krishnan, ML Vasantha Kumari, MD Ramanathan, GN Balasubramanian   |
| Thumri     | Ustad Bade Ghulam Ali Khan, Ustad Mazhar Ali Khan, Ustad Jawad Ali Khan, Rita Ganguli, Poornima Chaudhary, Shanti Heerananda, Naina Devi  |
| Qawwali    | Ghulam Hasan Niyazi, Sultan Niyazi, Ghulam Farid Nizami, Chand Nizami, Iqbal Hussain Khan Bandanawaji, Aslam Sabri  |
| Dhrupad    | Ustad Rahim Fahimuddin Dagar, Zahiruddin Dagar, Wasifuddin Dagar, Gundecha Bandhu, Uday Bhawalkar, Pt Abhay Narayan Mallick, Pt Ritwik Sanyal   |

**Carnatic Music**

- It is a system of music commonly associated with the Southern part of the Indian sub-continent, with its area roughly confined to four modern States of India: Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka, Kerala and Tamil Nadu.
- The main emphasis in Carnatic music is on vocal music; most compositions are written to be sung and even when played on instruments, they are meant to be performed in Gayaki (*singing*) style.
- Carnatic music was mainly patronised by the local kings of the Kingdom of Mysore and Kingdom of Travancore in the 18th through 20th century.

**Nature of Carnatic Music**

- The main emphasis in Carnatic music is on vocal music; most compositions are written to be sung and even when played on instruments, they are meant to be performed in a singing style known as *Gayaki*.
- Like Hindustani music, carnatic music rests on two main elements: raga the modes or melodic formulae and tala the rhythmic cycles.

**Important Elements of Carnatic Music**

- Sruti* commonly refers to musical pitch.

- Swara** refers to a type of musical sound that is a single note, which defines a relative (*higher or lower*) position of a note, rather than a defined frequency. Swaras also refer to the solfege of carnatic music, which consist of seven notes, '*Sa-Re-Ga-Ma-Pa-Da-Ni*'.
- Raga system** in carnatic music prescribes a set of rules for building a melody very similar to the Western concept of mode.
- Tala system** refers to a fixed time cycle or metre, set for a particular composition, which is built from groupings of beats. Talas have cycles of a defined number of beats and rarely change within a song.

**Indian Dance Forms**

- Dancing is one of the most ancient arts in Indian culture. From as early as the Vedic times, it established its root in the Indian soil, being deeply associated with religious rites, representing the supposed performances of the Gods and Goddesses themselves and maintaining the divine and spiritual concepts of the race.
- The religious purpose being diverse, the styles of dance were equally varied. Classical dances in India, folk dances in India, tribal dances in India.

## Classical Dances of India

### Kathak

- Kathak dance is basically from *Uttar Pradesh*. This North Indian dance form is inextricably bound with classical Hindustani music and the rhythmic nimbleness of the feet is accompanied by the tabla or pakhawaj. Traditionally, the stories were of Radha and Krishna, in the Natwari style (as it was then called), but the Mughal invasion of North India had a serious impact on the dance.
- The dance was taken to Muslim courts and thus, it became more entertaining and less religious in content. More emphasis was laid on nritta, the pure dance aspect and less on abhinaya.
- Kathak is performed by both men and women. A Kathak dancer is not required strictly to adhere to fixed steps and stages in a fixed order. He or she can change the sequence of stages to suit his or her aptitude and style of dancing.
- There are three major schools or gharanas of Kathak from which performers today generally draw their lineage:
  - (i) Lucknow Gharana
  - (ii) Jaipur Gharana
  - (iii) Banaras Gharana

### Bharatnatyam

- Bharatnatyam, whose antiquity is well established, is the most popular of Indian dances, which said to be originated in Thanjavur (*Tanjore*) of *Tamil Nadu*. Bharatnatyam is a purest form of classical dance.
- These three concepts comes into play in Bharatnatyam-Bhava, Raga and Thaala.
- Bharatnatyam dance has been handed down through the centuries by dance teachers (or gurus) called *nattuvanars* and the temple dancers called *devadasis*.
- The four great nattuvanars of Tanjore were known as the *Tanjore Quarter* and were brothers named Chinnaiah, Ponniah, Vadivelu and Sivanandam.
- Bharatnatyam was again revived by activists and dancers like Rukmini Devi and E Krishna Iyer. Rukmini Devi started the institution Kalakshetra in 1936 and since, then there has been a wave of reform.
- The music of Bharatnatyam is based on Carnatic classical music. The chief musical instruments in Bharatnatyam are the mridangam and a pair of cymbals. Sometimes veena, violin, ghatam and flute are also used.

### Kathakali

- Kathakali classical dance of *Kerala* owes its transnational fame to the nearly 300 years old.
- Kathakali literally means story-play and is an elaborate dance depicting the victory of truth over falsehood. Themes revolve around the two great epics, the Ramayana and the Mahabharata.

- A striking feature of Kathakali is the use of elaborate make-up and colourful costumes.
- Costume is designed with lots of paint applied on the face of the artist. The pomp and magnificence of kathakali is partly due to its decor, part of which include the kireetam or huge head gear, the kanchukam the over sized jacket and the long skirt worn over a thick padding of cushions.
- Make-up is of five types Pacha, Kathi, Thadi, Kari and Minukku.

### Kuchipudi

- Kuchipudi, one of the art forms of the South had its origin in *Andhra Pradesh*. Actors sing and dance and the style is a blend of folk and classical. Lyrics used in Kuchipudi are usually in Telugu, though sanskrit verses are also not uncommon. Kuchipudi dance-dramas, each present a particular episode or a series of episodes. A solo recital, on the other hand, typically consists of such items as the sabdam, bhama kalapam which is the main item, padams and tarangams. In bhama kalapam, the dancer has enormous scope for the dramatisation of characters.
- Kuchipudi is a perfect balance between *nritta*, *nritya* and *natya*. The nritta is a rhythmic sequence that concludes a song; the nritya or Sabdams in which the rhythmic passages are followed by interpretations and Natya is a complete dance drama with storyline and characters.
- It contained some very complicated items of original footwork such as tracing out an outline of a lion or an elephant with the feet on the floor or dancing with the feet on the edges of a circular brass tray or with a water pot delicately and precariously balanced on the head.
- Today Kuchipudi is considerably a different style of dance form than it originally used to be. In most of the cases, it is now a solo performance done by female dancers.

### Odissi

- In *Odisha*, Odissi is the traditional dance and probably owes its origin to the temple dances of the *Devadasis*. The Odissi dancers use their head, bust and torso in soft flowing movements to express specific moods and emotions.
- The history of Odissi dates back to somewhere between the 8th and the 11th centuries, when the kings took great pride in excelling in the arts of dance and music. Jayadeva's Geeta-Govinda, the Bible of an Odissi dancer, written in the 12th century, has stupendous influence on the arts of (Odisha) Orissa.
- Odissi performances are replete with lores of the 8th incarnation of Vishnu, Lord Krishna. It is a soft, lyrical classical dance which depicts the ambience of Orissa (Odisha) and the philosophy of its most popular deity, Lord Jagannath, whose temple is in Puri.
- Odissi technique is based on the *Chawka*, a Manly posture and the weight of the body is distributed equally on both the sides.

- Odissi dancer costume is a silk saree draped in a practical and comfortable style. Wears on the head ornament called the *mathami* on ears *kapa* on wrists *kankana*.

### Manipuri

- It is the classical dance from the *Manipur* region in the North-East. The people of Manipur have been protected from outside influences and able to retain their unique traditional culture. Manipuri dance is associated with rituals and traditional festivals.
- Slow and gracious movements differentiate Manipuri from other dance styles. The delicate arm movements and gentle foot work characterise this dance.
- The repertoire is dominated by the themes from the Vishnu Puranas, Bhagvata Puranas and Geeta Govinda. Manipuri dance is very much religious and associated to Vaishnava culture of Hinduism. It was originally only performed in temples and continues to form an integral part of the religious and social fabric of Manipur. Manipuri dance, whether folk, classical or modern, is devotional in nature.

### Sattriya

- The Sattriya dance form was introduced in the AD 15th century by the great Vaishnava saint and reformer of Assam, Mahapurusha Sankaradeva.
- This drama has been for centuries, nurtured and preserved with great commitment by the Sattras i.e. Vaishnava maths or monasteries.
- Sankaradeva introduced this dance form by incorporating different elements from various treatises, local folk dances.

### Other Classical Dances

- Chhau dance is evidently a war dance. The etymological root of the word chhau is traced to the Sanskrit *chhaya* or shade, referring to the mask used by the dancers. Themes are based on mythology, everyday life, aspects of nature or just a mood or emotion.
- Rituals connected with chhau spread throughout the year beginning from Dussehra. Actual training of the chhau starts from the day of *Sri Panchami*. Music is based on Hindustani ragas. The accompaniment is with a Nagra, a huge kettledrum, dhol, a cylindrical drum and shenais or reed pipes.
- Mohiniattam* is a dance form said to have originated in Kerala. It is closely related to Bharaanatyam of Tamil Nadu, which was originally called '*Dasiyattam*'. It is performed by women. The word Mohini means a maiden who steals the heart of the onlooker. It is one of the important form of the classical dance tradition of Kerala, presenting a perfect mode for solo performance that incorporates lasya and tandava styles. Its technique is based on the kathakali mode.

- Krishnanattam* as the name suggests, is a dance drama associated with Krishna legends. It is believed that Kathakali originated from Krishnanattam, sometime in the middle of the AD 17th century the Zamorin King of Calicut named Mahadevan, who was a poet of distinction and a votary of Lord Krishna, composed eight dramatic lyrical plays dealing with various episodes of Krishna's life. The poet king incorporated them into an ensemble which he named as Krishnanattam.

- The Bhagavata Mela Dance* dramas of Tamil Nadu appear to have gained importance about 300 years ago, when Tirtha Narayan Yati, author of the *Krishna Lila Tarangini* in sanskrit, migrated from Andhra to Tanjore district. He began the Bhagavata Mela tradition on the pattern of dance drama as expounded in the Natya Shastra by Bharat Muni. His celebrated dance drama compositions like Prahalad, Harishchand, Usha Parinayam Gollabhamma, were performed annually at the great festival dedicated to God Narasimha.

- Yakshagana* is a popular folk theatre form of Karnataka with a long history of nearly 400 years. A performance usually depicts a story from the Ramayana, the Mahabharata and the Puranas.
- It originated from one of the very early and indigenous musical dramas known as *Bahu Nataka* composed by Pakkuribi Somnath in about AD 1251 and portrayed in several varieties of the Shiva-lila episodes. In times, these took the form of the Yakshagana plays common to many regions of India. Originally a solo performance, this form, later, developed into two and then four principal characters. Gradually, it assumed the form of a regular dance drama picking up themes from mythology and legend.

### Folk Dances of India

- There is really no such genre as folk dancing. Rather, there is a large body of unrelated non-classical dance forms. The only thing common among these dance forms is their rural origins. Many folk dances are performed by ordinary people rather than professional dancers. It is very usual that on special occasions, the villagers will gather and sing and dance, accompanying themselves on a variety of folk instruments.
- It would be more correct to divide these folk dances into two categories named folk and tribal. The difference between the two is cultural. Folk dances are the rural extensions of the larger Indian population. Examples are the bhangra and the garba.
- However, the tribal dances are performed by India's aboriginal populations. These people, known as *adivasi*, have a culture which is very distinct from the larger Indian population. A common example of a tribal dance is the Santhali.

- The following is a list of folk and tribal dances:
  - **Bathakamma** A folk dance of Andhra Pradesh.
  - **Bihu** It is a folk dance of Assam. It is a very brisk and aggressive dance performed by both boys and girls.
  - **Bagurumba** This is a folk dance of Assam. It is performed by the Bodos and is known for its colourful attire.
  - **Bhangra** This is a folk dance of the North-West Indian State of Punjab. It is a lively, powerful dance.
  - **Chah Baganar Jhumur Nach** This is a dance of Assam. It is a dance of the tea gardens.
  - **Changu** The changu dance is a folk dance found in Orissa and Andhra Pradesh. It derives its name from the Changu, which is a simple tambourine (*daff*) that is used to accompany this dance.
  - **Daankara** The daankara is a stick dance, similar in some ways to the dandiya raas of Gujarat. However, the daankara is performed in Punjab.
  - **Dandaria** A folk dance of Andhra Pradesh.
  - **Dasakathia** This is a folk theatre of Orissa (Odisha). It is performed by a pair of performers who entertain the audience with dance, songs and stories.
  - **Dhamal** A folk dance of Punjab.
  - **Gair** This is a dance of Rajasthan. It is performed by groups of dancers moving in and out with an almost military precision.
  - **Garba** This is a folk dance of Gujarat. It is traditionally danced at marriages and during the time of Navaratri.
  - **Gatka** A folk dance utilising swords, daggers or sticks performed in the Punjab.
  - **Geendad** This is a folk dance of Rajasthan. It is very similar to the Gair.
  - **Ghoomar** This is a folk dance of Rajasthan. It derives its name from its characteristic pirouettes.
  - **Ghanta Patua** This is a folk dance of Orissa. Its name is derived from the large brass gongs known as *ghanta*. It is performed in the Hindu month of Chaitra. This dance is most notable because it is performed on stilts.
  - **Giddha** This is a folk dance of Punjab, generally performed by women.
  - **Gobbi** A folk dance of Andhra Pradesh.
  - **Jhoomar** This is a dance of the Mundas and Mahantas of Orissa (Odisha).
  - **Jhumar** A slow version of bhangra performed at weddings and other festive events.
  - **Kahhi Ghodi** This is a folk dance of Rajasthan that is performed with a dummy horse.
  - **Kalaripayattu** is an Indian martial art. One of the oldest fighting systems in existence, it is now practiced in Kerala, in contiguous parts of Tamil Nadu and among the Malayali community of Malaysia.
  - **Kavadi** This is a folk dance of Tamil Nadu. It is played with a wooden pole, upon which two pots are tied. The stick is then balanced upon the shoulder.
  - **Karagam** This is a folk dance of Tamil Nadu. It is played with a pot balanced on the head.
  - **Kela Keluni** This is a dance performed by the Kelas of Orissa (Odisha).

- **Kikli** A women's folk dance of the Punjab.
- **Kushan** This is a folk theatre of Bangladesh and West Bengal.
- **Lathi Nauch** This is a folk dance of North-East India and Bangladesh. This was originally based upon a system of martial arts that uses large sticks (*laath*).
- **Mathuri** A folk dance of Andhra Pradesh.
- **Raas** This is a folk dance of Gujarat. It is traditionally danced at marriages and during the time of Navaratri.
- **Saami** A women's folk dance of the Punjab.
- **Sakhi Nata** This is the puppet dance of Orissa (Odisha).

### Folk Dances and Tribal Dances in India

| States            | Dances   |
|-------------------|--|
| Terahtali         | This is a folk dance of Rajasthan. It is performed by women while they are seated.     |
| Maharashtra       | Kathakeertan, Lezin, Dandaniya, Tamasha, Gafa, Dahikala, Lovani, Mauni, Dasavtar       |
| Karnataka         | Huttari, Suggi Kunitha, Yakshagana   |
| Kerala            | Kaikottikali, Kaliyattam, Tappatikkali   |
| Tamil Nadu        | Kolattam, Pinnal Kolattam, Kummi, Kavadi, Karagam                                      |
| Andhra Pradesh    | Ghanta Mardala, Veedhi Natakam, Burrakatha   |
| Orissa (Odisha)   | Ghumara Sanchar, Chadya Dandanata, Chhau   |
| West Bengal       | Kathi, Chhau, Baul, Kirtan, Jatra, Lama  |
| Assam             | Bihu, Khel Gopal, Rash Lila, Tabal Chongli, Canoe                                      |
| Punjab            | Giddha (women), Bhangra (men)  |
| Jammu and Kashmir | Rauf, Hikat  |
| Himachal Pradesh  | Jhora, Jhali, Dangli, Mahasu, Jadda, Jhainta, Chharhi                                  |
| Haryana           | Jhumar, Ras Leela, Phag dance, Daph, Dhamal, Loor, Gugga, Khoria, Gagor                |
| Gujarat           | Garba, Dandiya Ras, Tippani, Gomph   |
| Rajasthan         | Ginad, Chakri, Gangore, Terahtaal, Khayal, Jhulan Leela, Jhuma, Suisini                |
| Bihar             | Jata Jatin, Jadur, Chhau, Kathaputli, Bakho, Jhijhiya, Samochakwa, Karma, Jatra, Natna |
| Uttar Pradesh     | Nautanki, Thora, Chappeli, Raslila, Kajri  |
| Madhya Pradesh    | Karma  |
| Meghalaya         | Laho   |
| Goa               | Mando  |
| Mizoram           | Khantumm   |
| Uttaranchal       | Garhwali   |

## Theatre in India

- India has a long and rich tradition in theatre going back 5000 years. The origin of Indian theatre is closely related to ancient rituals and seasonal festivities of the country. Bharata's *Natyashastra* (2000 BC to AD 4th century) was the earliest and most elaborate, a treatise written anywhere in the world. The traditional account in Bharata's *Natyashastra* to Indian theatre attributing it to the *Natyaveda*, the holy book of dramaturgy created by Lord Brahma.
- In *Natyashastra*, Bharata Muni consolidated and codified various traditions in dance, mime and drama.
- Natyashastra* describes ten classifications of drama ranging from 1 Act to 10 Acts. No book of ancient times in the world contains such an exhaustive study on dramaturgy as *Natyashastra*. It is addressed to the playwright, the director and the actor because to Bharata Muni, these three were inseparable in the creation of a drama. The Sanskrit word for drama *nataka* derives from the word meaning 'dance'. In traditional Hindu drama, expression was achieved through music and dancing as well as through acting, so that a play could be a combination of opera, ballet and drama.

## Types of Theatre in India

- The theatre in India has encompassed all the other forms of literature and fine arts into its physical presentation literature, *mime*, music, dance movement, painting, sculpture and architecture all mixed into one and being called '*Natya*' or '*Theatre*' in English. Roughly, the Indian theatre can be divided into three distinctive kinds i.e. the classical or the sanskrit theatre, the traditional or the folk theatre and the modern theatre.

### Famous Sanskrit Plays

| Authors    | Name of Plays   |
|------------|---|
| Shudraka   | Mrccha Katika   |
| Bhasa      | Svapna Vasavadattam, Pancharatra, Pratijna Yaugandharayanam Charudatta, Kamabhara |
| Kalidasa   | Vikramorvasiyam, Malavikagnimitram, Abhijnanasakuntalam                           |
| Bhavabhuti | Mahaveeracharita, Uttararamacharita, Malati-Madhava                               |
| Harsha     | Ratnavali, Priyadarshika, Nagananda   |

## Traditional Theatre

- In different regions of India, there are religious festivals, fairs, gatherings, ritual offerings, prayers, almost throughout the year. During these occasions, traditional theatre forms are presented. They reflect the common man's social attitudes and perceptions. In this social portrayal, there is also the individuals role, which is given due importance.

- In traditional theatre forms, there are special styles of dance portraying the entry on to the stage or platform narrative and descriptive roles. The best example of descriptive acting is the Bidapat naach. In this traditional theatre form, emphasis is not on beauty, but on acting itself, narrative and descriptive skills. Dance as a narrative art is the base of theatre form, which can be seen in the traditional theatre form of Bhavai of Gujarat.
- In this form, quick or slow foot movement is a means of narration. The art of making the entry by dancing has been perfected in the traditional Kashmiri theatre form, *Bhand Jashn*. The way each character walks and enters the platform, identifies him. In Koodiyattam and Ankia Naat, the entry by dancing itself is complicated and artistic. In the forms, the tempo and basic posture and gesture identifies the role of the character.

## Forms of Traditional Theatre

- Bhand Pather** The traditional theatre form of *Kashmir*, is a unique combination of dance, music and acting. Satire wit and parody are preferred for inducing laughter. In this theatre form, music is provided with surnai, nagaara and dhol. Since, the actors of Bhand Pather are mainly from the farming community, the impact of their way of living, ideals and sensitivity is discernible.
- Swang** It was earlier mainly music based. Gradually, prose too, played its role in the dialogues. The softness of emotions, accomplishment of rasa alongwith the development of character can be seen in this theatre form.
- The two important styles of Swang are from *Rohtak* and *Haathras*. In the style belonging to Rohtak, the language used is Haryanvi (*Bangru*) and in Haathras, it is Brajbhasha.
- Nautanki** It is usually associated with Uttar Pradesh. The most popular centres of this traditional theatre form are Kanpur, Lucknow and Haathras. The meters used in the verses are Doha, Chaubola, Chhappai, Behar-e-Tabeel. There was a time, when only men acted in nautanki, but now-a-days, women have also started taking part in the performances. Among those remembered with reverence is, Gulab Bai of Kanpur. She gave a new dimension to this old theatre form.
- Jatra** Fairs in honour of Gods or religious rituals and ceremonies have within their framework musical plays are known as *Jatra*. This form was born and nurtured in Bengal. Krishna Jatra became popular due to Chaitanya's influence. Later, however worldly love stories too, found a place in Jatra. The earlier form of Jatra has been musical dialogues were added at later stage. The actors themselves describe the change of scene, the place of action etc.

- **Bhaona** It is a presentation of the Ankin Naat of Assam. In Bhaona, cultural glimpses of Assam, Bengal, Orissa (Odisha), Mathura and Vrindavan can be seen. The sutradhaar or narrator begins the story, first in sanskrit and then in either Brajboli or Assamese.
- **Dashavatar** It is the most developed theatre form of the Konkan and Goa regions. The performers personify the 10 incarnations of Lord Vishnu, the God of preservation and creativity. The ten incarnations are Matsya (*fish*), Karma (*tortoise*), Varaha (*boar*), Narsimha (*lion-man*), Vaman (*dwarf*), Parashuram, Rama, Krishna (or *Balram*), Buddha and Kalki. Apart from stylised make up, the Dashavtar performers wear masks of wood and papier mache.
- **Krishnattam** Folk theatre of Kerala, came into existence in the middle of AD 17th century under the patronage of King Manavada of Calicut. Krishnattam is a cycle for eight plays performed for eight consecutive days.
- **Mudiyettu** Traditional folk theatre form of Kerala is celebrated in the month of Vrischikam (November-December). It is usually performed only in the Kali temples of Kerala, as an oblation to the Goddess. It depicts the triumph of Goddess Bhadrakali over the asura Darika. The seven characters in Mudiyettu-Shiva, Narada, Darika, Danavendra, Bhadrakali, Kooli and Koimbidar (Nandikeshvara) are all heavily made-up.
- **Koodiyattam** One of the oldest traditional theatre forms of Kerala, is based on sanskrit theatre traditions. The characters of this theatre form are Chakyar or actor, Naambiyaar, the instrumentalists and Naangyaar, those taking on women's roles, the Sutradhar or narrator and the Vidushak or jesters are the protagonists. It is the Vidushak alone who delivers the dialogues. Emphasis on hand gestures and eye movements makes this dance and theatre form unique.
- **Yakshagana** Traditional theatre form of Karnataka, is based on mythological stories and Puranas. The most popular episodes are from the Mahabharata i.e. Draupadi swayamvar, Subhadra vivah, Abhimanyu vadu, Karna-Arjun yuddh and from Ramayana i.e. Rajyabhishek Lav-Kush Yuddh, Baali-Sugreeva Yuddh and Panchavan.

## Modern Indian Theatre

- Modern Indian theatre started after the advent of the British in India. The British developed Calcutta in the East, Bombay and Surat in the West, Chennai in the South as important centres of trade and administration. They also set-up theatres in these cities for their entertainment. Level, a gentleman of Russian origin, established a theatre by the name of Bengali theatre.

## Some Modern Playwrights and their Plays

| Playwright          | Play   |
|---------------------|--|
| Badal Sircar        | Solution X, That Other History, There is No End, Bhoma Evan Inderjit                         |
| Girish Karnad       | Yayati, Tughlaq, Tale Dande, Nagmandala  |
| Nizim Ezekiel       | Nalini : A Comedy, Marriage Poem : A Tragi Comedy, The Sleep Walkers, An Indo-American Force |
| Rabindranath Tagore | Chitra, The Post Office, Sacrifice Chandalika Muktadharma                                    |
| Vijay Tendulkar     | Shantatal Court Chalu Aahe, Sakhamaram Binder, Kamala, Kangadaan, Ek Holti Mugli             |
| Utpal Dutt          | Fairy Fauj, Leniner Daak, Timer Talowar, Manusher Odhikare, Din Badolor Pala                 |
| Shambhu Mitra       | Nobanno, Ulukhagra, Pothik   |
| Sri Aurobindo       | Perseus the Deliverer, Vasavadutta Radoguna, The Viziers of Bassora, Eric                    |

## Cinema in India

- India has one of the oldest and largest film industry in the world. When Lumiere brothers invented cinema in the last decade of the 19th century, they did not quite realise the fact that their invention would, in years to come, entertain millions across the world in an unprecedented manner. India may have lagged behind other countries in many fields, but has maintained near parity in the field of cinema. Only 7 months after its inauguration (*premier show*) in France, Lumiere brothers' films were shown in Bombay for the first time on 7th July, 1896.
- In 1899, Harishchandra Sakharam Bhatwadekar made a film on a wrestling match in Bombay. In 1901, Bhatwadekar made the first newsreel. The honour of making the first feature film goes to Dadasaheb Phalke (*Dhundiraj Govind*), who made the first film Raja Harishchandra in 1913. Indian cinema has thus completed about a 100 years and feature films have completed a span of more than 80 years.

## History of Indian Cinema

- *The history of Indian cinema can be broadly divided into three phases:*

### (i) The Era of Silent Films (1913-31)

- A kaleidoscopic view of history of India includes the pioneering efforts of Save Dada (Harishchandra Sakharam Bhatwadekar). He made two short films as early as in 1897. The first short film in India were directed by Hiralal Sen, starting with Flower of Persia (1898). In 1900, the entire Indian entertainment sector underwent huge changes and the emergence of Dadasaheb Phalke took Indian cinema to new heights.

- Thus, the path breaking film of the silent era, *Raja Harishchandra*, was released in 1913. During this time and the era of the talkies, the main sources for Indian films were the mythological texts.

#### (ii) Pre-Independence Talkies (1931-47)

- By this time, apart from Bombay (*Mumbai*), the film industry shaped up well in down South too. The Tamil, Telugu and Kannada film industries were making indigenous films as well. By late 1940s, films in India were made in various languages, but the religious influence was pre-dominant.

#### Dadasaheb Phalke Award

The Dadasaheb Phalke Award instituted in 1969, is the highest national honour for cinema given by the Government of India. It is given to a prominent personality from the Indian Film Industry, noted and respected for significant contributions to Indian cinema.

The award is named after the veteran film actor Dadasaheb Phalke, who is considered as the *Father of the Indian Cinema*. It presented every year to senior film personalities for their contribution to the art. The award carries a cash prize of ₹ 10 lakh and a *Swarna Kamal*. A committee constituting of eminent film personalities is appointed to evaluate the award.

#### (iii) Post-Independence Films (1947 -Till Today)

- The golden period in the history of Indian cinema is attributed to the 1950s. Guru Dutt, Mehboob Khan, Raj Kapoor, Balraj Sahani, Nargis, Bimal Roy, Meena Kumari, Madhubala, Dilip Kumar graced the screens. In South India, esteemed actors like Raj Kumar, Gemini Ganesan, NT Rama Rao and several other actors and actresses entertained the audiences. Besides them, numerous singers, composers, scriptwriters, cameramen and other technicians lend a helping hand in making some of the most outstanding films that carved their own niches in the history of Indian cinema.
- At one hand, Hindi cinema was growing in leaps and bounds and on the other, the regional films were making their presence felt too. A number of well established Hindi film stars, who became a part of the star system in India actually began their career with the Indian regional films.
- With romantic films at the helm, the Indian cinema ushered into 1990s. A mixed genre was witnessed during this time; romantic, thriller, action and comic movies were made. Gradually, the face of Indian cinema was undergoing change once again.

- The audiences, too, were getting weary of similar story-lines. Hence, the contemporary Indian cinema keeping pace with time and technology witnessed Dolby Digital sound effects, advanced special effects choreography, international appeal, further investments from corporate sectors alongwith finer scripts and performances. The aesthetic appeal of cinema became important for the film makers.

#### Facts about Indian Cinema

|                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| India's first talking film     | <i>Alam Ara</i> (Light of the Universe) was released by Ardeshir Irani of Imperial Movietone 14th March, 1931 was a historic day for India cinema. The film was based on a successful <i>Passi play</i> , which was written by Joseph Daeeid. |
| Film with most number of songs | <i>Indra Sabha</i> with 71 songs in film with most number of songs. The film was made in 1932 by Madan Theatres and the director of the film was JJ Madan.  |
| Longest Indian movie           | <i>LoC Kargil</i> at 4 hrs 25 min is the longest Indian movie made so far. The story is of Indian soldiers fighting in Kargil. <i>Mera Naam Joker</i> at 4 hrs 14 min is a close second.  |
| First colour film in India     | <i>Kisan Kanya</i> is the first colour film in India. It was a 1937 Hindi feature film, which was directed by Moti B Gidvani and produced by Ardeshir Irani of imperial pictures.   |
| First Indian to get an Oscar   | Bhanu Athaiya was the first Indian to get an Oscar. She won the award for the best costume designer for Rich and Attenborough's film <i>Gandhi</i> in 1982.   |
| Longest Hindi film song        | The song <i>Ab Tumhare Hawale Watan Saathiyon</i> in the film by the same name is the longest film song. The length of the song is 20 minutes and the song is featured in three installments in the film.                                     |

#### Fairs and Festivals of India

##### Nagaur Cattle Fair

- Nagaur bustles with life during the annual cattle fair, one of the largest in the country, usually held from 30th January to 2nd February. The Nagaur bulls are renowned for their fleet footedness and attract buyers from all over, however, livestock such as camels, goats and cows are also on display. A highlight of the fair is performances by folk dancers and musicians and exciting games such as tug of war, camel races, horse races etc.

##### Tarnetar Mela

- The three days fair, held annually in Tarnetar, coincides with the festival at the Trineteshwar temple (three-eyed God *Shiva*). Villagers from all over Saurashtra, dressed in their traditional costumes and exquisite jewellery. Throng Tarnetar during this fair.

### **Saliana Mela (Palampur)**

- Among the non-religious fairs, Saliana (*Palampur*) is noted for its wrestling matches while at Sonepur mela (*in Bihar*) selling of elephants adds extra colour to the occasion.

### **Garg Mukteshwar Fair**

- It is 60 km from Delhi. It has been held since Mughal period. This fair is held every year at Garg Mukteshwar, where besides ritual bathing in the Ganges brisk economic activities also take place.

### **Sonepur Mela**

- The famed cattle fair is held at Sonepur, situated on the confluence of the holy rivers Ganga and Gandak. The sprawling mela ground here with the pulsating market has the widest possible range of cattle and commodities. The array of shops sells all sorts of merchandise. Sonepur fair is the only one of its kind where a large number of elephants are sold.

### **Kumbh Mela**

- It is unique in the respect that it does not exhibit the features associated with a traditional Indian fair. It is basically a religious congregation, which is held once every 12 years (*Maha Kumbh*) at one of the four holy places Allahabad, Ujjain, Nasik, Hardiwar in turn.
- An ardh or half Kumbh occurs every 6 years. According to mythology, when the devas or Gods and the asuras or demons together churned the waters of the primeval ocean, many priceless things floated up from the ocean, among these was a pot (*kumbha*) of amrit—the nectar of immortality. During the struggle for the possession of the amrit between the demons and the Gods, some drops of the precious nectar got split. These fell at 12 places including the nether world called *patala*.

### **Surajkund Handicraft Mela**

- Surajkund is a small ancient kund (*pond*) in Haryana on the outskirts of Delhi. This picturesque place is the venue for the annual handicrafts fair.

### **Gangasagar Mela**

- It is a celebrated occasion in Bengal on the eve of Makar Sankranti and is held at the confluence of the Ganga and Bay of Bengal. This is the biggest fair in Bengal. A dip in the ocean where the Ganga drains into the sea at the auspicious hour, is considered to be of great religious significance.

### **Rajgir Dance Fair**

- Rajgir, the ancient capital of the Magadh empire in Bihar is held sacred by both Buddhists and Jains for its association with the Buddha and Mahavira. The Department of Tourism, Bihar, holds a colourful fair of dance and music every year in Rajgir because its instrumental music, devotional songs, opera, folk dance, ballet or the many schools of classical dance and music, geniuses in their own realms of accomplishments, create an almost ethereal atmosphere.

### **Kurukshtetra Fair**

- The festival in Kurukshetra, Haryana coincides with the Gita Jayanti, signifying the birth of the holy book Bhagawad Gita. A visit to Kurukshetra during the festival is an exhilarating and spiritual experience.
- Pilgrims gather to take a dip in the sacred tanks of Brahma Sarovar and Savannan week-long Bhagawad Katha (presenting stories of *Bhagawad Gita*), shloka recital, dance, dramas and 'deep daan' at Brahma Sarovar are part of the religious festivities.

### **Sair-i Gul Faroshan or Phool Walon Ki Sair**

- At the dargah of Sufi saint Qutub-ud-din, Bakhtiar Kaki, another unique fair Sair-i Gul Faroshan or Phool Walon Ki Sair is held every year. This unique fair of flowers, known as the *procession of flowers* and flower sellers dates back to the Mughal period. Hindus, Muslims and others participate whole-heartedly in it.

### **Pushkar Mela (Rajasthan)**

- It is held on the day of Karthik Purnima (in October-November). Devotees gather around Pushkar lake and take a ceremonious bath in it. Pushkar, one of the holy pilgrimage places of India is said to possess the only temple, where Brahma is still worshipped.

### **Poush Mela**

- It takes place every year from 22nd to 26th of December at Shantiniketan, West Bengal. This festival celebrates the Foundation Day of Shantiniketan. Shantiniketan comes alive with vedic hymns, the gathering of poets, dancers and musicians.

### **Bishnupur Mela**

- It is held every year around 25th December near the Madan Mohan temple of Bishnupur, Bengal. This mela stretches for 4 days and the local villagers come together to celebrate the new crop traditional dance and music is an integral part of this festival.

## Festivals of India

- India is a land of great diversity. It described as a land of many religions and innumerable languages, it might be described as a land of festivals as well. Indians love celebrating every little occasion from the harvesting of crops, welcoming the spring or rain, to seeing the full moon lends itself to joyous celebrations splashed with colours, music, folk dances and songs. Even the birthdays of divine beings are celebrated by connecting them with particular festivals.
- Indian festivals are celebrated according to the solar and lunar calendars. Consequently, dates and months may vary accordingly. *Here's a list of common festivals celebrated all over India follows:*

### Lohri

- It marks the culmination of winter and is celebrated on the 13th day of January in the month of Paush or Magh, a day before Makar Sankranti. Lohri celebrates fertility and the spark of life. People gather, round the bonfires, throw sweets, puffed rice and popcorn into the flames, sing popular songs and exchange greetings.

### Makar Sankranti/Pongal

- These are celebrated predominantly in the Southern part of India. This harvest festival marks the commencement of the Sun's journey to the Northern hemisphere. People take dips in rivers and worship the Sun in Gujarat, Makar Sankranti is celebrated by the flying of kites.

### Bharat Rang Mahotsav

- It is also known as *National Theatre Festival*. It was established in 1999 and is the annual theatre festival of the National School of Drama, New Delhi. Originally, it was founded to showcase the talents of Indian theatre actors, but over the years, it has grown to attract international performers as well. It is generally held during the second week of January around the NSD campus.

### Republic Day

- Celebrating the anniversary of India's establishment as a republic on 26th January, 1950. All the state capitals resound with the beating of drums and parading of the army.

## Khajuraho Dance Festival

- It organised by the Madhya Pradesh Kala Parishad. It is a week long festival of classical dances held annually against the spectacular backdrop of the magnificently in Khajuraho temples in Chhatarpur district of Madhya Pradesh. From 2010, the Khajuraho festival of dance is conducted every year in the first week of February from the 1st to the 7th.
- This cultural festival highlights the richness of the various Indian classical dance styles such as Kathak, Bharatnatyam Odissi, Kuchipudi, Manipuri and Kathakali with performances of some of the best exponents in the field.

### Maha Shivratri

- This is a day of fasting dedicated to Lord Shiva, the third deity of the Hindu trinity. Religious people stay awake and chant prayers the whole night. Processions to the festivals are followed by chanting of mantras and anointing of lingams.

### Basant Panchami

- This is a festival in honour of Saraswati, the Goddess of wisdom and learning.

### Garden Festival

- A spectacular flower show held in Delhi, every February, where varieties of flowers and exotic plants are on display organised by Delhi Tourism, this annual event showcases thousands of varieties of flowers. Flower enthusiasts and horticulturists find have a field day.

### Holi

- This is one of the most *exuberant* festival and also the most colourful. It *heralds* the advent of spring and the end of winters. It is celebrated by throwing coloured water and powder on each other. On the eve of Holi, *bonfires* are built to symbolise the destruction of the evil demon Holika.

### Mahavira Jayanti

- It is a major Jain festival and commemorates the birth anniversary of Mahavira, the 24th and last Jain Tirthankar. It is a day of prayer. There are celebrations in all Jain temples and pilgrimages to Jain shrines.

### Ram Navami

- It is the day of Rama's birth and is celebrated as a day of great piety, with the chanting of prayers and the singing of ballads.

### Easter and Good Friday

- Good Friday is observed in India in April every year, broadly on the pattern adopted worldwide. Christians from all stratas of society visit the church to attend the mass held on this occasion. Easter Sunday, which follows Good Friday is celebrated with much joy and *gaiety*. Processions are taken out in some parts of the country.

## Baisakhi

- It is celebrated with joyous music and dancing, is New Year's Day in Punjab. It falls on 13th April, though once in 36 years it occurs on 14th April. It was on this day that the 10th Sikh Guru, Guru Gobind Singh founded the Khalsa (*the Sikh brotherhood*) in 1699. The Sikhs, therefore, celebrate this festival as a collective birthday.

## Id-ul-Fitr or Ramazan Id

- It is a day of feasting and rejoicing as it marks the end of the Ramazan (*Ramadan*), the Muslim time of fasting.

## Rath Yatra

- This spectacular chariot festival celebrated for 8 days at the famous Jagannath temple in Puri, Odisha. Images of Lord Jagannath, his sister Subhadra and brother Balbhadra are taken out in a procession in three immense chariots. Thousands of devotees pull these chariots to Gundicha Mandir, a temple 3 km away. After a week, the deities return to the main temple in a similar procession. The construction of the chariots begins in April.

## International Mango Festival

- It is held annually in Delhi, during early summer, is a 2 days festival showcasing mangoes. It has been held since 1987. More than 550 varieties and cultivars of mango are featured in the festival for visitors to view and taste. Cultural programmes make this a lively event.

## Buddha Purnima

- The Buddha's birth, enlightenment and his reaching nirvana are all celebrated on this day. The Buddha is supposed to have gone through each of these experiences on the same day, but of different years.

## Naga Panchami

- This festival is dedicated to Ananta, the serpent whose coils Lord Vishnu rests between universes. Offerings are made to snake images. Snakes are supposed to have the power over the monsoon rainfall and keep evil away from homes.

## Raksha Bandhan

- It is an integral part of the Hindu family structure whereby a woman ties a rakhi or decorative thread on the wrist of her brother to remind him to protect her if the need arises.

## Independence Day

- The anniversary of India's independence commemorates the day on 15th August. The Prime Minister delivers an address from the ramparts of Delhi's Red Fort. It is celebrated all over the country with meetings and flag-hosting ceremonies.

## Janamashtami

- The birth of Lord Krishna, the 8th incarnation on Earth of Lord Vishnu, is celebrated throughout India.

## Id-ul-Zuha or Bakrid

- Muslims celebrates the sacrifice of Hazrat Ibrahim, who willingly agreed to kill his son at the behest of God. To celebrate the event, Muslims sacrifice one animal per family or group of families.

## Onam

- It is celebrated in Kerala, Andhra Pradesh and Tamil Nadu. It is celebrated against a setting of lush green vegetation. This picturesque harvest festival brings 10 days of colour, feasting, boat races, song and dance to the state.

## Ganesh Chaturthi

- This festival is dedicated to the popular elephant headed God, Ganesha. Pune, Madras, and Bombay are the important centres of celebration. In Maharashtra, huge images of Ganesha are carried in procession.

## Navaratri/Dussehra/Durga Pooja

- Navaratri, the festival of 9 days, is celebrated in honour of Goddesses Durga, Lakshmi and Saraswati. The 10th day, Dussehra, commemorates the victory of Rama, of the epic Ramayana, over Ravana. In many places, it culminates with the burning of huge images of Ravana and his accomplices, celebrating the victory of the good over evil. Re-enactments of the epic Ramayana takes place in various places.

## Hampi Festival

- The magnificent ruined city of Hampi, Karnataka, once the capital of the powerful Vijayanagara empire, comes alive during the 3 days festival of dance and music, held in the first week of November. Organised by the Government of Karnataka, the Hampi festival includes dance, drama, music, fireworks, puppet shows and spectacular processions, all combined to recreate the grandeur of the bygone era. Decorated elephants, horses and men dressed in the military fashion of the golden era are posted underneath the red, yellow, blue and white cloth. Gopuras are posted along the lanes of Hampi.

## Konark Dance Festival

- The Sun temple in Konark is famed as a world heritage site. This is the venue of a joyous festival of classical dance and music which is held annually in December. A host of celebrated dancers from all over the country perform in the open air auditorium.



# Chapter twenty-nine

## Indian Architecture and Painting Schools

*One of the most enduring achievements of Indian civilisation is undoubtedly its architecture. Indian architecture, which has evolved through centuries, is the result of socio-economic and geographical conditions. Indian architecture, belonging to different periods of history, bears the stamp of respective Period. Though, the cities of Indus valley provide substantial evidence of extensive town planning, the beginning of Indian architecture can be traced back to the advent of Buddhism in India.*

### Harappan Architecture

- Architecture of Indus Valley Civilisation is contained in the structures of Mohenjodaro which were found by the archaeologists and in the existence of Harappan city. Even at such an early age the architecture of Indus valley was well improved with almost all the modern amenities. The architectural remains of the Indus Valley Civilisation have also well testified the sharp acumen of the architects belonging to such an early age.

*Some important features of Harappan architecture are as follows:*

- In *Mohenjodaro*, the streets run in straight lines and are crossed by others at right angles. This shows planning and existence of some authority to control the development of the city existed.
- In Indus valley architecture, throughout the area, civic planning was based on a rectangular grid oriented to the cardinal points and standardised brick was the main building material.
- Wide streets and thoroughfares were common. The buildings were made of burnt bricks which were devoid of decoration. There were two or more storeys in the buildings. Buildings in many streets corners suggest hotels or eating houses.
- The streets were all aligned from East to West or from North to South on a North or South wind sweeps down a broad thoroughfare. Large brick culverts were constructed on the outskirts of the city to carry away storm water.
- Excellent sanitary engineering was followed at that time and water supply was maintained as wells were used.

- The great public bath was made of burnt brick and measured 39 ft 3 inches in length and 23 ft 2 inches in width. One can enter it at either end by means of a staircase. There was a vertical main hole at the Western end that made it possible to inspect and clear the passage. An annex to the Great Bath suggests arrangements for hot air bathing with a hypocaust system of heating.
- Indus valley architecture was closely influenced by *Mesopotamian ways*.
- Various features of Mohenjodaro include a wide range of ceramic and bronze objects, resembling those from Sumerian sites. The Harappan people had constructed mainly three types of buildings—dwelling houses, pillared halls and public baths.

### Some Other Prominent Architectural Forms

#### Pallava Architecture

- The South Indian style of temple architecture is very distinct from that of the rest of India. It is convenient to resolve the types of architecture into four periods corresponding to the principal kingdoms, those ruled in Southern India down the centuries i.e. the Pallavas, Cholas, Pandya and the Vijayanagara rulers. According to the plan, four sided, polygonal or curvilinear—the *Southern Vimanas* are classified in the Southern Silpa and Agama texts as *Nagara*, *Dravida* and *Vesara*.
- The earliest examples of temples in the Dravidian style belong to the Pallava period. The temple architecture of the Pallavas is divided into two groups—rock-cut (AD 610-690) and structural (AD 690-900). The greatest accomplishments of the Pallava architecture are the rock-cut temples at *Mahabalipuram*.

- These temples are further divided into: excavated pillared halls or mandapas and monolithic shrines known as *rathas*. The five rathas were built by *Narasimhavarman I* (AD 625-645) and are named after Draupadi, Arjuna, Bhima, Dharmaraja and Sahadeva. The Dharmarajara is the longest and most complete of these rathas.

### Chola Architecture

- The Imperial Chola rulers of *Tanjore* developed the Dravidian style of temple architecture almost to perfection. Their works taken up on a stupendous scale include irrigation schemes, embankment of artificial lakes, dams across the Kaveri and well-planned cities. A special feature of the Chola architecture is the purity of artistic tradition.
- The two magnificent temples at Tanjore and Gangaikonda Cholapuram in Tiruchirapalli district built in early AD 11th century show the best of Chola art. The Brihadeswara or Rajarajeswara temple of Shiva in Tanjore built by *Rajaraja Chola* in AD 1010 is the largest and highest of Chola temples and stands as a symbol of Chola greatness.
- Constructed in granite, the main structure of the temple has a square base about 53 m high and its lofty shikhara of thirteen successive storeys is 57.7 m high. A huge stone dome nearly 8 m high and weighing about 81 tonnes crowns the shikhara. The temple from the top of the base is covered with exquisite sculptures and mouldings. The plinth is covered with inscriptions in Tamil.
- The niches on three sides of the main shrine contain idols of various Gods and Goddesses. The *gopuram* on the entrance gates are decorated with beautiful sculptures. The temple stands in a spacious enclosed courtyard and pavilion with one of the largest monolithic Nandis (6 m long, 2.6 m broad and 307 m high) in South India, a large assembly hall and a pillared portico.

### Vijayanagara Architecture

- By the 16th century almost all of Southern India was part of the Vijayanagara Empire. The Vijayanagara rulers were great patrons of art and architecture. The Vijayanagara tradition shows a distinct scheme of decoration in terms of architectural space.
- The pillars in the mandapas consist of figural motifs in low relief on their cubical members. The Vijayanagara rulers built strong fortresses, gorgeous palaces and beautiful temples. The Vijayanagara temple architecture has some special features.
- The characteristic feature of this period is the development of the temple complex. The Kalyana Mandapa or marriage hall is an open pavilion in the temple which contains a platform in the centre for the performance of sacred dance, concentric series of rectangular enclosure walls with the gopuram (towered gateways) in the middle of each side. The city of Vijayanagara was studded with so many temples that it was called *Kovilapura*. Of the numerous Vijayanagara complexes in Southern India, the most magnificent are those at Kanchipuram, Thiruvannamalai and Vellore. The temple of *Pampapathi*, the *Hazara Rama* temple of Hampi and the *Vitthalaswami* temple are the best examples of the Vijayanagara architecture.

### Rajput Architecture

- The Rajput rulers had a keen sense of beauty in art and architecture which is seen in the artistic excellence of their temples, forts and palaces. The Indo-Aryan style of architecture developed in North India and upper Deccan and the Dravidian style in South India during the Rajput period.
- Both sculpture and architecture attained a high degree of excellence. The palaces of Jaisalmer, Bikaner, Jodhpur, Udaipur and Kota represent the maturity of the Rajput style. The foundation of Jaipur, the fabled *Pink City*, represents the final phase of Rajput architecture.
- Rich and royal Rajput heritage is characterised by arched gateways, grand courtyards, beautifully carved silver doorways, marble and red sandstone pillars with finely carved elephant brackets, frescoes and latticed galleries, massive ceremonial gateways exuberantly embellished with floral motifs, glass mosaics, paintings of Lord Ganesha and Lord Krishna, ivory-inlaid fragrant sandalwood doors, elaborate fountains, smooth ceilings and walls embellished with murals depicting flowers and war scenes and studded with glass and sparkling precious stones.

### Regional Architecture

#### Sharqi Style

- This is also known as *Jaunpur style*. The key features of this style are use of both arcuate and trabeate systems to support the weight of the ceiling, use of arch-and-beam combination and absence of minarets.

#### Malwa Style

- The cities of *Dhar* and *Mandu* exhibit this style. The key features of this style are absence of minarets in mosques, European and Egyptian influence, domes on high drums, use of Ogival arches and fine jail work.

#### Gujarati Style

- Gujarat witnessed significant architectural activity for over 50 years starting from *Muzaffar Shah's* declaration of independence from Delhi and the formation of the Sultanate of Gujarat in AD 1307 until the conquest of Gujarat by the Mughal Emperor Akbar in AD 1500.
- The key features of this style are : it carried on the tradition of temple architecture, use of limestone carvings and geometrical designs and presence of richly decorated buttresses.

### Mughal Style

- The medieval period saw great developments in the field of architecture. With the coming of Muslims to India, many new features came to be introduced in buildings.
- The development of Muslim style of architecture of this period can be called the *Indo-Islamic architecture* or the Indian architecture influenced by Islamic art. The Indo-Islamic style was neither strictly Islamic nor strictly Hindu.
- The earliest building of this period is Quwwat-ul-Islam mosque and the Qutub Minar at Delhi. Many other buildings were later constructed by the Sultans. Ala-ud-din Khilji enlarged the Quwwat-ul-Islam mosque and built a gateway to the enclosure of the mosque.

### Indian Temple Architecture

- Almost all Indian art has been religious and almost all forms of artistic tradition have been deeply conservative. The *Hindu temple* developed over 2000 years and its architectural evolution took place within the boundaries of strict models derived solely from religious considerations. Therefore, the architect was obliged to keep to the ancient basic proportions and rigid forms which remained unaltered over many centuries.
- Even particular architectural elements and decorative details which had originated long before in early timber and thatch buildings persisted for centuries in one form or another throughout the era of stone construction even though the original purpose and context was lost. The horseshoe shaped window is a good example. Its origins lie in the chaitya arch doorway first seen in the 3rd century BC at the *Lomas Rishi* cave in the Barabar hills.
- Later, it was transformed into a dormer window known as a *gavaksha* and eventually it became an element in a purely decorative pattern of interlaced forms seen time and time again on the towers of medieval temples. So, in its essence, Indian architecture is extremely conservative. Likewise, the simplicity of building techniques like post and beam and corbelled vaulting were preferred not necessarily because of lack of knowledge or skill, but because of religious necessity and tradition.
- On the other hand, the architect and sculptor were allowed a great deal of freedom in the embellishment and decoration of the prescribed underlying principles and formulae. The result was an overwhelming wealth of architectural elements, sculptural forms and decorative exuberance that is so characteristic of Indian temple architecture and which has few parallels in the artistic expression of the entire world.
- It is not surprising that the broad geographical, climatic, cultural, racial, historical and linguistic differences between the Northern plains and the Southern peninsula of India resulted, from early on, in distinct architectural styles.

- The Shastras, the ancient texts on architecture, classify temples into three different orders; the *Nagara* or 'Northern' style, the *Dravida* or 'Southern' style and the *Vesara* or 'hybrid' style which is seen in the Deccan between the other two.
- There are also distinct styles in peripheral areas such as Bengal, Kerala and the Himalayan valleys. But by far the most numerous buildings are in either the *Nagara* or the *Dravida* styles and the earliest surviving structural temples can already be seen as falling into the broad classifications of either one or the other. In the early years the most obvious difference between the two styles is the shape of their superstructures.

### North Indian Temples

- The *Nagara* style which developed for the 5th century is characterised by a beehive shaped tower (called a *shikhara*, in Northern terminology) made up of layer upon layer of architectural elements such as *kapotas* and *gavaksas*, all topped by a large round cushion-like element called an *amalaka*. The plan is based on a square, but the walls are sometimes so broken up that the tower often gives the impression of being circular. Moreover, in later developments such as in the *Chandella temples*, the central shaft was surrounded by many smaller reproductions of itself, creating a spectacular visual effect resembling a fountain.

### South Indian Temples

- From the 7th century the *Dravida* or Southern style has a pyramid shaped tower consisting of progressively smaller storeys of small pavilions, a narrow throat and a dome on the top called a *shikhara* (in Southern terminology). The repeated storeys give a horizontal visual thrust to the Southern style.
- Less obvious differences between the two main temple types include the ground plan, the selection and positioning of stone carved deities on the outside walls and the interior and the range of decorative elements that are sometimes so numerous as to almost obscure the underlying architecture.
- Bearing in mind the vast areas of India dominated by the 'Northern' style, i.e. from the Himalayas to the Deccan, it is to be expected that there would be distinct regional variations. e.g. all of the following are classified as *Nagara*, the simple *Parasuramesvara temple* at Bhubaneswar in Orissa(Odisha), consisting only of a shrine and a hall; the temples at Khajuraho with their spectacular superstructures and the exquisitely carved *Surya temple* at Modhera.

On the other hand the 'Southern' style, being restricted to a much smaller geographical area, was more consistent in its development and more predictable in its architectural features and overall appearance.

## Temples of the Deccan

- In the border areas between the two major styles, particularly in the modern states of Karnataka and Andhra Pradesh, there was a good deal of stylistic overlap as well as several distinctive architectural features. A typical example is the *Hoysala temple* with its multiple shrines and remarkable ornate carving. Infact such features are sometimes so significant as to justify classifying distinct sub-regional groups.
- The type of raw materials available from region to region naturally had a significant impact on construction techniques, carving possibilities and consequently the overall appearance of the temple. The soft soap-stone type material used by the Hoysala architects of the 12th and 13th centuries allowed sculptors working in the tradition of *ivory* and *sandalwood* carving to produce the most intricate and ornate of all Indian styles.
- Hard crystalline rocks like granite typical of the area around *Mamallapuram* prevented detailed carving and resulted in the shallow reliefs associated with Pallava temples of the 7th and with centuries, In areas without stone, such as parts of Bengal, temples constructed of brick had quite different stylistic characteristics.
- Royal patronage also had a very significant effect on the stylistic development of temples and as we have already seen, regional styles are often identified by the dynasty that produced them e.g. we speak of Pallava, Chola, Hoysala, Gupta, Chalukya and Chandella temples.
- It might be assumed that temple styles would be different for the various Hindu cults. Infact, this was never the case in India. Even Jain temples such as those at *Khajuraho* were often built in almost identical styles to the Hindu temples.
- From the 8th century onward with the development of ever more sophisticated rituals and festivals, the Hindu temple especially in the South started to expand and become more elaborate. There were more mandapas for various purposes such as dancing, assembly, eating or e.g. to house Nandi, Shiva's sacred mount; more subsidiary shrines and other structures and more corridors and pillared halls such as the *thousand-pillared halls*.
- But the most significant visual difference between the later Northern and Southern styles are the gateways. In the North the *shikhara* remains the most prominent element of the temple and the gateway is usually modest.

## Panchayatana

- A *Panchayatana* temple has four subordinate shrines on four corners and the main shrine in the centre of the podium, which comprises their base.
- Shri Dev Vyadeshwar temple in Ratnagiri district of Maharashtra is an example of 'Panchayatan' style temple.
- But the most significant visual difference between the later Northern and Southern styles are the gateways, In the North the shikhara remains the most prominent element of the temple and the gateway is usually modest.
- In the South enclosure walls were built around the whole complex and along these walls, ideally set along the East-West and North-South axes, elaborate and often magnificent gateways called *gopurams* led the devotees into the sacred courtyard.
- These gopurams led the devotees into the superstructures and capped with a barrel-shaped roofs were infact to become the most striking feature of the South Indian temple. They become taller and taller, dwarfing the inner sanctum and its tower and dominating the whole temple site. From the *Vijayanagara period* (14th to 16th century) onward, these highly embellished and often brightly painted structures become extremely numerous.
- The width of the storeys of pavilions and other architectural elements were carefully adjusted to create a concave contour which is a distinctive characteristic of the Dravida temples seen throughout the South, particularly in Tamil Nadu.

## Monuments of Ancient Period

|                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Udaygiri Caves                    | During Chandragupta's reign at Vidisha, Madhya Pradesh                         |
| Angorwatt Temple                  | Suryavarman Li   |
| Vikramashila University           | Pala King Dharmapala   |
| Kailash Temple (Ellora)           | Rashtrakuta King Krishna I   |
| Dilwara Temple                    | Tejapala   |
| Rathas of Mamallapuram            | Mahendravarman I (Pallava King)  |
| Khajuraho Temple                  | Chandelas  |
| Martanda Temple (Kashmir)         | Lalitaditya Muktapida  |
| Gomateswara (Son of Rishabnath)   | Chamundaraya Minister of the Ganga King, Rajamalla Shraranabelagola, Karnataka |
| Hoysaleswara Temple (at Halebidu) | Ketamalla, a Minister of King Vishnukvardhana Karnataka                        |

### Monuments of Medieval Period

|   |                                |
|---|--------------------------------|
| College of Ajmer<br>(Converted to Adhai din ka Jhompra) | Vigraharaja IV<br>Visaladeva   |
| Rudra Mahakal Temple, Siddapura                         | Jayasimha Siddharaja           |
| Jagannath Temple at Puri                                | Anantavarman<br>Chodaganga     |
| Sun Temple, Konark                                      | Narasimhai (E Gangas)          |
| Brihadesvara/Rajarajeswara Temple at Thanjavur          | Rajaraja the Great             |
| Quwwat-ul-Islam Mosque, Delhi                           | Qutbuddin Aibak                |
| Adhai din ka Jhompra                                    | Qutbuddin Aibak                |
| Himayun's Tomb  | Akbar's step mother Haji Begum |
| Tomb of Sher Shah at Sasaram                            | Sher Shah                      |
| Agra Fort   | Akbar                          |
| Buland Darwaza (commemorate Gujarat victory)            | Akbar                          |
| Shalimar Garden   | Shah Jahan                     |
| Badshahi Mosque at Lahore (largest in subcontinent)     | Aurangzeb                      |
| Man Mandir, Gwalior                                     | Man Singh                      |
| Hauz Khas   | Alauddin Khalji                |
| Akbar's Mausoleum at Sikandara                          | Akbar completed by Jahangir    |
| Madrasa at Bidar  | Mahmud Gawan                   |

### Famous Inscriptions

| Inscription          | King  | Aspect   |
|----------------------|---|--|
| Junagarh Rock        | Rudradaman (Saka)   | Sanskrit says that a dam on the Sudarshana lake was constructed by Pushyagupta a Governor of Chandragupta Maurya |
| Allahabad Pillar     | Samudragupta  | Sanskrit composed by Harisena  |
| Aihole Inscription   | Pulakeshin II   | Mentions Harsha defeat by Pulakeshin II. Composed by Ravikriti Vishnuvardhan son of King                         |
| Gwalior Inscription  | Bhoja   | Most famous Pratihara King   |
| Hathigumpha          | Kharvela  |  |
| Boghaz koi [1400 BC] | Proves Rig Veda to be more than 1400 BC old.  | Indra, Varuna, Mitra, two Nasatyas mentioned   |
| Nanaghat Inscription | Satkarni I [Satavahana king]  | Achievements of the king   |
| Nasik Inscription    | Gautamiputra Satkarni   | Achievements of the king   |
| Mehrauli Iron Pillar | Chandragupta II   |  |
| Mandsor Inscription  | Kumaragupta I   | Composed by Vatsabhatti  |
| Bhitari Stone Pillar | Skandagupta   |  |
| Tiruvalangadu        | Rajendral(Chola)  | His conquests (annexed whole of Sri Lanka)   |
| Uttaramerur          | Cholar Period   | Chola village assemblies   |
| Besnagar Inscription | Near Vidisa Madhya Pradesh. Mentions Heliodorus the Ambassador of King Antialcidas called himself Bhagvata and erected Garudadhwaja in his honour of Vasudev. |  |

### Puppetry

- Almost all types of puppets are found in India. Puppetry throughout the ages has held an important place in traditional entertainment. Like traditional theatre, themes for puppet theatre are mostly based on epics and legends.

### Types of Traditional Indian Puppets

- String Puppets** String puppets or marionettes having jointed limbs controlled by strings allow far greater flexibility and are, therefore, the most articulate of the puppets. Rajasthan, Orissa (Odisha), Karnataka and Tamil Nadu are some of the regions where this form of puppetry has flourished.
- Rod Puppets** Rod puppets are an extension of glove-puppets, but often much larger and supported and manipulated by rods from below. This form of puppetry now is found mostly in West Bengal and Orissa (Odisha).
- Glove Puppets** Glove puppets, are also known as *sleeve, hand* or *palm puppets*. The head is made of either papier mache, cloth or wood, with two hands emerging from just below the neck. The rest of the figure consists of a long flowing skirt.
- These puppets are like limp dolls, but in the hands of an able puppeteer are capable of producing a wide range of movements. The manipulation technique is simple the movements are controlled by the human hand the first finger inserted in the head and the middle finger and the thumb are the two arms of the puppet.
- Shadow puppets** are flat figures. They are cut out of leather, which has been treated to make it translucent. Shadow puppets are pressed against the screen with a strong source of light behind it. The manipulation between the light and the screen make silhouettes or colourful shadows, as the case may be, for the viewers who sit in front of the screen.
- This tradition of shadow puppets survives in Orissa (Odisha), Kerala, Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka, Maharashtra and Tamil Nadu.

### Major Puppetry Traditions of Various States

|                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| Andhra Pradesh  | Tholu Bommalata (Shadow) and Koyya bommalu (String)  |
| Assam           | Putal Nach (String and Rod)  |
| Karnataka       | Gombe Atta (String), Togalu (Shadow)   |
| Kerala          | Pava Kuthu (Glove), Thol Pavakuthu (Shadow)  |
| Maharashtra     | Kalasutri Bahulya (String), Chamadyache Bahulya (Shadow)                                   |
| Orissa (Odisha) | Kundei Nach (Glove) Ravana Chaya (Shadow)<br>Kathi Kundei (Rod), Gopalila Kandhei (String) |
| Rajasthan       | Kathputli (String)   |
| Tamil Nadu      | Bommalattam (String), Bommalattam (Shadow)   |
| West Bengal     | Putul Nach (Rod), Tarer or Sutor putul (string),<br>Bener Putul (Glove)                    |

## Handicrafts

- Handicrafts commonly refer to hand-made artisan crafts or artisanry.

### Different Kinds of Handicrafts

- India is the manufacturer to variety of handicrafts, which are popular even in international market. *The most well known forms of Handicrafts in India are as following:*

#### Bamboo Handicrafts

- Handicrafts made from bamboo are one of the eco-friendly crafts in India. The varied items made from bamboo are baskets, dolls, toys, chalani, furniture, mats, wall-hangings, umbrella handles, crossbows, khorahi, kula, dukula, kathi, jewellery boxes and many more. Bamboo handicrafts are mostly made in West Bengal, Assam and Tripura.

#### Cane Handicrafts

- Cane products include utilitarian objects like trays, baskets, stylish furniture etc. Vellore district of Tamil Nadu is famous for cane handicrafts in India.

#### Bell Metal Handicrafts

- The hardened form of bronze which is generally used to make bells is referred as bell metal. This kind of hard alloy is used to make crafts like vermillion boxes, bowls, candle stands, donari (*pendants*) and many more. This bell metal crafts are mostly prevalent in Madhya Pradesh, Bihar, Assam and Manipur.

#### Paper Handicrafts

- Vibrant coloured papers are combined together to form varied crafts like kites, masks, decorative flowers, lamp shades-puppets, hand-fans etc. Papier Mache developed in the Mughal era is even a famous form of paper handicraft in India. This craft industry is mainly located in Delhi, Rajagriha, Patna, Gaya, Awadh, Ahmedabad and Allahabad.

### Jute Handicrafts

- Jute craftsmen have created a worldwide niche in the field of jute handicrafts. The huge range of jute crafts includes bags, office stationaries, bangles and other jewellery, footwear, wallhangings and many more. West Bengal, Assam and Bihar, being the leading jute producers, lead the jute handicrafts market in India.

### Clay Handicrafts or Pottery

- With its origin in the Indus Valley Civilisation, clay craft or pottery is said to be one of the most primitive form of handicrafts in India. People engaged in pottery are called *Kumhaars*.

### Shell Handicraft

- Shell handicraft can be made out of three types of shells like conch shell, tortoise shell and sea shell. Different kinds of goods like bangles, forks, decorative bowls, lockets, spoons, buttons, curtains, chandeliers, mirror frames, table mats etc are the products of shell crafting. Generally, the places located on the sea shore like Gulf of Mannar, Goa, Orissa (Odisha) etc are the places for shell handicraft.

### Silver Filigree or Meenakari

- Silver filigree/Tarakashi is a creative form of handicraft created from the twisted threads of silver or gold. Silver filigree includes paandans, tea trays, trinket boxes, earrings, necklaces, bracelets and varied other jewellery. Besides, Cuttack in Odisha, Karimnagar in the State of Andhra Pradesh is known for its silver filigree work.

## Paintings

- The history of Indian paintings is just about as old as the history of the people of India. The most primitive instances of paintings in India can be traced back to cave paintings.

### Cave Paintings

- These are the earliest evidences of Indian paintings made on cave walls and palaces, whereas miniature paintings are small-sized vibrant, sophisticated handmade artworks. Paintings on caves and temples walls mostly describe numerous characteristics of Hinduism and Buddhism.
- Various forms of Indian painting developed in various time periods. The immense variety begins from prehistoric cave paintings of Bhimbetka and flourishes through paintings of Ajanta caves, Ellora caves and Bagh caves.
- Ajanta cave paintings depict the life and teachings of Lord Buddha and Buddha Jataka on their walls.

## Ajanta Paintings

- The paintings here were done between 200 BC and 7th century BC during the period of Sunga, Kushan and Gupta rulers. The main characteristics of these paintings are these are fresco wall paintings, use of limited colours. Variety of life has been expressed, emotions are expressed using hand postures, stories of Jatakas are depicted.

## Ellora Paintings

- So far as the style is concerned, Ellora painting is a departure from the classical norm of Ajanta paintings. Ofcourse, the classical tradition of modelling of the mass and rounded soft outline as well as the illusion of the coming forward from the depth is not altogether ignored.
- But the most important characteristic features of Ellora painting are the sharp twist of the head, painted angular bents of the arms, the concave curve of the close limbs, the sharp projected nose and the long drawn open eyes, which can be well considered as the medieval character of Indian paintings.

## Bagh Paintings

- These are located on the banks of river Bagh in Madhya Pradesh. The paintings here are quite similar to those of Ajanta in terms of subject matter and characteristics.
- The period of these paintings is still not accurately known. The best paintings were in the cave number 4 though many have now been removed and kept in a museum for preservation.

## Other Styles of Paintings

### Mughal School

- This school has a specific style of South Asian painting. Usually, it was confined to miniatures either as book depictions or as individual works to be kept in albums. This practice materialised from Persian miniature painting, with India influence of Hindu, Buddhist and Jain.
- It wonderfully blossomed during the Mughal Empire. Later, this school of painting reached other Indian courts of Muslims and Hindus and afterwards Sikhs. Akbar and Jahangir were exceptionally great patrons of this painting.
- Mughal school of painting revolved around court scenes, portraits, hunting scenes, lovers, battle fronts etc. Renowned painters included Mir Abdul, Samad, Daswant, Basawan, Govardhan, Miskin and Lal.

## Rajput School

- This school progressed and thrived during the 18th century in the majestic Rajputana courts. This school of painting flooded from the approach of Mughal painting.
- A typical style of painting with particular common characteristics came up in every Rajput realm.
- This school illustrated an assortment of themes like landscapes, adepts from Mahabharata, Ramayana, Krishna's life and human beings.
- Several paintings were created on palace walls, fort chambers, havelis etc. But the favourite medium was of miniatures in manuscripts or single sheets for keeping in albums.
- Rangoli one of the most beautiful and most pleasing art forms of India is comprised of two words. Rang meaning colour and aavalli meaning coloured creepers or row of colours.

## Pahari School of Painting

- This school is an *umbrella* expression which is used for a type of Indian painting starting off from Hill kingdoms of North Indian Himalayan region, during 17th to 19th centuries. Remarkably Mankot, Basohli, Chamba, Nurpur, Kangra, Garhwal, Mandi and Guler were the places of creating these exotic paintings. They were frequently created in miniature forms.

### Rangoli in Different States

| Name of Rangoli | State          |
|-----------------|----------------|
| Kolam           | Tamil Nadu     |
| Alpana          | West Bengal    |
| Mandana         | Rajasthan      |
| Pudival         | Kerala         |
| Rangoli         | Karnataka      |
| Sathiya         | Gujarat        |
| Chaitrangana    | Maharashtra    |
| Chowkpurana     | Uttar Pradesh  |
| Muggu           | Andhra Pradesh |
| Alikhthap       | Kumaon         |

# Self Check

## Build Your Confidence

- 1.** The famous painting 'Satyam Shivam Sundaram' was prepared by  
(a) Mahendranath Singh      (b) Nand Kishore Sharma  
(c) Shivnandan Nautiyal      (d) Vishwanath Mehta
- 2.** Consider the following statements with reference to the history of Indian rock-cut architecture. [IAS 2013]  
1. The caves at Badami are the oldest surviving rock-cut caves in India.  
2. The Barabar rock-cut caves were originally made for Ajivikas by Emperor Chandragupta Maurya.  
3. At Ellora, caves were made for different faiths.  
*Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?*  
(a) Only 1      (b) 2 and 3      (c) Only 3      (d) All of these
- 3.** Consider the following historical places. [IAS 2013]  
1. Ajanta caves      2. Lepakshi temple      3. Sanchi stupa  
*Which of the above place(s) is/are also known for mural paintings?*  
(a) Only 1      (b) 1 and 2      (c) All of these      (d) None of these
- 4.** Who was the Chola king under whose reign Brihadeshwara temple of Tanjore was constructed?  
(a) Rajendra I      (b) Kulattuniga I  
(c) Rajaraja I      (d) Rajadhiraj I
- 5.** Match the following
- | <i>List I</i> | <i>List II</i>           |
|---------------|--------------------------|
| A. Babar      | 1. Jama Masjid (Sambhal) |
| B. Humayun    | 2. Din Panah             |
| C. Akbar      | 3. Jahangiri Mahal       |
| D. Jahangir   | 4. Akbar's Mausoleum     |
- Codes**
- | A     | B | C | D |
|-------|---|---|---|
| (a) 1 | 2 | 4 | 3 |
| (c) 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
- | A     | B | C | D |
|-------|---|---|---|
| (b) 2 | 1 | 3 | 4 |
| (d) 1 | 3 | 4 | 2 |
- 6.** with reference to the history of Indian rock-cut architecture, Consider the following statements [IAS 2013]  
1. The caves at Badami are the oldest surviving rock-cut caves in India.  
2. The Barabar rock-cut caves were originally made for Ajivikas by emperor Chandragupta Maurya.  
3. At Ellora caves were made for different faiths.  
*Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?*  
(a) Only 1      (b) 2 and 3      (c) Only 3      (d) All of these
- 7.** With reference to the art and archaeological history of India, which one among the following was made earliest?  
(a) Lingaraja Temple at Bhubaneswar      [IAS 2015]  
(b) Rock-cut Elephant at Dhauli  
(c) Rock-cut Monuments at Mahabalipuram  
(d) Varaha ilimage at Udayagiri
- 8.** Which one of the following sites is famous for pre-historic paintings?  
(a) Bagh      (b) Ajanta  
(c) Bhimbetka      (d) Amravati
- 9.** Which of the following temples was a well known centre of higher education?  
(a) Dasavatara Temple at Deogarh  
(b) Sas-bahu Temple of Gwalior  
(c) Shore Temple at Mamallapuram  
(d) Trayipurusha Temple at Salotgi
- 10.** Which one of the following is an Octagonal Tomb?  
(a) Tomb of Sikander Lodhi  
(b) Tomb of Balban  
(c) Tomb of Ghiyas-ud-din Tughlaq  
(d) Tomb of Feroz Shah Tughlaq
- 11.** Kalamkari painting refers to [IAS 2015]  
(a) a hand-painted cotton textile in South India  
(b) a handmade drawing on bamboo handicrafts in North-East India  
(c) a block-painted woollen cloth in Western Himalayan region of India  
(d) a hand-painted decorative silk cloth in North-Western India
- 12.** Which of the following tomb is placed in the centre of a large garden and resembles as a prototype of the Taj Mahal?  
(a) Akbar's tomb at Sikandra  
(b) Itmad-ud-Daula's tomb at Agra  
(c) Sher Shah's tomb at Sasaram  
(d) Humayun's tomb at Delhi
- 13.** Consider the following statements about Bagh paintings.  
1. There are 9 caves at Bagh (Near Gwalior) on the banks of the river Bagh (a tributary of Narmada).  
2. The 4 cave Rangmahal has got the maximum number of paintings.  
*Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?*  
(a) Only 1      (b) Only 2  
(c) Both 1 and 2      (d) Neither 1 nor 2
- 14.** Consider the following statements  
1. The Art of Miniature Painting was introduced to India by the Mughals.  
2. In the 16th century, the Mughal ruler Humayun brought artists from Persia, who specialised in Miniature paintings.  
*Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?*  
(a) Only 1      (b) Only 2  
(c) Both 1 and 2      (d) Neither 1 nor 2



1. (c)      2. (c)      3. (c)      4. (c)      5. (c)  
6. (c)      7. (b)      8. (c)      9. (d)      10. (a)  
11. (a)      12. (d)      13. (c)      14. (c)

# Chronological Panorama of Indian History

|                     |   |                     |   |
|---------------------|---|---------------------|---|
| <b>2350 BC</b>      | Indus Valley Civilisation Period                              | <b>AD 1178</b>      | Bhim-II emerged, victorious in the battle with Muhammead Ghori  |
| <b>1750 BC</b>      | Decline of Indus Valley Civilisation                          | <b>AD 1191</b>      | First Battle of Tarain, Prithviraj Chauhan defeated Ghori   |
| <b>1500 BC</b>      | Vedic Age   | <b>AD 1192</b>      | Second Battle of Tarain, Ghori defeated Prithviraj Chauhan  |
| <b>600 BC</b>       | End of Vedic Era  | <b>AD 1194</b>      | Muhammad Ghori defeated Jaichand, ruler of Kannauj in Battle of Chandawar                             |
| <b>563 BC</b>       | Buddhist Era  | <b>AD 1202</b>      | Bakhtiyar Khilji destroyed Nalanda University   |
| <b>483 BC</b>       | Death of Gautam Buddha  | <b>AD 1206</b>      | Delhi Sultanate founded by Qutub-ud-din Aibak   |
| <b>540 BC</b>       | Mahavira's Era  | <b>AD 1210</b>      | Iltutmish ascended the throne of Delhi Sultanate  |
| <b>468 BC</b>       | Death of Mahavira   | <b>AD 1236</b>      | Razia Sultana ascended the throne   |
| <b>544 BC</b>       | Reign of Bimbisara (Haryank Dynasty)                          | <b>AD 1241</b>      | First Mongol invasion during the rule of Bahram Shah  |
| <b>492 BC</b>       | End of Haryank Dynasty  | <b>AD 1288-1293</b> | Marco Polo's visit of India   |
| <b>326 BC</b>       | Alexander attacked India through Khyber Pass                  | <b>AD 1326-1327</b> | Muhammad-bin Tughlaq shifted his capital from Daulatabad to Delhi                                     |
| <b>322 BC</b>       | Chandragupta Maurya appointed king                            | <b>AD 1333</b>      | Moroccan traveller, Ibn-Battuta's India's visit   |
| <b>305 BC</b>       | Battle between Chandragupta Maurya and Seleucus               | <b>AD 1336</b>      | Vijayanagara empire founded   |
| <b>304-299 BC</b>   | Stay of Megasthenes in the Court of Chandragupta Maurya       | <b>AD 1347</b>      | Foundation of Bahmani kingdom   |
| <b>269 BC</b>       | Coronation of Ashoka  | <b>AD 1398</b>      | Invasion of Taimur on India   |
| <b>261 BC</b>       | Victory of Ashoka in Kalinga War                              | <b>AD 1498</b>      | Arrival of Vasco-da-Gama in India   |
| <b>260 BC</b>       | Ashoka fought Kalinga War                                     | <b>AD 1506</b>      | Sikandar Lodi shifted capital from Delhi to Agra  |
| <b>232 BC</b>       | Death of Ashoka   | <b>AD 1509-1529</b> | Reign of Krishnadeva Raya   |
| <b>183 BC</b>       | Attack of Indo-Greeks   | <b>AD 1526</b>      | First Battle of Panipat, Babur defeated Ibrahim Lodi  |
| <b>57 BC</b>        | Vikram Era begins   | <b>AD 1527</b>      | Battle of Khanwa, Babur defeated Rana Sanga   |
| <b>AD 78</b>        | Saka Era  | <b>AD 1533</b>      | Humayun got Dinpanah constructed  |
| <b>AD 150</b>       | Junagarh Inscription (first sanskrit inscription)             | <b>AD 1540</b>      | Battle of Bilgram, Sher Shah defeated Humayun   |
| <b>AD 319</b>       | Coronation of Chandragupta I                                  | <b>AD 1555</b>      | Battle of Sirhind, Bairam Khan defeated Sikander Sur. Humayun once again ascended the throne of Delhi |
| <b>AD 335-380</b>   | Reign of Samudragupta   | <b>AD 1556</b>      | Coronation of Akbar, Second Battle of Panipat fought in which Hemu was defeated                       |
| <b>AD 380-412</b>   | Reign of Chandragupta II, Fa-Hein's visit                     | <b>AD 1576</b>      | Battle of Haldighati  |
| <b>AD 1008-1009</b> | Ghazni defeated anandapala (Battle of Waihind)                | <b>AD 1582</b>      | Din-i-Illahi started by Akbar   |
| <b>AD 412-454</b>   | Kumaragupta's rule, Foundation of Nalanda University          | <b>AD 1583</b>      | Ralph Fitch, the first British merchant to reach Agra   |
| <b>AD 454-467</b>   | Rule of Skandagupta and attack of Hunas                       | <b>AD 1600</b>      | East India Company established  |
| <b>AD 606-647</b>   | Harshavardhana's reign  |                     |   |
| <b>AD 630</b>       | Visit of Hiuen Tsang during Harsha's rule                     |                     |   |
| <b>AD 632</b>       | Battle between Harshavardhana and Pulakesin II                |                     |   |
| <b>AD 712</b>       | Arab attack of Sindh  |                     |   |
| <b>AD 915-916</b>   | Almasudi's attack on India                                    |                     |   |
| <b>AD 405-411</b>   | Visit of Chinese traveller Fa-Hien                            |                     |   |
| <b>AD 1001-1026</b> | 17 raids of Mahmud Ghazni on India, Alberuni's visit to India |                     |   |

|                     |  |                |  |
|---------------------|--|----------------|--|
| <b>AD 1608</b>      | William Hawkins visited Jahangir's court   | <b>AD 1911</b> | Annulment of Partition of Bengal   |
| <b>AD 1627</b>      | Birth of Shivaji   | <b>AD 1913</b> | Ghadar Party founded, Rabindranath Tagore received Nobel Prize                               |
| <b>AD 1665</b>      | Treaty of Purandar signed between Shivaji and Jai Singh                            | <b>AD 1914</b> | World War I held   |
| <b>AD 1674</b>      | Coronation of Shivaji  | <b>AD 1915</b> | Arrival of Mahatma Gandhi in India   |
| <b>AD 1699</b>      | Khalsa Sect established by Guru Gobind Singh                                       | <b>AD 1916</b> | Home Rule League founded, Pact signed between INC and Muslim League                          |
| <b>AD 1707</b>      | Death of Aurangzeb   | <b>AD 1917</b> | Champaran Satyagraha launched by Gandhiji, Formation of Saddler Commission                   |
| <b>AD 1717</b>      | Farrukhsiyar gave firmans of East India Company                                    | <b>AD 1919</b> | Rowlett Act passed   |
| <b>AD 1724</b>      | Establishment of Hyderabad state by Nizam-ul-Mulk                                  | <b>AD 1919</b> | Montague-Chelmsford Reforms, Jallianwala Bagh Massacre, Khilafat Movement                    |
| <b>AD 1739</b>      | Battle of Karnal, Nadir Shah's invasion on Delhi                                   | <b>AD 1920</b> | Non-Cooperation Movement, All India Trade Union Congress established                         |
| <b>AD 1748</b>      | Ahmed Shah Abdali invaded India  | <b>AD 1922</b> | Chauri-Chaura incident, Withdrawal of Non-Cooperation Movement                               |
| <b>AD 1757</b>      | Battle of Plassey  | <b>AD 1923</b> | Swaraj Party founded   |
| <b>AD 1760</b>      | English General Sir Eyre Coote defeated the French Army in the Battle of Wandiwash | <b>AD 1924</b> | Hindustan Republican Army founded, Gandhiji appointed President only once in Belgaum Session |
| <b>AD 1764</b>      | Battle of Buxar  | <b>AD 1925</b> | Kakori Train Case  |
| <b>AD 1772</b>      | Warren Hastings appointed Governor of Bengal                                       | <b>AD 1927</b> | Simon Commission appointed   |
| <b>AD 1773</b>      | Regulating Act passed  | <b>AD 1928</b> | Nehru Report   |
| <b>AD 1774</b>      | Supreme Court was set-up at Calcutta   | <b>AD 1929</b> | Bhagat Singh and Batukeshwar Dutt threw Bomb in Assembly                                     |
| <b>AD 1775</b>      | First Anglo-Maratha War  | <b>AD 1929</b> | Lahore Session of INC  |
| <b>AD 1784</b>      | Pitt's India Act passed, Foundation of Asiatic Society of Bengal                   | <b>AD 1930</b> | Gandhiji's Dandi March, Round Table Conference, Civil Disobedience Movement launched         |
| <b>AD 1793</b>      | Permanent Settlement applicable  | <b>AD 1931</b> | Second Round Table Conference, Chandrashekhar Azad shot himself at Alfred Park in Allahabad  |
| <b>AD 1799</b>      | Death of Tipu Sultan   | <b>AD 1931</b> | Gandhi Irwin Pact signed, Bhagat Singh hanged  |
| <b>AD 1809</b>      | Treaty of Amritsar signed between Britishers and Ranjit Singh                      | <b>AD 1932</b> | Three Round Table Conference, communal awards  |
| <b>AD 1817</b>      | Third Anglo-Maratha War  | <b>AD 1933</b> | Gandhiji started a magazine 'Harijan'  |
| <b>AD 1829</b>      | Abolition of Sati  | <b>AD 1934</b> | Congress Socialist Party founded   |
| <b>AD 1854</b>      | Wood's Dispatch  | <b>AD 1935</b> | Government of India Act passed   |
| <b>AD 1857</b>      | Revolt/Uprising of 1857  | <b>AD 1938</b> | Subhash Chandra Bose appointed President of Indian National Congress                         |
| <b>AD 1857</b>      | Establishment of Bombay, Madras and Calcutta Universities                          | <b>AD 1939</b> | Forward Bloc founded, World War II started   |
| <b>AD 1860</b>      | Budget system introduced in India  | <b>AD 1940</b> | Gandhiji launched Individual Satyagraha  |
| <b>AD 1865</b>      | Telegraph service started between Europe and India                                 | <b>AD 1941</b> | Azad Hind Fauj established   |
| <b>AD 1872</b>      | Census system started in India   | <b>AD 1942</b> | Gandhiji gave a slogan 'Do or Die' (Quit India Movement)                                     |
| <b>AD 1875</b>      | Arya Samaj founded   | <b>AD 1944</b> | Subhash Chandra Bose called Mahatma Gandhi as the 'Father of Nation'                         |
| <b>AD 1876</b>      | Indian Association established by Surendranath Bannerjee                           | <b>AD 1945</b> | Wavell Plan  |
| <b>AD 1877</b>      | Delhi Darbar held  | <b>AD 1946</b> | Cabinet Mission, Muslim League's call for Direct Action Day                                  |
| <b>AD 1885</b>      | Indian National Congress established   | <b>AD 1946</b> | Royal Indian Navy's mutiny   |
| <b>AD 1893</b>      | Vivekananda's speech in Chicago  | <b>AD 1947</b> | Indian Independence and Partition of India   |
| <b>AD 1902</b>      | Lord Curzon appointed a commission for improvement in University Education System  |                |  |
| <b>AD 1905</b>      | Partition of Bengal  |                |  |
| <b>AD 1906</b>      | Muslim League founded  |                |  |
| <b>AD 1907</b>      | Surat Split of INC   |                |  |
| <b>AD 1905-1908</b> | Boycott and Swadeshi Movement  |                |  |
| <b>AD 1909</b>      | Minto-Morley reforms separate electorates for Muslims                              |                |  |

# Glossary

## Important Sites

**Ajanta** The Ajanta Caves are situated at a distance of 107 km North of Aurangabad. The caves, famous for its murals, are the finest surviving examples of Indian art, particularly painting. In all, total 30 excavations were hewn out of rock which also include an unfinished one. Out of these, five (cave no. 9, 10, 19, 26 and 29) are Chaitya Grihas and the rest are Viharas. In their range of time and treatments, they provide a panorama of life in ancient India and are a source of all kinds of information-hair styles, ornaments, textiles, musical instruments, details of architecture, customs etc. It was from this collection of classical Indian art that a particular style was formed that travelled with Buddhism to many parts of the world. Cave 26 of Ajanta, is a colossal representation of the moment when the Buddha shook off the bindings of this mortal body to attain salvation. The solemn grandeur of the moment is highlighted by the sensitive portrayal of the many monks, who grieve the passing away of their master.

**Ajmer** It was founded in the late AD 7th century by Ajay Raj Singh Chauhan. Chauhan clan is a branch of Chechi Gujjars. The Chauhan dynasty ruled Ajmer in spite of repeated invasions by Turkic Muslim armies from Central Asia across the North of India. Ajmer was conquered by Muhammad of Ghori, founder of the Delhi Sultanate, in 1193. The Dargah Sharif of Khwaja Moin-ud-din Chishti is situated at the foot of the Taragarh hill.

**Anuradhapura** It was first became a capital in 380 BC under Pandukabhaya, but it was under Devanampiya Tissa, during whose reign Buddhism reached Sri Lanka. According to the Buddhist texts, Anuradhapura was famous as the ancient capital city of Sri Lanka. In 250 BC, Ashoka got Thuparamaya Stupa constructed here, in which one tooth of Gautam Buddha is kept.

**Ayodhya** It is on the right bank of the river Sarayu, 6 km from Faizabad. This town is closely associated with Rama, seventh incarnation of Vishnu. According to the Ramayana, the city is 9000 years old and was founded by Manu. Other sources hold that it was founded by its namesake, King Ayudh. For centuries, it was the capital for the Surya dynasty, of which Lord Rama was the most celebrated king. At the time, it was known as Kaushal Desai. The Atharva veda described Ayodhya as a city built by God and being prosperous as paradise itself. Its first ruling king was Ikshvaku, of the Solar clan suryavansa and eldest son of Vaivasvata Manu.

**Badami** It was the capital of the early Chalukyas, who ruled much of Karnataka in the 6th to 8th centuries. The Badami cave temples are composed of four caves, all carved out of the soft Badami sandstone on a hill cliff in the late 6th to 7th centuries.

**Banskhera** In 1894, during an excavation, an inscription of Harsha era was founded, in which the details of land grants to Brahmins is mentioned. This inscription also describes the administrative machinery during Harsha's rule.

**Bhitargaon** It is small village in Kanpur district and is famous for an ancient brick temple of the Gupta period. The Bhitargaon temple is a terraced brick building, fronted with a terracotta panel. Built in the 6th century during the Gupta empire, it is the oldest remaining terracotta Hindu shrine with a roof and a high Sikkha. The walls are decorated with terracotta panels depicting aquatic monsters, Shiva and Vishnu etc.

**Bhimbetaka** It is located in the Raisen district of Madhya Pradesh about 45 km to South-East of Bhopal. Bhimbetaka discovered in 1958 by VS Wakanker, is the biggest pre-historic art depository in India. Atop the hill, a large number of rock-shelters have been discovered, of which more than 130 contain paintings.

Neolithic tools like points, trapezes and lunates made of chert and chalcedony, besides stone querns and grinders, decorated bone objects, pieces of ochre and human burial were also found here.

**Bhubaneswar** Bhubaneswar's first mention was during the Kalinga War, which took place near Dhauli in the 3rd century BC. The history of Bhubaneswar started when emperor Kharavela established his capital in Sisupalgarh. The city of Bhubaneswar once contained 7000 Hindu temples; now only 500 remains are standing. A few of the ruined temples were dismantled through mother nature's entropies, but the overwhelming number of temples destroyed by Islamic looters. The Lingaraj, the Parasurameswar and the Rajarani temples are not only ancient places of worship, they are seen as architectural marvels.

**Champa** It is located in the Bhagalpur district of Bihar. It was the capital of Anga Mahajanapada. 12th Jain tirthankara Vasudev was born here. According to puranas, it is known by the name of Malini.

**Deogarh** It is a small village in Lalitpur district of Uttar Pradesh. It is known for its Gupta monuments, located on and near the Hill Fort on the right bank of the Betwa river. A number of ancient monuments of Hindu and Jain origins are found within and outside the walls of the fort.

**Dhar** It is the medieval historical town located in the Malwa region of Western Madhya Pradesh. During the rule of the Paramara dynasty, Dhar was famous throughout India as a centre of culture and learning, especially under King Bhoj.

**Ellora** It is located at 30 km from the city of Aurangabad, Maharashtra. Ellora has 34 caves that are carved into the sides of a basaltic hill. The caves at Ellora contain some of the finest specimens of cave-temple architecture and exquisitely adorned interiors, built by the Rashtrakuta rulers. It represents the epitome of Indian rock-cut architecture. The 12 Buddhist caves, 17 Hindu caves and 5 Jain caves built in proximity, demonstrate the religious harmony prevalent during this period of Indian history.

**Bodh Gaya** It is one of the most important and sacred Buddhist pilgrimage centres in the world. It was here under a banyan tree, the Bodhi tree, Gautama attained supreme knowledge to become Buddha, the enlightened one. Several centuries after Buddha's passing away, the Maurya emperor Ashoka (234-198 BC) contributed tremendously towards the revival, consolidation and spread of the original religion. It is the monasteries, Ashoka built for the Buddhist monks and the pillars known as Ashokan pillars erected to commemorate innumerable historical sites associated with the Buddha's life.

**Indraprastha** The city of Indraprastha, which is sometimes also known as Khandavaprastha, was the capital of the kingdom led by the Pandavas in the *Mahabharata* epic. It is often thought to have been located in the region of present day New Delhi.

**Junagarh** It is situated in erstwhile Saurashtra, at the foot of Mount Girnar on the Northern fringes of the Gir forest. Through various phases of history, Junagarh is described with equal importance and for many centuries, it was the capital of the Western region ruled by several dynasties of rulers such as Mauryas, Greeks, Kshtrapas and Guptas. The Junagarh rock inscription, found in Junagarh, was carved under the orders of King Rudradaman.

**Kanniyakumari** Kanniyakumari district is the Southernmost district in Tamil Nadu. The district derives its name from the Goddess *Kanniyakumari Amman* enshrined in the temple located at the southernmost tip of mainland India, Kanniyakumari. Vivekananda Rock Memorial is a monument and it is a popular tourist attraction.

**Khajuraho** The 9th to 12th century temples of Khajuraho are the evidences of the architectural geniuses during the times of Chandela dynasty. Situated in Madhya Pradesh, India, Khajuraho oozes with passion, eroticism, dance and music and other finesse of creative arts depicted in sculpture and images of the temples. The 85 temples were built in North Indian 'Nagara' style of architecture. Temple town of Khajuraho is much different from any other temple city of India. It is not about religion and worshipping and deities. The temples of Khajuraho are instead famous for the eroticism etched on its walls in the form of sculptures.

**Kushinagar** Kushinagar, district of the Eastern Uttar Pradesh, is known for its cultural heritage all over the world. It is one of the four holiest places for the Buddhist. At Kushinagar, Great Lord Buddha, founder of Buddhism, delivered his last sermon. Kushinagar also expresses the common thread of all sects of Buddhism through its magnificent Vihara, Chaityas, temples and Tibetan monasteries. In ancient times, the town was also known as Kusinara and Kasia.

**Mamallapuram Mahabalipuram**, also known as Mamallapuram is located at 60 km away from Chennai along the shores of Bay of Bengal. The name Mamallapuram is derived from the Pallava ruler Narasimhavarman I, an acclaimed wrestler who was famously called as Mamallan. Mahabalipuram is known for its history and the rock carved temples and sculptures that stands as testimony for it.

### Arjuna's Penance/The Descent of the Ganges (Mamallapuram, Tamil Nadu)

Arjuna's Penance is a story from the *Mahabharata*, how Arjuna, one of the Pandava brothers, performed severe austerities in order to obtain Shiva's weapon. The Arjuna bas-relief is in the centre of Mahabalipuram, facing the sea at a short distance from the shores of the Coramandel coast of the Bay of Bengal where the Shore temple is situated.

**Manyakheta** The city was founded in the 9th century by the Rashtrakuta ruler Amoghavarsha I and became the capital of the dynasty. Manyakheta rose to prominence when the capital of Rashtrakutas was moved from Mayurkhandi in Bidar district to Manyakheta during the rule of Amoghavarsha I. Amoghavarsha I and the scholars mathematician Mahaveer Acharya and intellectuals Ajitasen Acharya, Gunabhadra Acharya and Jinasen Acharya, helped to spread Jainism.

**Mount Abu** It is located in the state of Rajasthan. It is famous as the pilgrimage centre of both the Hindus and Jains. It is world renowned for Dilwara temple.

**Sarnath** Sarnath or Sarangnath also called Mrigadava, Migadaya,

**Rishipattana** and Isipatana is one of the most important Buddhist pilgrimage centres in India. It is the place where Gautam Buddha gave his first sermon to his five disciples. At the time of Chandragupta II (AD 376-414), the famous Chinese traveller Fa-Hien visited Sarnath and saw four stupas and two monasteries here. Hiuen-Tsang has left a vivid description of Sarnath's monuments.

**Shravanabelagola** The statue of Gomateshwara Bahubali at Shravanabelagola, is one of the most important pilgrimage destinations in Jainism. It is a place of great importance from the point of pilgrimage and also archaeological and religious heritage. Shravanabelagola is a city that comes under the Hassan district of Karnataka. Acharya Bhadrabahu and his pupil Chandragupta Maurya are believed to have meditated there.

**Somnath** Somnath temple is a significant temple, comprising one of the twelve Jyotirlingas of Lord Shiva. Located in Prabhas Kshetra near Veraval, Somnath temple falls in Saurashtra region that lies on the Western coast of Gujarat. In 1024, the temple was raided by Mahmud Ghazni, who took camel-loads of jewels and valuables from here. The Paramara King Bhoj of Malwa and the Solanki King Bhima of Gujarat (*Anhilwara*) took the initiative to rebuild the temple during 1026-1042.

**Tamluk** It is located in East Medinipur district of West Bengal. The antiquity and importance of the site have been established through excavation from time to time. The excavation revealed the earliest occupation from Neolithic up to modern times. In ancient period, it was known by the name of **Tamralipti**. It was the famous port on the Eastern coast of India. Various travellers like Fa-Hien and Hiuen-Tsang studied here.

**Thaneswar** It was the capital of Jat King

Harshavardhana. Prabhakar Vardhan, father of Harshavardhana, was the first king of the Bains or Virk clan with his capital at Thaneswar. Thaneswar is the prakrit form of Sanskrit word *sthaneshwar*. Thaneswar is an old locality of modern Kurukshetra city and is one among the 4 places where **Kumbh melas** are held after every four years alternately.

**Ujjain** It is situated on the right bank of the river Shipra. Historically, the city is associated with emperor Ashoka, Chandragupta Vikramaditya, Raja Bhoja, Rudradaman, the Delhi Sultans, Mandu Sultans, Holkars and the Scindias. Emperor Ashoka was the Governor of Ujjain. The city continued to be the capital of Vikramaditya of the AD 5th century to the Vikramaditya of the 11th century until being destroyed by Ilutmish in the 13th century. It was ruled by Delhi Sultans until the 14th century and then the Mandu Sultans until the 15th century. Ujjain is a very holy city to Hindus and a site for the triennial Kumbh mela. According to ancient Hindu scriptures, Ujjain was originally called Avantika.

**Varanasi** The land of Varanasi has been the ultimate pilgrimage spot for Hindus for ages. Varanasi is the oldest living city in the world. This city is well-known for Ganga Ghats and Vishwanath temple.

**Vellore** During medieval period, Vellore was the capital of Hoysala rulers. Here, Keshav temple is famous for its art and architecture style.

## Prominent Personalities

**Abdul Gaffar Khan** He was popularly known as the frontier Gandhi; he was a prominent nationalist leader of the North-Western Frontier Province and founded a nationalist organisation, called the Khudai Khidmatgars (*servants of God*), popularly referred to as the Red Shirts. He was awarded with the Bharat Ratna Award posthumously by the Indian Government.

**Abdur Rahim Khan-i-Khanan** He was a son of Bairam Khan he became a prominent noble and military commander of Akbar and contributed to literature.

**Abul Fazl** He was a son of Shaik Mubarak and brother of Faizi (poet) he was the official historian and close advisor of Akbar. He wrote *Ain-i-Akbari* (a statistical account of Akbar's empire) and *Akbar namah* (an authoritative account of his reign). He was assassinated by Bir Singh Bundela in 1602 at the instigation of Prince Salim (later Jahangir).

**Aga Khan** The title of the religious head of the Borah Ismailian community of the Muslims in India. It was first conferred on Hasan Ali Shah, who claimed descent from the prophet through his daughter.

**Ahalya Bai** The widowed daughter-in-law of Malhar Rao Holkar of Indore, who ruled the state between 1764 and 1795. Famous for her construction of temples like the Annapurna and Vishnu temples at Banaras and Gaya respectively.

**Ahmed Shah Abdali** He was belonging to the Durrani clan of Afghanistan; he initially worked under Nadir Shah. During his independent rule of Afghanistan (1747-1773), he invaded India 8 times, scoring a spectacular victory over the Marathas in the Third Battle of Panipat (1761).

**Alberuni** He was originally a native of Khiva in Central Asia; he was brought to Ghazni by Mahmud. Abu Rihan Muhammad was his original name, but became famous as Alberuni, meaning the *Master*. Being a great scholar himself, he learnt Sanskrit and made a thorough study of Indian sciences and philosophy. His famous work, *Tariq-i-Hind* or *Kitab-i-Hind*, is a truly scientific treatise and gives us an accurate account of India on the eve of the Turkish conquest of India.

**Muhammad Ali** A prominent nationalist leader and brother of Shaukat Ali. He was a leader of the Khilafat Movement and the Non-Cooperation Movement. He became the President of the Indian National Congress in 1923.

**Muhammad Ruhela Ali** He was the founder of the power of the Rohillas or Ruhelas in Rohilkhand lying to the North-West of Awadh. In 1774, they were defeated and their last ruler, Hafiz Rahamat Khan was murdered by the Nawab of Awadh with the help of the British.

**Malik Ambar** An Abyssinian slave who settled in Ahmednagar and became the Prime Minister of the Nizam Shahi rulers. He introduced a number of revenue reforms, trained the Nizam Shahi forces in the guerrilla tactics of warfare, employed a large number of Marathas in the army and foiled the attempts of Jahangir to complete Mughal annexation of the Nizam Shahi kingdom.

**Amir Khusro** He was also known as the parrot of India; he was a famous poet, historian and musician of the Delhi Sultanate. He enjoyed the patronage of successive rulers of Delhi from Balban to Ghiyas-ud-din Tughlaq.

He was a prolific Persian poet associated with the royal courts of more than seven rulers of Delhi Sultanate. He was a soldier, composer of poetry in Arabic, Persian, Urdu and a diplomat.

**Asanga** A prominent Buddhist scholar, saint and author; he belonged to the AD 4th century and was the brother of Vasubandhu (teacher and minister of Samudragupta). He was the author of the *Sutralankara* (the earliest text of the Yogacara School of Mahayanism).

**Asvaghosha** A Buddhist (Mahayana) saint and scholar of Kanishka's period, he played an active part in the fourth Buddhist Council. He was the author of *Buddhacharita* (a biography of the Buddha).

**Badauni** A prominent historian of Akbar's period; he is the author of *Muntakhab-ul-Tawarikh*, which contains a rather critical account of Akbar's liberal reign.

**Barani, Zia-ud-din** A conservative historian of Firuz Shah Tughlaq's period, his *Tarikh-i-Firoz Shahi* gives us information about the rule of the Tughlaqs upto Firoz.

**Bhagwan Das** Kachhwaha ruler of Amber and son of Raja Bihari Mal (who voluntarily submitted to Akbar). He rose very high in the service of Akbar. Raja Mansingh, who served Akbar with distinction was his son.

**Bhasa** An early Sanskrit dramatist of ancient India; he is said to have composed 13 dramas, the most famous being *Swapnavasavadatta*, *Charudatta Pratima*.

**Bhaskaracharya** A celebrated Indian astronomer and mathematician of the AD 12th century; he was born at Bijapur and was the author of *Siddhanta Siromani*, also known as *Lilavati*.

**Bhaskaravarman** He was a famous ruler of Kamarupa (Assam); he was a contemporary and close friend of Harshavardhana of Kannauj. His court was visited by the Chinese pilgrim, Hiuen-Tsang.

**Bilhana** The court poet of Vikramaditya VI (1076-1127), the Chalukya ruler of Kalyan; he was the author of *Vikramankadevacharita*.

**Birbal, Raja** A Rajput chief in the employment of Akbar; he was the favourite of the emperor who honoured him with titles of *Raja* and *Kavi Priya* (for his Hindi poetry). He lost his life in 1586 while campaigning against the Yusufzai tribe in the North-Western India.

**Chand Bardai** The court poet of Prithviraj Chauhan of Ajmer; he was the author of *Prithviraj Raso* (also called *Chand Raisa*), which dealt with his patron's marriage with Samyukta, his life and achievements.

**Chand Bibi** The daughter of Hussain Nizam Shah of Ahmednagar and wife of Ali Adil Shah of Bijapur. She acquired fame for her defense of Ahmednagar against Akbar.

**Dara Shikoh** The eldest son and favourite of Shah Jahan and Mumtaz; he was interested in Sufism and tolerant of all religious faiths. His claim to the throne was contested by his three younger brothers (Shuja, Aurangzeb and Murad), which resulted in the war of succession (1656-1658). He was ultimately tried on the charge of apostasy and executed by Aurangzeb in August 1659.

**Das, Chittaranjan** An eminent lawyer who first distinguished himself by successfully defending Aurobindo Ghosh in the famous Alipore Bomb Case. He gave up his lucrative practice to join the Non-Cooperation Movement. He presided over the 1922 Session of the INC. Alongwith Motilal Nehru, he formed the Swaraj Party within the INC with the declared policy of entering the councils and disrupting their functioning (also known as the Policy of Responsive Cooperation). He passed away in 1925. Because of his great contribution, he came to be called Deshbandhu (*friend of the country*).

**Dyer, General** The military general who was responsible for the Jallianwala Bagh Massacre (379 deaths and 1208 wounded) on 13th April, 1919 and the subsequent imposition of martial law and humiliation of the Punjabis. He was censured and removed from service by the government on the basis of the report of an Enquiry Committee under the chairmanship of Lord Hunter.

**Gulbadan Begum** A daughter of Babur; she was a talented lady and wrote *Humayun Namah*, an authoritative account of the reign of her brother, Humayun.

**Hamida Banu Begam** She was a wife of Humayun and mother of Akbar. She exercised a great influence in shaping the personality of Akbar.

**Hare, David** A watchmaker by profession, he was specially interested in the spread of Western education in India. It was largely due to his efforts that the Hindu College was opened in 1817 at Calcutta.

**Hemachandra** A prominent Jaina author of the 12th century, he was the author of *Trisastisalaka Purushacharita*, an enormous work dealing with the lives of 126 Jaina saints. The Parisistaparvan (which deals with, among other things, the conversion of Chandragupta Maurya to Jainism) is its supplement.

**Ilbert, Sir Courtney** A law member of the Viceroy's Executive council between 1882 and 1886, he sponsored the famous Ilbert bill and steered it with some fundamental modifications (due to European protest) through the legislature. Later, he served as the Vice-Chancellor of the Calcutta University.

**Impey, Sir Elijah** He was appointed the first Chief Justice of the Supreme Court in Calcutta by the Regulating Act of 1773. In 1775, he convicted Nanda Kumar for forgery and sentenced him to death, probably under the influence of Warren Hastings (a classmate of Impey).

**Jinnah, Muhammed Ali** He was the founder of Pakistan and originally was a successful lawyer. He joined Indian politics as a follower of moderate Congress leaders like Dadabhai Naoroji and GK Gokhale, but soon joined the Muslim league (1913) and became its President in 1916 (Lucknow session). After the ascendancy of Gandhiji in the national politics, he completely broke away from the Congress. Later, he reorganised the league and demanded the partition of India on a religious basis (1940). He was known as the Qaid-i-Azam (*Great leader*), he became the first Governor-General of independent Pakistan.

**Jones, Sir William** A famous British orientalist and jurist, he founded the Asiatic Society of Bengal in 1789 and served it as its President till his death in Calcutta in 1794.

**Kalhana** The author of *Rajatarangini* which is a chronicle of the kings of Kashmir, he lived in the AD 12th century.

**Kaudinya** According to Cambodian tradition, he was an Indian Brahmin who established the kingdom of Kambuja Desa in modern Cambodia.

**Khafi Khan** The pen name under which Muhammed Hashim wrote his famous historical work, *Muntakhab-ul-Lubab*, on the reign of Aurangzeb in total secrecy because of the emperor's opposition to it.

**Kumbha** The Rana of Mewar, he was one of its greatest rulers. He was also a great builder, being responsible for the construction of about 32 forts within the State of Mewar and the 'Kirtistambha' or victory tower within Chittor.

**Liaquat Ali Khan** He was born in Uttar Pradesh and an important leader of the Muslim league. He was the Finance Minister in the Interim Government (1946-1947) and after the partition he became the first Prime Minister of Pakistan. He was assassinated in a public meeting.

**Macaulay, Thomas Babington** A renowned English scholar, he was the first law member of the Governor-General's Executive council. He drafted the Penal code, which later became the basis of the Indian Criminal Code. He was also responsible for introducing Western education through English.

**Mahmud Begarha** He was one of the greatest rulers of Gujarat, he ruled for a long period of 52 years (AD 1459-1511) and defeated many of his neighbours. The Italian traveller, Varthima, makes a mention of Mahmud's great appetite in his records.

**Malaviya, Madanmohan** A leading nationalist leader, he edited three journals (*Hindustan, Indian Union* and *Abhyudaya*) between 1885 and 1907, and joined the Indian National Congress becoming its President twice (1909 and 1918). His greatest achievement was the foundation of the Banaras Hindu University in 1915. He was thrice elected President of the Hindu mahasabha.

**Minhaj-i-Siraj** A famous historian, he was the author of *Tabaqat-i-Nasiri*, a reliable account of the early period of the Delhi Sultanate.

**Mir Jumla** Beginning his career in Golconda, later he joined the service of Shah Jahan with the help of Aurangzeb to whom he presented the famous Kohinoor diamond. During the war of succession, he supported Aurangzeb and was rewarded as the Governor of Bengal.

**Muhammed Ali** Alongwith his brother, Shaukat Ali, he led the Khilafat movement in 1920 and later joined the Non-Cooperation Movement. He was the President of the Gaya Session of the Congress (1922).

**Muhammed Reza Khan** He was appointed at the instance of the English as the Deputy Nawab of Bengal in 1765 and helped them fully in exploiting Bengal through the System of Dual Government (1765-1772).

**Sir Thomas Munro** A distinguished British revenue official, he became the Governor of Madras (1820-1827). His greatest achievement was the introduction of the Ryotwari system in the Madras Presidency.

**Mrs Sarojini Naidu** A freedom fighter and poet, she presided over the Kanpur Session of the INC in 1925 and was, thus, the first Indian woman President of the Congress (Mrs Annie Besant being the first woman President). She was also the first lady to be appointed as State Governor of Uttar Pradesh between 1947-1949.

**Nana Phadnavis** A Maratha Brahmin, he became the guardian and Chief Minister of the minor Peshwa, Madhav Rao Narayan and practically, ran the affairs of the Marathas from 1774 till his death in 1800.

**Pandit Motilal Nehru**, Father of Jawaharlal and a successful lawyer, he joined the Congress party in 1919. He started a journal, *Independent*, to support the cause of Indian nationalism. Alongwith CR Das, he formed the Swaraj Party in 1922 to carry out the programme of disruption of legislative work.

He became the President of INC twice (1919 Calcutta session and 1928 Amritsar session). He was also the Chairman of the committee which submitted a report, known as the Nehru report (1928) on the future Constitution of India.

**Nivedita, Sister** A famous disciple of Swami Vivekananda, she was an Irish lady and originally known as Margaret noble. Arriving in India at the invitation of Vivekananda, she devoted herself to social service.

**Radhakanta Deb** Leader of the orthodox Hindu community in the 19th century, he cooperated with David Hare in his educational activities, but was opposed to social reforms (including *sati*) and the activities of the Brahmo Samaj of Rammohan Roy.

**Rahmat Ali Chaudhary** An Indian Muslim studying at Cambridge, he coined the term 'Pakistan' in 1933. It was a development of Iqbal's conception of a union of Indian provinces with a majority of Muslims in their population. The idea was later taken up by Jinnah, who made Pakistan a reality.

**Ramanand** One of the earliest bhakti saints of North India (15th century), he was influenced by Ramanuja. He was a worshipper of Rama and preached to all without distinction of caste and sex. Amongst his disciples, were Kabir, a Muslim weaver and Padmavati.

**Salima Begum** Daughter of Babur's daughter and cousin of Akbar, she was first married to Bairam Khan and after the latter's death was married by Akbar himself.

**Sanga, Rana** The ruler of Mewar (1509-1529), he was one of the greatest warriors of India. Expecting Babur to imitate Timur, he extended an invitation to him, but his calculations did not materialise. He was defeated by Babur in the Battle of Khanwa (1527). Later, Sanga was killed by his own sardars when he wanted to fight Babur for a second time.

**Shams-i-Siraj Afif** A famous historian as well as an officer during the reign of Firoz Shah Tughlaq, he was the author of *Tarikh-i-Firozshahi*.

**Sinha, Sir Satyendra Prasanna** He was the first Indian to be appointed as a Governor of Bihar and Orissa from 1920 to 1924 by the British. He was also the first Indian to be appointed as a member of the Viceroy's Executive Council (1909) and the only Indian to be honoured with a peerage. He also presided over the Bombay session (1915) of the INC.

**Tagore, Dwarakanath** He was the founder of the famous Tagore family of Jorasanko in Calcutta, he earned a lot of money in business and started the Union Bank, which was the first Bengali venture in the banking line. He was one of the earliest supporters of the Brahmo Samaj.

**Upagupta** A famous Buddhist monk, he believed to have converted Ashoka to Buddhism. He is also referred to as Moggaliputta Tissa in the contemporary Buddhist texts.

**Ustad Isa** He was probably the architect, who designed the Taj Mahal at Agra and supervised its construction.

**Vijnesvara** (Vijnanesvara) A celebrated Hindu jurist, he belonged to the reign of Vikramanka (AD 1076-1126) of the Kalyani Chalukyas. His work, the *Mitaksara*, is considered as one of the most authoritative expositions of the Hindu Law of Succession.

**Wedderburn, Sir William** An English ICS Officer of distinction, he took a leading part in the Congress politics after his retirement. He presided over two Congress sessions in 1889 and 1910.

**Yajnavalkya** A famous upanishadic thinker, he was associated by tradition with the renowned philosopher king, Janaka of Mithila.

**Yule, George** One of those rare non-official English merchants, who sympathised with the political aspirations of the Indians, he supported the INC and presided over its fourth session held at Allahabad in 1888.

**Zain-ul-Abidin** The eighth Sultan of Kashmir (1420-1460). He is famous for his religious toleration and patronage of literature. He had the *Mahabharata* and *Rajatarangini* translated into Persian.

# Practice Set 1

## ANALYSE YOURSELF

- 1.** Consider the following statements regarding the Amending Act of 1781
  1. The act settled the question of the jurisdiction of Supreme Court. It was to have jurisdiction over all the inhabitants of Calcutta.
  2. The act provided that appeals could be taken from the provincial courts to the Governor-General in council that was to be final court of appeal, except in those civil cases which involved a sum of ₹ 10000 or more.

**Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?**

(a) Only 1 (b) Only 2 (c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2
- 2.** 'Uttaramerur Inscription' gives us information about
  - (a) diplomatic relations between the Cholas and the Sailendras
  - (b) autonomous village administration of the Cholas
  - (c) origin of the Cholas
  - (d) military achievements of Rajaraja-1
- 3.** Which of the following are true about Harappa?
  1. Situated in the Montegomery district.
  2. On the bank of river Ravi.
  3. First town to be discovered in 1921.
  4. Largest Indus sites.

**Which of the statements given above are correct?**

(a) 1 and 2 (b) 2, 3 and 4 (c) 1, 2 and 3 (d) All of these
- 4.** Consider the following statements
  1. The Khalsa Panth was created by Guru Gobind Singh.
  2. His disciples called him Saccha Padshah.

**Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?**

(a) Only 1 (b) Only 2 (c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2
- 5.** Which of the following Brahmanas belongs to the Yajur Veda?
  - (a) Satapatha (b) Kausitaki (c) Aitareya (d) Shadvimsa
- 6.** At Kalibangan, a ploughed field showing furrows in two directions cutting each other at right angles shows that
  - (a) it was meant for single crop pattern
  - (b) it was mainly for planting trees
  - (c) it was a method cropping two different plants on the same field
  - (d) it was meant for crop rotation
- 7.** Which of the following gives the administrative divisions of the Sultanate empire in the correct descending order?
  - (a) Provinces, Shiqs, Parganas, Villages
  - (b) Parganas, Shiqs, Villages
  - (c) Shiqs, Parganas, Qasbahs
  - (d) Iqtas, Parganas, Shiqs, Villages
- 8.** The Diwan-i-Wizarat had under it other minor departments, each under a distinct officer of its own. Which of the following heads of departments did not help the wazir in the management of state finances?
  - (a) Mushrif-i-Mumalik or Accountant General
  - (b) Mustawfi-i-Mumalik or Auditor-General
- 9.** Diwan-i-Mustakhraj or the Officer Incharge to realise the arrears of revenue collectors  
Diwan-i-Riyasat or Department Incharge of public grievance, weights and measures, markets etc
- 10.** Consider the following statements
  1. The Regulating Act was in operation for 11 years and Warren Hastings was the only Governor-General who had to administer India under it.
  2. The Amending Act of 1781 provided that the Supreme Court must take into consideration and respect the religions and social customs and usages of Indian while enforcing its decrees and processes.

**Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?**

(a) Only 1 (b) Only 2 (c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2
- 11.** The most decisive battle that led to the establishment of supremacy of the British in India was
  - (a) the Battle of Plassey (b) the Battle of Buxar
  - (c) the Battle of Wandiwash (d) the Third Battle of Panipat
- 12.** Who founded the Lingayat Movement?
  - (a) Basvaraj (b) Ramanuja
  - (c) Shankaracharya (d) Kamban
- 13.** Consider the following statements regarding Debendra-nath Tagore
  1. In 1843, he reorganised the Brahmo Samaj and put new life into it.
  2. In 1849, he founded Tattavabodhini Sabha to propagate Rammohan Roy's ideas.

**Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?**

(a) Only 1 (b) Only 2 (c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2
- 14.** With reference to Indian literary works, what is Digha Nikaya?
  - (a) An important Buddhist text in Pali
  - (b) Miscellaneous work in prose and verse associated with Mudrarakshsha
  - (c) Collection of long sermons ascribed to Mahavira
  - (d) Collection of short stories ascribed to Kautilya
- 15.** Consider the following statements regarding the Supreme Court established under the Act of 1773
  1. The Supreme Court was constituted in 1774 with Sir Elijah Impey as Chief Justice and Chambers Lemaister and Hyde as the puisne judges.
  2. All the public servants of the company were made amenable to its jurisdiction.

**Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?**

(a) Only 1 (b) Only 2 (c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2

- 16.** Which Chola King conquered the Sri Vijaya empire of the Sailendra rulers by sending a naval expedition?  
 (a) Rajendra-I (b) Parantaka-II  
 (c) Rajaraja-I (d) Virarajendra

**17.** In what respect was the Diwani of Bengal, which the English secured from Emperor Shah Alam, different from a similar Mughal institution?  
 (a) In the Mughal system, the provincial Diwan had a limited tenure; the English got the Diwani rights permanently  
 (b) In the Mughal system, the office was given to an individual; in the case of the English, the office was to be held by a corporate body  
 (c) Both 'a' and 'b'  
 (d) None of the above

**18.** The Shimla conference of political parties of India, in 1945 was called  
 (a) to seek the solution of communal problems existing at that time in India  
 (b) to agree and approve the Wavell Plan for Indian self-government  
 (c) to make a discussion about the elections going to be held in India in the post World War II conditions  
 (d) to demonstrate the support of all Indian political parties with Indian National Army

**19.** The main cause of the conflict between nawab Siraj-ud-Daula and the East India company was the that  
 (a) the British opposed the succession of Siraj-ud-Daula  
 (b) the British misused the trade concession  
 (c) the British attacked the french settlement of Chandranagar in Bengal.  
 (d) the incident of Black Hole had occurred.

**20.** Consider the following statements.  
 1. Origin of Indian music has been depicted from Samveda.  
 2. Sabha and Samiti are mentioned as twin daughters of Prajapati in Rigveda.  
 3. Kshatriyas precedence over Brahmins is depicted from Aitareya.  
**Which of the statements given above are correct?**  
 (a) 1 and 3 (b) 1 and 2 (c) 2 and 3 (d) None of these

**21.** "Everywhere in lane and bazaar lay the headless trunks of the slain. For 7 days following the general slaughter, the water (in the Yamuna) flowed of a blood-red colour." The statement describes the sack of Delhi during the invasion of  
 (a) Ahmed Shah Abdali (b) Nadir Shah  
 (c) Timur (d) Ghulam Qadir Rohilla

**22.** Consider the following statements regarding the Act of 1773  
 1. The counsellors of the Governor-General were to hold office for 5 years and could be removed earlier only by the king on the recommendation of the court of directors.  
 2. The act empowered the crown to establish by charter a Supreme Court of judicature, consisting of a Chief Justice and 4 puisne judges.  
**Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?**  
 (a) Only 1 (b) Only 2  
 (c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2

**23.** "Rammohan Roy was the only person in his time, in the whole world of man, to realise completely the significance of the Modern age." This statement is attributed to  
 (a) Bal Gangadhar Tilak (b) Subhash Chandra Bose  
 (c) Rabindranath Tagore (d) Mahatma Gandhi

**24.** Which of the following statements is true about 'Tamaasha'  
 (a) Tamaasha is a traditional folk theatre form of Maharashtra.  
 (b) It is performed in Temples.  
 (c) It was originated from the time of pashvas  
 (d) Roots lie in Gujarati theatrical forms.

**25.** Why did the rich merchants of Bengal conspire with the English against the Nawab of Bengal?  
 (a) The insulting behaviour of Nawab Siraj-ud-Daulah towards the merchants  
 (b) The fact that English were permitting the misuse of dastaks to the rich Indian merchants  
 (c) Both 'a' and 'b'  
 (d) The Indian merchants acting as intermediaries of the English

**26.** The Council of the 'Nine Gems' is associated with  
 (a) Ballala Sena (b) Harshavardhana  
 (c) Chandragupta II (d) Devapala

**27.** Which of the following was not introduced by Balban?  
 (a) The festival of Nauroz  
 (b) The practice of Jharokha-i-darshan  
 (c) The practice of Sijda and Paibos  
 (d) Inducting Turkish people for high offices

**28.** Which of the following generals of Ala-ud-din Khilji was killed by the Mongols?  
 (a) Nusrat Khan (b) Ulugh Khan  
 (c) Zafar Khan (d) Alp Khan

**29.** The central feature of Indian society during AD 750-1200 was  
 (a) feudalism (b) liberalism  
 (c) egalitarianism (d) brotherhood

**30.** The poverty of the people found its culmination in a series of famines. These famines highlighted the divergence between  
 (a) the precepts and practices of the British rulers  
 (b) the riches of England and the poverty of India  
 (c) the basic requirements of the people and the priorities of the government  
 (d) the past and the present of India

**31.** During the governorship of which of the following was Bihar added to Bengal and Orissa to make the Governor of Bengal responsible for all the three?  
 (a) Murshid Quli Khan (b) Shuja-uddin  
 (c) Sarfaraz Khan (d) Alivardi Khan

**32.** Which of the following markets was not set-up by Ala-ud-din?  
 (a) Market for foodgrains  
 (b) Market for cloth, sugar, fruits, oil etc  
 (c) Market for arms and armaments  
 (d) Market for horses, slaves and cattle

**33. With whom was the Ryotwari settlement made?**

- (a) The zamindars      (b) The cultivators  
 (c) The village communities      (d) The Muqaddam

**34. Who built the fort city of Siri?**

- (a) Muhammed-bin Tughlaq      (b) Iltutmish  
 (c) Jalal-ud-din Khilji      (d) Ala-ud-din Khilji

**35. What made Jahangir issue a Farman in 1613 permitting the English to establish a factory permanently at Surat?**

- (a) Reconciliation between the English and the Portuguese  
 (b) The defeat of the Portuguese naval squadrons by the British  
 (c) A secret offer of naval help to the Mughal emperor to oust the Portuguese  
 (d) None of the above

**36. Which of the following is not true about Ala-ud-din's military reforms?**

- (a) He recruited and maintained the largest standing army  
 (b) He introduced Dagh (branding of horses) and Chehre (descriptive roll of soldiers)  
 (c) He paid the ordinary soldiers in cash  
 (d) He introduced a new department called Diwan-i-Arz

**37. Identify the contemporary work of the Mughal period which is useful for obtaining information on the agrarian condition.**

- (a) Tawarikh-i-Alfi      (b) Akbarnama  
 (c) Muntakhab-ul-Lubab      (d) Ain-i-Akbari

**38. What is not true about Ala-ud-din's market regulations?**

- (a) The prices of various commodities were fixed by the state  
 (b) He appointed shahana-i-madi as the controller of markets  
 (c) There was provision for rationing of grains during droughts and emergencies  
 (d) He met with firm resistance from the traders while enforcing these measures

**39. Which of the predecessors of the modern man, is said to have, had almost the same brain capacity as that of the modern man?**

- (a) Homo erectus      (b) Australopithecus africanus  
 (c) Ramapithecus      (d) Neanderthal

**40. Which of the following is not true about the Revenue Policy of Ala-ud-din Khilji?**

- (a) He brought the peasant in direct relation with the state  
 (b) He tried to curb and check the intermediaries  
 (c) He was the first to introduce the system of measurement of land and assessment of revenue  
 (d) He abolished the Jaziya collected from the non-Muslims

**41. Which of the following was not a part, of Tripitakas?**

- (a) Jatakas      (b) Vinaya      (c) Sutta      (d) Abhidhamma

**42. Which of the following statements about the creation of departments by the various Sultans is not correct?**

- (a) Diwan-i-Mustakhraj or the Department of Revenue to realise the arrears was created by Ala-ud-din Khilji

- (b) Diwan-i-Amir Kohi or the Department of Agriculture became more prominent during the reign of Muhammed-bin Tughlaq  
 (c) Diwan-i-Bandagan or the Department of Slaves was created by Firoz Tughlaq  
 (d) Diwan-i-Khairat or the Department of Public Charities was created by Sikander Lodi

**43. What did Ala-ud-din do to the Khut and Muqaddam?**

- (a) He completely abolished their offices  
 (b) He gave them more powers for exercising their duties  
 (c) He abolished the privileges held by them before and forced them to pay taxes  
 (d) He brought them under the control of the centre

**44. The officer responsible for the safe custody of land records during the Gupta period was known as**

- (a) Dhruv Adhikarana      (b) Karanika  
 (c) Samaharta      (d) Shaulkila

**45. What was the main objective of Lord Wellesley in concluding a Subsidiary Treaty (1798) with the Nizam?**

- (a) Create a buffer state between the British possessions and the dominions of Tipu Sultan  
 (b) Exterminate French influence and intrigues in India  
 (c) Improve his relations with the Nizam with a view to creating a permanent rivalry against Tipu Sultan  
 (d) Eliminate the possibility of an alliance between the Nizam and the Marathas

**46. Jaubani is a dance form traditionally performed in North Eastern India by the**

- (a) Dimasas      (b) Mizos  
 (c) Khasis      (d) Bodas

**47. Consider the following statements regarding Lodis architecture style's features**

- Octagonal shaped tombs, introduced by them, which were later adopted by the Muughals.
- Balconies and Kiosks showed influence of Rajasthani and Gujarati style.

**Which of the statement(s) given above is /are correct?**

- (a) only 1      (b) only 2  
 (c) Both 1 and 2      (d) Neither 1 nor 2

**48. Which rock shelter in India bears largest number of paintings?**

- (a) Ghagharia      (b) Bhimbetka  
 (c) Lakhadia      (d) Adamgarh

**49. The famous painting 'Satyam Shivam Sundaram' was prepared by**

- (a) Mahendranath Singh      (b) Nand Kishore Sharma  
 (c) Sivnandan Nautiyal      (d) Vishwanath Mehta

**50. Which one of the following sites is famous for pre-historic paintings?**

- (a) Bagh      (b) Ajanta  
 (c) Bhimbetka      (d) Amravati

**Answers**

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (a)  | 2. (b)  | 3. (c)  | 4. (a)  | 5. (a)  | 6. (c)  | 7. (a)  | 8. (d)  | 9. (b)  | 10. (c) |
| 11. (b) | 12. (a) | 13. (a) | 14. (a) | 15. (c) | 16. (a) | 17. (d) | 18. (b) | 19. (b) | 20. (a) |
| 21. (c) | 22. (a) | 23. (c) | 24. (b) | 25. (a) | 26. (c) | 27. (b) | 28. (c) | 29. (a) | 30. (d) |
| 31. (c) | 32. (c) | 33. (b) | 34. (d) | 35. (b) | 36. (d) | 37. (d) | 38. (d) | 39. (d) | 40. (d) |
| 41. (a) | 42. (d) | 43. (c) | 44. (b) | 45. (b) | 46. (a) | 47. (c) | 48. (d) | 49. (c) | 50. (c) |

# Practice Set 2

ANALYSE YOURSELF

- 11.** Consider the following statements

  - Sir Thomas Roy obtained two firmans issued by Mughal emperor Jahangir and Aurangzeb for trade privileges in India.
  - In 1700, the Directors of the East India Company constitutes Bengal into a separate presidency and appoints Sir Charles Eyre as the first President.

**Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?**

  - Only 1
  - Only 2
  - Both 1 and 2
  - Neither 1 nor 2

**12.** Consider the following statements regarding Derozians

  - They attacked old and decadent customs, rites and traditions.
  - They were passionate advocates of women's rights and demanded education for them.

**Which of the statement(s) given above is/are incorrect?**

  - Only 1
  - Only 2
  - Both 1 and 2
  - Neither 1 nor 2

**13.** Consider the following statements

  - The system of dual government established by the company in Bengal remained in operation for 5 years.
  - The establishment of this masked system was a sign of the company's unwillingness to recognise that it had ceased to be a mere trading body and became a ruling power.

**Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?**

  - Only 1
  - Only 2
  - Both 1 and 2
  - Neither 1 nor 2

**14.** Which one of the following is true regarding the 'Swastika symbol'?

  - The Swastika appears to be not only pre-Vedic, but also pre-Harappan in origin
  - The Swastika spread from Elam and Baluchistan to the Indus Valley and Turkmenistan
  - Around 800 BC, the symbol appears as a decorative piece on PGW used for domestic purpose
  - It is an exclusively Aryan symbol

**15.** Which of the four animals surrounded the Pashupati in the seal from Harappa?

|               |          |             |
|---------------|----------|-------------|
| 1. Lion       | 2. Tiger | 3. Elephant |
| 4. Rhinoceros | 5. Cow   | 6. Buffalo  |

**Select the correct answer using the codes given below**

  - 1, 2, 3 and 4
  - 2, 3, 4 and 6
  - 1, 3, 4, and 5
  - 1, 2, 3 and 5

**16.** "Ram Mohan Roy was the only person in his time, in the whole world of man, to realise completely the significance of the Modern age." This statement is attributed to

  - Bal Gangadhar Tilak
  - Subhash Chandra Bose
  - Rabindranath Tagore
  - Mahatma Gandhi

**17.** Consider the following statements regarding the Charter Act, 1853

  - The number of the members of the Court of Directors was reduced from 24 to 16, out of which 6 were to be nominated by the crown.
  - The law member was made a full member of the Governor-General's Executive Council and this council while sitting in its legislative capacity was enlarged by the addition of 12 members.

**Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?**

  - Only 1
  - Only 2
  - Both 1 and 2
  - Neither 1 nor 2

**18.** Kautilya was the Prime Minister of which of the following Indian rulers?

  - Chandragupta Maurya
  - Chandragupta I
  - Ashoka
  - Harshavardhana

**19.** The failure of the Wavell Plan has been called a 'breakwater in Indian political history' because

  - the Muslim League was treated at the same level as the Congress
  - the Muslim League got the right to use its veto in all future negotiations
  - the Muslim League was recognised as the sole organisation of Indian Muslims
  - All of the above

**20.** Which of the following statements about INA trial is/are correct?

  - PK Sehgal, Shah Nawaz Khan and Gurbaksh Singh Dhillon were put on trial.
  - Bhulabhai Desai was the Chief Defence Advocate.

**Select the correct answer using the codes given below**

  - Only 1
  - Only 2
  - Both 1 and 2
  - Neither 1 nor 2

**21.** Name the Chola ruler who sent an embassy of 72 merchants to China in AD 1077.

  - Kulottunga I
  - Rajaraja II
  - Kulottunga II
  - Rajendra I

**22.** The term used for measurement of land in the Sultanate period was

  - Kismat-i-Ghalla
  - Ghalla-Bakshi
  - Masahat
  - Ghazi

**23.** Consider the following statements regarding Raja Ram Mohan Roy

  - He studied Sanskrit literature and Hindu philosophy at Varanasi and the Quran and Persian and Arabic literature at Patna.
  - In 1809, he wrote in Persian his famous work gift to monotheists, in which he put forward strong arguments against belief in many Gods and for the worship of a single God.
  - In 1820, he published his percepts of Jesus and asked his countrymen to accept the rational and scientific approach and the principle of human dignity and social equality of all men and women.

**Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?**

  - Only 1
  - 2 and 3
  - 1 and 2
  - All of these

**24.** What is the ascending order of the following units of administration in the Chola period?

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1. Valanadus   | 2. Nodus       |
| 3. Mandalams   | 4. Kurrams     |
| <b>Codes</b>   |                |
| (a) 3, 2, 1, 4 | (b) 1, 2, 3, 4 |
| (c) 4, 1, 2, 3 | (d) 4, 2, 1, 3 |

**25.** In Ashoka's administration, Rajjukas looked after

- (a) religious matters
- (b) collection of taxes
- (c) municipal administration
- (d) administration of justice

**26.** Consider the following statements

1. Viceroy Lord Montague appointed a committee under the presidentship of Sydney Rowlett, in 1919, to investigate the nature and extent of revolutionary activities.
2. To protest against the Jallianwala Bagh Tragedy, Mahatma Gandhi surrendered the knighthood conferred on him by the British Government.

*Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?*

- (a) Only 1
- (b) Only 2
- (c) Both 1 and 2
- (d) Neither 1 nor 2

**27.** The Gupta feudatories who became strong and independent in Gujarat were known as

- (a) Vakatakas
- (b) Maitrakas
- (c) Yaudheyas
- (d) Vardhanas

**28.** Consider the following statements regarding Poona Pact (1932)

1. 148 seats in different Provincial Legislatures were reserved for depressed classes, in place of 71 as provided in the Communal Award.
2. 18% of the seats in the Central Legislature were reserved for depressed classes.

*Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?*

- (a) Only 1
- (b) Only 2
- (c) Both 1 and 2
- (d) Neither 1 nor 2

**29.** Consider the following events

1. Release of Sahu, the son of Sambhaji.
  2. The campaign against Banda Bahadur.
  3. Independence of Mewar and Marwar acknowledged.
- Which of the above events took place under Bahadur Shah I?*
- (a) 1 and 2
  - (b) 1 and 3
  - (c) 2 and 3
  - (d) All of these

**30.** Amongst the following, who contributed most to the Bhagavata cult?

- (a) Parthians
- (b) Indo-Greeks
- (c) Kushanas
- (d) Guptas

**31.** Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq introduced a token currency in lieu of the prevalent silver Tanka. Identify the metal used for making the token currency.

- (a) Bronze
- (b) Brass
- (c) Copper
- (d) Nickel

**32.** Consider the following statements regarding Ramakrishna Mission.

1. It was founded in 1887 by Vivekananda to carry on humanitarian relief and social work.
2. The mission had many branches in different parts of the country and carried on social services by opening schools, hospitals and dispensaries, orphanages, libraries etc.

*Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?*

- (a) Only 1
- (b) Only 2
- (c) Both 1 and 2
- (d) Neither 1 nor 2

**33.** The style of temple architecture that was prevalent under Chola dynasty was

- (a) Nagara style
- (b) Dravidian style
- (c) Gopuram style
- (d) Solanki style instructions

**34.** Who said "The Congress Movement was neither inspired by the people nor devised or planned by them"?

- (a) Lala Lajpat Rai
- (b) Sir Syed Ahmed Khan
- (c) Lord Curzon
- (d) Lord Dufferin

**35.** In pursuit of Jalaluddin, the fugitive Khwarizmi prince Chengiz Khan, the famous Mongol warrior, came to India's border in the reign of

- (a) Balban
- (b) Iltutmish
- (c) Ala-ud-din Khilji
- (d) Muhammed-bin-Tughlaq

**36.** During the Anglo Maratha Wars, which of the following was concluded last?

- (a) Treaty of Gwalior with Sindhia
- (b) Treaty of Mandasor with Holkar
- (c) Treaty of Poona with Baji Rao II
- (d) Treaty of Suri-Arjangaon with Sindhia

**37.** Consider the following statements regarding the Regulating Act, 1773

1. The right of vote in the Court of Proprietors was raised from ₹ 500 to ₹ 1000.
2. The Court of Directors, hitherto elected every year, was henceforth to be elected for 5 years.
3. The number of directors was fixed at 24, one-fourth retiring every 3 years.

*Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?*

- (a) Only 1
- (b) 2 and 3
- (c) 1 and 2
- (d) All of these

**38.** The Ashokan inscription which gives an account of the Kalinga War and its effects is

- (a) Girnar Rock Edict
- (b) Minor Rock Edict III
- (c) Minor Rock Edict IV
- (d) Minor Rock Edict XIII

**39.** Which one of the following sets truly reflects the approved and generally accepted form of marriage?

- (a) Brahma, Daiva, Arsa, Prajapatiya
- (b) Arsa, Gandharva, Rakshasa, Prajapatiya
- (c) Brahma, Arsa, Gandharva, Paisacha
- (d) Asha, Prajapatiya, Gandharva, Paisacha

**40.** Which of the following was not an item of import for the Indus people?

- (a) Textiles
- (b) Tin
- (c) Lapis Lazuli
- (d) Copper

## Answers

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (c)  | 2. (b)  | 3. (a)  | 4. (c)  | 5. (c)  | 6. (c)  | 7. (b)  | 8. (d)  | 9. (b)  | 10. (c) |
| 11. (b) | 12. (d) | 13. (b) | 14. (c) | 15. (b) | 16. (c) | 17. (d) | 18. (a) | 19. (b) | 20. (c) |
| 21. (a) | 22. (c) | 23. (d) | 24. (d) | 25. (d) | 26. (d) | 27. (b) | 28. (c) | 29. (d) | 30. (d) |
| 31. (a) | 32. (b) | 33. (b) | 34. (a) | 35. (b) | 36. (b) | 37. (a) | 38. (d) | 39. (a) | 40. (a) |
| 41. (d) | 42. (c) | 43. (d) | 44. (d) | 45. (d) | 46. (d) | 47. (d) | 48. (b) | 49. (a) | 50. (b) |

# Practice Set 3

## ANALYSE YOURSELF

**1.** Which of the following pairs is/are correctly matched?

| Area                     | Parallel Government<br>Established during QIM |
|--------------------------|---|
| (a) Tamluk (Midnapur)    | Jatiya Sarkar under Satish Samant             |
| (b) Talcher (Orissa)     | Parallel government under Lakshman Nayak      |
| (c) Satara (Maharashtra) | Prati Sarkar under Nana Patil                 |
| (d) All of the above     |   |

**2.** Which of the following statements is/are correct?

- (a) The city of Dhilika (Delhi) was founded by the Tomara's in AD 736, but Chauhans overthrew them and occupied it in the 12th century
- (b) Chandela was the first early medieval dynasty to use Hindi in Devanagari script in its epigraphs
- (c) The Sena King, Ballal Sena, is credited with the founding of Kulinism, a system of superiority of higher castes
- (d) All of the above

**3.** Consider the following statements

- 1. Muhammad Shah is also known in history by the name of the 'Rangila'.
- 2. Nadir Shah attacked India during the reign of Ahmad Shah.
- 3. Battle of Kamal was fought between Nadir Shah and Muhammad Shah.

Which of the statement(s) given above is/are incorrect?

- (a) Only 1      (b) Only 3      (c) 1 and 3      (d) 1 and 2

**4.** Most of the modern Indian industries were owned or controlled by British capital. Which of the following factors attracted the foreign capitalists to Indian industry?

- 1. Labour and raw materials were readily and cheaply available.
- 2. Ready market provided by India and its neighbours.
- 3. Profitable investment opportunities at home getting fewer.

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

- (a) Only 1      (b) Only 2
- (c) Only 3      (d) All of the above

**5.** The Danes founded a settlement at Tranquebar in Tanjore district. They did not, however, find a foothold in India and consequently, sold their settlement in India to

- (a) the French      (b) the British
- (c) the Portuguese      (d) All of these

**6.** Which of the following statement(s) regarding Dholavira is correct?

- 1. It lies in the Kachchh area of Gujarat.
- 2. The city was fortified.

3. It shows all the three phases of Harappan culture.

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

- (a) Only 1      (b) 2 and 3      (c) 1 and 2      (d) All of these

**7.** Consider the following statements regarding the Pitt's India Act, 1784

- 1. The Board of Control was established to control all civil, military and revenue affairs of the company.
- 2. The members of the Board of Control, 6 in number were to be appointed by the Court of Proprietors of company.

Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?

- (a) Only 1      (b) Only 2
- (c) Both 1 and 2      (d) Neither 1 nor 2

**8.** Arrange the following in a chronological order, according to the date of establishment.

- 1. Indian Association.
- 2. Poona Sarvajanik Sabha.
- 3. Madras Mahajan Sabha.
- 4. Bombay Presidency Association.

**Codes**

- (a) 2, 1, 3, 4      (b) 1, 2, 3, 4      (c) 3, 2, 1, 4      (d) 1, 4, 3, 2

**9.** Consider the following statement.

- 1. The founder of Radha Swami Satsang was Tulsi Ram.
- 2. Tulsi Ram was also known as Shiv Dayal Sahib.
- 3. The movement, Radha Swami Satsang, was started to bring religious unity and emphasised on simplicity of social life and social service.

Which of the statements given above are correct?

- (a) 1 and 2      (b) 2 and 3      (c) 1 and 3      (d) All of these

**10.** The achievements of Samudragupta are described in the

- (a) Hathigumpha inscription
- (b) Allahabad Pillar inscription
- (c) Girnar inscription
- (d) Sarnath inscription

**11.** Consider the following statements regarding Aurobindo Ghosh

- 1. He was arrested by the British in 1908 due to his involvement in the Kennedy murders.
- 2. He started Pradarshak (a weekly) and later became the Assistant Editor of Bengal Public Opinion and the Tribune.
- 3. He became the principal of the Bengal National College started in Calcutta in 1906.
- 4. He wrote the books like Savitri and The Life Divine.

Which of the statements given above /are correct?

- (a) 1, 2 and 3      (b) 2, 3 and 4      (c) 1 and 3      (d) 1, 3 and 4



- 24.** Which of the following statements about the Dutch interest and activities in India is incorrect?
- Like the Portuguese, they treated the people of India cruelly and exploited them ruthlessly
  - They took no part in politics or cultural contacts
  - They became the carriers of trade between India and the islands of the far East
  - They made several attempts to monopolise the channels of trade between India and the West
- 25.** Consider the following statements about Vedic period
- The Kula was the basis of both social and political organisations.
  - The Purohita was the first ranking official.
  - Rig Veda vidhata, Ganga and Samiti.
- Which of the statements given above are correct?*
- 1 and 2
  - 2 and 3
  - 1, 2 and 3
  - None of these
- 26.** The term 'Yavanapriya' mentioned in ancient Sanskrit texts denoted
- a fine variety of Indian Muslim
  - Ivory
  - damsels sent to the Greek court for dance performance
  - pepper
- 27.** Within two decades of the possession of Bombay by the English, Bombay emerged as a leading port on the Western coast on account of its
- excellent natural harbour
  - immunity from Maratha raids, such as at Surat
  - improved administration under the English, which attracted the merchants
  - All of the above
- 28.** Consider the following statements
- In 1690, Job Charnock established a factory at Sutanuti.
  - Zamindari of three villages of Sutanuti, Kalikata and Govindpur was acquired by the British in 1698. These villages later grew into city of Calcutta.
  - The factory at Sutanuti was fortified in 1696 and this new fortified settlement was named 'Fort William' in 1700.
- Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?*
- Only 1
  - 2 and 3
  - 1 and 2
  - All of these
- 29.** Consider the following statements
- Kharaj was a land tax.
  - Zakat was a tax on land held by Muslims.
  - Jizya was a religious tax levied on non-Muslim.
  - Ushr was a religious tax levied on Muslims.
- Which of the statement(s) given above is/are incorrect?*
- 2 and 4
  - Only 2
  - Only 4
  - None of these
- 30.** Clive reconquered Calcutta in the beginning of 1757 and compelled the Nawab to concede all the demands of the English. The treaty which was concluded by Siraj-ud-Daula with the English on this occasion was
- Treaty of Alinagar
  - Treaty of Plassey
  - Treaty of Murshidabad
  - Treaty of Allahabad
- 31.** What was main contribution of Jainism to Indian philosophy?
- The Doctrine of Rebirth
  - The Doctrine of Syadvada
  - The Doctrine of Immortality of Soul
  - The Doctrine of Brahma is Nirguna
- 32.** In the Ryotwari areas in British India, the moneylenders fleeced and exploited the peasantry and usurped their lands because
- the usurious rate of interest charged by the moneylenders made the peasants helpless
  - they got thumb impressions of the debtors on blank papers
  - they obtained mortgage of the lands against the loans advanced by them
  - All of the above
- 33.** Which of the following pairs is incorrectly matched?
- | Dynasty                 | Founder                   |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| (a) Sena Dynasty        | : Founder by Vijaya Sena  |
| (b) Pala Dynasty        | : Founder by Gopala       |
| (c) Pratihara Dynasty   | : Founder by Bhoja        |
| (d) Rashtrakuta Dynasty | : Founder by Amoghavarsha |
- 34.** Consider the following statements.
- The All India Trade Union Congress was formed in 1920.
  - Lokamanya Tilak played an important role in the formation of the AITUC.
  - Lala Lajpat Rai was appointed as its first President and Dewan Chaman Lal as its General Secretary.
- Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?*
- Only 1
  - 2 and 3
  - 1 and 2
  - All of these
- 35.** Consider the following statements
- In 1639, Francis Day obtained the site of Madras from the Raja of Chandragiri with permission to build a fortified factory, which was named Fort St George.
  - Eavidras replaced Masulipatnam as the headquarters of the English on the Coromandal coast.
- Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?*
- Only 1
  - Only 2
  - Both 1 and 2
  - Neither 1 nor 2
- 36.** Which one of the following statements about Chinese pilgrim Fa-Hien's travel in India is incorrect?
- He came to India during the reign of Chandragupta II
  - His object was to visit the holy places of Buddhism
  - He came by the sea route
  - He visited whole India and went back to his country by the land route
- 37.** Why did the East Indian Company encourage the other European companies to trade only in tea and opium?
- The export of tea would enrich the British tea planters in India
  - The export of opium would bring return in the form of Chinese silver
  - Both 'a' and 'b'
  - India had enough surplus of both these commodities

**38. Consider the following statements**

1. Lala Lajpat Rai was among the first in India to link capitalism with imperialism and emphasise the crucial role of the working class in fighting the combination.
2. INC at its Gaya Session (1922) welcomed the form of AITUC and formed a committee consisting of prominent Congressmen to assist its work.

**Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?**

- |                  |                     |
|------------------|---------------------|
| (a) Only 1       | (b) Only 2          |
| (c) Both 1 and 2 | (d) Neither 1 nor 2 |

**39. Consider the following statements**

1. In the Battle of Buxar, Shuja-ud-daula Shah Alam and Mir Qasim were defeated by Munro.
2. Battle of Buxar took place in 1764.

**Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?**

- |                  |                     |
|------------------|---------------------|
| (a) Only 1       | (b) Only 2          |
| (c) Both 1 and 2 | (d) Neither 1 nor 2 |

**40. Which of the following statements about 'Iqta system' is correct?**

- (a) Iqta means revenue assignment of a particular area in lieu of cash salary
- (b) The principle of hereditary iqta was completely rejected by Balban
- (c) Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq differentiated between the allotment of the revenues within an iqta for the personal income of the muqta and that for the payment of salaries to the troops placed under his charge
- (d) All of the above

**41. Who amongst the following kings defeated Harsha's army on the bank of river Narmada?**

- |                     |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| (a) Krishnadevaraya | (b) Pulakesin II   |
| (c) Rajendra I      | (d) Rajendra Chola |

**42. The greatest failure of Aurangzeb contributing to the rise of European powers in India was that, he**

- (a) permitted the English and the Dutch to use their military power against the Portuguese
- (b) failed to understand the political and military implications of the fortification of their factories.
- (c) could not stop the exercise of administrative authority by the Europeans in their settlements
- (d) Both 'b' and 'c'

**43. Consider the following statements regarding the Pitt's India Act, 1784**

1. In India, the Chief Government was placed in the hands of a Governor-General and council of four.
2. The Court of Proprietors lost the right to rescind, suspend or revoke any resolution of the directors which was approved by the Board of Control.

**Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?**

- |                  |                     |
|------------------|---------------------|
| (a) Only 1       | (b) Only 2          |
| (c) Both 1 and 2 | (d) Neither 1 nor 2 |

**44. Which of the following pairs is/are correctly matched?**

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| (a) Umarah                            | : Group of officers called nobles   |
| (b) Barids                            | : The news reporters and secret spies   |
| (c) Majlis-i-am or Majlis-i-Khalawant | : Council of friends and trusted officers of the Sultan, which he consulted on important affairs of state |
| (d) All of the above                  |   |

**45. Why were the English very keen to secure Bombay, from the Portuguese?**

- (a) It enabled its possessors to control the entire trade on the Western coast
- (b) Bombay lay outside the Mughal and Maratha influence
- (c) It could be fortified and defended against enemies without the permission of the Mughals
- (d) All of the above

**46. Which one of the following is an Octagonal Tomb?**

- |                                 |                                |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| (a) Tomb of Sikander Lodi       | (b) Tomb of Balban             |
| (c) Tomb of Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq | (d) Tomb of Feroz shah Tughlaq |

**47. In which dance form, the themes called from the Ramayana and Mahabharata?**

- |            |                   |
|------------|-------------------|
| (a) Odissi | (b) Kuchipudi     |
| (c) Kathak | (d) Bharatanatyam |

**48. Which among the following is best temple of Vijaya nagaa Art?**

- |              |                |
|--------------|----------------|
| (a) Hampi    | (b) Pattadakal |
| (c) Amravati | (d) Khajuraho  |

**49. Which one of the following statements is incorrect about Bharatanatyam?**

- (a) Bharatanatyam is one of the most popular Indian dances of Tamil Nadu.
- (b) The name is derived from the word 'Bharatha' and is associated with the Natyashastra.
- (c) it skillfully embodies the three primary ingredients of dancing
- (d) The technique of Bharatanatyam consists of 54 principles of coordinated hand, foot, face and body movements.

**50. Bhaskaracharya's work 'Lilavati' was translated into Persian by**

- |                 |              |
|-----------------|--------------|
| (a) Abul Fazal  | (b) Faizi    |
| (c) Dara Shikoh | (d) Alberuni |

**Answers**

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (d)  | 2. (b)  | 3. (c)  | 4. (d)  | 5. (b)  | 6. (d)  | 7. (a)  | 8. (a)  | 9. (d)  | 10. (b) |
| 11. (d) | 12. (b) | 13. (c) | 14. (a) | 15. (c) | 16. (d) | 17. (c) | 18. (b) | 19. (c) | 20. (d) |
| 21. (a) | 22. (c) | 23. (c) | 24. (d) | 25. (c) | 26. (d) | 27. (d) | 28. (d) | 29. (a) | 30. (b) |
| 31. (b) | 32. (c) | 33. (d) | 34. (d) | 35. (c) | 36. (c) | 37. (b) | 38. (c) | 39. (a) | 40. (d) |
| 41. (b) | 42. (d) | 43. (b) | 44. (d) | 45. (d) | 46. (a) | 47. (b) | 48. (a) | 49. (d) | 50. (b) |

# Practice Set 4

## ANALYSE YOURSELF

- 1.** Which of the following measures was not taken by Ala-ud-din Khilji to curb the power of the nobles?
  - (a) He confiscated all Inam and Waqf lands
  - (b) Matrimonial alliances only with the consent of the Sultan
  - (c) Secularisation of bureaucracy by including even Hindu converts
  - (d) He gave a lot of power to his sons so as to retain power
- 2.** The subsidiary alliance guaranteed protection to the Hyderabad state against external aggression. Its effect on internal administration was **that**
  - (a) it considerably reduced the court intrigues which the French used to revel in
  - (b) it improved the quality of administration
  - (c) the Hyderabad rulers lost all initiative for good and efficient government and various disruptive forces came to the surface
  - (d) there was no appreciable change in the way administration was being conducted
- 3.** Who among the following is known as the 'father of revolutionary thought in India'?
  - (a) Lala Lajpat Rai
  - (b) Bal Gangadhar Tilak
  - (c) Aurobindo Ghosh
  - (d) Bipin Chandra Pal
- 4.** Consider the following statements about Eran inscription
  1. It mentions about the Gupta king Bhanu Gupta and his friend Goparaja, who died in the battle against Hunas and the later's wife performed Sati.
  2. It is the first inscriptional evidence of Sati in India.

*Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?*

  - (a) Only 1
  - (b) Only 2
  - (c) Both 1 and 2
  - (d) Neither 1 nor 2
- 5.** Arrange the following in chronology of their rule in Bengal.

|              |                   |
|--------------|-------------------|
| 1. Mir Jafar | 2. Nizam-ud-Daula |
| 3. Mir Qasim | 4. Siraj-ud-Daula |

*Codes*

|                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| (a) 1, 2, 3, 4 | (b) 4, 3, 1, 2 |
| (c) 4, 1, 3, 2 | (d) 2, 4, 1, 3 |
- 6.** Nizam-ul-Mulk was rewarded with the viceroyalty of the Deccan (1720) by emperor Muhammad Shah
  - (a) in recognition of his ability and reputation for efficient administration
  - (b) for supporting the claim of Ahmed Shah to the Mughal throne
  - (c) for his leading role in the overthrow of the Sayyid Brothers
  - (d) in recognition of his victory over Hussain Ali, the viceroy of the Deccan
- 7.** How did the Industrial Revolution in England affect the British Company's relations with India?
  - (a) The company stopped exports from India to Britain as all raw materials were now mined and produced in Britain
  - (b) The Indian goods were inferior in quality to the mill-manufactured goods and did not have much patronage in the local market
  - (c) British goods in India became extremely cheap
  - (d) The company began to export raw materials from India instead of the finished goods as was done earlier
- 8.** Consider the following statements
  1. Firman issued by Farrukhsiyar in favour of British (for duty-free trade) was known as Magna Carta of the British Company.
  2. Farrukhsiyar issued a firman in favour of Captain Hawkins.

*Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?*

  - (a) Only 1
  - (b) Only 2
  - (c) Both 1 and 2
  - (d) Neither 1 nor 2
- 9.** The Fundamental Principles of Buddhism are represented by four noble truths. Which of the following is not a noble truth?
  - (a) Sorrow
  - (b) Cause of sorrow
  - (c) Cessation of sorrow
  - (d) Immortality of soul
- 10.** Name the person who wrote the history of Aurangzeb in total secrecy. What was the name of the work?
  - (a) Aquil Khan Razi's Zafar Namah-i-Alamgiri
  - (b) Khafi Khan's Muntakhab-ul-Lubab
  - (c) Mirza Muhammad Kazim's Alamgir Namah
  - (d) Muhammad Saqi's Masir-i-Alamgiri
- 11.** Consider the following statements
  1. Ahmed Shah Abdali was one of the ablest generals of Nadir Shah.
  2. Ahmed Shah Abdali appointed Najib-ud-daulah, his personal supreme agent, at the court of Mughal Emperor.

*Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?*

  - (a) Only 1
  - (b) Only 2
  - (c) Both 1 and 2
  - (d) Neither 1 nor 2

- 12.** The meeting of Indian and British political leaders during 1930-32 in London has often been referred to as the First, Second and Third Round Table Conferences. It would be incorrect to refer to them as such because
- the Indian National Congress did not take part in two of them
  - Indian parties other than the Indian National Congress participating in the conference represented sectional interests and not the whole of India
  - the British Labour Party had withdrawn from the conference, thereby making the proceeding of the conference partition
  - it was an instance of a conference held in three sessions and not that of three separate conferences

- 13.** Indicate the correct chronological order of dynasties in North-West India.

- Kushanas, Sakas, Parthians
- Sakas, Kushanas, Parthians
- Parthians, Sakas, Kushanas
- Sakas, Parthians, Kushanas

- 14.** Arrange the following Nawabs of Awadh in chronological order of their reign.

- |                   |                  |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 1. Saadat Khan    | 2. Safdarjung    |
| 3. Shuja-ud-Daula | 4. Asaf-ud-Daula |

*Codes*

- (a) 2, 1, 4, 3 (b) 1, 2, 4, 3 (c) 3, 1, 2, 4 (d) 4, 3, 1, 2

- 15.** Who among the following were the signatories to a statement calling for a boycott of the Simon Commission?

- The All India Liberal Federation
- The Hindu Mahasabha
- The Federation of Indian Chamber of Commerce
- The Mill Owners Association

*Select the correct answer using the codes given below*

- (a) 1, 3 and 4 (b) 1 and 2  
(c) 2, 3 and 4 (d) All of these

- 16.** Consider the following statements

- Sambhaji granted permission to the French to fortify Pondicherry.
- On recommendation of Dost Ali, Mughal emperor Muhammed Shah issued firman to French to mint and issue gold and silver coins.

*Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?*

- (a) Only 1 (b) Only 2  
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2

- 17.** Consider the following statements

- During the rule of Ahmed Shah (a later Mughal), Nawab of Awadh, Safdar Jung became Wazir of the Mughal empire.
- Badan Singh, a jat chief, was made Faujdar of Mathura by Ahmed Shah.

*Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?*

- (a) Only 1 (b) Only 2  
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2

- 18.** The Upanishads are collectively called

- (a) Vedanta (b) Vedangas

- (c) Sruti (d) Smriti

- 19.** By passing the Regulating Act of 1773, the British Parliament tried

- to exercise its own authority on the affairs of the company
- to remove the evils found under the rule of the company
- to protect the Indian rulers from the high handedness of the officers of the company
- to regulate die company's trade with India

- 20.** Which of the following movements can be said to have initiated the process of associating the workers with the wider nationalist struggle against British?

- Swadeshi Movement
- Home Rule Movement
- Non-Cooperation Movement
- Anti-Simon Agitation

- 21.** Consider the following statements

- All India Khilafat Committee was set-up in 1920 in Lucknow with Seth Chhotani of Bombay as President and Maulana Shaukat Ali as Secretary.
- The Khilafat Conference held in Calcutta under the Presidentship of Maulana Abul Kalam Azad passed a resolution in favour of non-cooperation.

*Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?*

- (a) Only 1  
(b) Only 2  
(c) Both 1 and 2  
(d) Neither 1 nor 2

- 22.** What was the most important measure adopted by the English to destroy the Indian industries?

- To raise the prices of the raw materials used by Indian industries
- To purchase and export the raw materials used by Indian industries
- To impose many economic restrictions on the Indian industries
- To arrange for the availability of better products for Indian masses than the goods produced in India

- 23.** Which among the following titles was/were not assumed by the Mughal emperor Akbar?

- Caliph
- Ghazi
- Imam
- Mujahid

*Select the correct answer using the codes given below*

- (a) Only 1 (b) Only 2  
(c) 1, 2 and 3 (d) 2 and 4

- 24.** Which of the following statements is not correct in respect of trade in the post-Mauryan age?

- Slaves were imported from Zanzibar and Madagascar
- Slaves were imported from Ethiopia
- Pratistahar and Amravati were cotton producing centres

(d) Balance of trade was not in favour of India in the post-Mauryan age

**25.** The fortunes of the French East India Company were adversely affected at the close of the 17th century on account of

- (a) combined attack by the English and the Dutch on their settlements in India
- (b) the war between the French and the Dutch who were in alliance with the English in Europe
- (c) the failure of the French to secure any concessions from the Mughals
- (d) None of the above

**26.** Which of the following Indus Valley Civilisation sites are in India?

- |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. Alamgirpur | 2. Balakot    |
| 3. Bargaon    | 4. Chanhudaro |
| 5. Farmana    | 6. Kot Bala   |
| 7. Larkana    |               |

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

- (a) 1, 3 and 5
- (b) 1, 2, 4, 6 and 7
- (c) 2, 3, 4, 5 and 7
- (d) 1, 4, 6 and 7

**27.** Which of the following books were written by Swami Dayanand Saraswati?

- 1. Satyarth Prakash
- 2. Veda Prakash
- 3. Satyarth Bhumika
- 4. Veda Bhashya Bhumika

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

- (a) 1, 2 and 3
- (b) 1, 3 and 4
- (c) 1 and 4
- (d) 1, 2 and 4

**28.** Which of the following are the four Agnikula class of Rajputs?

- (a) Tomars, Pariharam, Chauhans, Pawars
- (b) Chandellas, Tomars, Solankis, Chauhans
- (c) Chandellas, Pariharas, Chauhans, Pawars
- (d) Pariharas, Chauhans, Pawars, Solankis

**29.** Consider the following statements regarding Brahma Sabha

- 1. A new religious society founded in 1838.
- 2. The purpose was to purify Hinduism and to preach monotheism or belief in one God.
- 3. Laid emphasis on human dignity, opposed idolatry and criticised social evils.

Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?

- (a) Only 1
- (b) 1 and 3
- (c) 2 and 3
- (d) All of these

**30.** Which of the following pairs is incorrectly matched?

- |                         |                      |
|-------------------------|----------------------|
| (a) Qutub Minar         | : Aibak and Iltutmis |
| (b) Dhai Din Ka Jhonpra | : Ibrahim Lodi       |
| (c) Alai Darwaza        | : Ala-ud-din Khilji  |
| (d) Red Palace          | : Balban             |

**31.** Harappan people had known the use of

- (a) gold, copper and bronze
- (b) gold and copper
- (c) gold, copper and iron

(d) gold, copper, tin and bronze

**32.** Arrange the following Nawabs of Bengal in chronological order of their reign.

- |                            |                   |
|----------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. Alivardi Khan           | 2. Siraj-ud-Daula |
| 3. Murshid Quli Jafar Khan | 4. Shuja-ud-din   |

**Codes**

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| (a) 1, 2, 3, 4 | (b) 4, 3, 2, 1 |
| (c) 2, 4, 1, 3 | (d) 4, 3, 1, 2 |

**33.** Which of the following acts authorised for Governor-General to appoint Indian Law Commission to study and codify various rules and regulations prevalent in India?

- (a) Charter Act of 1813
- (b) Charter Act of 1833
- (c) Charter Act of 1853
- (d) The Act for the Better Government of India, 1858

**34.** The Syrian Ambassador who visited the Court of Bindusara was

- (a) dionysus
- (b) daimachus
- (c) hegesander
- (d) athena

**35.** Consider the following statements

1. In 1878, Sorabji Shapoorji Bengali tried unsuccessfully to introduce a bill in the Bombay Legislative Council to limit the working hours for labour.
2. NM Lokhande, set-up a working men's club in 1870 and brought out a monthly journal called Bharat Sramjeebi (Indian Labour) with the primary idea of educating the workers.
3. Sasipada Bannerjee brought out an Anglo-Marathi weekly called Dina-Bandhu (friend of the poor) in 1880 and started the Bombay Mill and Millhand's Association in 1890.

Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?

- (a) Only 1
- (b) 2 and 3
- (c) 1 and 2
- (d) All of these

**36.** According to ancient Indian ideas, the sequential order of the cycle of four aeons (yugas) is

- (a) Dvapara, Krita, Treta, Kali
- (b) Krita, Dvapara, Treta, Kali
- (c) Krita, Treta, Dvapara, Kali
- (d) Treta, Dvapara, Kali, Krita

**37.** The actual issue of the misuse of dastaks by the company was that

- (a) the company was granted permits (dastaks) for the duty-free import-export trade, but the company was misusing it for internal trade also
- (b) the dastaks were granted to the company, but they were being misused by the company's servants
- (c) the company and its servants were selling the dastaks even to private merchants
- (d) All of the above

**38.** Which of the following statements is/are correct about Sudarshan lake?

- (a) It was constructed by Pushya Gupta, the Governor of Saurashtra region during Chandragupta Maurya
- (b) Tushaar constructed a dam on the lake during Ashoka Maurya
- (c) First reconstruction was undertaken by Governor Suvishakh during Sakasatrap Rudradaman and 2nd by Chakrapalit during the reign of Skandugupta

(d) All of the above

**39. Arrange the following Nizams of Hyderabad in chronological order of their origin.**

1. Nizam-ul-Mulk Asaf Jah
2. Mir Asaf-ud-Daula
3. Mir Muhammed Nasir Jang
4. Muzaffar Jang

**Codes**

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| (a) 1, 3, 2, 4 | (b) 4, 3, 2, 1 |
| (c) 1, 3, 4, 2 | (d) 4, 3, 1, 2 |

**40. Consider the following statements**

1. The idea of starting a Home Rule League originated with Mrs Besant as early as 1914 and she announced it publicly in September 1915.
2. Mrs Besant moved a resolution for starting a Home Rule League in the Bombay Session (1915) of the Congress, but it was overruled by its President.

**Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?**

- |                  |                     |
|------------------|---------------------|
| (a) Only 1       | (b) Only 2          |
| (c) Both 1 and 2 | (d) Neither 1 nor 2 |

**41. Consider the following statements**

1. Farrukhsiyar appointed Chin Qilich Khan as the Governor of the six provinces of Deccan.
2. Jai Singh of Amber was appointed by Farrukhsiyar as the faujdar of Mathura to contain the Jat Movement.

**Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?**

- |                  |                     |
|------------------|---------------------|
| (a) Only 1       | (b) Only 2          |
| (c) Both 1 and 2 | (d) Neither 1 nor 2 |

**42. The market in Britain was completely closed for the goods produced in India. The device which was used by the English for achieving the arrangement was**

- (a) orders were issued that the ships carrying Indian goods would not be allowed to touch ports in Britain
- (b) the British Indian Government itself purchased Indian goods and sold them in the markets in Africa at fabulous profits
- (c) the British Indian Government imposed restrictions on the export of Indian goods
- (d) a heavy import duty was imposed on Indian goods imported into Britain with a view to make the export and sale of Indian goods in Britain an uneconomic proposition

**43. The Portuguese Estado da India was called wholly 'a piratical and parasitic state' because**

- (a) it completely monopolised India's foreign trade
- (b) it grew rich by ruthless plunder on unarmed Asian ships
- (c) it considered piracy and plunder more profitable than trade
- (d) All of the above

**44. Which of the following was/were causes of decline and disintegration of the Mauryan empire?**

- (a) Succession of weak kings and partition of empire after Ashoka
- (b) Military inactivity on account of Ashoka's pacifist policies
- (c) Brahmanical revolt against the pro Buddhist policy of Ashoka
- (d) All of the above

**45. Consider the following statements.**

1. The Portuguese Governor Alfonso De Souza had acquired Diu and Bassein from Bahadur Shah of Gujarat.
2. The famous Jesuit Saint Francisco Xavier came to India with Alfonso De Souza.

**Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?**

- |                  |                     |
|------------------|---------------------|
| (a) Only 1       | (b) Only 2          |
| (c) Both 1 and 2 | (d) Neither 1 nor 2 |

**46. Geet Govinda, which is a work by Jaidev, is in which language?**

- |              |           |
|--------------|-----------|
| (a) Prakrit  | (b) Pali  |
| (c) Sanskrit | (d) Hindi |

**47. Who among the following is the propounder of Madhyamika philosophy?**

- (a) Sankara
- (b) Nagarjuna
- (c) Basava
- (d) None of these

**48. Which of the following rivers in the Rigveda suggests the Aryan's connection with Afghanistan?**

- |            |              |
|------------|--------------|
| (a) Askini | (b) Parushni |
| (c) Kubha  | (d) Vipas    |

**49. Which among the following is the most important work of Tamil literature during the Sangam period?**

- (a) Thirukkural
- (b) Purananuru
- (c) Malaipatukatam
- (d) None of the above

**50. Consider the following statements,**

1. Amir Khusro created a new literary style in Persian, which came to be known as *Sabaz-i-Hind*.
2. Amir Khusro was disciple of Nizamuddin Auliya.
3. He introduced the Perso-Arabic ragas etc.

**Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?**

- |            |                  |
|------------|------------------|
| (a) Only 3 | (b) 1 and 2      |
| (c) Only 2 | (d) All of these |

## Answers

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (d)  | 2. (c)  | 3. (d)  | 4. (c)  | 5. (c)  | 6. (b)  | 7. (d)  | 8. (a)  | 9. (d)  | 10. (b) |
| 11. (c) | 12. (d) | 13. (d) | 14. (c) | 15. (d) | 16. (c) | 17. (c) | 18. (a) | 19. (d) | 20. (a) |
| 21. (b) | 22. (c) | 23. (b) | 24. (d) | 25. (b) | 26. (a) | 27. (b) | 28. (d) | 29. (c) | 30. (b) |
| 31. (d) | 32. (a) | 33. (b) | 34. (b) | 35. (a) | 36. (c) | 37. (b) | 38. (d) | 39. (d) | 40. (c) |
| 41. (c) | 42. (d) | 43. (b) | 44. (d) | 45. (b) | 46. (c) | 47. (b) | 48. (c) | 49. (a) | 50. (d) |

# Practice Set 5

## ANALYSE YOURSELF

- 1.** Which of the following factors were responsible for the rise of different religious sects during the 6th century BC?
- The domineering attitude of the Brahmins towards the common people.
  - The rigidity of caste system.
  - The Shudras became influential.
  - The indiscriminate killing of cattle was ruining the concept of new agriculture.
- Select the correct answer using the codes given below  
(a) 1 and 2 (b) 1 and 3 (c) 1, 2 and 4 (d) 2 and 3
- 2.** Identify the motifs used by the Delhi Sultans in their constructions which were borrowed from the Hindus.
- |                                   |             |
|-----------------------------------|-------------|
| 1. Bell                           | 2. Lotus    |
| 3. Geometrical and floral designs | 4. Swastika |
- Select the correct answer using the codes given below  
(a) 2, 3 and 4 (b) 1 and 3 (c) 3 and 4 (d) 1, 2 and 4
- 3.** Name the Delhi Sultans born of Hindu mothers.
- |                         |                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Firoz Tughlaq        | 2. Sikander Lodi         |
| 3. Nasir-ud-din Khusrau | 4. Balban                |
| 5. Ala-ud-din Khilji    | 6. Ghiyas-ud-din Tughlaq |
- Select the correct answer using the codes given below  
(a) 2, 4 and 5 (b) 1, 2 and 4 (c) 3, 4, 5 and 6 (d) 1, 2, 3 and 6
- 4.** Which of the four sons of Shah Jahan fought for the throne between 1656-58?
- |              |                |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1. Shuja     | 2. Murad       |
| 3. Khusrav   | 4. Daur Bakhsh |
| 5. Aurangzeb | 6. Dara Shikoh |
- Select the correct answer using the codes given below  
(a) 2, 4, 5 and 6 (b) 1, 3 and 4 (c) 4, 5 and 6 (d) 1, 2, 5 and 6
- 5.** Name the person or persons who invited Babur to invade India.
- |                       |                        |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. Daulat Khan Lodi   | 2. Mahmud Lodi         |
| 3. Bhara Mai of Amber | 4. Rana Sanga of Mewar |
| 5. Alam Khan Lodi     |                        |
- Select the correct answer using the codes given below  
(a) 1, 2 and 3 (b) 2, 3 and 4 (c) 1, 4 and 5 (d) 3, 4 and 5
- 6.** The term 'Aryan' denotes
- |                     |                      |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| (a) an ethnic group | (b) a nomadic people |
| (c) a speech group  | (d) a superior race  |
- 7.** What is the descending order of the ranks of nobility under Delhi Sultanate?
- |         |          |         |                |
|---------|----------|---------|----------------|
| 1. Khan | 2. Malik | 3. Amir | 4. Sar-i-Khail |
|---------|----------|---------|----------------|
- Codes  
(a) 1, 2, 4, 3 (b) 2, 1, 4, 3 (c) 1, 2, 3, 4 (d) 3, 2, 4, 1
- 8.** What was the main objective of Ala-ud-din Khilji's market reforms?
- He wanted to keep his soldiers satisfied
  - He wanted to earn the goodwill of the people
  - He wanted to curb the power of the nobles
  - He wanted to centralise the administration
- 9.** What was Abwab?
- Toll tax
  - Religious taxes such as Zakat
  - Taxes on merchandise and custom duties
  - Miscellaneous kinds of taxes like the house taxes, grazing tax, irrigation tax etc
- 10.** In the Battle of Haldighati in 1576, the Rajput force of Maharana Pratap Singh was defeated by
- |                    |                  |
|--------------------|------------------|
| (a) Raja Man Singh | (b) Pir Muhammad |
| (c) Prince Salim   | (d) Akbar        |
- 11.** Which of the following is incorrect about Buddha?
- He did not concern himself with the problem of God or the soul
  - He declared that everything in the world is temporary
  - According to him, desire is the cause of suffering
  - He glorified the concept of self-mortification
- 12.** Under whose reign were the Kakatiya and Pandyan kingdoms annexed to the Delhi Sultanate?
- |                          |                           |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| (a) Ala-ud-din Khilji    | (b) Ghiyas-ud-din Tughlaq |
| (c) Muhammad bin Tughlaq | (d) Firoz Shah Tughlaq    |
- 13.** Arrange in proper chronological order the experiments of Muhammed-bin Tughlaq.
- Introduction of token currency.
  - Transfer of capital from Delhi to Daulatabad.
  - Enhancement of land revenue to 50% in the doab area.
  - Establishment of a separate Department of Agriculture.
  - Appointment of a new set of revenue officers.
- Codes  
(a) 2, 1, 3, 4, 5 (b) 4, 5, 2, 3, 1  
(c) 2, 4, 1, 3, 5 (d) 5, 3, 2, 1, 4
- 14.** Which of the following statements correctly describes the difference between a Chaitya and a Stupa?
- Chaitya is a place of worship while Stupa is a architectural term for a mound containing the relic of Buddha and later on of leading Buddhist saints
  - Chaitya is a resting place, while Stupa is a funeral monument
  - Chaityas were constructed by monasteries while Stupas were constructed by kings and rich merchants
  - Chaityas represents Mahayanism while Stupas represents Hinayanism



- 27.** Which was the first work to recognise the payment of officers by grants of land?
- Kautilya's Arthashastra
  - Indica of Megasthenes
  - Manusmriti
  - Harshacharita of Bana
- 28. Consider the following statements**
- Ahmed Shah Abdali defeated Marathas comprehensively in the Third Battle of Panipat.
  - Presentation of Nazar or gifts by the Britishers to the Mughal emperor was ended in the reign of Akbar II.
  - The title of king was dropped by Lord Canning for successors of Bahadur Shah II.
  - All the sons of Bahadur Shah II were killed by the British, except Mirza Taiwan Bakht.
- Which of the statements given above are correct?**
- 1, 2 and 3
  - 1, 3 and 4
  - 2, 3 and 4
  - 1, 2 and 4
- 29. Who was the founder of the city of Agra?**
- Firoz Tughlaq
  - Muhammed-bin Tughlaq
  - Ala-ud-din Khilji
  - Sikandar Lodi
- 30. Arrange the following Chola emperors in the correct sequence.**
- |               |                 |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. Rajaraja I | 2. Parantaka    |
| 3. Rajendra I | 4. Aditya Chola |
| 5. Vijayala   | 6. Uttam Chola  |
- Codes**
- 4, 2, 1, 5, 3, 6
  - 2, 3, 1, 6, 4, 5
  - 5, 4, 2, 6, 1, 3
  - 3, 1, 2, 5, 4, 6
- 31. There was a triangular contest among the trading companies during the first half of the 17th century on account of their commercial rivalries. Who among the following did not take part in it?**
- The English
  - The French
  - The Portuguese
  - The Dutch
- 32. Consider the following statements regarding Portuguese**
- They made the spice trade a monopoly.
  - They sold the offices of captains and custom collectors.
  - Goa was the early Portuguese capital in India, later on which was replaced by Cochin.
  - The Marathas captured Salsette and Bassein in 1739 from Portuguese.
- Which of the statements given above are correct?**
- 1 and 2
  - 1, 3 and 4
  - 2, 3 and 4
  - 1, 2 and 4
- 33. Consider the following statements**
- Mihir Bhoja was the greatest ruler of Pratihara dynasty.
  - Cavalry of Pratiharas was considered to be the best in India during their time.
  - Rajyapala was one of the last Pratihara rulers, who surrendered before Mahmud Ghazni and was finally defeated and killed by the Chandella king Vidyadhar.
- Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?**
- 1 and 2
  - Only 2
  - 2 and 3
  - All of these
- 34. Consider the following statements regarding the Indian Council Act of 1861**
- The act enlarged the Governor-General's council for the purpose of making laws, in which capacity it was known as the Imperial Legislative Council.
  - The Governor-General was authorised to add to his Executive Council 15 members of whom at least half had to be non-officials, who could be Indian or English.
  - The Imperial Legislative Council possessed no real power and should not be seen as a sort of elementary or weak Parliament. It was merely an advisory body.
- Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?**
- Only 1
  - 1 and 3
  - 2 and 3
  - All of these
- 35. Consider the following statements about Razia Sultana**
- She was murdered by some bandits at Kaithal after being deposed by the nobles.
  - Iltutmish nominated her as his successor.
  - She was successful in coming to the throne immediately after her father's death.
  - She was the only daughter to be preferred to sons by any ruler of India.
  - Her fondness for the Abyssinian slave Yaqub turned the nobles against her.
- Which of the statements given above are correct?**
- 1, 2, 4 and 5
  - 2, 3 and 4
  - 3, 4 and 5
  - 1, 2 and 3
- 36. Consider the following statements regarding the defeat of the French in India at the hands of the British**
- The English Company was commercially superior to the French Company.
  - The shareholders of the French Company were not assured of rich dividends.
  - The French subordinated their mercantile interest to territorial ambitions.
  - The English had naval superiority.
- Which of these are the correct reasons for the defeat of the French?**
- 1 and 3
  - 2 and 4
  - 1, 3 and 4
  - 2, 3 and 4
- 37. Consider the following statements regarding Alfonso De Albuquerque**
- He was the second Governor of Portuguese in India.
  - He had captured Goa from the ruler of Bijapur.
  - He discouraged his countrymen to marry Indian women.
  - He consolidated Portuguese power in India.
- Which of the statement(s) given above is/are incorrect?**
- 1 and 2
  - Only 2
  - Only 4
  - Only 3
- 38. Qutub-ud-din Aibak cannot be called the sovereign ruler of the Sultanate because**
- he did not assume the title of Sultan
  - he did not issue the coins nor was the Khutba read in his name
  - Both 'a' and 'b'
  - instead of Delhi, he mostly stayed in Lahore

# Answers

1. (c)    2. (d)    3. (d)    4. (d)    5. (c)    6. (c)    7. (c)    8. (a)    9. (d)    10. (a)  
11. (d)    12. (b)    13. (a)    14. (a)    15. (b)    16. (d)    17. (d)    18. (d)    19. (b)    20. (a)  
21. (c)    22. (c)    23. (b)    24. (b)    25. (b)    26. (c)    27. (b)    28. (b)    29. (d)    30. (c)  
31. (d)    32. (d)    33. (d)    34. (b)    35. (a)    36. (c)    37. (d)    38. (c)    39. (d)    40. (d)  
41. (d)    42. (c)    43. (c)    44. (d)    45. (d)    46. (a)    47. (d)    48. (a)    49. (a)    50. (a)

# PREVIOUS YEARS' QUESTIONS

## SOLVED PAPERS

### Set 1



**Expo.** (d) Kalyana Mandapa is dedicated to the ritual marriage celebration of the Lord with the Goddess and it was constructed under the Vijayanagara style of temple architecture.

- 2. Consider the following statements.** [IAS 2019]

  1. In the revenue administration of Delhi Sultanate, the in-charge of revenue collection was known as 'Amil'.
  2. The Iqta system of Sultans of Delhi was an ancient indigenous institution.
  3. The office of 'Mir Bakshi' came into existence during the reign of Khalji Sultans of Delhi.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct?



**Exp.** (a) In the land revenue system of Delhi Sultanate, the Central Government appointed Amil to collect revenues in each subdivision called Shiq.

The Iqta system of land control was first introduced in the Delhi Sultanate by Iltutmish. So, it is not an indigenous institution in India.

The office of Mir Bakshi was established under the Mughal Empire. He was the head of military department, nobility, information and intelligence agencies.

- 3. Consider the following statements.** [IAS 2019]

  1. Saint Nimarkba was a contemporary of Akbar.
  2. Saint Kabir was greatly influenced by Shaikh Ahmad Sirhindi.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct?



**Exp.** (d) Both the given statements are incorrect. Saint Nimbarka was a Hindu philosopher. He is known for propagating the Vaishnava doctrine of *Dvaitadvaita* or *Dualistic non-dualism*. Nimbarka era is not exactly known but its sometime in 12th-13th century, while Akbar the third Mughal emperor was born in 1542.

Shaikh Ahmad Sirhindi was born after Saint Kabir. Sirhindi was Islamic Hanafi, scholar of Naqshbandi Silsilah, while Kabir was the follower of Nirgun Bhakti.

- 4.** With reference to the British colonial rule in India, consider the following statements. [IAS 2019]

  1. Mahatma Gandhi was instrumental in the abolition of the system of 'Indentured Labour'.
  2. In Lord Chelmsford's 'War Conference', Mahatma Gandhi did not support the resolution on recruiting Indians for World War.
  3. Consequent upon the breaking of Salt Law by Indian people, the Indian National Congress was declared illegal by the colonial rulers.

Which of the statements given above are correct?

- (a) 1 and 2      (b) 1 and 3      (c) 2 and 3      (d) 1, 2 and 3

**Expo.** (b) The first agitation that Mahatma Gandhi launched during his days in South Africa was against the system of 'Indentured Labour'. It was a system based on contract, in which the labours from India were sent to work in sugarcane fields of abroad.

Mahatma Gandhi supported the resolution on recruiting Indians for World War in the famous 'War Conference'

After the Salt Satyagraha, the British responded with more censorship and Congress and its associate organisations were declared illegal.

- 5.** With reference to Indian National Movement, consider the following pairs. [IAS 2019]

| <b>List I (Person)</b>   | <b>List II (Position Held)</b>              |
|--------------------------|---|
| 1. Sir Tej Bahadur Sapru | President, All India Liberal Federation     |
| 2. KC Neogy              | Member, Constituent Assembly                |
| 3. PC Joshi              | General Secretary, Communist Party of India |

Which of the pairs given above is/are correctly matched?



**Expo.** (d) Sir Tej Bahadur Sapru was the founder and President of All India Liberal Foundation. It was formed by the Moderate Congress Leaders in 1919. Its other leaders were Surendranath Banerjee, VS Srinivasa Sastri and MR Jayakar.

KC Neogy was the Chairman of first Finance Commission of India. He was an elected member of the Constituent Assembly of India and a member of first Cabinet of Independent India.

PC Joshi became the first General Secretary of the Communist Party of India from 1935 to 1947.

**6.** With reference to Mian Tansen, which one of the following statements is not correct? [IAS 2019]

- (a) Tansen was the title given to him by Emperor Akbar.
- (b) Tansen composed Dhrupads on Hindu Gods and Goddesses.
- (c) Tansen composed songs on his patrons.
- (d) Tansen invented many Ragas.

**Exp.** (a) Tansen was the title given to him by Raja Vikramjit of Gwalior. His original name was Ramtanu Pandey. Tansen joined Akbar's court in AD 1562, at the age of 60 years. He is remembered for his epic Dhrupad compositions, creating several new Ragas as well as writing of two classical books on music. Tansen composed songs on his patrons Raja Ramchandra as well as Akbar. Akbar gave him the title 'Mian', meaning a learned man.

**7.** Who among the following Mughal Emperors shifted emphasis from illustrated manuscripts to album and individual portrait? [IAS 2019]

- (a) Humayun (b) Akbar (c) Jahangir (d) Shah Jahan

**Exp.** (c) Jahangir was the fourth Mughal emperor, who ruled from 1605. He was fascinated with art and architecture. He encouraged paintings depicting the events of his own life, individual portraits and studies of birds, flowers and animals. He shifted his emphasis from illustrated manuscripts to album and individual portraits.

**8.** With reference to Mughal India, what is/are the difference/differences between Jagirdar and Zamindar?

1. Jagirdars were holders of land assignments in lieu of judicial and police duties, whereas Zamindars were holders of revenue rights without obligation to perform any duty other than revenue collection.
2. Land assignments to Jagirdars were hereditary and revenue rights of Zamindars were not hereditary.

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

- |                  |                     |            |
|------------------|---------------------|------------|
| (a) Only 1       | (b) Only 2          | [IAS 2019] |
| (c) Both 1 and 2 | (d) Neither 1 nor 2 |            |

**Exp.** (d) Both options are incorrect. The holder of land was termed as the Zamindar. They have the hereditary right over the land. The main function of Zamindars were the collection and deposition of revenues in the royal treasury. Zamindars were also expected to maintain law and order in their jurisdictions. The troops maintained by Zamindar were to be placed at the disposal of state officials whenever it was required.

The Jagirdars were the king's officials who enjoyed the land gifted from the king. They were allotted non-inheritable land area equivalent to their fee amount called Jagir. Jagirdars only have the right to claim and enjoy the revenue collected from the land.

**9.** With reference to land reforms in independent India, which one of the following statements is correct? [IAS 2019]

- (a) The ceiling laws were aimed at family holdings and not individual holdings.
- (b) The major aim of land reforms was providing agricultural land to all the landless.
- (c) It resulted in cultivation of cash crops as a predominant form of cultivation.
- (d) Land reforms permitted not exemptions to the ceiling limits.

**Exp.** (b) Land reforms were enacted in independent India to distribute agriculture land equitably. The ceiling on land was imposed and maximum size of land which could be owned by an individual was fixed. The main aim was to provide agricultural land to all the rural landless labourers. As the lands got fragmented, cultivation of cash crops became difficult. Land reforms failed because of various exemptions provided in the Act.

**10.** Consider the following statements about 'The Charter Act of 1813'. [IAS 2019]

1. It ended the trade monopoly of the East India Company in India except for trade in tea and trade with China.
2. It asserted the sovereignty of the British crown over the Indian territories held by the Company.
3. The revenues of India were now controlled by the British Parliament.

**Which of the statements given above are correct?**

- |             |                |
|-------------|----------------|
| (a) 1 and 2 | (b) 2 and 3    |
| (c) 1 and 3 | (d) 1, 2 and 3 |

**Exp.** (a) The Charter Act, 1813 renewed the company's charter for a further period of 20 years, it ended the trade monopoly of the East India Company on trade matters, except on trade with China and trade in tea. The Act asserted the sovereignty of British crown over the territories of English company.

The revenues of India were controlled by the British Parliament through Pitts India Act 1784. It empowered the Board of Control to supervise and direct all operations of the Civil and Military Government or revenues of the British possessions in India.

**11.** With reference to Swadeshi Movement, consider the following statements. [IAS 2019]

1. It contributed to the revival of the indigenous artisan crafts and industries.
2. The National Council of Education was established as a part of Swadeshi Movement.

**Which of the statements given above is/are correct?**

- |                  |                     |
|------------------|---------------------|
| (a) Only 1       | (b) Only 2          |
| (c) Both 1 and 2 | (d) Neither 1 nor 2 |

**Exp.** (c) Swadeshi Movement was launched in the year 1905 to protest the Partition of Bengal. During the Swadeshi Movement, Swadeshi textile mills, soap, match factories, tanneries etc., were established which led to the revival of the indigenous artisan crafts and industries.

The National Council of Education, Bengal was constituted on August 15, 1906 as a part of Swadeshi Movement. The important founder members include Surendranath Banerjee, Rabindra Nath Tagore, BC Pal, Ashwani Kumar Dutt etc.

**12.** Consider the following pairs.

[IAS 2019]

| List I<br>(Movement/Organisation)       | List II<br>(Leader)        |
|---|----------------------------|
| 1. All India Anti-Untouchability League | Mahatma Gandhi             |
| 2. All India Kisan Sabha                | Swami Sahajanand Saraswati |
| 3. Self-Respect Movement                | EV Ramaswami Naicker       |

**Which of the pairs given above is/are correctly matched?**

- (a) Only 1
- (b) 1 and 2
- (c) 2 and 3
- (d) 1, 2 and 3

**Exp.** (d) All India Anti-Untouchability League was established by Mahatma Gandhi in 1932 to better organise the untouchables.

It was later renamed as Harijan Sevak Sangh.

The All India Kisan Sabha was a Peasant Movement started by Swami Sahajanand Saraswati. It was formed at the Lucknow Session of Indian National Congress, held in 1936.

The Self-Respect Movement was founded by S. Ramanathan in 1925. He invited Periyar or EV Ramaswami Naicker to head the movement in Tamil Nadu against Brahminism.

**13. Which one of the following is not a Harappan site?**

- (a) Chanhudaro
- (b) Kot Diji
- (c) Sohgaura
- (d) Desalpur

**Exp.** (c) Desalpur, Chanhudaro and Kot Diji are the Harappan sites.

Desalpur is a village and site belonging to Indus Valley Civilisation located in Gujarat.

The ancient site of Kot Diji is a site of Indus Valley Civilisation, located in the Sindh district, Pakistan.

Chanhudaro is an archaeological site belonging to Indus Valley Civilisation, located 130 km South of Mohenjodaro in Sindh, Pakistan.

Sohgaura copper inscription is a Mauryan record depicting famine relief efforts. It is written in Prakrit in the Brahmi script.

**14. In which of the following relief sculpture inscriptions is 'Ranya Ashoka' (King Ashoka) mentioned along with the stone portrait of Ashoka?** [IAS 2019]

- (a) Kanganahalli
- (b) Sanchi
- (c) Shahbazgarhi
- (d) Sohgaura

**Exp.** (a) Kanganahalli is an important Buddhist site. It is about 3 km from sannati; Karnataka. The first inscribed portrait of Ashoka (surrounded by female attendants and queens) was found at Kanganahalli. Ranya Ashoka (King Ashoka) is mentioned along with the stone portrait of Ashoka in Kanganahalli relief sculpture inscriptions.

The Sanchi inscription belongs to Chandragupta II, documenting a donation given to Buddhist establishment at Sanchi during the reign of Chandragupta II.

Shahbazgarhi is famous for Ashokan edicts incised on a large boulder. Its main purpose was to establish 'Dhamma' (Justice).

Sohgaura copper plate inscription mentions the establishment of two grain depots to fight against famine.

**15. Consider the following.**

[IAS 2019]

1. Deification of the Buddha.
2. Treading the path of Bodhisattvas.
3. Image worship and rituals.

**Which of the above is/are the feature/features of Mahayana Buddhism?**

- (a) Only 1
- (b) 1 and 2
- (c) 2 and 3
- (d) 1, 2 and 3

**Exp.** (d) Mahayana Buddhism emerged by the 1st century CE. It started considering Buddha as a God rather than a great teacher. The image of Buddha and Bodhisattvas were

worshipped. Bodhisattvas were to help others to attain Nirvana. So, the followers of Mahayana Buddhism followed the path of Bodhisattvas.

Further, Buddha was treated like a God (Deification) and it was believed that he was the one who could ensure salvation.

**16. With reference to forced labour (Vishti) in India during the Gupta period, which one of the following statements is correct?** [IAS 2019]

- (a) It was considered a source of income for the state, a sort of tax paid by the people.
- (b) It was totally absent in the Madhya Pradesh and Kathiawar regions of the Gupta Empire.
- (c) The forced labourer was entitled to weekly wages.
- (d) The eldest son of the labourer was sent as the forced labourer.

**Exp.** (a) Vishtis were forced labour during the Gupta period. It is mentioned on copper inscriptions. The soldiers were supplied food, animals, furniture etc by the peasants. In Central India and Western part, villagers were subjected to forced labour by the royal army and officials. There were no wages for Vishtis and no hierarchy of labour. Vishti could be extracted from anyone. As Vishti was not a wage labour, it was forced labour in lieu of tax. People were forcefully bound to serve.

**17. Which one of the following groups of plants was domesticated in the 'New World' and introduced into the 'Old World'?** [IAS 2019]

- (a) Tobacco, cocoa and rubber
- (b) Tobacco, cotton and rubber
- (c) Cotton, coffee and sugarcane
- (d) Rubber, coffee and wheat

**Exp.** (a) The plants of 'New World' (America) includes maize, tomato, pineapple, potato, cocoa, tobacco and rubber were native to the New World before 1492 AD and were not found anywhere else at that time. The merchants of Europe, Asia and Africa (Old World) took products of the New World to Europe, Asia and Africa.

**18. Consider the following pairs.**

[IAS 2019]

| List I (Famous Place) | List II (River) |
|-----------------------|-----------------|
| 1. Pandharpur         | Chandrabbaga    |
| 2. Tiruchirappalli    | Cauvery         |
| 3. Hampi              | Malaprabha      |

**Which of the pairs given above are correctly matched?**

- (a) 1 and 2
- (b) 2 and 3
- (c) 1 and 3
- (d) 1, 2 and 3

**Exp.** (a) Pandharpur is a pilgrimage town located on the bank of Chandrabhaga river in Maharashtra.

Tiruchirappalli is located in Tamil Nadu. It is drained by Cauvery river and its tributary Kolli dam.

Hampi is located in Karnataka and is located on the bank of Tungabhadra river. Hampi was the capital of Vijayanagara. It is famous for many temples like Virupaksha Temple, Vithala and Nandi Statue.

**19. The well-known painting Bani-Thani belongs to the**

- (a) Bundi School
- (b) Jaipur School
- (c) Kangra School
- (d) Kishangarh School

**Exp. (d)** Bani-Thani is an Indian miniature painting painted by Nihal Chand from the Marwar School of Kishangarh. He portrays a woman who is elegant and graceful. The painting's subject, Bani-Thani, was a singer and poet in Kishangarh in the time of King Sawant Singh (1748-1764). This painting has been compared to the popular painting of Mona Lisa.

**20.** With reference to culture history of India, consider the following statements. [IAS 2018]

- Most of the Tyagaraja Kritis are devotional songs in praise of Lord Krishna.
- Tyagaraja created several new ragas.
- Annamacharya and Tyagaraja are contemporaries.
- Annamacharya kirtana are devotional songs in praise of Lord Venketshwara.

**Which of the statements given above are correct?**

- (a) 1 and 3    (b) 2 and 4    (c) 1, 2 and 3    (d) 2, 3 and 4

**Exp. (b)** Tyagaraja was an ardent devotee of Lord Rama. In his praise and honour he wrote numerous kritis. Tyagaraja was born on 4th May, 1767 and died on 6th January, 1847. Tyagaraja composed many new janya ragas as well as melakarta raga. He is said to have invented 66 new ragas in his time. Tallapaka Annamacharya (or Annamayya) was born in May 1408 and died in April 1503. He was a 15th century Hindu saint and is the earliest known Indian musician to compose songs called Sankirtanas in praise of the God Venkateswara, a form of Vishnu.

**21.** Which among the following events happened earliest?

- Swami Dayanand established Arya Samaj [IAS 2018]
- Dinabandhu Mitra wrote Neeldarpan
- Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay wrote Anandmath
- Satyendranath Tagore became the first Indian to succeed in the Indian Civil Services Examination

**Exp. (b)** Dinabandhu Mitra wrote Neeldarpan in 1860 showing the plight of Indigo farmer. Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay wrote Anandmath in 1882 in the background of Sanyasi rebellion. Satyendra Nath Tagore became the first Indian to succeed in the ICS examination in 1863 and Swami Dayanand established Arya Samaj in 1875.

**22.** With the reference to educational institutions during rule in India, consider the following pairs. [IAS 2018]

| Institution                    | Founder          |
|--------------------------------|------------------|
| 1. Sanskrit College at Banaras | William Jones    |
| 2. Calcutta Madarsa            | Warren Hastings  |
| 3. Fort William College        | Arthur Wellesley |

**Which of the above pairs are correctly matched?**

- (a) 1 and 2    (b) Only 2    (c) 1 and 3    (d) Only 3

**Exp. (b)** Sanskrit College at Banaras was the first college in Banaras. Established in 1791 by Jonathan Duncan, it was a landmark college in India from where several notable teachers emerged. In 1958 it merged with Sampurnanand Sanskrit University.

Calcutta Madrasa was founded by the Governor General Warren Hastings, in October 1780.

Fort William College (also called the College of Fort William) was an academy and learning centre of oriental studies established by Lord Richard Wellesley, then Governor-General of British India in 1800.

**23.** The staple commodities of export by the English East India Company from Bengal in the middle of the 18th century were [IAS 2018]

- raw cotton, oil-seeds and opium
- sugar, salt, zinc and lead
- copper, silver, gold, spices and tea
- cotton, silk, saltpeter and opium

**Exp. (d)** By the late 17th century Bengal had begun to emerge as an important source of supplies that the East India Company could purchase for sale in Europe. Goods purchased from Bengal included cotton cloth, opium, saltpeter, sugar and silk. In 17th century India lacked in production of oil seeds, copper, gold, zinc, lead, etc.

**24.** Which one of the following is a very significant aspect of the Champaran Satyagraha? [IAS 2018]

- Active all-India participation of lawyers, students and women in the National Movement
- Active involvement of Dalit and Tribal communities of India in the National Movement
- Joining of peasants unrest to India's National Movement
- Drastic decrease in the cultivation of plantation crops and commercial crops.

**Exp. (c)** The centenary of Mahatma Gandhi's first Satyagraha in India was marked in April 2017. It was undertaken in the erstwhile undivided Champaran district in northern Bihar. He went there in April, 1917 on learning about the abuses suffered by the cultivators of the district, forced into growing indigo by British planters/estate owners. 'The Champaran tenant, informs Gandhi, was bound by law to plant three out of every twenty parts of his land with indigo for his landlord'. This system was called Tinkathia. Champaran Satyagraha was organised against this system only. Through this movement peasants unrest became a part of India's National Movement.

**25.** Who among the following were the founders of the Hind Mazdoor Sabha established in 1948? [IAS 2018]

- B Krishna Pillai, E.M.S. Namboodiripad and KC George
- Jayaprakash Narayan, Deen Dayal Upadhyay and MN Roy
- CP Ramaswamy Iyer, K Kamaraj and Veerasingam Pantulu
- Ashok Mehta, TS Ramanujan and G Mehta

**Exp. (d)** The Hind Mazdoor Sabha was founded in Hawrah in West Bengal on 29th December, 1948, by socialists, Forward Bloc followers and independent unionists. Its founders included Basawon Singh (Sinha), Ashok Mehta, RS Ruikar, Maniben Kara, Shibanath Banerjee, RA Khedgikar, TS Ramanujam, VS Mathur, GG Mehta.

**26.** With reference to the religious practices in India, the Sthanakvasi sect belongs to: [IAS 2018]

- Buddhism
- Jainism
- Vaishnavism
- Shaivism

**Exp. (b)** Sthanakvasi is a sect of Svetambara Jainism founded by a merchant named Lavaji in 1653 AD. It believes that idol worship is not essential in the path of soul purification and attainment of Nirvana/Moksha. The sect is essentially a reformation of the one founded on teachings of Lonka, a fifteenth-century Jain reformer. Sthanakvasis accept thirty-two of the Jain Agamas, the Svetambara canon.

**27.** With reference to the cultural history of India, consider the following statements: [IAS 2018]

1. White marble was used in making Buland Darwaza and Khankah at Fatehpur Sikri.
2. Red sandstone and marble were used in making Bara Imambara and Rumi Darwaza in Lucknow.

**Which of the following statements given above is/are correct?**

- |                  |                     |
|------------------|---------------------|
| (a) Only 1       | (b) Only 2          |
| (c) Both 1 and 2 | (d) Neither 1 nor 2 |

**Exp.** (a) The Buland Darwaza is made of red and buff sandstone, decorated by white and black marble. Thus, statement 1 is correct. Bara Imambara and Rumi Darwaza were built by Asaf-ud-daula in 18th century during the days of economic strain. They have therefore, austere architecture and used no marble in their construction. Hence, statement 2 is incorrect.

**28.** Which one of the following foreign travellers elaborately discussed about diamonds and diamond mines in India? [IAS 2018]

- |                      |                             |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| (a) Francois Bernier | (b) Jean-Baptiste Tavernier |
| (c) Jean de Thevenot | (d) Abbe Barthelemy Carre   |

**Exp.** (b) The earliest trustworthy account of Golconda diamond mines was given by Jean-Baptiste Tavernier. He was a French jeweller and gem merchant. He was a great authority on diamonds and diamond mines in India in the 17th century.

**29.** With reference to Indian history, who among the following is a future Buddha, yet to come to save the world?

- |                     |               |
|---------------------|---------------|
| (a) Avalokiteshvara | (b) Lokesvara |
| (c) Maitreya        | (d) Padmapani |
- [IAS 2018]

**Exp.** (c) In the world of Buddhist eschatology, Maitreya literally means the future Buddha. Maitreya Buddha is considered as the 5th Buddha that is believed to appear in this Kalpa or era. Thus, Maitreya Buddha is considered as the future Buddha that is yet to appear in this age. In various Buddhist sutras such as Amitabha Sutra, as well as Lotus Sutra, Maitreya Buddha is believed to be called as Ajita.

Avalokiteshvara is a bodhisattva who embodies the compassion of all Buddhas. Bodhisattvas are enlightened beings who are destined to become Buddhas but postpone that final state in order to help humanity. Padmapani is a Bodhisattva who is depicted in the Ajanta paintings holding lotus.

**30.** Which one of the following statements does not apply to the system of Subsidiary Alliance introduced by Lord Wellesley? [IAS 2018]

- (a) To maintain a large standing army at others expense
- (b) To keep India safe from Napoleonic danger
- (c) To secure a fixed income for the company
- (d) To establish British paramountcy over the Indian states

**Exp.** (c) The Subsidiary Alliances System was introduced by Lord Wellesley in 1798. The British, under the Subsidiary Alliance System, agreed to protect the Indian rulers against external threats and internal disorder but, in return, the Indian rulers who accepted the Subsidiary Alliance System were to agree to the stationing of British contingent for whose maintenance they would pay a subsidy to the British. Napoleonic Bonaparte was advancing towards East, hence, subsidiary alliance would defend against Napoleonic danger. There is no mention of a fixed income for the economy.

**31.** After the Santhal rising subsided, what was/were the measure/measures taken by the Colonial Government?

1. The territories called 'Santhal Paraganas' were created.
  2. It became illegal for a Santhal to transfer land to a Non-Santhal.
- [IAS 2018]

**Select the correct answer using a code given below.**

- |                  |                     |
|------------------|---------------------|
| (a) Only 1       | (b) Only 2          |
| (c) Both 1 and 2 | (d) Neither 1 nor 2 |

**Exp.** (c) The area of concentration of the Santhals was called It extended from Bhagalpur in Bihar to Orissa in the South. By the 1850s, the Santhals felt that the time had come to rebel against zamindars, moneylenders and the colonial state, in order to create an ideal world for themselves where they would rule.

After the revolt was suppressed the colonial state stepped in very quickly and efficiently to redress the grievances of the Santhals, with the result that a more cordial relationship ensured. The territories that they inhabited were grouped under a new territorial unit – Santhal Parganas and it was henceforth stipulated that the usual bureaucratic and judicial procedures of British India would not apply there. Further, there were special provisions for land rights and it became illegal for a Santhal to transfer land to Non-Santhals.

**32.** Economically, one of the results of the British rule in India in the 19th century was the [IAS 2018]

- (a) increase in the exports of Indian handicrafts
- (b) growth in the number of Indian owned factories
- (c) commercialisation of Indian agriculture
- (d) rapid increase in urban population

**Exp.** (c) A major economic impact of the British policies in India was the introduction of a large number of commercial crops such as tea, coffee, indigo, opium, cotton, jute, sugarcane and oilseed. Exports of handicrafts suffered during British rule. Thus, option (a) is incorrect. Further, there is no conclusive evidence of growth in number of Indian owned factories or rapid increase in the urban population.

**33.** Consider the following pairs. [IAS 2018]

| Craft                   | Heritage Of |
|-------------------------|-------------|
| 1. Puthukkuli Shawls    | Tamil Nadu  |
| 2. Sujini embroidery    | Maharashtra |
| 3. Uppada Jamdani Saris | Karnataka   |

**Which of the above pairs is correct?**

- (a) Only 1
- (b) 1 and 2
- (c) Only 3
- (d) 2 and 3

**Exp.** (a) Puthukkuli shawls are made by Todas of Nilgiri hills in Tamil Nadu. Locally called Pugur, meaning flower, the fine and intricate Toda embroidery is done by tribal men and women on shawls.

Sujani (also known as Sujini) is a form of embroidery originating from the Bhusura village of Bihar.

Uppada Jamdani Sari is a silk sari style woven in Uppada of East Godavari district in the Indian state of Andhra Pradesh.

**34.** Regarding Wood's Despatch, which of the following statements are true? [IAS 2018]

1. Grants-in-Aid system was introduced.
2. Establishment of universities was recommended.



and were conversant with all kinds of traditional arms and armour and had devised a full-fledged 'science of war'. The horse, which played a decisive role in the Aryan system of warfare, was not known to the Indus people. A few bones of horse and terracotta figure of a 'horse-like animal' have been unearthed from Surkotada (Gujarat) and still it has not been convincingly proved that the horse was employed by the Harappans. The Indus valley people knew the use of copper, bronze, silver and gold but not iron. On the other hand, some scholars claim that the horse was widely domesticated and used in India in the area covered by the Indus-Sarasvati (or Harappan) Civilisation, but this evidence remains unsubstantiated. At Surkotada and Lothal horse evidence has also been found. But, based on the above, to say that "there is no evidence of Indus Valley people having been aware of this animal" is wrong because there is no conclusive evidence that tells us whether they knew about horses, or whether they were aware of horses. We have insufficient evidence to claim anything about the connection between horses and Indus Valley.

**40. With reference to Manipuri Sankirtana, consider the following statements :** [IAS 2017]

1. It is a song and dance performance.
2. Cymbals are the only musical instruments used in the performance.
3. It is performed to narrate the life and deeds Lord Krishna.

**Which of the statements given above is/are correct?**

- (a) 1, 2 and 3 (b) 1 and 3 (c) 2 and 3 (d) Only 1

**Exp. (b)** Manipuri Sankirtana is a form of performing art involving ritual singing, drumming and dancing performed in the temples and domestic spaces in Manipur state in India. Through the performances which exhibit unparalleled religious devotion and energy, the performers narrate many stories of Krishna often moving the spectators to tears. Dances are very much based upon the cymbals (kartal or manjira) and the cylindrical drum known as Manipuri mridang or pung.

**41. Who among the following was/were associated with the introduction of Ryotwari Settlement in India during the British rule? [IAS 2017]**

1. Lord Cornwallis 2. Alexander Read 3. Thomas Munro

**Select the correct answer using the code given below :**

- (a) Only 1 (b) 1 and 3 (c) 2 and 3 (d) 1,2 and 3

**Exp. (c)** The Ryotwari system was devised by Capt. Alexander Read and Thomas Munro at the end of the 18th century. Lord Cornwallis was associated with Cornwallis Code of 1793.

**42. The Trade Disputes Act of 1929 provided for [IAS 2017]**

- (a) the participation of workers in the management of industries.
- (b) arbitrary powers to the management to quell industrial disputes.
- (c) an intervention by the British Court in the event of a 'trade dispute.'
- (d) a system of tribunals and a ban on strikes.

**Exp. (d)** One of the most objectionable features of the original text of Trade Disputes Act of 1929 as follows :

- Any Union may apply to the Registrar for registration as a recognised Union. On receipt of such application for registration, the Registrar shall forward a copy of the

application to the employer or employers concerned, and on receipt of a communication from such employer or employers to the effect that the Union has received recognition from them the Registrar shall proceed to register such union as a recognised Union.

- This clause would mean that no union would be registered unless the respective Union satisfied the employers.
- The Bill provides for the establishment of a permanent tribunal for Arbitration - the Industrial Court and contemplates making arbitration more and more the dominant method of settling disputes. The Conciliation proceedings are to last for a period of three to five months. No strikes can take place during this period

**43. Consider the following statements : [IAS 2017]**

1. The Factories Act, 1881 was passed with a view to fix the wages of industrial workers and to allow the workers to form trade unions.
2. NM Lokhande was a pioneer in organising the labour movement in British India.

**Which of the above statements is/are correct?**

- |                  |                     |
|------------------|---------------------|
| (a) Only 1       | (b) Only 2          |
| (c) Both 1 and 2 | (d) Neither 1 nor 2 |

**Exp. (b)** To improve the lot of the factory workers in towns, the first Factory Act was passed in 1881. The Act prohibited the employment of children under the age of seven, limited the number of working hours for children below the age of twelve and required that dangerous machinery should be fenced properly. The Act also made provision for one hour rest during the working period and four days leave in a month for the workers. Inspectors were appointed to supervise the implementation of these measures. Thus, for the first time the British government tried to improve the working conditions of labourers in factories.

NM Lokhande organised the first labour union in India at Bombay in 1880 and named it Bombay Mill Hand Society. He was the first labour representative at factory commission.

**44. With reference to Indian freedom struggle, consider the following events: [IAS 2017]**

1. Mutiny in Royal Indian Navy
2. Quit India Movement launched
3. Second Round Table Conference

**What is the correct chronological sequence of the above events?**

- |           |           |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| (a) 1-2-3 | (b) 2-1-3 | (c) 3-2-1 | (d) 3-1-2 |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|

**Exp. (c)** Mutiny of Royal Indian Navy broke in February, 1946 at Mumbai on Talwar ship and in Karachi at Hindustan ship. Quit India Movement is launched on August 9, 1942 at Bombay.

Second Round Table conference held in London in which Mahatma Gandhi participated as representative of Congress held in 1931.

**45. Which one of the following was a very important seaport in the Kakatiya kingdom? [IAS 2017]**

- |                                  |               |
|----------------------------------|---------------|
| (a) Kakinada                     | (b) Motupalli |
| (c) Machilipatnam (Masulipatnam) | (d) Nelluru   |

**Exp. (b)** The Kakatiya dynasty was a South Indian dynasty whose capital was Orugallu, now known as Warangal. It was eventually conquered by the Delhi Sultanate.



**54. Satya Shodhak Samaj organised**

[IAS 2016]

- (a) a movement for upliftment of tribals in Bihar.
- (b) a temple-entry movement in Gujarat.
- (c) an anti-caste movement in Maharashtra.
- (d) a peasant movement in Punjab.

**Exp.** (c) Satya Shodhak Samaj was established by Jyotirao Phule in 1873. The main objective of the group was to liberate the social states of Shudra and untouchable castes. Through his writings and activities, Mahatma Phule always condemned caste hierarchy and he began this with his attach on the Vedas. Through Satya Shodhak Samaj, he also preached that there is no requirement of intermediary such as priest or a perceptor to offer his prayer to God.

**55. The Montague-Chelmsford Proposals were related to**

- |                                      |            |
|--------------------------------------|------------|
| (a) social reforms                   | [IAS 2016] |
| (b) educational reforms              |            |
| (c) reforms in police administration |            |
| (d) constitutional reforms           |            |

**Exp.** (d) The Montague-Chelmsford proposals lead to initiation of Government of India Act, 1919. They proposed constitutional reforms with following salient features

1. Diarchy was introduced in provinces. The provinces subjects were divided into two groups. One was reserved and another transferred.
2. It proposed bicameral in Central Legislature.
3. The Act provided for establishment of a Public Service Commission in India for the first time.

**56. What was the main reason for the split in the Indian National Congress at Surat in 1907?** [IAS 2016]

- (a) Introduction of communalism into Indian politics by Lord Minto
- (b) Extremists' lack of faith in the capacity of the moderates to negotiate with the British Government
- (c) Foundation of Muslim League
- (d) Aurobindo Ghosh's inability to be elected as the President of the Indian National Congress

**Exp.** (b) Moderates believed in the policy of settlement of minor issue with the government by deliberations. But the extremists believed in agitation, strikes and boycotts to force their demands. Some nationalists led by Lokmanya Tilak agitated against the moderate behaviour of Congress against British rule. This led to a split in the Congress in 1907 which is known as Surat split of 1907.

**57. The plan of Sir Stafford Cripps envisaged that after the Second World War** [IAS 2016]

- (a) India should be granted complete Independence.
- (b) India should be partitioned into two before granting Independence.
- (c) India should be made a Republic with the condition that she will join the Commonwealth.
- (d) India should be given Dominion status.

**Exp.** (d) In March 1942, a mission headed by Stafford Cripps was sent to India with constitutional proposals to seek Indian support for the Second World War. Sir Stafford Cripps was a senior left-wing politician and government minister in the war cabinet of Prime Minister Winston Churchill. Cripps worked to keep India loyal to the British war effort in exchange for a promise of full self-government after the war. Cripps promised to give dominion status after the war as well as elections to be held after the war.

**58. The 'Swadeshi' and 'Boycott' were adopted as methods of struggle for the first time during the** [IAS 2016]

- (a) agitation against the Partition of Bengal
- (b) Home Rule Movement
- (c) Non-Cooperation Movement
- (d) visit of the Simon Commission to India

**Exp.** (a) The Swadeshi and Boycott movements were started to oppose the partition of Bengal. The idea of boycott was started after the failure of peaceful campaigns and petitions. Rabindranath Tagore and Ramendra called for the observance of Raksha Bandhan and Arandhan on the day of the partition. 'Swadeshi' means of one's own country, according to this people should use goods produced within the country. This was led by Lala Lajpat Rai, Bipin Chandra Pal and Bal Gangadhar Tilak.

**59. Which one of the following books of ancient India has the love story of the son of the founder of Sunga dynasty?** [IAS 2016]

- |                       |                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| (a) Swapnavasavadatta | (b) Malavikagnimitra |
| (c) Meghadoota        | (d) Ratnavali        |

**Exp.** (b) Malavikagnimitra is a Sanskrit play by Kalidasa. It is known to be his first play. The play tells the story of the love of Agnimitra, the Shunga emperor at Vidisha, for the beautiful hand-maiden of his chief queen. He falls in love with the picture of an exiled servant girl named Malavika.

When the queen discovers her husband's passion for this girl, she becomes infuriated and has Malavika imprisoned but as fate would have it, in the end she is discovered to be of royal birth and is accepted as one of his queens.

**60. With reference to the cultural history of India, the memorising of chronicles, dynastic histories and epic tales was the profession of who of the following?** [IAS 2016]

- |                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| (a) Shramana    | (b) Parivraajaka |
| (c) Agrahaarika | (d) Maagadha     |

**Exp.** (d) Maagadha is supposed to be a courtier with these roles to perform. The memorising of chronicles, dynastic histories or epic tales was the work of a different group of people, the Sutas and Magadhas.

During the first stage (from 4th century BC to the 4th century AD), the task of collecting information and presenting it in literary form was the special task assigned to the Sutas and Maagadhas (bards and cronical), who were the descendants of priestly families of the Vedic period.

**61. Which of the following kingdoms were associated with the life of the Buddha?** [IAS 2015]

- |           |             |           |            |
|-----------|-------------|-----------|------------|
| 1. Avanti | 2. Gandhara | 3. Kosala | 4. Magadha |
|-----------|-------------|-----------|------------|

**Select the correct answer using the codes given below**

- |                |             |                |             |
|----------------|-------------|----------------|-------------|
| (a) 1, 2 and 3 | (b) 2 and 3 | (c) 1, 3 and 4 | (d) 3 and 4 |
|----------------|-------------|----------------|-------------|

**Exp.** (d) Buddha gained Enlightenment at Gaya (now called Bodh Gaya) which came under Magadha (now present day Bihar).

During the time of Buddha, the king of Avanti was Chandpajjota. He sent his son Mahakacchana alongwith seven others to invite Buddha to Avanti. There is no direct link between Gandhara and Buddha's life although Gandhara later flourished as a centre of Buddhist art and architecture.

Hence, option (d) is correct.

**62.** With reference to Indian history, which of the following is/are the essential element/elements of the Feudal system? [IAS 2015]

1. A very strong centralised political authority and a very weak provincial or local political authority.
2. Emergence of administrative structure based on control and possession of land.t
3. Creation of lord-vassal relationship between the feudal lord and his overlord.

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

- (a) 1 and 2    (b) 2 and 3    (c) Only 3    (d) All of these

**Exp. (b)** Statement 1 is false. In feudalism, there is no or a weak central authority. The term feudal can therefore be applied to any state that exists as a collection of significantly autonomous regions. Statements 2 and 3 are correct.

Hence, option (b) is correct

**63.** Who of the following was/were economic critic/critics of colonialism in India? [IAS 2015]

1. Dadabhai Naoroji 2. G Subramania Iyer 3. RC Dutt

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

- (a) Only 1    (b) 1 and 2    (c) 2 and 3    (d) All of these

**Exp. (d)** Dadabhai Naoroji, RC Dutt, Ranade, Gokhale, G Subramania Iyer, were among those who grounded Indian nationalism firmly on the foundation of anti-imperialism by fashioning the world's first economic critique of colonialism, before Hobson and Lenin. Subramania Iyer was known for his fiery articles with plenty of sting.

Hence, option (d) is correct.

**64.** Who of the following organised a march on the Tanjore coast to break the Salt Law in April, 1930?

- (a) VO Chidambaram Pillai    (b) C Rajagopalachari  
 (c) K Kamaraj    (d) Annie Besant [IAS 2015]

**Exp. (b)** Spread of Salt Disobedience once the way was cleared by Gandhi's ritual at Dandi, defiance of the salt laws started all over the country. In Tamil Nadu (Tanjore Coast), C Rajagopalachari led a march from Tiruchirapally to Vedranniyam. In Malabar, K Kelappan led a march from Calicut to Poyannur, in Assam, Satyagrahis walked from Sylhet to Noakhali (Bengal) to make salt.

**65.** Consider the following statements [IAS 2015]

1. The first woman President of the Indian National Congress was Sarojini Naidu.
2. The first Muslim President of the Indian National Congress was Badruddin Tyabji.

Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?

- (a) Only 1    (b) Only 2  
 (c) Both 1 and 2    (d) Neither 1 nor 2

**Exp. (b)** Annie Besant was the first woman President of Indian National Congress. She presided over the 1917 Calcutta Session of the Indian National Congress. Annie Besant was of Irish origin and was one of the few foreigners, who played a significant role in the Indian freedom movement. Badruddin Tyabji was an Indian lawyer who served as the third Indian and first Muslim President of the Indian National Congress.

Hence, option (b) is correct.

**66.** The Government of India Act of 1919 clearly defined

- (a) the separation of power between the Judiciary and the Legislature
- (b) the jurisdiction of the Central and Provincial Governments

- (c) the power of the Secretary of State for India and the Viceroy  
 (d) None of the above

[IAS 2015]

**Exp. (b)** Montague-Chelmsford reform and Government of India Act, 1919 in 1918, Edwin Montague, the Secretary of State and Lord Chelmsford, the Viceroy, produced their scheme of constitutional reforms. These reforms, popularly known as Montague-Chelmsford reforms, led to the enactment of Government of India Act of 1919.

**67.** Which reference to the Cabinet Mission, which of the following statements is/are correct? [IAS 2015]

1. It recommended a Federal Government.
2. It enlarged the powers of the Indian courts.
3. It provided for more Indians in the ICS.

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

- (a) Only 1    (b) 2 and 3    (c) 1 and 3    (d) None of these

**Exp. (a)** The Cabinet Mission arrived on 24th March, 1946. The objective of this mission was to devise a machinery to draw up the Constitution of Independent India and make arrangements for Interim Government. Thus, the mission was like a declaration of India's independence. The mission spent some 3 weeks to discuss with the leaders of various political parties, but could not arrive at any agreed solution. So, finally it announced its own recommendations on 16th May, 1946. The Cabinet Mission Plan of 1946 proposed that there shall be a Union of India which was to be empowered to deal with the Defense, Foreign Affairs and Communications.

**68.** Which one of the following movements has contributed to a split in the Indian National Congress resulting in the emergence of 'moderates' and 'extremists'? [IAS 2015]

- (a) Swadeshi movement    (b) Quit India movement  
 (c) Non-Cooperation movement  
 (d) Civil Disobedience movement

**Exp. (a)** Surat Split is mainly known for separation of Congress partymen into moderates and extremists at the Surat Session of Congress in 26th December, 1907. This was the time of Swadeshi movement.

**69.** Kalamkari painting refers to

[IAS 2015]

- (a) a hand-painted cotton textile in South India  
 (b) a handmade drawing on bamboo handicrafts in North-East India  
 (c) a block-painted woollen cloth in Western Himalayan region of India  
 (d) a hand-painted decorative silk cloth in North-Western India

**Exp. (a)** The Kalamkari tradition chiefly consists of scenes from Hindu mythology. Figures of deities with rich border embellishments were created for the temples.

**70.** In a particular region in India, the local people train the roots of living trees into robust bridges across the streams. As the time passes, these bridges become stronger. These unique 'living root bridges' are found in

- (a) Meghalaya    (b) Himachal Pradesh  
 (c) Jharkhand    (d) Tamil Nadu [IAS 2015]

**Exp. (a)** Meghalaya's double-decker and single-decker root bridges are unique in the world and are a sight to behold. The bridges are tangles of massive thick roots, which have been intermingled to form a bridge that can hold several people at a time.

# PREVIOUS YEARS' QUESTIONS

## SOLVED PAPERS

### Set 2

- 1.** With reference to the cultural history of India, the term 'Panchayatan' refers to [IAS 2014]

- (a) an assembly of village elders
- (b) a religious sect
- (c) a style of temple construction
- (d) an administrative functionary

**Exp.** (c) Panchayatan is a style of temple construction. A Panchayatan temple has four subordinate shrines on four corners and the main shrine is in the center of the podium, which comprises their base. Examples of Panchayatan temples are Kandariya Mahadeva temple in Khajuraho, Brahmeshwara temple in Bhubaneswara and Pashavatara temple in Deogarh.

- 2.** Which one of the following pairs does not form part of the six systems of Indian philosophy? [IAS 2014]

- (a) Mimamsa and Vedanta
- (b) Nyaya and Vaishesika
- (c) Lokayata and Kapalika
- (d) Samkhya and Yoga

**Exp.** (c) The six schools of Indian philosophy are as follows  
(i) Samkhya dadaistic philosophy that believes in the existence of conscious Porsche and unconscious Prakrti.  
(ii) Nyaya School of Logic and a foundation for philosophical reasoning and debate.  
(iii) Vaishesika deals with the physics and chemistry of the body and the universe.  
(iv) It prescribes asanas, pranayama, pratyahara, dharna, dhyana for attainment of salvation.  
(v) Mimamsa provides method for interpreting and understanding Veda.  
(vi) Vedanta taught and practiced by sages of Vedas and Upanishads.  
While the term Lokayata deltas school of Indian materialism and Kapalika refer to non-puranic tantric form of Shaivism.

- 3.** The national motto of India, 'Satyameva Jayate' inscribed below the Emblem of India is taken from [IAS 2014]

- (a) Katha upanishad
- (b) Chandogya upanishad
- (c) Aitareya upanishad
- (d) Mundaka upanishad

**Exp.** (d) Satyameva Jayate which means 'truth alone triumphs' is a mantra from Mundaka upanishad which is to be inscribed below the Emblem of India.

- 4.** In medieval India, the designations 'Mahattara' and 'Pattakila' were used for [IAS 2014]

- (a) military officers
- (b) village headmen
- (c) specialists in Vedic rituals
- (d) chiefs of craft guilds

**Exp.** (b) In medieval inscriptions, village officials are generally referred to as Mahattara and the village headmen were referred as Pattakila or patel.

- 5.** Annie Besant was [IAS 2013]

- 1. responsible for starting the Home Rule movement.
- 2. the founder of the Theosophical society.
- 3. once the President of the Indian National Congress.

**Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?**

- (a) Only 1
- (b) 2 and 3
- (c) 1 and 3
- (d) All of these

**Exp.** (c) Annie Besant was associated with the Theosophical Society, she was not founder. It was founded by Madame Blavatsky and Henry Olcott. Thus, Statement 2 is incorrect. Statement 3 is correct that Annie Besant became the first woman President of the Indian National Congress in the 1917, Calcutta session. Statement 1 is also correct, Annie Besant launched the Home Rule league in India on the lines of the Irish Home Rule leagues alongwith Tilak.

- 6.** The Chinese traveller Yuan Chwang (Hiuen Tsang), who visited India recorded the general conditions and culture of India at that time. In this context, which of the following statement(s) is/are correct? [IAS 2013]

- 1. The roads and river-routes were completely immune from robbery.
- 2. As regards punishment for offences ordeals by fire, water and poison were the instruments for determining the innocence or guilt of a person.
- 3. The tradesmen had to pay duties at ferries and barrier stations.

**Select the correct answer using the codes given below**

- (a) Only 1
- (b) 2 and 3
- (c) 1 and 3
- (d) All of these

**Exp.** (b) Hiuen Tsang stayed in India for almost 15 years and visited almost every province of the country. Thus, statement 1 is incorrect. Hiuen Tsang mentions that he was robbed many times during his travels. Statement 2 is correct. Punishment for crime was very harsh during the times. Ordeals by fire, water and poison were used to determine (the innocence or guilt of a person). Statement 3 is also correct. Trade flourished during Harsha's rule and tradesmen moved around freely bartering their goods. Small amount of duties had to be paid by tradesmen at ferries and barrier stations.

**7.** Consider the following statements with reference to the history of Indian rock-cut architecture. [IAS 2013]

1. The caves at Badami are the oldest surviving rock-cut caves India.
2. The Barabar rock-cut caves were originally made for Ajivikas by Emperor Chandragupta Maurya.
3. At Ellora, caves were made for different faiths.

**Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?**

- |            |                      |
|------------|----------------------|
| (a) Only 1 | (b) 2 and 3          |
| (c) Only 3 | (d) All of the above |

**Exp.** (c) The oldest caves in India are the Barabar rock-cut caves and not the Badami so Statement 1 is incorrect. The Barabar caves were built during the 3rd century BC and belong to the period of Ashoka and his son Dasaratha. These caves were used by the ascetics of the Ajivika sect. Thus, Statement 2 is also incorrect. Statement 3 is correct. The caves at Ellora depict Hinduism, Jainism and Buddhism. On the other hand, the caves at Ajanta are mostly Buddhist.

**8.** Which of the following is/are the principal feature(s) of the Government of Indian Act, 1919? [IAS 2012]

1. Introduction of dyarchy in the executive government of the provinces.
2. Introduction of separate communal electorates for Muslims.
3. Devolution of legislative authority by the centre to the provinces.

**Select the correct answer using the codes given below**

- |             |                      |
|-------------|----------------------|
| (a) Only 1  | (b) 2 and 3          |
| (c) 1 and 3 | (d) All of the above |

**Exp.** (c) The Government of Indian Act, 1919, also known as Montague-Chelmsford reforms introduced dyarchy in the executive government of the provinces and devolved the legislative authority by the centre to the provinces, but the separate communal electorate was introduced by Government of Indian Act, 1909.

**9.** During Indian freedom struggle, the National Social conference was formed. What was the reason for its formation? [IAS 2012]

- (a) Different social reform groups or organisations of Bengal region united to form a single body to discuss the issues of larger interest and to prepare appropriate petitions/representations to the government
- (b) Indian National Congress did not want to include social reforms in its deliberations and decided to form a separate body for such a purpose
- (c) Behramji Malabari and MG Ranade decided to bring together all the social reform groups of the country under one organisation
- (d) None of the above

**Exp.** (b) The Statement 1 is incorrect because petitions/representations were the method adopted by moderates for political gain. The Statement 2 is correct because the organisers of the Congress felt that the congress platform should be devoted to political topics only and so it was decided to inaugurate the National Social conference as a separate movement. The Statement 3 is incorrect because MG Ranade was assisted by R Raghunath Rao and together they founded the National Social conference which held its first session in 1887.

**10.** Which of the following parties were established by Dr BR Ambedkar? [IAS 2012]

1. The Peasants and Workers Party of India.
2. All India Scheduled Castes federation.
3. The Independent Labour party.

**Select the correct answer using the codes given below**

- |             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| (a) 1 and 2 | (b) 2 and 3      |
| (c) 1 and 3 | (d) All of these |

**Exp.** (b) Dr Ambedkar founded the Independent Labour party in 1936. This party won in the 1937 elections to the Constituent assembly. Further, All India Scheduled Castes federation was founded by him in a national convention of the Scheduled Castes held at Nagpur. It was the first all Indian Political party, which comprised exclusively the Scheduled Castes. The Peasants and Workers Party of India was founded in 1949. It was not founded by Ambedkar.

**11.** Mahatma Gandhi undertook fast unto death in 1932, mainly because [IAS 2012]

- (a) Round Table conference failed to satisfy Indian political aspirations
- (b) Congress and Muslim league had differences of opinion
- (c) Ramsay MacDonald announced the communal award
- (d) None of the above

**Exp.** (c) Ramsay MacDonald announced the communal award on 17th August, 1932, reserving the seats for 'depressed classes' as well as Muslims and Sikhs. Gandhiji was deeply grieved by this and declared fast unto death on the next day to protest this award. He believed that the award aimed to divide Indian on communal basis.

**12.** Consider the following statements with reference to Ryotwari settlement [IAS 2012]

1. The rent was paid directly by the peasants to the government.
2. The government gave Pattas to the Ryots.
3. The lands were surveyed and assessed before being taxed.

**Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?**

- |                      |                       |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| (a) Only 1           | (b) Only 2            |
| (c) All of the above | (d) None of the above |

**Exp.** (c) The Ryotwari settlement was introduced in Bombay and Madras by the Viceroy Munro on the recommendation of Charlet Reed. In this, the direct settlement was made between the government and the Ryot (peasant/cultivators). Pattas were issued to the Ryots on obtaining the annual rents. The land revenue was assessed according to the fertility of the soil and was mostly collected in cash.

**13.** The most effective contribution made by Dadabhai Naoroji to the cause of Indian National movement was that he [IAS 2012]

1. exposed the economic exploitation of India by the British.
2. interpreted the ancient Indian texts and restored the self-confidence of Indians.
3. stressed the need for eradication of all the social evils before anything else.

**Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?**

- |             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| (a) Only 1  | (b) 2 and 3      |
| (c) 1 and 3 | (d) All of these |

**Exp. (a)** Dadabhai Naoroji was the first Indian to show that India was being drained of its wealth under the British rule and thus was fast succumbing to poverty. In 1876, he published a paper titled *Poverty of India* — a prelude to 'Poverty and UnBritish Rule in India', published in 1901. The second statement is wrong and WRT the third one, Naoroji was a great social reformer who worked for the upliftment of women, but he also actively participated in the Indian freedom struggle.

**14.** With reference to Dhrupad, one of the major traditions of India that has been kept alive for centuries, which of the following statements are correct? [IAS 2012]

1. Dhrupad originated and developed in the Rajput kingdoms during the Mughal period.
2. Dhrupad is primarily a devotional and spiritual music.
3. Dhrupad Alap uses Sanskrit syllables from Mantras.

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

- |                      |                       |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| (a) 1 and 2          | (b) 2 and 3           |
| (c) All of the above | (d) None of the above |

**Exp. (b)** Dhrupad is the oldest surviving form of Indian classical music and traces its origin to the chanting of Vedic hymns and mantras during the Vedic age. Most dhrupads are religious in nature praising Hindu Gods (originally sung in temples), although some texts praise the kings. A Dhrupad performance starts with the alap which is a slow and elaborate development of a Raga (mode).

**15.** How do you distinguish between Kuchipudi and Bharatanatyam dances? [IAS 2012]

1. Dancers occasionally speaking dialogues is found in Kuchipudi dance, but not in Bharatanatyam.
2. Dancing on the brass plate by keeping the feet on its edges is a feature of Bharatanatyam, but Kuchipudi dance does not have such a form of movements.

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

- |                  |                     |
|------------------|---------------------|
| (a) Only 1       | (b) Only 2          |
| (c) Both 1 and 2 | (d) Neither 1 nor 2 |

**Exp. (a)** Kuchipudi presents more realistic acting occasionally including dialogues spoken by the dancers. Another feature of the Kuchipudi is Tara in which the performer dances on edges of a brass plate, executing complicated rhythmic patterns, dexterity. So, the feature described in second statement is of Kuchipudi not Bharatanatyam.

**16.** With reference to the religious history of medieval India, the Sufi mystics were known to pursue which of the following practices? [IAS 2012]

1. Meditation and control of breath.
2. Severe ascetic exercises in a lonely place.
3. Recitation of holy songs to arouse a state of ecstasy in their audience.

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

- |             |             |            |                  |
|-------------|-------------|------------|------------------|
| (a) 1 and 2 | (b) 2 and 3 | (c) Only 3 | (d) All of these |
|-------------|-------------|------------|------------------|

**Exp. (d)** Shah Wali Ullah divides into four epochs. The first epoch with the prophet. The Sufis were ascetics. In the second epoch, Sufis lived in a state of continued meditation and contemplation. The last and fourth epoch coincides with the India. Sufis of this period recited holy songs.

**17.** The Rowlatt act aimed at

[IAS 2012]

- (a) compulsory economic support to war efforts
- (b) imprisonment without trial and summary procedures for trial
- (c) suppression of the Khilafat movement
- (d) imposition of restrictions on freedom of the press

**Exp. (b)** A Sedition committee was constituted under Justice Rowlatt in 1918. On its recommendations Rowlatt Act, 1919 was passed, which gave unbridled powers to the government to arrest and imprison the suspects without trial.

**18.** The Lahore Session of the Indian National Congress (1929) is very important in history, because [IAS 2012]

1. the Congress passed a resolution demanding complete independence.
2. the rift between the extremists and moderates was resolved in that session.
3. a resolution was passed rejecting the Two-Nation theory in that session.

Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?

- |             |                   |
|-------------|-------------------|
| (a) Only 1  | (b) 2 and 3       |
| (c) 1 and 3 | (d) None of these |

**Exp. (a)** The Annual Session of INC held at Lahore in December, 1929 under the Presidentship of Jawaharlal Nehru, passed a resolution declaring 'Poorna Swaraj' (complete independence) be the goal of the Indian National movement.

**19.** Lord Buddha's image is sometimes shown with the hand gesture called 'Bhumisparsha Mudra'. It symbolises

[IAS 2012]

- (a) Buddha's calling of the Earth to watch over Mara and to prevent Mara from disturbing his meditation
- (b) Buddha's calling of the Earth to witness his purity and chastity despite the temptations of Mara
- (c) Buddha's reminder to his followers that they all arise from the Earth and finally dissolve into the Earth and thus this life is transitory
- (d) Both 'a' and 'b'

**Exp. (b)** Among Buddhist symbols, Gautam Buddha used the Bhumisparsha gesture to summon the Earth Goddess, Sthavara. This was the gesture to his attainment of Buddhahood. This gesture signifies the state of enlightenment after meditating under the Bodhi tree for four weeks and with standing all the temptations put before him by Mara, the God of evil.

**20.** The religion of early Vedic Aryans was primarily of

- (a) bhakti
- (b) image worship and Yajnas
- (c) worship of nature and Yajnas
- (d) worship of nature and Bhakti

[IAS 2012]

**Exp. (c)** Early Vedic Aryans worshipped different forms of nature such as Indra and Fire God and performed Yajnas to impress them.

**21.** Which of the following statements is/are correct regarding Brahmo Samaj? [IAS 2012]

1. It opposed idolatry.
2. It denied the need for a priestly class for interpreting the religious texts.
3. It popularised the doctrine that the Vedas are infallible.

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

- (a) Only 1      (b) 1 and 2      (c) Only 3      (d) All of these

**Exp. (b)** Brahmo Samaj was established by Raja Ram Mohan Roy in 1830. The Samaj opposed idolatry the need for a priestly class for interpreting the religious texts and discarded the infallibility of the Vedas. Devendranath Tagore considered Upanishad as infallible and published some of its portions as Brahmo Dharma.

**22.** With reference to the guilds (Shreni) of ancient India that played a very important role in the country's economy, which of the following statements is /are correct?

[IAS 2012]

1. Every guild was registered with the central authority of the state and the king was the chief administrative authority on them.
2. The wages, rules of work, standards and prices were fixed by the guild.
3. The guild had judicial powers over its own members.

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

- (a) 1 and 2      (b) Only 3  
 (c) 2 and 3      (d) All of the above

**Exp. (c)** Kautilya mentions in Arthashastra regarding the methods devised for the regulation of the guilds. It includes registration of the guilds, laying down the checks and balances on the activities of the artisans, wages, rules of work and appointment of special tribunal to administer the laws. But, the king was not the chief administrative authority to the guild, rather a guild master was selected. The post was sometimes hereditary.

**23.** With reference to the scientific progress of ancient India, which of the statements given below are correct?

[IAS 2012]

1. Different kinds of specialised surgical instruments were in common use by AD 1st century.
2. Transplant of internal organs in the human body had begun by the beginning of AD 3rd century.
3. The Concept of Sine of an Angle was known in AD 5th century.
4. The Concept of Cyclic Quadrilaterals was known in AD 7th century.

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

- (a) 1 and 2      (b) 3 and 4      (c) 1, 3 and 4      (d) All of these

**Exp. (c)** Sushruta (6th century BC) was a surgeon of ancient India. He is known as the *Father of Surgery* and his book, *Sushruta Samhita*, describes about around 120 surgical instruments and 300 surgical procedures. So, by AD 1st century, these instruments were in common use. The Statement 2 is wrong because his book *Sushruta Samhita* refers to the plastic surgery of nose, uniting of bowel and several other operations. The Statement 3 refers to the Surya Siddhanta given by Aryabhata in AD 5th century. The Concept of Cyclic Quadrilateral was developed by Brahmagupta in AD 7th century.

**24.** With reference to the history of ancient India, which of the following was/were common to both Buddhism and Jainism?

[IAS 2012]

1. Avoidance of extremities of penance and enjoyment.
2. Indifference to the authority of the Vedas.

3. Denial of efficacy of rituals.

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

- (a) Only      (b) 2 and 3  
 (c) 1 and 3      (d) All of these

**Exp. (b)** Both Jainism and Buddhism rejected the authority of the Vedas and the Vedic priest. They repudiated the efficacy of ceremonies and rituals, condemned animal sacrifices and ignored God.

**25.** The Nagara, the Dravida and the Vesara are the [IAS 2012]

- (a) three main racial groups of the Indian sub-continent
- (b) three main linguistic divisions into which the languages of India can be classified
- (c) three main styles of Indian temple architecture
- (d) three main musical Gharanas prevalent in India

**Exp. (c)** The Nagara style developed in North India in AD 5th century. It is characterised by beehive shaped tower. e.g. Jagadamba temple at Khajuraho. The Dravid or South Indian style developed from AD 7th century. Here, the tower consisted of progressively smaller storeys of pavilions. e.g. Hoysala temple. Vesara type of architecture is the combination of the other two styles. Gadag is another style of temple architecture.

**26.** The Congress ministries resigned in the seven provinces in 1939, because [IAS 2012]

- (a) the Congress could not form ministries in the other four provinces
- (b) emergence of a left wing in the Congress made the working of the ministries impossible
- (c) there were widespread communal disturbances in their provinces
- (d) None of the above

**Exp. (d)** The Congress ministries resigned on 22nd December, 1939, in the wake of World War II as the Viceroy declared India also a belligerent country without consulting the Indian leaders.

**27.** The demand of the Tebhaga Peasant movement in Bengal was for [IAS 2012]

- (a) the reduction of the share of the landlords from one-half of crop to one-third
- (b) the grant of ownership of land to peasants as they were the actual cultivators of the land
- (c) the uprooting of Zamindar system and the end of serfdom
- (d) writing off all peasant debts

**Exp. (a)** The Tebhaga movement was initiated in Bengal in 1946 by the-Bengal Provincial kisan sabha to implement the Floud commission recommendation, which asked for sharecroppers to give one-third of their harvest to the owner instead of the one-half which they were paying at that time.

**28.** The 'Dharma' and 'Rita' depict a central idea of ancient Vedic Civilisation of India. In this context, consider the following statements [IAS 2011]

1. 'Dharma' was a conception of obligations and of the discharge of one's duties to oneself and to others.
2. 'Rita' was the fundamental moral law governing the functioning of the universe and all it contained.

**Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?**

- (a) Only 1
- (b) Only 2
- (c) Both 1 and 2
- (d) Neither 1 nor 2

**Exp.** (c) Derived from the Sanskrit root *dhr*, 'sustain, support, uphold,' *dharma* has a wide range of meaning: it is one's duty, responsibility, imperative and thereby 'moral obligation' it is that which is right, virtuous, meritorious and accordingly 'ethical'. The Vedic notion of *rita* means the universal harmony in which all things in the world have a proper place and function or the fundamental moral law, governing the functioning of the universe and all it contained.

**29. The Jain philosophy holds that the world is created and maintained by** [IAS 2011]

- (a) universal law
- (b) universal truth
- (c) universal faith
- (d) universal soul

**Exp.** (d) Jain philosophy emphasises over liberation of souls and its transmigration. It believes in a universal soul and seeks reunification of mortal soul with the immortal. However, it also emphasises over universal truth through, which it seeks to understand the reality. Hence, option (d) is more suitable in this case.

**30. What was the purpose with which Sir William Wedderburn and WS Caine had set-up the Indian Parliamentary committee in 1893?** [IAS 2011]

- (a) To agitate for Indian political reforms in the house of commons
- (b) To campaign for the entry of Indians into the imperial judiciary
- (c) To facilitate a discussion on India's independence in the British Parliament
- (d) To agitate for the entry of eminent Indians into the British Parliament

**Exp.** (a) Sir William Wedderburn (1838-1918) was a Scottish civil servant in India and a politician. William Sproston Caine (1842-1903) was a British politician. Both these politicians together had set-up the Indian Parliamentary committee in 1893, to mobilise support for political reforms in India, among the house of commons members.

**31. Mahatma Gandhi said that some of his deepest convictions were reflected in a book titled, 'Unto this Last' and the book transformed his life. What was the message from the book that transformed Mahatma Gandhi?**

- (a) Uplifting the oppressed and poor is the moral responsibility of an educated man
- (b) The good of individual is contained in the good of all
- (c) The life of celibacy and spiritual pursuit are essential for a noble life
- (d) All of the above

[IAS 2011]

**Exp.** (b) Only this aspect of Leo Tolstoy thought was borrowed by Gandhi.

**32. With reference to Indian freedom struggle, Usha Mehta is well known for** [IAS 2011]

- (a) running the secret Congress Radio in the wake of Quit India movement
- (b) participating in the Second Round Table conference

- (c) leading a contingent of Indian National Army
- (d) assisting in the formation of Interim Government under Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru

**Exp.** (a) Usha Mehta (1920-2000) was a Gandhian and freedom fighter of India. She is remembered for organising the Secret Congress Radio, an underground radio station, which functioned for few months during the Quit India movement of 1942.

**33. The tendency for increased litigation was visible after the introduction of the Land Settlement System of Lord Cornwallis in 1793. The reason for this is normally traced to which of the following provisions?** [IAS 2011]

- (a) Making Zamindar's position stronger vis-a-vis the ryot
- (b) Making East India company an overlord of Zamindars
- (c) Making judicial system more efficient
- (d) None of the above

**Exp.** (b) The permanent settlement gave formal land ownership titles to zamindars, which could be transferred to others if he failed to return revenue to the company. This formalisation of land titles and the consequent overlordship of the British made a flurry of legal petitions.

**34. Which one of the following observations is incorrect about the Quit India Movement of 1942?** [IAS 2011]

- (a) It was a non-violent movement
- (b) It was led by Mahatma Gandhi
- (c) It was a spontaneous movement
- (d) It did not attract the labour class in general

**Exp.** (d) Indeed, a majority of the Quit India movement was carried by the labour class as they agitated through bandhs and hartals.

**35. Which amongst the following provided a common factor for tribal insurrection in India in the 19th century?**

- (a) Introduction of a new system of land revenue and taxation of tribal products
- (b) Influence of foreign religious missionaries in tribal areas
- (c) Rise of a large number of moneylenders, traders and revenue farmers as middlemen in tribal areas
- (d) The complete disruption of the old agrarian order of the tribal communities

[IAS 2011]

**Exp.** (c) In tribal areas, greedy moneylenders, traders and land grabbers penetrated into tribal areas and exploited the simple, illiterate people whom law and administration did not protest.

**36. India maintained its early cultural contacts and trade links with South-East Asia across the Bay of Bengal. For this pre-eminence of early maritime history of Bay of Bengal, which of the following could be the most convincing explanation/explanations?** [IAS 2011]

- (a) As compared to other countries, India had a better ship building technology in ancient and medieval times
- (b) The rulers of Southern India always patronised traders, Brahmin priests and Buddhist monks in this context
- (c) Monsoon winds across the Bay of Bengal facilitated sea voyages
- (d) Both 'a' and 'b'

**Exp.** (d) Indian shipping industry was well established both in the ancient and medieval times. The priests and monks, who flew to South-East Asia to preach and later settled there helped in bridging contacts between the hosts and Indian rulers who patronised them.

**37.** With reference to the period of colonial rule in India, home charges formed an important part of drain of wealth from India. Which of the following funds constituted home charges? [IAS 2011]

1. Funds used to support the Indian office in London.
2. Funds used to pay salaries and pensions of British personnel engaged in India.
3. Funds used for waging wars outside India by the British.

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

- (a) Only 1      (b) 1 and 2      (c) 2 and 3      (d) All of these

**Exp. (d)** All wars waged in defence of India was put under home charges. In fact, the suppression of the 1857 Revolt itself was put under the home charges. Salaries and expenses regarding to Indian offices were of course put under home charges to be paid by Indians.

**38.** Which one of the following pairs of countries fought wars over a region called Ogaden? [IAS 2010]

- (a) Eritrea and Sudan      (b) Ethiopia and Somalia  
 (c) Kenya and Somalia      (d) Ethiopia and Sudan

**Exp. (b)** The Ogaden war was a conventional conflict between Somalia and Ethiopia in 1977 and 1978 over the Ogaden region of Ethiopia.

**39.** Consider the following statements [IAS 2010]

1. The 'Bombay Manifesto' signed in 1936 openly opposed the preaching of socialist ideals.
2. It evoked support from a large section of business community from all across India.

Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?

- (a) Only 1      (b) Only 2  
 (c) Both 1 and 2      (d) Neither 1 nor 2

**Exp. (a)** The 'Bombay Manifesto' signed in 1936 by twenty-one Bombay businessmen, contained an open indictment of Nehru's preaching of socialist ideals, which were deemed prejudicial to private property and to the peace and prosperity of the country.

**40.** For the Karachi Session of Indian National Congress in 1931 presided over by Sardar Patel, who drafted the Resolution on Fundamental Rights and Economic Programme? [IAS 2010]

- (a) Mahatma Gandhi      (b) Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru  
 (c) Dr Rajendra Prasad      (d) Dr BR Ambedkar

**Exp. (b)** Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel presided over the Karachi session of Indian National Congress in 1931. The following resolutions were adopted the session:

1. Fundamental Rights and Economic Plan programme were formulated by Jawaharlal Nehru and adopted in the session.
2. It admitted Gandhi-Irwin pact as Gandhi was allowed to attend the Second Round Table conference in London.

**41.** Why did Buddhism start declining in India in the early medieval times? [IAS 2010]

1. Buddha was by that time considered as one of the incarnations of Vishnu and thus became a part of Vaishnavism.
2. The invading tribes from Central Asia till the time of last Gupta king adopted Hinduism and persecuted Buddhists.

3. The Kings of Gupta dynasty were strongly opposed to Buddhism.

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

- (a) Only 1      (b) 1 and 3  
 (c) 2 and 3      (d) All of the above

**Exp. (a)**

**42.** What was the immediate reason for Ahmed Shah Abdali to invade India and fight the Third Battle of Panipat? [IAS 2010]

- (a) He wanted to avenge the expulsion by Marathas of his Viceroy Timur Shah from Lahore
- (b) The frustrated Governor of Jullundhar Adina Beg Khan invited him to invade Punjab
- (c) He wanted to punish Mughal administration for non-payment of the revenues of the Chahar Mahal (Gujarat, Aurangabad, Sialkot and Pasrur)
- (d) He wanted to annex all the fertile plains of Punjab upto the borders of Delhi to his kingdom

**Exp. (a)**

**43.** Four resolutions were passed at the famous Calcutta Session of Indian National Congress in 1906. The question of either retention or of rejection of these four resolutions became the cause of a split in Congress at the next Congress Session held in Surat in 1907.

Which one of the following was not one of those resolutions? [IAS 2010]

- (a) Annulment of Partition of Bengal  
 (b) Boycott  
 (c) National education  
 (d) Swadeshi

**Exp. (a)**

**44.** After Quit India movement, C Rajagopalachari issued a pamphlet entitled 'The Way Out'. Which one of the following was a proposal in this pamphlet? [IAS 2010]

- (a) The establishment of a 'War Advisory council' composed of representatives of British India and the Indian States
- (b) Reconstitution of the Central Executive council in such a way that all its members, except the Governor-General and the Commander-in-Chief should be Indian leaders
- (c) Fresh elections to the Central and Provincial legislatures to be held at the end of 1945 and the Constitution making body to be convened as soon as possible
- (d) A solution for the constitutional deadlock

**Exp. (d)**

**45.** Where is the famous Virupaksha temple located?

- (a) Bhadrachalam      (b) Chidambaram [IAS 2009]  
 (c) Hampi      (d) Srikalahasti

**Exp. (c)** In Karnataka State, at Hampi the Virupaksha temple is famous, which was built by Krishnadeva Rai in 1509. It is also called as Pampapati temple. Krishnadeva Rai (1509-1529) was the greatest ruler of Tuluva dynasty and the Vijayanagara empire.